



*Office of*  
PUBLIC SECTOR INFORMATION

# **Legislation Schema**

---

# **Technical Reference**

**Version 1.13**

**Last modified on 27 November 2007**



Change Date	Documentation Version	Change Detail



## Contents

<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Structure of this Documentation .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Schema Overview .....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Common Attribute Reference .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>Element Reference .....</b>	<b>7</b>
Dublin Core Namespace .....	8
title .....	8
creator .....	8
subject .....	9
description .....	9
publisher .....	9
contributor .....	9
date .....	10
type .....	10
format .....	10
identifier .....	10
source .....	11
language .....	11
relation .....	11
coverage .....	11
rights .....	11
MathML Namespace .....	12
<b>Definitions of Elements .....</b>	<b>13</b>
Legislation .....	13
ukm:AlternativeNumber .....	17
ukm:ComingIntoForce .....	19
ukm:ComingIntoForce/ukm:DateTime .....	22
ukm:Correction .....	24
ukm:DepartmentCode .....	26
ukm:documentCategory .....	29
ukm:DocumentMinorType .....	30
ukm:documentMainType .....	32
ukm:EnactmentDate .....	35
ukm:Laid .....	36
ukm:Made .....	40
ukm:Metadata .....	42
ukm:Number .....	45
ukm:primaryMetadata .....	47
ukm:Resolution .....	49
ukm:RoyalPresence .....	50
ukm:SecondaryMetadata .....	52
ukm:Year .....	54
Abstract .....	56
AbstractBody .....	60
Appendix .....	65
AppendixBody .....	70
Body .....	75
Primary .....	79
Reference .....	81
Schedule .....	85
ScheduleBody .....	90
Schedules .....	93
Secondary .....	96
Address .....	98
AddressLine .....	100

Character .....	103
Department .....	106
JobTitle .....	109
Number .....	112
Para .....	115
PersonName .....	120
Subtitle .....	123
Title .....	127
TitleBlock .....	131
Chapter .....	134
Group .....	138
Part .....	142
Pblock .....	146
PsubBlock .....	150
P .....	153
P1 .....	157
P1group .....	161
P1para .....	164
P2 .....	167
P2group .....	170
P2para .....	172
P3 .....	175
P3group .....	180
P3para .....	185
P4 .....	188
P4para .....	192
P5 .....	196
P5para .....	200
P6 .....	204
P6para .....	206
P7 .....	208
P7para .....	210
Pnumber .....	212
AppendText .....	215
BlockText .....	218
Span .....	222
Text .....	225
Emphasis .....	231
Inferior .....	234
SmallCaps .....	237
Strong .....	240
Superior .....	243
Underline .....	246
Emphasis (EmphasisRestricted) .....	249
Inferior (InferiorRestricted) .....	252
SmallCaps (SmallCapsRestricted) .....	255
Strong (StrongRestricted) .....	258
Superior (SuperiorRestricted) .....	261
Underline (UnderlineRestricted) .....	264
Abbreviation .....	267
Acronym .....	270
Footnote .....	273
Footnote/Number .....	276
FootnoteRef .....	277
Footnotes .....	280
MarginNote .....	282
MarginNoteRef .....	284
MarginNotes .....	286
ExternalLink .....	287
InternalLink .....	290

Contents .....	293
ContentsAppendix .....	297
ContentsChapter .....	300
ContentsGroup .....	304
ContentsItem .....	308
ContentsNumber .....	312
ContentsPart .....	316
ContentsPblock .....	320
ContentsPsubBlock .....	324
ContentsSchedule .....	326
ContentsSchedules .....	330
ContentsSubItem .....	334
ContentsTitle .....	336
Key .....	340
KeyList .....	343
KeyListItem .....	346
ListItem .....	348
OrderedList .....	352
UnorderedList .....	357
Formula .....	361
EquationNumber .....	368
Where .....	369
Figure .....	375
Image .....	379
Notes .....	382
Tabular .....	383
TableText .....	390
Version .....	395
Versions .....	401
IncludedDocument .....	403
BinaryContent .....	407
ExternalVersion .....	409
InternalVersion .....	412
Resource .....	416
ResourceGroup .....	418
Resources .....	419
XMLcontent .....	421
BlockAmendment .....	423
FragmentNumber .....	430
FragmentTitle .....	432
BlockExtract .....	435
InlineExtract .....	440
Form .....	443
Citation .....	449
CitationSubRef .....	455
Comment .....	458
EarlierOrders .....	460
ExplanatoryNotes .....	465
DecoratedGroup .....	468
GroupItem .....	472
GroupItemRef .....	476
Approved .....	479
ComingIntoForce .....	482
ComingIntoForceClauses .....	487
Correction .....	490
DateOfEnactment .....	494
DateText .....	497
Draft .....	500
EnactingText .....	504
EnactingTextOmitted .....	506

IntroductoryText .....	508
LaidDate .....	511
LaidDraft .....	514
LongTitle .....	517
MadeDate .....	520
PrimaryPreamble .....	523
PrimaryPrelims .....	525
PrimaryPrelims/Title .....	528
PrimaryPrelims/Number .....	531
Resolution .....	533
RoyalPresence .....	535
SecondaryPrelims .....	538
SecondaryPrelims/Number .....	542
SecondaryPrelims/Title .....	544
SubjectInformation .....	547
SubjectInformation/Subject .....	550
DateSigned .....	553
LSseal .....	556
Signatory .....	560
SignedSection .....	563
Signee .....	566
caption .....	570
col .....	576
colgroup .....	580
table .....	583
tbody .....	588
td .....	590
tfoot .....	593
tfoot/tr .....	596
tfoot/tr/td .....	598
th .....	601
thead .....	605
tr .....	608
<b>Group Definitions .....</b>	<b>610</b>
group ukm:TSOmetadata .....	610
group BlockBasic .....	611
group EmphasisBasic .....	613
group EmphasisBasicRestricted .....	614
group InlineBasic .....	615
group InlineBasicRestricted .....	616
group InlineFull .....	617
group InlineLegislationCitation .....	619
group InlineModel .....	620
group ParaBasic .....	622
group ParaRestricted .....	623
group TableCellLocal .....	624
group TableFootnoteCellLocal .....	626
group TableHeaderCellLocal .....	628
group TableTextLocal .....	630
group EmphasisRestricted .....	631
group InferiorRestricted .....	632
group SmallCapsRestricted .....	633
group StrongRestricted .....	634
group SuperiorRestricted .....	635
group UnderlineRestricted .....	636
group TableCell .....	637
group TableFootnoteCell .....	639
group TableHeaderCell .....	641
group TableText .....	643
<b>AttributeGroup Definitions .....</b>	<b>644</b>



attributeGroup LayoutAttributes.....	644
attributeGroup TabularAttributes .....	645
attributeGroup CommonAttributes.....	646
attributeGroup CommonSubAttributes .....	647
attributeGroup QuotesAttributes.....	648
attributeGroup StructureNumberFormattingAttributes.....	649
attributeGroup VersionRefAttributes.....	650
attributeGroup XMLAttributes .....	651
attributeGroup LegislationAmendmentAttributes.....	652
attributeGroup LegislationExtractAttributes .....	653
attributeGroup PelementIDattributes .....	654
attributeGroup CommonFormattingAttributes .....	655
attributeGroup CommonHangingAttributes .....	656
attributeGroup ContentsAttributes .....	657
attributeGroup FigureElementIDattributes.....	658
attributeGroup ResourceElementIDAttributes .....	659
attributeGroup CitationElementIDAttributes .....	660
attributeGroup TableAlignmentAttributes .....	661
attributeGroup TableCellAttributes .....	662
attributeGroup TableXMLAttributes .....	663
attributeGroup BlockOrientation .....	664
attributeGroup TableBackgroundColorAttributes .....	665
attributeGroup TableBorderLeftAttributes .....	666
attributeGroup TableBorderTopAttributes .....	667
<b>ComplexType Definitions.....</b>	<b>668</b>
complexType BlockBasicStructure .....	668
complexType BlockExtractStructure.....	670
complexType BlockSectionStructure.....	672
complexType InlineExtractStructure.....	674
complexType InlineFullStructure .....	676
complexType InlineModelStructure .....	678
complexType InlineRestrictedStructure.....	680
complexType InlineStructure .....	682
complexType ParaBasicStructure .....	684
<b>SimpleType Definitions .....</b>	<b>686</b>
simpleType MinorType .....	686
simpleType YesNoType .....	687
simpleType SectionNo.....	688
simpleType FigureSizeType .....	689
simpleType FileFormatsType .....	690
simpleType TableBorderStyleType .....	691
simpleType TableSimpleLengthType .....	692
simpleType TableWidthType .....	693
simpleType TableBorderStyleType .....	694
simpleType TableColorType.....	695
simpleType TableSimpleLengthType .....	696
<b>Appendix A Reference List.....</b>	<b>697</b>
<b>Appendix B Table Model Attributes.....</b>	<b>702</b>
<b>Element Index .....</b>	<b>705</b>



# Introduction

The ‘Legislation Schema’ (hereafter referred to as the schema) is a comprehensive encoding of United Kingdom primary and secondary legislation.

It is a W3 ([www.w3.org](http://www.w3.org)) compliant schema.

To be more precise there are actually two schemas. A base version and a strict version. The only difference is that the strict version has tighter control over linking.

The schema describes the structure of a legislative document but does not attempt to describe the legal meaning behind the document.

One of the main issues with the creation of the schema is that the documents to be described already exist, and, in some cases, have done so for centuries. Obviously, XML (or initially SGML) was not a consideration until very recently. This has meant that the schema has to be flexible enough to describe the inconsistencies that have appeared over time and leads to a schema that is, perhaps, slightly looser in its implementation than would be desirable from a purist’s viewpoint.

A basic set of requirements for the schema were:

- that it should be able to describe all existing data (within reason)
- that it should be possible to typeset documents using the schema.
- that the mark-up should allow maximum use of the functionality of different media, e.g. hyperlinking on websites.
- that a modular approach should be used as far as possible.
- that it should conform to international standards wherever possible and practicable (i.e. W3, UK Government schema guidelines)
- that the schema should allow fragmentation of the data (for editing purposes)

# Structure of this Documentation

The **Schema Overview** provides general information about the schema.

Those attributes that are common to most elements are detailed in the **Common Attribute Reference**. This avoids repetition of the same information. Where elements have attributes listed in the Common Attribute Reference but with a different meaning this is explained in the Element Reference section.

The **Element Reference** is a comprehensive list of all elements in the schema, including example XML fragments and their hardcopy representations.

**Appendix A** lists all of the elements in the schema and corresponding reference files in which they can be found.

At the time of writing the schema has been tested to parse in MSXML4, XML Spy 2005, Oxygen XML editor and Microsoft Office 2003

**Appendix B** lists table model specific information.

# Schema Overview

*This section provides an overview of the technical approach taken to the schema and also a general summary of some of the analysis and results from this that lead to adopting certain approaches.*

## Modules

One of the main objectives was to build the schema in a modular fashion. Further to this is was an objective to create modules that may be reusable elsewhere. To this end, low level structures that occur in just about any lengthy document have been created as reusable modules. The approach taken is that the modules refer to types or groups and it is expected that any schema implementing these modules would define the content of these elements in a manner relevant to that schema. In this schema the definition module is called `schemaLegislationTypes.xsd`. At present the common modules are:

Module Name	Description
<code>namespace</code>	A W3 modules, defines XML standard attributes
<code>schemaBasicInline</code>	Common paragraph components and inline components
<code>schemaCitations</code>	References to other documents
<code>schemaCommonElements</code>	Generic elements
<code>schemaDerivedTypes</code>	Types derived from standard schema datatypes
<code>schemaEmphasis</code>	Character emphasis elements
<code>schemaExtract</code>	Document extracts
<code>schemaFigure</code>	Standard image elements
<code>schemaFootnote</code>	Footnotes
<code>schemaFormatting</code>	Standard formatting elements and attributes
<code>schemaFormula</code>	Equations
<code>schemaIncludeDocument</code>	Included documents
<code>schemaLinks</code>	Internal and external links
<code>schemaLists</code>	Lists
<code>schemaMarginnote</code>	Margin – or side – notes
<code>schemaResources</code>	Document resources
<code>schemaTableAttributes-FO.xsd</code>	XSL:FO attributes used for tables
<code>schemaTableTypes</code>	Table model structures
<code>schemaTable-XHTML</code>	Table model

Module Name	Description
schemaTabular	Container for table structures
schemaVersion	Content versions
simplcdc20021212	Dublin Core

---

## Metadata

Simple Dublin Core provides the basis for the metadata in the legislation schema. The exact reference is Dublin Core Metadata Element Set, Version 1.1 (URL <http://www.dublincore.org/documents/dces/>).

The main influence upon the use of Dublin Core in the schema comes from the UK e-Government Metadata Standard (e-GMS) (at time of writing the latest version is 3.1).

To extend the metadata to cover legislation specific metadata a namespace has been created with an element set designed to specifically cover the information we have assumed to be core legislation metadata.

## Fragmentation

Knowledge of current and future workflows for legislation led to the need to allow fragments of a document to be edited separately and concurrently. The only mechanism to do this within a schema is to define elements globally, allowing them to be the root of a document. Thus, this approach, for the most part, has been taken in the schema.

There are still many problems involved in implementing a fragment editing system, mainly concerning validation of linking. The schema makes no concessions on this front and linking is heavily used (e.g. footnotes, resources, etc.). The problems are not intractable, but the solutions are implementation specific, and so beyond the scope of the schema and therefore beyond the scope of this document.

## Provisions and Paragraphs

Much thought was given to the paragraph level hierarchy in the document. The decision was made that provisions or paragraphs were semantically interchangeable structures, and that the context dictates which is which.

Thus, the structure of documents is comprised of elements <P1>–<P7> where numbered structures are required. The level of indentation dictates which should be used. An important point is that, where the sequence of hierarchy is broken, then the *pn* structure stops. That is, where a numbered paragraph contains unnumbered paragraphs (generally unordered lists) then any substructures must also be lists. Or, to put it another way, once the *pn* hierarchy is broken, it does not restart.

There is also a paragraph element and this is used where numbered paragraphs are not a possibility, i.e. semantically numbered paragraphs must be a list.

An additional element <P>, is a holdall container that can contain numbered (<P1> or lower) paragraphs. Semantically, it would be equivalent to a p0.

## Table Model

The schema uses a modified form of the XHTML table model. This model was chosen for several reasons:

- Familiarity. Many people are now familiar with HTML tables.
- Application support. The HTML table model is directly supported in many applications.
- Ease of conversion for web output. For the most part tables can be directly output to web pages.

Obviously, the model also had to describe that data to an acceptable level. We decided that it is more than capable of describing anything that occurs in legislation.

It is not an exact implementation of the table model. Some parts have been tightened slightly. Some parts have not been implemented. One example of this is the style attribute. As an alternative to this attributes from the XSL:FO namespace have been used to provide similar functionality. The reason for this decision is threefold:

- CSS would be another information set that users would need to know about to use
- Processing CSS is difficult, both when using XSLT and for typesetting purposes. The use of attributes simplifies this process.
- The attributes can be passed straight through for XSL:FO processing.

## Mathematical Model

The model for mathematics within the schema is MathML 2.0. MathML is fast becoming the *de facto* standard for the description of mathematics in XML. Support for MathML is starting to appear in browsers and applications such as MathType provide functionality for creating equations in MathML. It is expected that software will be used to generate all but the most simple equations.

The URL for MathML is <http://www.w3.org/Math/XMLSchema/>

## Namespaces

The schema specific namespaces are:

Main schema <http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation> (Suggested prefix is ukl)

Metadata <http://www.hmso.gov.uk/metadata> (Suggested prefix is ukm)

# Common Attribute Reference

*This section lists common attributes that have widespread use across the schema.*

## **id**

### **(schemaLegislationCommonAttributes.xsd)**

Allows an element to be given a unique identifier. The format of this identifier should be *yxxxxx* where *y* is a letter and *xxxxx* is a number, padded to five digits. Note that some elements have fixed values for *y*. These are documented where relevant.

It is possible that two elements in a file will have the same identifier but only if one occurs in a section of the file that the schema indicates should not be parsed, such as `<Version>`. The reason that this may be desirable is that if a section is replaced by its alternate version and there are links to the original version, the links to the alternate version would still work.

## **xml:lang**

### **(namespace.xsd)**

The standard XML method for stating the language of the content in an element. For example, English should be given the value, 'en', whilst Welsh should have 'cy'.

For a definitive list please visit <http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/englangn.html>

## **xml:base**

### **(namespace.xsd)**

Allows the base URI for parts of an XML document to be defined.

Please see <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlbase/> for more information on XML Base.

## **xml:space**

### **(namespace.xsd)**

Allows a document's creator to define if white space is to be considered as significant in the scope of the element to which it is attached.



# Element Reference

*This section is an exhaustive list of all the elements in the schema with detailed information, explanations and sample code and images of hardcopy.*

*The section is split into three subsections*

- *Dublin Core namespace*
- *MathML namespace*
- *Schema namespaces*

*The legislation schema namespaces are described in full. MathML is merely referenced.*

# Dublin Core Namespace

Simple Dublin Core provides the basis for the metadata in the legislation schema. The exact reference is Dublin Core Metadata Element Set, Version 1.1 (URL <http://www.dublincore.org/documents/dces/>).

The elements are described over the next few pages. The objective is not to explain the use of DC but to give examples of how the element set is applied to legislation data.

## title

For primary legislation this describes the short title of the document. For secondary legislation there is only one meaningful title.

Any formatting contained in the title must be stripped as must any other elements. The date type for this element is a schema string.

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act 2002</dc:title>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:010590032X</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:primaryMetadata>
    <ukm:documentClassification>
      <ukm:documentCategory value="primary"/>
      <ukm:documentMainType value="scottishPublicGeneralAct"/>
      <ukm:documentStatus value="final"/>
    </ukm:documentClassification>
    <ukm:year value="2002"/>
    <ukm:number value="6"/>
  </ukm:primaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Ministerial and other Salaries Order 1988</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Parliament</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110882539</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:secondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:documentClassification>
      <ukm:documentCategory value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:documentMainType value="statutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:documentStatus value="final"/>
      <ukm:documentMinorType value="order"/>
    </ukm:documentClassification>
    <ukm:year value="1988"/>
    <ukm:number value="2253"/>
    <ukm:made date="1988-12-21"/>
    <ukm:comingIntoForce>
      <ukm:dateTime date="1989-01-01"/>
    </ukm:comingIntoForce>
    <ukm:royalPresence date="1988-12-21"/>
  </ukm:secondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 1988 2253

## creator

The entity primarily responsible for making the content of the resource.

If the entry includes individuals these should be depersonalised to job titles where applicable.

Acronyms should be avoided. Use the official title.

## subject

For primary legislation there is no obvious data in the document that can form the basis of a subject. It is thus suggested that primary legislation uses the term ‘UK Legislation’ as the subject as a default.

For secondary legislation this field should relate directly to the <subject>/<title> elements. If there is more than one subject title then multiple <dc:subject> elements should be used.

The sample below gives an example of secondary legislation.

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>Resolution of the House of Commons</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Parliament</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110436318</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:secondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:documentClassification>
      <ukm:documentCategory value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:documentMainType value="statutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:documentStatus value="final"/>
      <ukm:documentMinorType value="resolution"/>
    </ukm:documentClassification>
    <ukm:year value="1994"/>
    <ukm:number value="631"/>
    <ukm:resolution date="1994-03-04"/>
  </ukm:secondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
<secondary>
  <secondaryPrelims>
    <number>1994 No. 631</number>
    <subjectInformation>
      <subject>
        <title>Parliament</title>
      </subject>
    </subjectInformation>
  </secondaryPrelims>
</secondary>
```

Ref: SI 1994 0631

## description

An account of the content of the resource. For primary legislation the suggested use of the element is to hold the long title. For secondary legislation the suggested use is an edited version of the enacting text combined with the title.

## publisher

Use of this element in the context of the schema is undefined at present.

## contributor

This element should, where applicable, contain the individuals, departments, or organisations that had a significant role in creating the document but do not qualify as <creator>s.

Acronyms should be avoided. Use the full official title.

Individuals should be depersonalised to job titles where appropriate.

Care should be taken not to confuse <contributor> with <creator>.

### date

A date associated with an event in the life cycle of the resource.

Dates should appear in the format yyyy-mm-dd, where yyyy is the year, mm is the month and dd is the day.

Where time is also needed this can be added in the format hh:mm, where hh is the hour (using the 24 hour clock) and mm is the minutes.

It is expected that further refinements to this elements will be made in future versions of the schema.

### type

The nature or genre of the content of the resource.

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act 2002</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>UK Legislation</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:010590032X</dc:identifier>
  <dc:language>en</dc:language>
  <dc:date>2003-07-24</dc:date>
  <dc:coverage>UK</dc:coverage>
  <dc:rights>Crown copyright 2003</dc:rights>
  <dc:format>text/xml</dc:format>
  <dc:type>text</dc:type>
  <ukm:primaryMetadata>
    <ukm:documentClassification>
      <ukm:documentCategory value="primary"/>
      <ukm:documentMainType value="scottishPublicGeneralAct"/>
      <ukm:documentStatus value="final"/>
    </ukm:documentClassification>
    <ukm:year value="2002"/>
    <ukm:number value="6"/>
  </ukm:primaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

### format

The physical or digital manifestation of the resource.

In this instance where the schema is being used the format is text/xml. This is taken from the standard MIME list.

### identifier

An unambiguous reference to the resource within a context. The preferred format for an identifier is the URN namespace.

The primary identifier is expected to be an ISBN. This should be entered in the URN format (as ISBN is a registered URN currently):

urn:isbn:xxxxxxxxxx (where xxxxxxxxxx is the ISBN number.)

Additionally the resource may be identified using a DOI. This should be entered in the URI format (as DOI is not a registered URN namespace currently):

doi:10.xxxxx/yyyyy (where xxxx is the DOI prefix and yyyyy is the DOI suffix)

A current list of registered namespaces can be found at:

<http://www.iana.org/assignments/urn-namespaces>

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>Resolution of the House of Commons</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Parliament</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110436318</dc:identifier>
  <dc:language>en</dc:language>
  <dc:date>2003-07-24</dc:date>
  <dc:coverage>UK</dc:coverage>
  <dc:rights>Crown copyright 2003</dc:rights>
  <dc:format>text/xml</dc:format>
  <dc:type>text</dc:type>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="statutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="resolution"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="1994"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="631"/>
    <ukm:Resolution Date="1994-03-04"/>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 1994 0631

## source

Use of this element in the context of the schema is undefined at present.

## language

The language contained within the document. This should contain the two character (ISO 639) character code relevant to the main language of the document. For English this will be ‘en’ and for Welsh ‘cy’.

## relation

For secondary legislation the suggested use is to reference the enabling act. It would be desirable for primary legislation to reference any secondary legislation that has had an effect but it is understood that this may be impracticable.

## coverage

Defines the extent of scope of the content of the document.

This element should reflect the general territorial extent of the document, e.g. UK, England, England and Wales etc.

It is expected that this element will be refined further to include spatial and temporal qualifications in the future.

## rights

Information about the rights held in and over the resource.

Indicates who has the right to see, copy, redistribute, republish or otherwise make use of all or part of the resource.

It is expected that this element will be further refined in future releases of the schema.

## MathML Namespace

The following is a small example of how mathematics looks when part of a legislation schema file.

```
<math style="font-weight: bold; text-align: center" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">
  <mrow>
    <mo fence="true">(</mo>
    <mrow>
      <mi>S</mi>
      <mo>+</mo>
      <mi>P</mi>
      <mo>+</mo>
      <mi>N</mi>
      <mo>+</mo>
      <mi>L</mi>
    </mrow>
    <mo fence="true">)</mo>
  </mrow>
  <mo>-</mo>
  <mrow>
    <mo fence="true">(</mo>
    <mrow>
      <mi>C</mi>
      <mo>+</mo>
      <mi>S</mi>
      <mi>P</mi>
      <mo>+</mo>
      <mi>CD</mi>
    </mrow>
    <mo fence="true">)</mo>
  </mrow>
</math>
```

The MathML namespace declaration must be used on the math element.

Note that CSS is used to control the formatting. This differs from the approach in the rest of the schema but allows compliance with the MathML schema

# Definitions of Elements

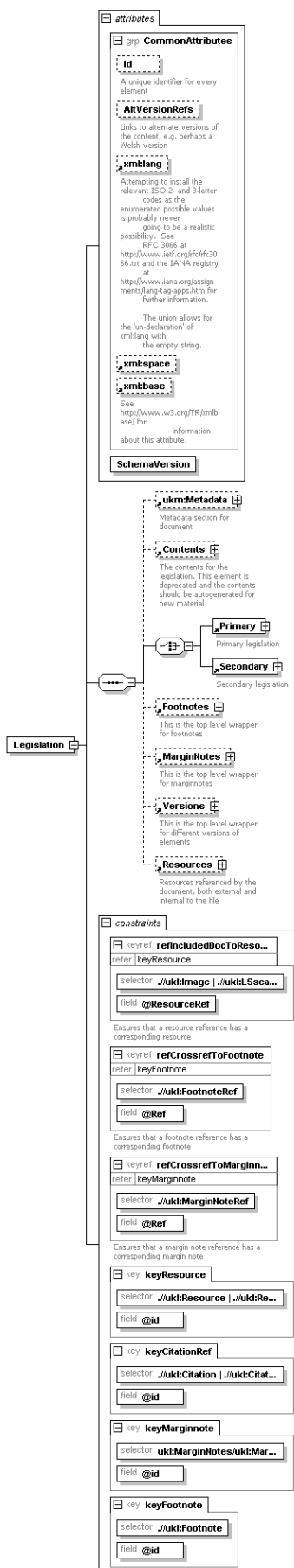
## **Legislation**

This is the root element for a complete legislation document instance.

## **SchemaVersion**

Defines the version of the schema that this instance should be parsed against. This is a fixed value attribute.

diagram





namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **ukm:Metadata Contents Primary Secondary Footnotes MarginNotes Versions Resources**

attributes	Name id	Type <b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	SchemaVersion	<b>xsd:NMTOKEN</b>	required		1.0
	identity constraints		Name	Refer	Selector
keyref		refIncludedDocToResource	keyResource	../ukl:Image   ../ukl:LSseal   ../ukl:IncludedDocument	@ResourceRef
keyref		refCrossrefToFootnote	keyFootnote	../ukl:FootnoteRef	@Ref
keyref		refCrossrefToMarginnote	keyMarginnote	../ukl:MarginNoteRef	@Ref
key		keyResource		../ukl:Resource   ../ukl:ResourceGroup	@id
key		keyCitationRef		../ukl:Citation   ../ukl:CitationSubRef	@id
key		keyMarginnote		ukl:MarginNotes/ukl:MarginNote	@id
key		keyFootnote		../ukl:Footnote	@id

```
source <xsd:element name="Legislation">
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="ukm:Metadata" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Contents" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:choice>
        <xsd:element ref="Primary"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Secondary"/>
      </xsd:choice>
      <xsd:element ref="Footnotes" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="MarginNotes" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Versions" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Resources" minOccurs="0"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="SchemaVersion" type="xsd:NMTOKEN" use="required" fixed="1.0"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
  <xsd:keyref name="refIncludedDocToResource" refer="keyResource">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>Ensures that a resource reference has a corresponding
resource</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:selector xpath="//ukl:Image | ../ukl:LSseal | ../ukl:IncludedDocument"/>
    <xsd:field xpath="@ResourceRef"/>
  </xsd:keyref>
  <xsd:keyref name="refCrossrefToFootnote" refer="keyFootnote">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>Ensures that a footnote reference has a corresponding
footnote</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:selector xpath="//ukl:FootnoteRef"/>
    <xsd:field xpath="@Ref"/>
  </xsd:keyref>
  <xsd:keyref name="refCrossrefToMarginnote" refer="keyMarginnote">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>Ensures that a margin note reference has a corresponding margin
note</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:selector xpath="//ukl:MarginNoteRef"/>
    <xsd:field xpath="@Ref"/>
  </xsd:keyref>
  <xsd:key name="keyResource">
    <xsd:selector xpath="//ukl:Resource | ../ukl:ResourceGroup"/>
    <xsd:field xpath="@id"/>
  </xsd:key>
  <xsd:key name="keyCitationRef">
    <xsd:selector xpath="//ukl:Citation | ../ukl:CitationSubRef"/>
    <xsd:field xpath="@id"/>
  </xsd:key>
  <xsd:key name="keyMarginnote">
    <xsd:selector xpath="ukl:MarginNotes/ukl:MarginNote"/>
    <xsd:field xpath="@id"/>
  </xsd:key>
  <xsd:key name="keyFootnote">
    <xsd:selector xpath="//ukl:Footnote"/>
    <xsd:field xpath="@id"/>
  </xsd:key>
</xsd:element>
```

## ukm:AlternativeNumber

The use of this element has two meanings. For secondary legislation for some classes of document there may be one or more subsidiary numbers associated with it. For early primary legislation documents were also identified the regnal year. This information can be held in this element also.

### Category

Attribute value	Explanation
C	Commencement and/or Appointed Day orders that bring into force an Act or part of an Act
L	Legal series
S	Scottish series
NI	Northern Ireland series
W	National Assembly for Wales series. Where the document is in Welsh the value will be Cy
Regnal	Indicates the number is a regnal year

For a definitive definition of the use of the values for this attribute please see *Statutory Instrument Practice*, 3rd edition (June 2003), section 2.3.3 (Serial numbers)

### Value

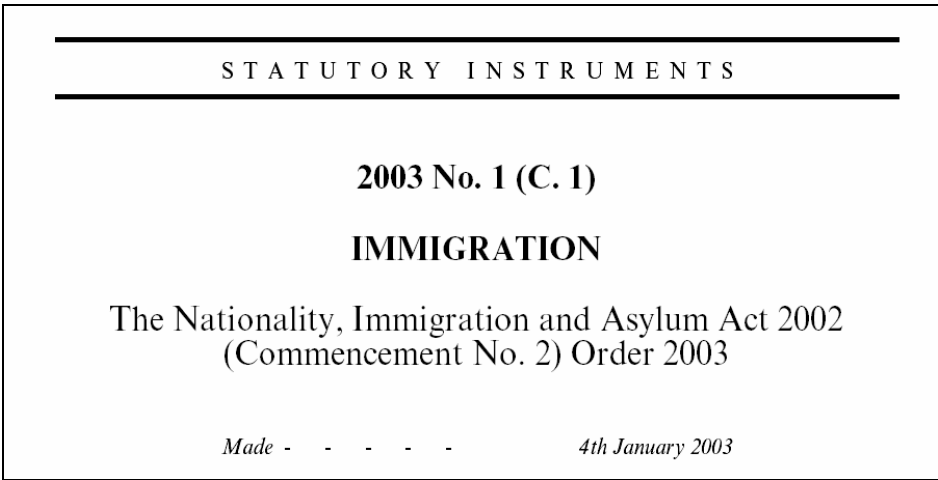
The actual number value or regnal number.

### Example code

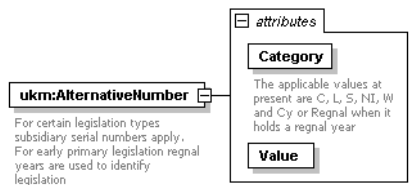
```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (Commencement No. 2) Order
  2003</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Immigration</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110445902</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="order"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2003"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="1"/>
    <ukm:AlternativeNumber Category="C" Value="1"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2003-01-04"/>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: UKSI 2003 0001

Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata				
properties	content	complex			
used by	elements	ukm:PrimaryMetadata ukm:SecondaryMetadata			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Category	xsd:string	required		
	Value	xsd:string	required		
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="AlternativeNumber"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;For certain legislation types subsidiary serial numbers apply. For early primary legislation regnal years are used to identify legislation&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Category" type="xsd:string" use="required"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The applicable values at present are C, L, S, NI, W and Cy or Regnal when it holds a regnal year&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Value" type="xsd:string" use="required"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## ukm:ComingIntoForce

Holds the ‘Coming Into Force’ date for the document (this can apply to both primary and secondary legislation). If there are coming into force clauses then each individual date can be held as a DateTime element.

### Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Income Tax (Sub-contractors in the Construction Industry and Employments) (Amendment)
  Regulations 2003</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Income Tax</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110451775</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="regulation"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2003"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="536"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2003-03-07"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2003-03-07" Class="UnitedKingdomParliament"/>
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2003-04-06"/>
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0536

### Example image

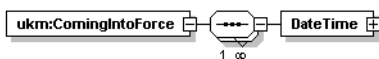
STATUTORY INSTRUMENTS	
<b>2003 No. 536</b>	
<b>INCOME TAX</b>	
The Income Tax (Sub-contractors in the Construction Industry and Employments) (Amendment) Regulations 2003	
<i>Made</i>	<i>7th March 2003</i>
<i>Laid before the House of Commons</i>	<i>7th March 2003</i>
<i>Coming into force</i>	<i>6th April 2003</i>
The Commissioners of Inland Revenue, in exercise of the powers conferred upon them by sections 203, 559A and 566 of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988(a), and of all other powers enabling them in that behalf, hereby make the following Regulations:	

```
<ukm:Metadata>  
  <dc:title>The Government Stock (Consequential and Transitional Provision) Order 2004</dc:title>  
  <dc:subject>NATIONAL DEBT</dc:subject>  
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0000000000</dc:identifier>  
  <dc:language>en</dc:language>  
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>  
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>  
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>  
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="statutoryInstrument"/>  
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>  
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="order"/>  
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>  
    <ukm:Year Value="2004"/>  
    <ukm:Number Value="1486"/>  
    <ukm:Made Date="2004-06-08"/>  
    <ukm:Laid Date="2004-06-08" Class="westminster"/>  
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>  
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2004-06-29"/>  
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2004-07-01"/>  
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>  
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>  
</ukm:Metadata>  
<Secondary>  
  <SecondaryPrelims>  
    <Number>2004 No. 1486</Number>  
    <SubjectInformation>  
      <Subject>  
        <Title>NATIONAL DEBT</Title>  
      </Subject>  
    </SubjectInformation>  
    <Title>The Government Stock (Consequential and Transitional Provision) Order 2004</Title>  
    <MadeDate>  
      <Text>Made</Text>  
      <DateText>8th June 2004</DateText>  
    </MadeDate>  
    <LaidDate>  
      <Text>Laid before the House of Commons</Text>  
      <DateText>8th June 2004</DateText>  
    </LaidDate>  
    <ComingIntoForce>  
      <Text>Coming into force</Text>  
      <ComingIntoForceClauses>  
        <Text>For the purposes stated in Article 1(2)</Text>  
        <DateText>29th June 2004</DateText>  
      </ComingIntoForceClauses>  
      <ComingIntoForceClauses>  
        <Text>For all other purposes</Text>  
        <DateText>1st July 2004</DateText>  
      </ComingIntoForceClauses>  
    </ComingIntoForce>  
  </SecondaryPrelims>  
</Secondary>
```

## Example image

<b>2004 No. 1486</b>	
<b>NATIONAL DEBT</b>	
<b>The Government Stock (Consequential and Transitional Provision) Order 2004</b>	
<i>Made</i>	<i>8th June 2004</i>
<i>Laid before the House of Commons</i>	<i>8th June 2004</i>
<i>Coming into force</i>	
<i>For the purposes stated in Article 1(2)</i>	<i>29th June 2004</i>
<i>For all other purposes</i>	<i>1st July 2004</i>

diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata>

properties content complex

children **DateTime**used by elements **ukm:PrimaryMetadata ukm:SecondaryMetadata**

```

source
<xsd:element name="ComingIntoForce">
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <xsd:element name="DateTime">
        <xsd:complexType>
          <xsd:attribute name="Date" type="xsd:date" use="required"/>
          <xsd:attribute name="Time" type="xsd:time"/>
        </xsd:complexType>
      </xsd:element>
    </xsd:sequence>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

### ukm:ComingIntoForce/ukm:DateTime

The ‘Coming Into Force’ date for a document may be specific down to a time of day. This element holds the values separately, as Date and Time attributes.

#### Date

A date in W3 schema date format. That is yyyy-mm-dd, where yyyy is the year, mm is the month padded to two digits and dd is the date padded to two digits.

#### Time

Holds a time in W3 schema time format, i.e hh:mm:ss, where hh is the hour (24 hour clock), mm is the minutes and ss is the seconds, e.g. 15:30:00.

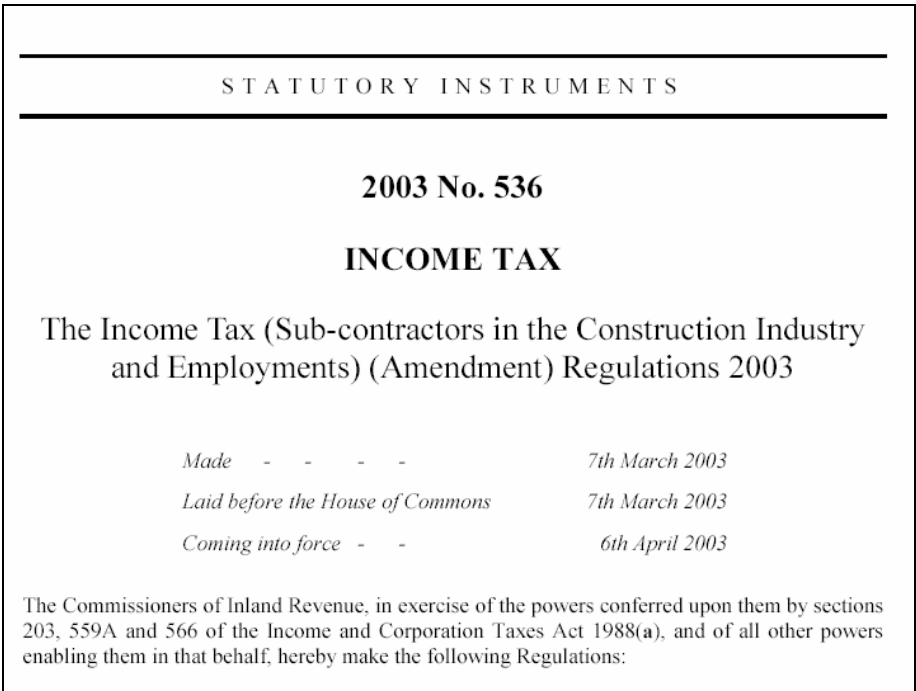
#### Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Income Tax (Sub-contractors in the Construction Industry and Employments) (Amendment)
  Regulations 2003</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Income Tax</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110451775</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="regulation"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2003"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="536"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2003-03-07"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2003-03-07" Class="UnitedKingdomParliament"/>
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2003-04-06"/>
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

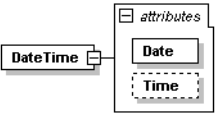
Ref: SI 2003 0536



Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata					
properties	isRef	0				
	content	complex				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	Date	xsd:date	required			
	Time	xsd:time				
source	<xsd:element name="DateTime"> <xsd:complexType> <xsd:attribute name="Date" type="xsd:date" use="required"/> <xsd:attribute name="Time" type="xsd:time"/> </xsd:complexType> </xsd:element>					

### ukm:Correction

This element is used to record information about legislation that is printed to correct another item of legislation. This normally happens only for secondary legislation.

The use of this element changes depending upon whether the document is the ‘correcting’ or the ‘corrected’ document. This is done using the Type attribute.

The element can contain details about the correcting or corrected legislation by recording the document main type and also the year/number and/or the identifier of the other document. This then allows the document to be linked to the other.

### Type

This can contain one of the following values:

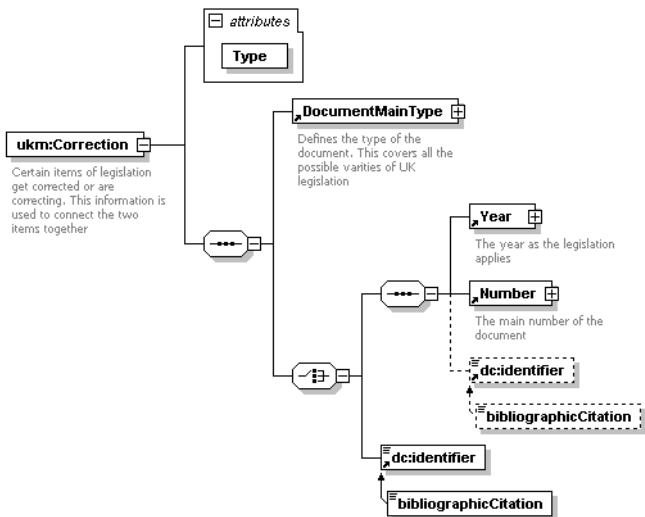
- corrects
- correctedBy

### Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:subject>Waste policies and regulation</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Waste management</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Pollution</dc:subject>
  <dc:title>The Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (Waste Management Licensing) (England and Wales) (Amendment) Regulations 2007</dc:title>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:9780110766027</dc:identifier>
  <dc:language>en</dc:language>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="regulation"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2007"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="1085"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2007-03-28"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2007-04-03" Class="UnitedKingdomParliament"/>
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2007-04-25"/>
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>
    <ukm:Correction Type="corrects">
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:Year Value="2006"/>
      <ukm:Number Value="3315"/>
    </ukm:Correction>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 2007 1085

diagram



namespace `http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata`

properties `content` `complex`

children **ukm:DocumentMainType** **ukm:Year** **ukm:Number** **dc:identifier**

used by `element` **ukm:SecondaryMetadata**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Type	derived by: xsd:string	required		

source 

```
<xsd:element name="Correction">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Certain items of legislation get corrected or are correcting. This information is used
to connect the two items together</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>It is also possible to correct a draft legislation item. In that case the identifier of the
other document should be used</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="DocumentMainType"/>
      <xsd:choice>
        <xsd:sequence>
          <xsd:element ref="Year"/>
          <xsd:element ref="Number"/>
          <xsd:element ref="dc:identifier" minOccurs="0"/>
        </xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="dc:identifier"/>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attribute name="Type" use="required">
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
          <xsd:enumeration value="corrects"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="correctedBy"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

### ukm:DepartmentCode

Secondary legislation may have a department code, also known as a domestic serial number. This is usually printed at the bottom of the first page of the document.

For a definitive definition of the use of this element please see *Statutory Instrument Practice*, 3rd edition (June 2003), section 2.3.5 (Serial numbers)

#### Example code

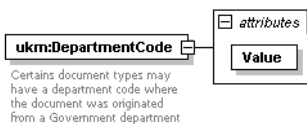
```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Motor Cycles Etc. (EC Type Approval) (Amendment) Regulations 2003</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Road Traffic</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:011045751X</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="regulation"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2003"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="1099"/>
    <ukm:DepartmentCode Value="DfT 13031"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2003-04-14"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2003-04-15" Class="UnitedKingdomParliament"/>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1099

## Example image

STATUTORY INSTRUMENTS	
2003 No. 1099	
ROAD TRAFFIC	
The Motor Cycles Etc. (EC Type Approval) (Amendment) Regulations 2003	
Made - - - -	14th April 2003
Laid before Parliament	15th April 2003
Coming into force	
Regulations 1 and 2(f)	7th May 2003
Remainder	9th November 2003
<p>The Secretary of State for Transport, being a Minister designated(a) for the purposes of section 2(2) of the European Communities Act 1972(b) in relation to the regulation of the type, description, construction or equipment of vehicles and of components of vehicles, and in particular any vehicle type approval scheme, in exercise of the powers conferred by that section and of all other powers enabling him in that behalf, hereby makes the following Regulations:</p>	
<p><b>Citation and commencement</b></p> <p>1.—(1) These Regulations may be cited as the Motor Cycles Etc. (EC Type Approval) (Amendment) Regulations 2003.</p> <p>(2) This regulation and regulation 2(f) shall come into force on 7th May 2003 and all other regulations shall come into force on 9th November 2003.</p>	
<p><b>Amendment of the Motor Cycles Etc. (EC Type Approval) Regulations 1999</b></p> <p>2. The Motor Cycles Etc. (EC Type Approval) Regulations 1999(c) shall be amended in accordance with the following paragraphs—</p> <p>(a) in regulation 3 (interpretation)—</p> <p>(i) for the definition of “the Framework Directive” there shall be substituted the following—</p> <p>“the Framework Directive” means Directive 2002/24/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 18th March 2002 relating to the type approval of two or three-wheeled motor vehicles and repealing Council Directive 92/61/EEC(d), as corrected by a Corrigendum(e);”</p> <p>(ii) in the definition of “EC component type approval” after “approval of a” there shall be inserted “system.”;</p>	
<p><small>60 S.I. 1972/1831, to which there are amendments not relevant to these Regulations.  61 1972 c. 68.  62 S.I. 1999/2920, amended by S.I. 2001/368 and 2001/1547.  63 OJ No. L124, 9.5.2002, p.1.  64 OJ No. L49, 22.2.2003, p.23.</small></p>	
1	[DfT 13031]

diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata>

properties content complex

used by element **ukm:SecondaryMetadata**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Value	xsd:string	required		

```
source <xsd:element name="DepartmentCode">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Certain document types may have a department code where the document was
    originated from a Government department</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:attribute name="Value" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

element

ukm:documentCategory

Defines the category of document.

Value

The possible values are:

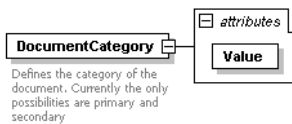
- primary
- secondary

Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Motor Cycles Etc. (EC Type Approval) (Amendment) Regulations 2003</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Road Traffic</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:011045751X</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="regulation"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2003"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="1099"/>
    <ukm:DepartmentCode Value="DfT 13031"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2003-04-14"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2003-04-15" Class="UnitedKingdomParliament"/>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1099

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata					
properties	isRef	0	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	content	complex				
attributes	Name		derived by: xsd:string	required		
	Value					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="DocumentCategory"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines the category of the document. Currently the only possibilities are primary and secondary&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Value" use="required"&gt;       &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;         &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="primary"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="secondary"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;       &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

element

## ukm:DocumentMinorType

Defines the minor type (or subclass) of document. This applies only to secondary legislation.

### Value

The possible values are:

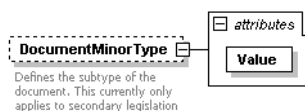
- order
- regulation
- rule
- scheme
- resolution
- unknown

### Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>Resolution of the House of Commons</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Parliament</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110436318</dc:identifier>
  <dc:language>en</dc:language>
  <dc:date>2003-07-24</dc:date>
  <dc:coverage>UK</dc:coverage>
  <dc:rights>Crown copyright 2003</dc:rights>
  <dc:format>text/xml</dc:format>
  <dc:type>text</dc:type>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="resolution"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="1994"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="631"/>
    <ukm:Resolution Date="1994-03-04"/>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 1994 0631

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata>

properties	isRef	0	Type derived by: xsd:string	Use required	Default	Fixed
	minOcc	0				
	maxOcc	1				
	content	complex				
attributes	Name					
	Value					



```
source <xsd:element name="DocumentMinorType" minOccurs="0">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the subtype of the document. This currently only applies to secondary
legislation</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:attribute name="Value" use="required">
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
          <xsd:enumeration value="order"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="regulation"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="rule"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="scheme"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="resolution"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="unknown"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

### ukm:documentMainType

Defines the main type (or class) of the legislation.

#### Value

The possible values are:

- NorthernIrelandAct
- NorthernIrelandStatutoryRule
- ScottishAct
- ScottishStatutoryInstrument
- ScottishStatutoryInstrumentLocal
- UnitedKingdomChurchMeasure
- UnitedKingdomLocalAct
- UnitedKingdomPublicGeneralAct
- UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument
- UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrumentLocal
- WelshStatutoryInstrument
- WelshStatutoryInstrumentLocal

#### Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Motor Cycles Etc. (EC Type Approval) (Amendment) Regulations 2003</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Road Traffic</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:011045751X</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="regulation"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2003"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="1099"/>
    <ukm:DepartmentCode Value="DfT 13031"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2003-04-14"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2003-04-15" Class="UnitedKingdomParliament"/>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1099

Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act 2002</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>UK Legislation</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:010590032X</dc:identifier>
  <dc:language>en</dc:language>
  <dc:date>2003-07-24</dc:date>
  <dc:coverage>UK</dc:coverage>
  <dc:rights>Crown copyright 2003</dc:rights>
  <dc:format>text/xml</dc:format>
  <dc:type>text</dc:type>
  <ukm:PrimaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="primary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="scottishPublicGeneralAct"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2002"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="6"/>
  </ukm:PrimaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata					
properties	content	complex				
used by	elements	ukm:Correction ukm:DocumentClassification				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	Value	derived by: xsd:string	required			

```
source <xsd:element name="DocumentMainType">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the type of the document. This covers all the possible varieties of UK
legislation</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:attribute name="Value" use="required">
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
          <xsd:enumeration value="EnglandAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="GreatBritainAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="IrelandAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandAssemblyMeasure"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandParliamentAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandOrderInCouncil"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandStatutoryRule"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandStatutoryRuleLocal"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="ScottishAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="ScottishStatutoryInstrument"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="ScottishStatutoryInstrumentLocal"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomChurchMeasure"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomPrivateAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomPublicGeneralAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomLocalAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrumentLocal"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="WelshAssemblyMeasure"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="WelshStatutoryInstrument"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="WelshStatutoryInstrumentLocal"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## ukm:EnactmentDate

The date of enactment of the legislation. This element only applies to primary legislation.

### Date

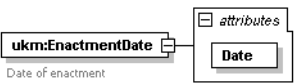
A date in W3 schema date format. That is yyyy-mm-dd, where yyyy is the year, mm is the month padded to two digits and dd is the date padded to two digits.

### Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>State Pension Credit Act 2002</dc:title>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0105416029</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:PrimaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="primary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomPublicGeneralAct"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2002"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="16"/>
    <ukm:EnactmentDate Date="2002-06-25"/>
  </ukm:PrimaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: UKPGA 2002 0016

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata>

properties content complex

used by element **ukm:PrimaryMetadata**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Date	xsd:date	required		

```
source <xsd:element name="EnactmentDate">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Date of enactment</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:attribute name="Date" type="xsd:date" use="required"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

### ukm:Laid

This element only applies to secondary legislation. It is the laid date of the document. This relates directly to the laid date on the hardcopy. Occasionally some documents relating to Scotland or Ireland may have a Scottish or Irish laid date – this may be instead of or in addition to the westminster. This is controlled via the Class attribute.

### Date

A date in W3 schema date format. That is yyyy-mm-dd, where yyyy is the year, mm is the month padded to two digits and dd is the date padded to two digits.

### Time

Holds a time in W3 schema time format, i.e hh:mm:ss, where hh is the hour (24 hour clock), mm is the minutes and ss is the seconds, e.g. 15:30:00.

### Class

Defines the class of laid date. The possible options are:

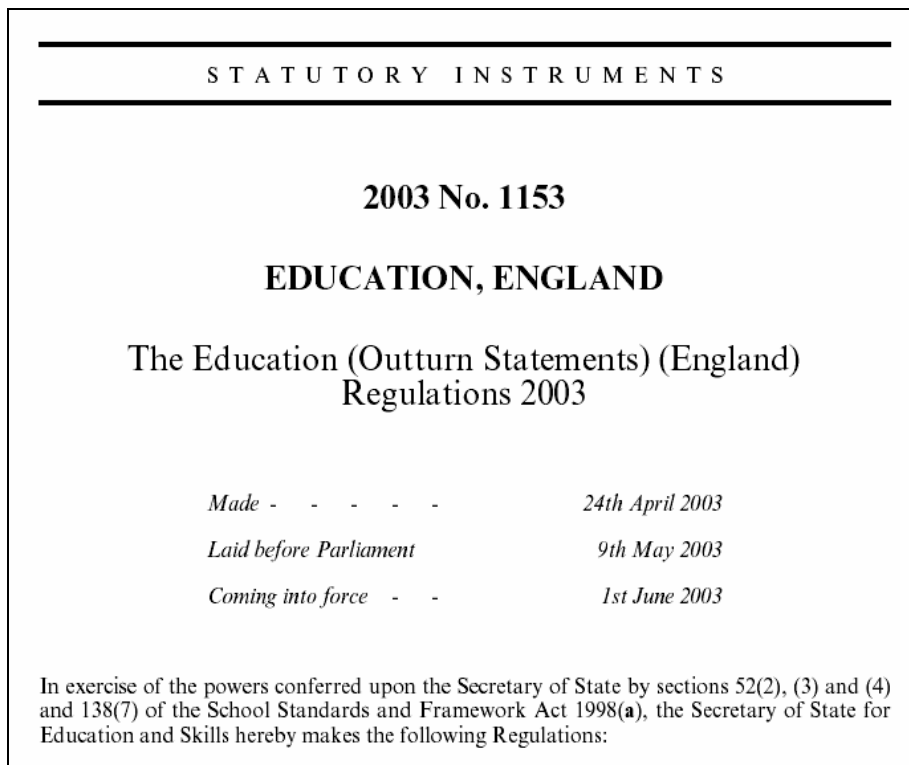
- NorthernIrelandAssembly
- ScottishParliament
- UnitedKingdomParliament
- WelshAssembly

### Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Extradition (Torture) (Amendment) Order 2003</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>EXTRADITION</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110460030</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <uksm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2003"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="1251"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2003-05-08"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2003-05-20"/>
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2003-05-22"/>
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1251

## Example image



## Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The National Health Service (Tribunal) (Scotland) Amendment (No. 2) Regulations
  2004</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>NATIONAL HEALTH SERVICE</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110691563</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="ScottishStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="regulation"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2004"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="271"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2004-06-07"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2004-06-09" Class="ScottishParliament"/>
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2004-07-01"/>
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SSI 2004 271

## Example image

SCOTTISH STATUTORY INSTRUMENTS	
<b>2004 No. 271</b>	
<b>NATIONAL HEALTH SERVICE</b>	
<b>The National Health Service (Tribunal) (Scotland) Amendment (No. 2) Regulations 2004</b>	
<i>Made</i>	<i>7th June 2004</i>
<i>Laid before the Scottish Parliament</i>	<i>9th June 2004</i>
<i>Coming into force</i>	<i>1st July 2004</i>
<p>The Scottish Ministers, in exercise of the powers conferred by sections 17P, 29(4), 105(7) and 108(1) of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978(a) and of all other powers enabling them in that behalf, and after consultation with the Council on Tribunals and its Scottish Committee in accordance with sections 8(1) and (3) of the Tribunal and Inquiries Act 1992(b), hereby make the following Regulations:</p>	

## Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Health and Personal Social Services (Assessment of Resources) (Amendment) Regulations
(Northern Ireland) 2001</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>HEALTH AND PERSONAL SOCIAL SERVICES</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0-337-23689-5</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="N1statutoryRule"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="regulation"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2001"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="205"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2001-05-11"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2001-05-21" Class="ireland"/>
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2001-06-11"/>
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

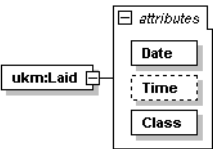
Ref: NISR 2003 205



Example image

STATUTORY RULES OF NORTHERN IRELAND		
2001 No. 205		
HEALTH AND PERSONAL SOCIAL SERVICES		
The Health and Personal Social Services (Assessment of Resources) (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2001		
Made	.	11th May 2001
Laid before the Assembly	.	21st May 2001
Coming into operation	.	11th June 2001

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata				
properties	content	complex			
used by	element	ukm:SecondaryMetadata			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Date	xsd:date	required		
	Time	xsd:time			
	Class	derived by: xsd:string	required		
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Laid"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Date" type="xsd:date" use="required"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Time" type="xsd:time"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Class" use="required"&gt;       &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;         &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandAssembly"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="ScottishParliament"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomParliament"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="WelshAssembly"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;       &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

### ukm:Made

This element only applies to secondary legislation. It is the made date of the document. This relates directly to the made date on the hardcopy. Occasionally the timing may be more specific and a time is needed also.

#### Date

A date in W3 schema date format. That is yyyy-mm-dd, where yyyy is the year, mm is the month padded to two digits and dd is the date padded to two digits.

#### Time

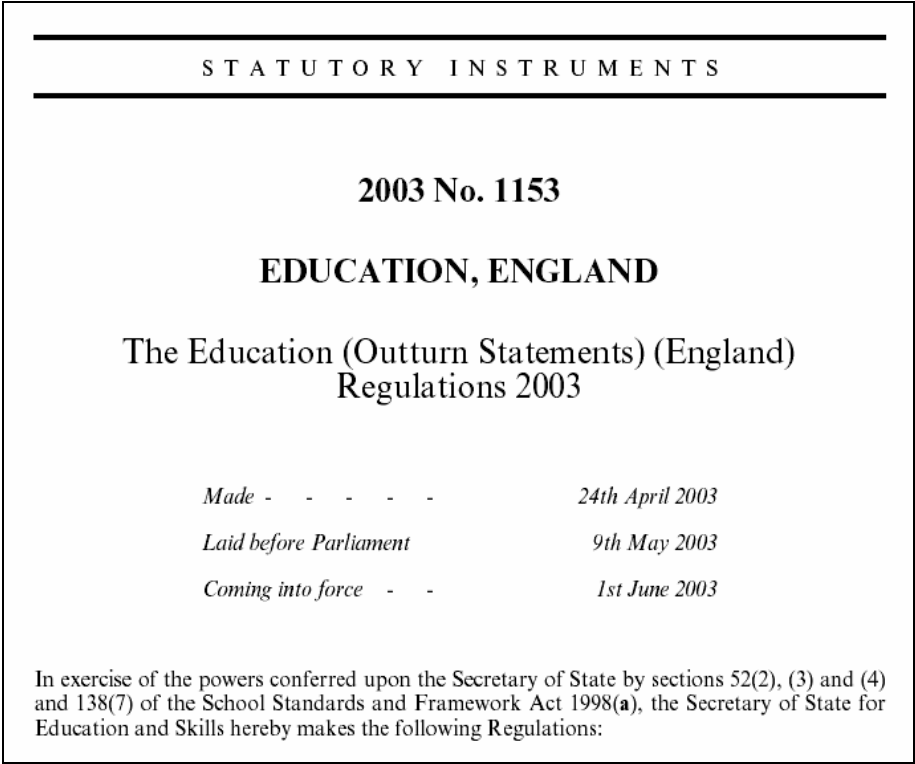
Holds a time in W3 schema time format, i.e hh:mm:ss, where hh is the hour (24 hour clock), mm is the minutes and ss is the seconds, e.g. 15:30:00.

#### Example code

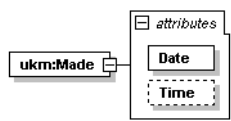
```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Extradition (Torture) (Amendment) Order 2003</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>EXTRADITION</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110460030</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <uksm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2003"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="1251"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2003-05-08"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2003-05-20"/>
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2003-05-22"/>
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1251

Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata					
properties	content	complex				
used by	element	ukm:SecondaryMetadata				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	Date	xsd:date	required			
	Time	xsd:time				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Made"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Date" type="xsd:date" use="required"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Time" type="xsd:time"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

### ukm:Metadata

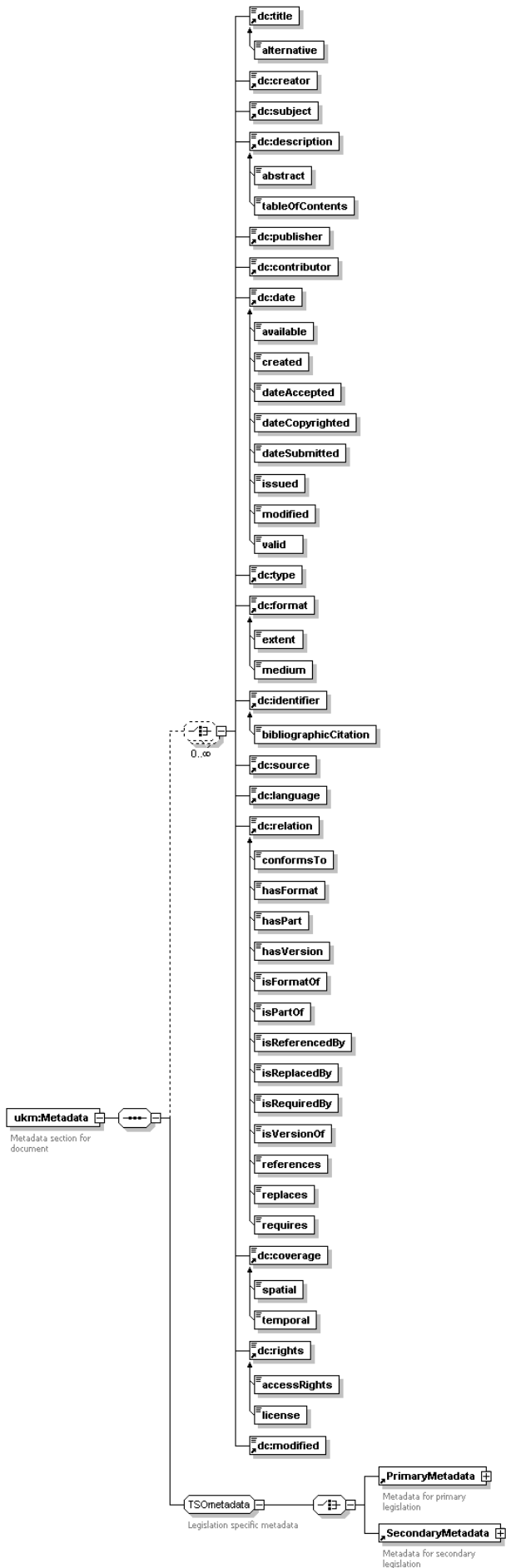
A container for the metadata of the document. This element is in the metadata namespace.

#### Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Farm Waste Grant (Nitrate Vulnerable Zones) (England) Scheme 2003</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Agriculture, England</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110456483</dc:identifier>
  <dc:language>en</dc:language>
  <dc:date>2003-07-24</dc:date>
  <dc:coverage>UK</dc:coverage>
  <dc:rights>Crown copyright 2003</dc:rights>
  <dc:format>text/xml</dc:format>
  <dc:type>text</dc:type>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="scheme"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2003"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="562"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2003-03-06"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2003-03-10" Class="UnitedKingdomParliament"/>
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2003-03-07"/>
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0562

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata
properties	content complex
children	<b>dc:title dc:creator dc:subject dc:description dc:publisher dc:contributor dc:date dc:type dc:format dc:identifier dc:source dc:language dc:relation dc:coverage dc:rights dc:modified ukm:PrimaryMetadata ukm:SecondaryMetadata</b>
used by	element <b>Legislation</b>
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Metadata"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Metadata section for document&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:title"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:creator"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:subject"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:description"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:publisher"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:contributor"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:date"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:type"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:format"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:identifier"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:source"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:language"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:relation"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:coverage"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:rights"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="dc:modified"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="TSOMetadata"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>

## ukm:Number

The number associated with the document. For primary legislation this will be the chapter number and for secondary it will be the registered number.

### Value

The value of the number.

### Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Extradition (Torture) (Amendment) Order 2003</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>EXTRADITION</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110460030</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <uksm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2003"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="1251"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2003-05-08"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2003-05-20"/>
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2003-05-22"/>
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1251

### Example image

<hr/> <p style="text-align: center;">S T A T U T O R Y   I N S T R U M E N T S</p> <hr/>	
<p><b>2003 No. 1153</b></p> <p><b>EDUCATION, ENGLAND</b></p> <p><b>The Education (Outturn Statements) (England) Regulations 2003</b></p>	
<i>Made</i> - - - - -	<i>24th April 2003</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>	<i>9th May 2003</i>
<i>Coming into force</i> - -	<i>1st June 2003</i>
<p>In exercise of the powers conferred upon the Secretary of State by sections 52(2), (3) and (4) and 138(7) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998(a), the Secretary of State for Education and Skills hereby makes the following Regulations:</p>	

## Example code

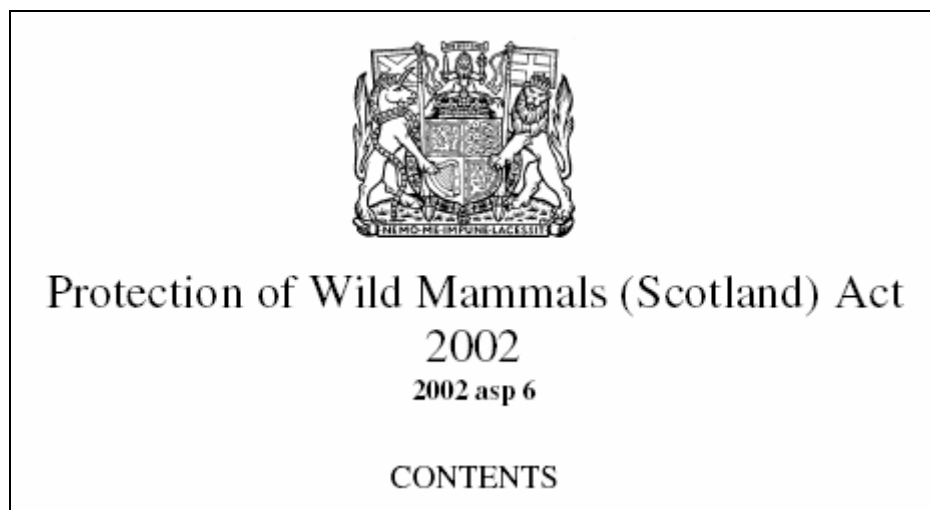
```

<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act 2002</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>UK Legislation</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:010590032X</dc:identifier>
  <dc:language>en</dc:language>
  <dc:date>2003-07-24</dc:date>
  <dc:coverage>UK</dc:coverage>
  <dc:rights>Crown copyright 2003</dc:rights>
  <dc:format>text/xml</dc:format>
  <dc:type>text</dc:type>
  <ukm:PrimaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="primary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="ScottishAct"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2002"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="6"/>
  </ukm:PrimaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>

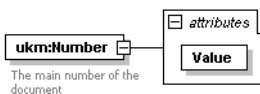
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

## Example image



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata>

properties content complex

used by elements **ukm:Correction ukm:PrimaryMetadata ukm:SecondaryMetadata**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Value	xsd:string	required		

source

```

<xsd:element name="Number">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>The main number of the document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:attribute name="Value" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```



## ukm:primaryMetadata

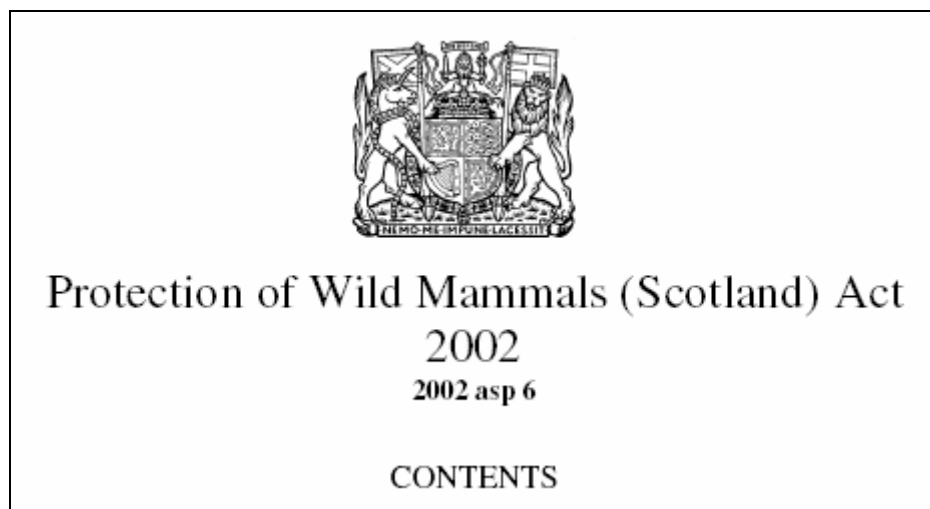
Metadata associated with primary legislation.

### Example code

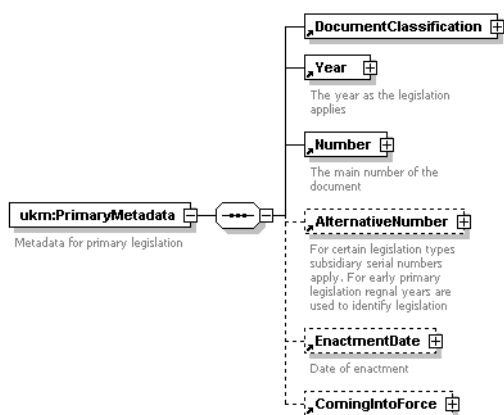
```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act 2002</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>UK Legislation</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:010590032X</dc:identifier>
  <dc:language>en</dc:language>
  <dc:date>2003-07-24</dc:date>
  <dc:coverage>UK</dc:coverage>
  <dc:rights>Crown copyright 2003</dc:rights>
  <dc:format>text/xml</dc:format>
  <dc:type>text</dc:type>
  <ukm:PrimaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="primary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="ScottishAct"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2002"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="6"/>
  </ukm:PrimaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

### Example image



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata>

properties content complex

children **ukm:DocumentClassification ukm:Year ukm:Number ukm:AlternativeNumber ukm:EnactmentDate ukm:ComingIntoForce**

used by group **ukm:TSOmetadata**

```

<xsd:element name="PrimaryMetadata">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Metadata for primary legislation</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="DocumentClassification"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Year"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Number"/>
      <xsd:element ref="AlternativeNumber" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="EnactmentDate" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ComingIntoForce" minOccurs="0"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## ukm:Resolution

This element only applies to secondary legislation that has a document subclass of resolution.

### Date

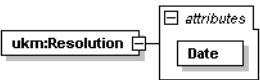
Hold the date of resolution in W3 schema date format. That is yyyy-mm-dd, where yyyy is the year, mm is the month padded to two digits and dd is the date padded to two digits.

### Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>Resolution of the House of Commons</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Parliament</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110436318</dc:identifier>
  <dc:language>en</dc:language>
  <dc:date>2003-07-24</dc:date>
  <dc:coverage>UK</dc:coverage>
  <dc:rights>Crown copyright 2003</dc:rights>
  <dc:format>text/xml</dc:format>
  <dc:type>text</dc:type>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="resolution"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="1994"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="631"/>
    <ukm:Resolution Date="1994-03-04"/>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 1994 0631

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata>

properties content complex

used by element **ukm:SecondaryMetadata**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Date	<b>xsd:date</b>	required		

source

```
<xsd:element name="Resolution">
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:attribute name="Date" type="xsd:date" use="required"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

### ukm:RoyalPresence

This element only applies to secondary legislation and indicates that a royal presence occurred for this piece of legislation.

#### Date

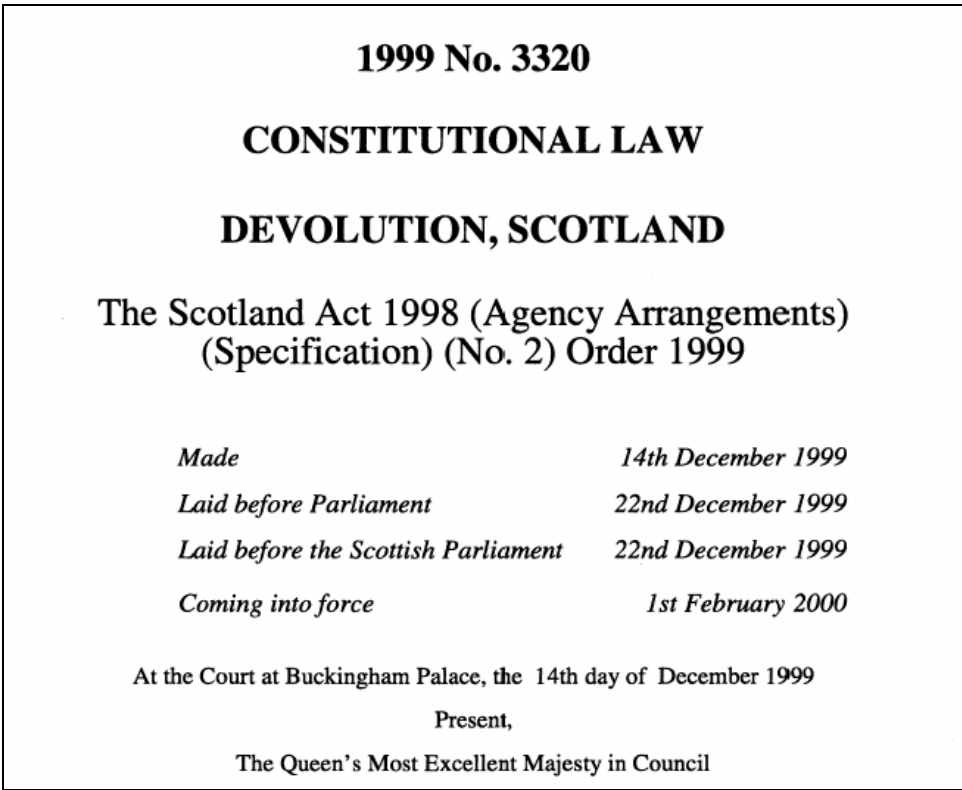
Holds the date of the date of royal presence to the document in W3 schema date format. That is yyyy-mm-dd, where yyyy is the year, mm is the month padded to two digits and dd is the date padded to two digits.

#### Example code

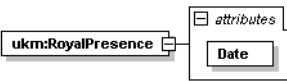
```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Scotland Act 1998 (Agency Arrangements) (Specification) (No. 2) Order 1999</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>Constitutional Law</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Devolution, Scotland</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110592174</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMinorType Value="order"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="1999"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="3320"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="1999-12-14"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="1999-12-22" Class="UnitedKingdomParliament"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="1999-12-22" Class="ScottishParliament"/>
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2000-02-01"/>
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>
    <ukm:RoyalPresence Date="1999-12-14"/>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 1999 3320

Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata				
properties	content	complex			
used by	element	ukm:SecondaryMetadata			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Date	xsd:date	required		
source	<xsd:element name="RoyalPresence"> <xsd:complexType> <xsd:attribute name="Date" type="xsd:date" use="required"/> </xsd:complexType> </xsd:element>				

## ukm:SecondaryMetadata

Metadata associated with secondary legislation.

### Example code

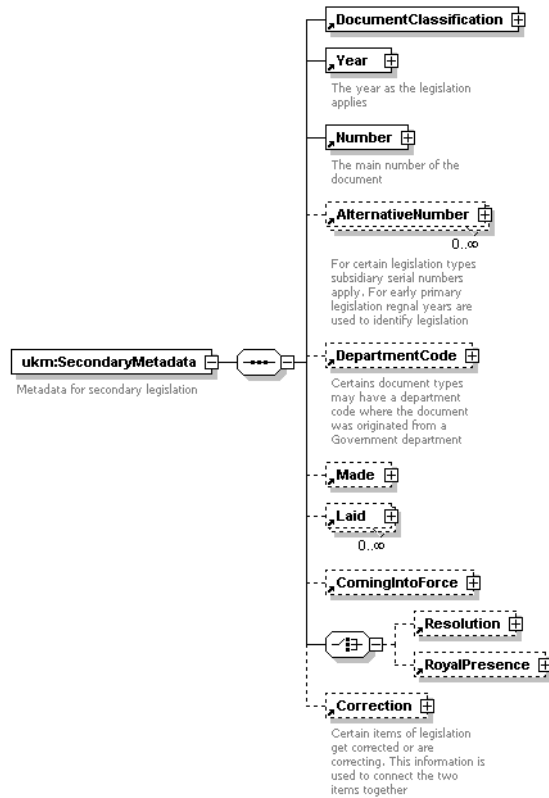
```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Extradition (Torture) (Amendment) Order 2003</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>EXTRADITION</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110460030</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <uksm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2003"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="1251"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2003-05-08"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2003-05-20"/>
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2003-05-22"/>
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1251

### Example image

STATUTORY INSTRUMENTS	
2003 No. 1153	
EDUCATION, ENGLAND	
The Education (Outturn Statements) (England) Regulations 2003	
Made - - - - -	24th April 2003
Laid before Parliament	9th May 2003
Coming into force - -	1st June 2003
In exercise of the powers conferred upon the Secretary of State by sections 52(2), (3) and (4) and 138(7) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998(a), the Secretary of State for Education and Skills hereby makes the following Regulations:	

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata>

properties content complex

children **ukm:DocumentClassification ukm:Year ukm:Number ukm:AlternativeNumber ukm:DepartmentCode ukm:Made ukm:Laid ukm:ComingIntoForce ukm:Resolution ukm:RoyalPresence ukm:Correction**

used by group **ukm:TSOmetadata**

```
<xsd:element name="SecondaryMetadata">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Metadata for secondary legislation</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="DocumentClassification"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Year"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Number"/>
      <xsd:element ref="AlternativeNumber" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <xsd:element ref="DepartmentCode" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Made" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Laid" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ComingIntoForce" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:choice>
        <xsd:element ref="Resolution" minOccurs="0"/>
        <xsd:element ref="RoyalPresence" minOccurs="0"/>
      </xsd:choice>
      <xsd:element ref="Correction" minOccurs="0"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## ukm:Year

This value has a different meaning for primary and secondary legislation. For primary legislation it is the year of enactment. For secondary legislation it is related to the making of the document and the date of registration, but there is no hard and fast rule.

### Value

The year in the format yyyy, e.g. 2002.

### Example code

```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>The Extradition (Torture) (Amendment) Order 2003</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>EXTRADITION</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:0110460030</dc:identifier>
  <ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <uksm:DocumentCategory Value="secondary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2003"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="1251"/>
    <ukm:Made Date="2003-05-08"/>
    <ukm:Laid Date="2003-05-20"/>
    <ukm:ComingIntoForce>
      <ukm:DateTime Date="2003-05-22"/>
    </ukm:ComingIntoForce>
  </ukm:SecondaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1251

### Example image

<hr/> <div>STATUTORY INSTRUMENTS</div> <hr/>	
<div>2003 No. 1153</div>	
<div>EDUCATION, ENGLAND</div>	
<div>The Education (Outturn Statements) (England) Regulations 2003</div>	
<i>Made</i> - - - - -	<i>24th April 2003</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>	<i>9th May 2003</i>
<i>Coming into force</i> - -	<i>1st June 2003</i>
<p>In exercise of the powers conferred upon the Secretary of State by sections 52(2), (3) and (4) and 138(7) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998(a), the Secretary of State for Education and Skills hereby makes the following Regulations:</p>	

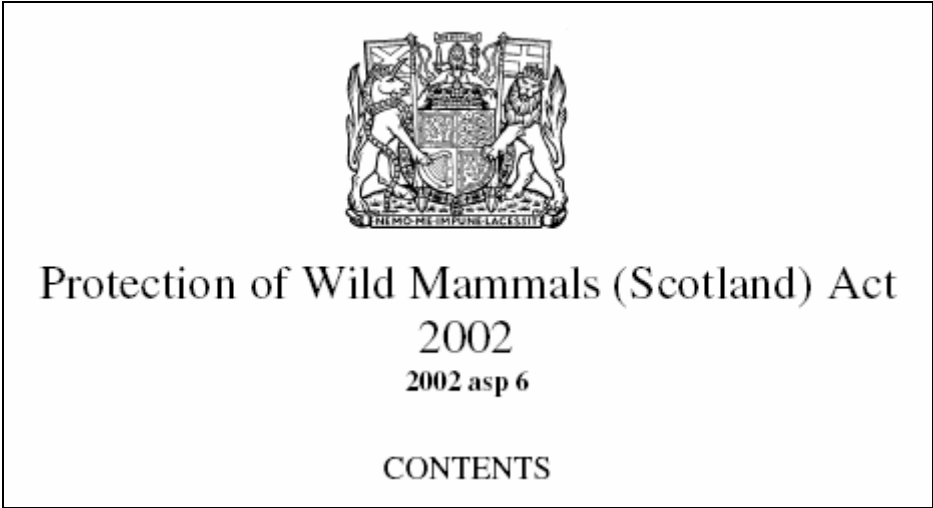


Example code

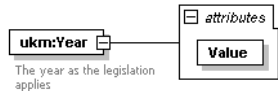
```
<ukm:Metadata>
  <dc:title>Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act 2002</dc:title>
  <dc:subject>UK Legislation</dc:subject>
  <dc:identifier>urn:isbn:010590032X</dc:identifier>
  <dc:language>en</dc:language>
  <dc:date>2003-07-24</dc:date>
  <dc:coverage>UK</dc:coverage>
  <dc:rights>Crown copyright 2003</dc:rights>
  <dc:format>text/xml</dc:format>
  <dc:type>text</dc:type>
  <ukm:PrimaryMetadata>
    <ukm:DocumentClassification>
      <ukm:DocumentCategory Value="primary"/>
      <ukm:DocumentMainType Value="ScottishAct"/>
      <ukm:DocumentStatus Value="final"/>
    </ukm:DocumentClassification>
    <ukm:Year Value="2002"/>
    <ukm:Number Value="6"/>
  </ukm:PrimaryMetadata>
</ukm:Metadata>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

Example image



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata>

properties content complex

used by elements ukm:Correction ukm:PrimaryMetadata ukm:SecondaryMetadata

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Value	xsd:string	required		

```
source <xsd:element name="Year">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>The year as the legislation applies</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:attribute name="Value" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## Abstract

An abstract. Generally this consists of a summary (or abstract) of the following content. It can only appear at the start of the schedules.

### Example code

```
<Abstract>
  <TitleBlock>
    <Title>Abstract of schedules 1 and 2</Title>
    <Subtitle>to which this Act refers</Subtitle>
  </TitleBlock>
  <AbstractBody>
    <Chapter>
      <Number>Schedule 1</Number>
      <Tabular Orientation="portrait">
        <table width="100%" cols="2" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
          <col width="80%"/>
          <col width="20%" align="right"/>
          <tbody>
            <tr>
              <td>Resources authorised for use <ukl:Character Name="DotPadding"/>
              </td>
              <td>£1,250,531,000</td>
            </tr>
            <tr>
              <td>Grants out of the Consolidated Fund <ukl:Character Name="DotPadding"/>
              </td>
              <td>£2,853,190,000</td>
            </tr>
          </tbody>
        </table>
      </Tabular>
    </Chapter>
    <Chapter>
      <Number>Schedule 2</Number>
      <Title>Appropriation of Resources and Grants</Title>
      <Tabular Orientation="portrait">
        <table width="100%" cols="4" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml" fo:border-bottom-style="solid"
fo:border-left-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid" fo:border-top-style="solid">
          <col width="49%"/>
          <col width="17%"/>
          <col width="17%"/>
          <col width="17%"/>
          <thead fo:border-bottom-style="solid">
            <tr>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid" align="left"><ukl:Emphasis>Net Resources authorised for
use</ukl:Emphasis></th>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid" align="left"><ukl:Emphasis>Grants out of the Consolidated
Fund</ukl:Emphasis></th>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid" align="left"><ukl:Emphasis>Appropriations in
Aid</ukl:Emphasis></th>
            </tr>
            <tr>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid"><ukl:Emphasis>f</ukl:Emphasis></th>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid"><ukl:Emphasis>£</ukl:Emphasis></th>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid"><ukl:Emphasis>£</ukl:Emphasis></th>
            </tr>
          </thead>
        </table>
      </Tabular>
    </Chapter>
  </AbstractBody>
</Abstract>
```

**Example code**

```

<tbody>
  <tr>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid">
      <ukl:Emphasis>Request for resources</ukl:Emphasis>
    </td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
    <td/>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid">2001-02</td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid">Supplementary, 2001-02</td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid"
align="right">1,250,531,000</td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid"
align="right">2,853,190,000</td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid"
align="right">-1,326,000</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid">Grand Total<ukl:Character Name="DotPadding"/>
    </td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" align="right">1,250,531,000</td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" align="right">2,853,190,000</td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" align="right">-1,326,000</td>
  </tr>
</tbody>
</table>
</Tabular>
</Chapter>
</AbstractBody>
</Abstract>

```

Ref: PGA 2001 0021

Example image

ABSTRACT OF SCHEDULES 1 AND 2  
to which this Act refers

---

Schedule 1

Resources authorised for use .....£1,250,531,000

Grants out of the Consolidated Fund .....£2,853,190,000

---

Schedule 2

Appropriation of Resources and Grants

	Net Resources authorised for use £	Grants out of the Consolidated Fund £	Appropriations in Aid £
<i>Request for resources</i> 2001-02 Supplementary, 2001-02	1,250,531,000	2,853,190,000	-1,326,000
GRAND TOTAL .....	1,250,531,000	2,853,190,000	-1,326,000

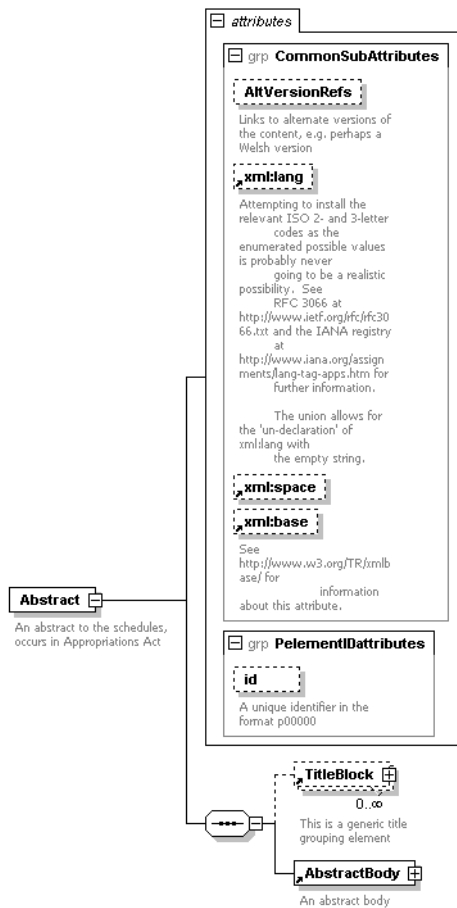
---

SCHEDULE 1

RESOURCES AUTHORISED FOR USE AND GRANTS OUT OF THE CONSOLIDATED FUND

	<i>Resources authorised for Use £</i>	<i>Grants out of the Consolidated Fund £</i>
For the service of the year ended 31st March 2002— Under this Act	1,250,531,000	2,853,190,000

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content    complex					
children	TitleBlock   AbstractBody					
used by	element    Schedules					
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Abstract"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;An abstract to the schedules, occurs in Appropriations Act&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="TitleBlock" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="AbstractBody"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## AbstractBody

The body of an abstract.

### Example code

```
<Abstract>
  <TitleBlock>
    <Title>Abstract of schedules 1 and 2</Title>
    <Subtitle>to which this Act refers</Subtitle>
  </TitleBlock>
  <AbstractBody>
    <Chapter>
      <Number>Schedule 1</Number>
      <Tabular Orientation="portrait">
        <table width="100%" cols="2" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
          <col width="80%"/>
          <col width="20%" align="right"/>
          <tbody>
            <tr>
              <td>Resources authorised for use <ukl:Character Name="DotPadding"/>
              </td>
              <td>£1,250,531,000</td>
            </tr>
            <tr>
              <td>Grants out of the Consolidated Fund <ukl:Character Name="DotPadding"/>
              </td>
              <td>£2,853,190,000</td>
            </tr>
          </tbody>
        </table>
      </Tabular>
    </Chapter>
    <Chapter>
      <Number>Schedule 2</Number>
      <Title>Appropriation of Resources and Grants</Title>
      <Tabular Orientation="portrait">
        <table width="100%" cols="4" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml" fo:border-bottom-style="solid"
fo:border-left-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid" fo:border-top-style="solid">
          <col width="49%"/>
          <col width="17%"/>
          <col width="17%"/>
          <col width="17%"/>
          <thead fo:border-bottom-style="solid">
            <tr>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid" align="left"><ukl:Emphasis>Net Resources authorised for
use</ukl:Emphasis></th>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid" align="left"><ukl:Emphasis>Grants out of the Consolidated
Fund</ukl:Emphasis></th>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid" align="left"><ukl:Emphasis>Appropriations in
Aid</ukl:Emphasis></th>
            </tr>
            <tr>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid"><ukl:Emphasis>f</ukl:Emphasis></th>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid"><ukl:Emphasis>£</ukl:Emphasis></th>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid"><ukl:Emphasis>£</ukl:Emphasis></th>
            </tr>
          </thead>
        </table>
      </Tabular>
    </Chapter>
  </AbstractBody>
</Abstract>
```

## Example code

```

<tbody>
  <tr>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid">
      <ukl:Emphasis>Request for resources</ukl:Emphasis>
    </td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
    <td/>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid">2001-02</td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid"/>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid">Supplementary, 2001-02</td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid"
align="right">1,250,531,000</td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid"
align="right">2,853,190,000</td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid"
align="right">-1,326,000</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid">Grand Total<ukl:Character Name="DotPadding"/>
    </td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" align="right">1,250,531,000</td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" align="right">2,853,190,000</td>
    <td fo:border-right-style="solid" align="right">-1,326,000</td>
  </tr>
</tbody>
</table>
</Tabular>
</Chapter>
</AbstractBody>
</Abstract>

```

Ref: PGA 2001 0021

## Example image

ABSTRACT OF SCHEDULES 1 AND 2  
to which this Act refers

---

Schedule 1

Resources authorised for use .....£1,250,531,000

Grants out of the Consolidated Fund .....£2,853,190,000

---

Schedule 2

Appropriation of Resources and Grants

	Net Resources authorised for use £	Grants out of the Consolidated Fund £	Appropriations in Aid £
<i>Request for resources</i> 2001–02 Supplementary, 2001–02	1,250,531,000	2,853,190,000	–1,326,000
GRAND TOTAL .....	1,250,531,000	2,853,190,000	–1,326,000

---

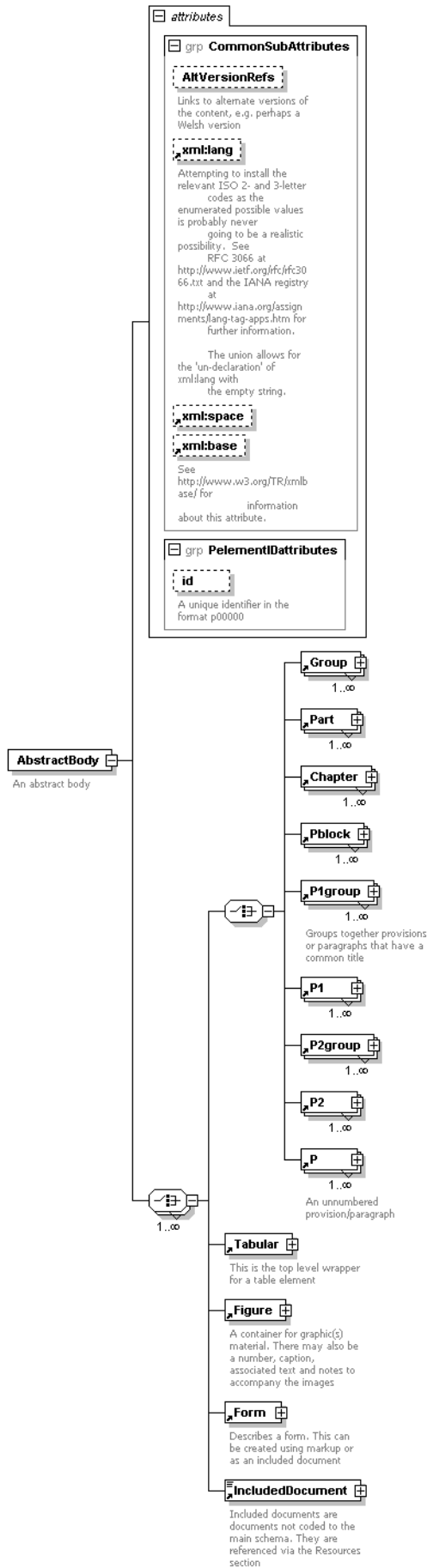
SCHEDULE 1

RESOURCES AUTHORISED FOR USE AND GRANTS OUT OF THE CONSOLIDATED FUND

	<i>Resources authorised for Use £</i>	<i>Grants out of the Consolidated Fund £</i>
For the service of the year ended 31st March 2002— Under this Act	1,250,531,000	2,853,190,000



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Group Part Chapter Pblock P1group P1 P2group P2 P Tabular Figure Form IncludedDocument**

used by element **Abstract**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			

source

```

<xsd:element name="AbstractBody">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>An abstract body</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <xsd:choice>
        <xsd:element ref="Group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Part" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Chapter" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Pblock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P1group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P2group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P2" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:choice>
      <xsd:element ref="Tabular"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Figure"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Form"/>
      <xsd:element ref="IncludedDocument"/>
    </xsd:choice>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## Appendix

An appendix (also used where an annex is required) to the body of a document, or to the schedules, or, possibly, to a single schedule.

### NumberFormat

Defines whether paragraph/provision numbering (top level) should be formatted in a way other than the default. This is basically for legacy data where some documents deviate from the standard approach.

The permissible values are:

- default (numbering will be format as standard)
- emphasis (emphasis will be applied, generally italic)
- strong (strong will be applied, generally bold)

The default value is 'default'.

### Example code

```
<Appendix>
  <Number>Appendix</Number>
  <TitleBlock>
    <Title>Variation in the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 Made by the Secretary of State on 30th
March 2000</Title>
  </TitleBlock>
  <AppendixBody>
    <P1>
      <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
      <P1para>
        <Text>Schedule 5 of the Scheme shall be varied by substituting for "Federal Republic of Germany"
the following;</Text>
        <BlockAmendment TargetClass="secondary" TargetSubClass="scheme" Context="schedule"
Format="default">
          <UnorderedList Decoration="none">
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Austria</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Belgium</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Denmark</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Finland</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>France</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
          </UnorderedList>
        </BlockAmendment>
      </P1para>
    </P1>
  </AppendixBody>
</Appendix>
```

```
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Germany</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Greece</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Iceland</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Ireland</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Italy</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Liechtenstein</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Luxembourg</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Netherlands</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Norway</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Portugal</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Spain</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Sweden</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
</UnorderedList>
</BlockAmendment>
</P1para>
</P1>
</AppendixBody>
</Appendix>
```

Ref: SI 2000 0933

## Example image

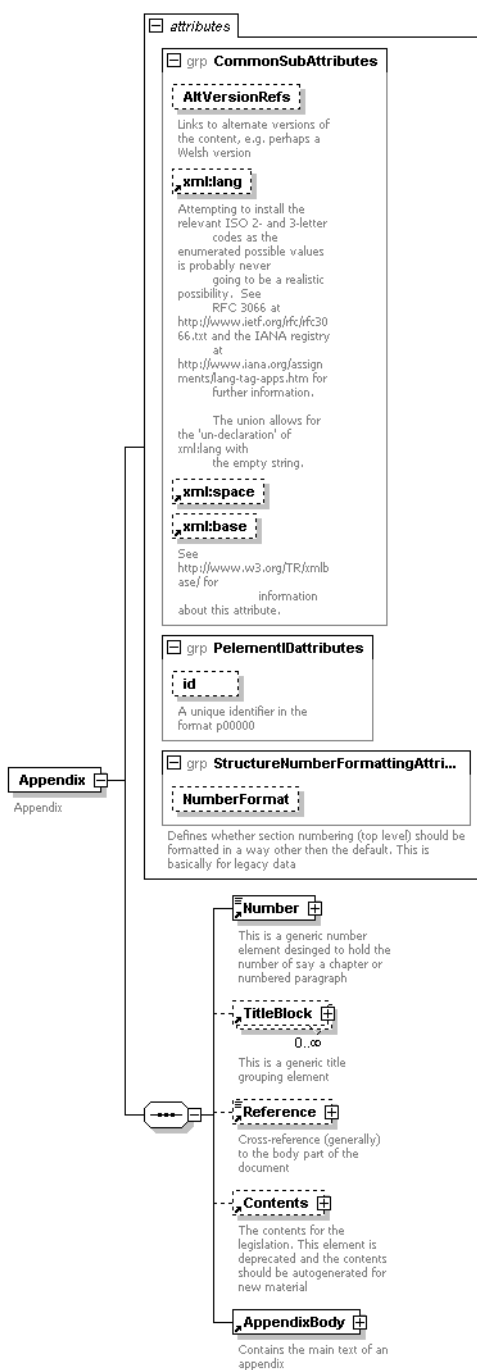
APPENDIX

VARIATION IN THE PUBLIC LENDING RIGHT SCHEME 1982 MADE BY THE  
SECRETARY OF STATE ON 30TH MARCH 2000

1. Schedule 5 of the Scheme shall be varied by substituting for “Federal Republic of Germany” the following:

“Austria  
Belgium  
Denmark  
Finland  
France  
Germany  
Greece  
Iceland  
Ireland  
Italy  
Liechtenstein  
Luxembourg  
Netherlands  
Norway  
Portugal  
Spain  
Sweden”

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Number TitleBlock Reference Contents AppendixBody**

used by elements **Body Schedule Schedules**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	NumberFormat	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>		default	

```
source <xsd:element name="Appendix">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Appendix</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="Number"/>
      <xsd:element ref="TitleBlock" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Reference" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Contents" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="AppendixBody"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="StructureNumberFormattingAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## AppendixBody

A container for the body of the appendix.

### Example code

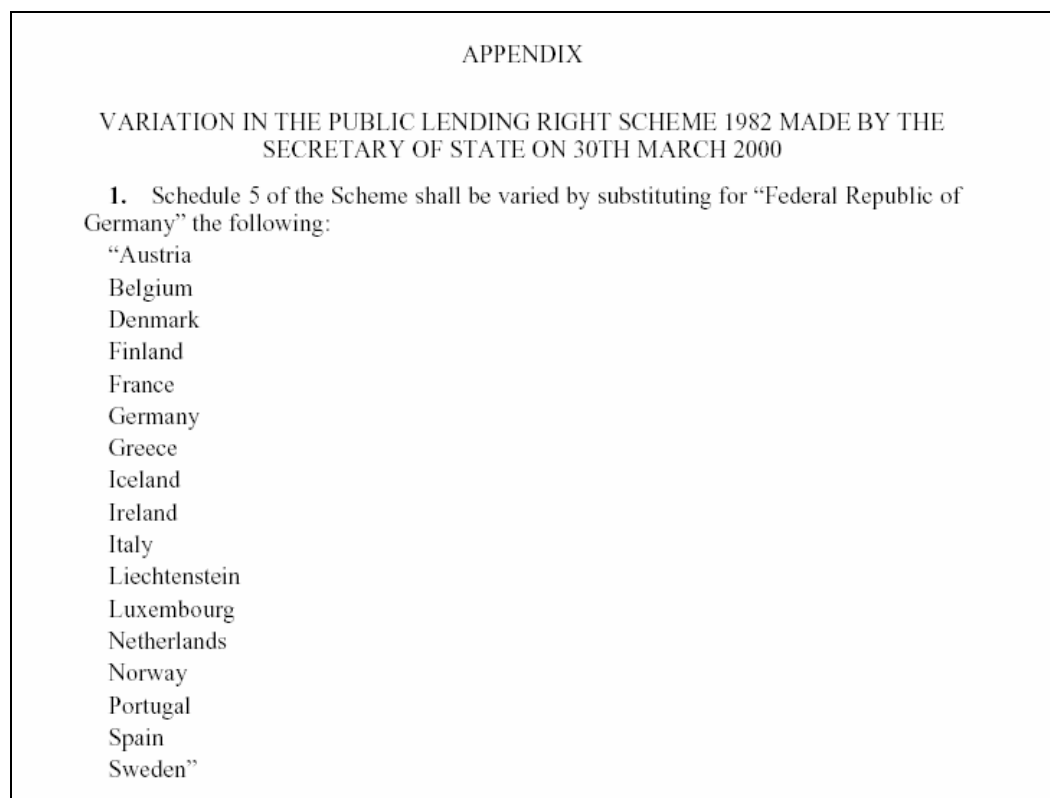
```
<Appendix>
  <Number>Appendix</Number>
  <TitleBlock>
    <Title>Variation in the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 Made by the Secretary of State on 30th
March 2000</Title>
  </TitleBlock>
  <AppendixBody>
    <Pl>
      <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
      <Plpara>
        <Text>Schedule 5 of the Scheme shall be varied by substituting for "Federal Republic of Germany"
the following:</Text>
        <BlockAmendment TargetClass="secondary" TargetSubClass="scheme" Context="schedule"
Format="default">
          <UnorderedList Decoration="none">
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Austria</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Belgium</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Denmark</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Finland</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>France</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Germany</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Greece</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Iceland</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Ireland</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
```



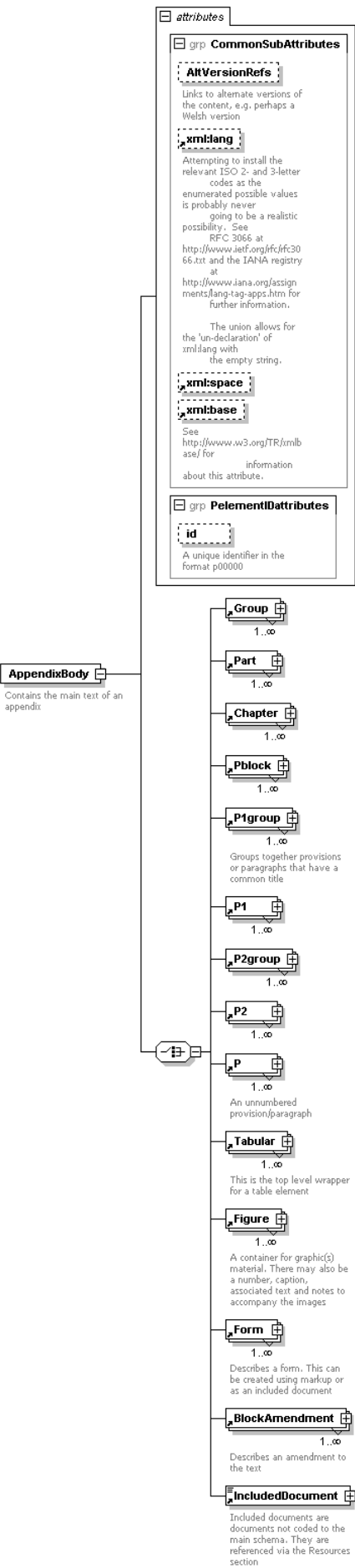
```
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Italy</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Liechtenstein</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Luxembourg</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Netherlands</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Norway</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Portugal</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Spain</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Sweden</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
</UnorderedList>
</BlockAmendment>
</P1para>
</P1>
</AppendixBody>
</Appendix>
```

Ref: SI 2000 0933

**Example image**



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content complex				
children	<b>Group Part Chapter Pblock P1group P1 P2group P2 P Tabular Figure Form BlockAmendment IncludedDocument</b>				
used by	element <b>Appendix</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="AppendixBody"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Contains the main text of an appendix&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Part" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Chapter" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Pblock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P1group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P2group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P2" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Tabular" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Figure" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Form" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="BlockAmendment" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="IncludedDocument"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## Body

A container for the main section of the document.

### NumberFormat

Defines whether paragraph/provision numbering (top level) should be formatted in a way other than the default. This is basically for legacy data where some documents deviate from the standard approach.

The permissible values are:

- default (numbering will be format as standard)
- emphasis (emphasis will be applied, generally italic)
- strong (strong will be applied, generally bold)

The default value is 'default'.

### Example code

```
<Body>
  <Plgroup>
    <Title>Citation, commencement and interpretation</Title>
    <P1>
      <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
      <Plpara>
        <P2>
          <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
          <P2para>
            <Text>This Order may be cited as the Scotland Act 1998 (Agency Arrangements) (Specification)
(No. 2) Order 1999.</Text>
          </P2para>
        </P2>
      </P2>
      <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
      <P2para>
        <Text>This Order shall come into force on 1st February 2000.</Text>
      </P2para>
    </P2>
  </Plpara>
</P1>
</Plgroup>
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Specification of functions</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
    <Plpara>
      <Text>The functions conferred on the Scottish Ministers by section 92(1) and (2) of the Finance
Act 1965<FootnoteRef Ref="f00002"/> are hereby specified for the purposes of section 93(1) of the
Scotland Act 1998.</Text>
    </Plpara>
  </P1>
</Plgroup>
<SignedSection>
  <Signatory>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>A.K. Galloway</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Clerk of the Privy Council</JobTitle>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
</SignedSection>
</Body>
```

Ref: SI 1999 3320

## Example image

At the Court at Buckingham Palace, the 14th day of December 1999

Present,

The Queen's Most Excellent Majesty in Council

Her Majesty, in exercise of the powers conferred upon Her by sections 93(3) and 113 of the Scotland Act 1998(a), and of all other powers enabling Her in that behalf, is pleased, by and with the advice of Her Privy Council to order, and it is hereby ordered, as follows:

### **Citation, commencement and interpretation**

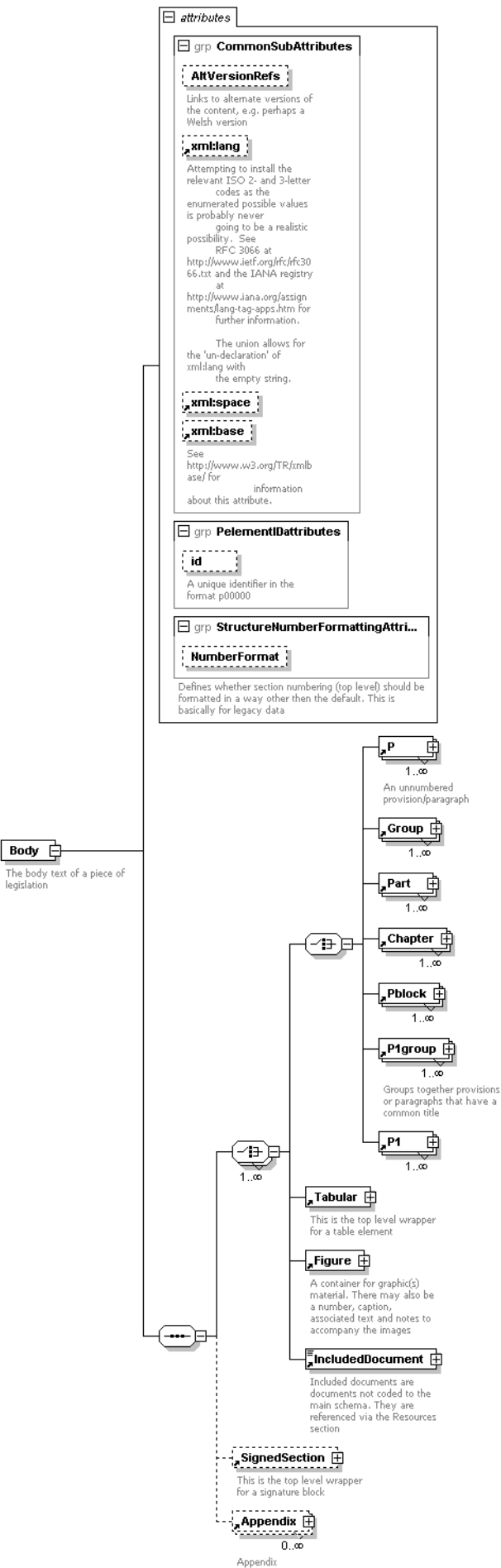
1.—(1) This Order may be cited as the Scotland Act 1998 (Agency Arrangements) (Specification) (No. 2) Order 1999.

(2) This Order shall come into force on 1st February 2000.

### **Specification of functions**

2. The functions conferred on the Scottish Ministers by section 92(1) and (2) of the Finance Act 1965(b) are hereby specified for the purposes of section 93(1) of the Scotland Act 1998.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **P Group Part Chapter Pblock P1group P1 Tabular Figure IncludedDocument SignedSection Appendix**

used by elements **BlockAmendment Primary Secondary**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	NumberFormat	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>		default	

source

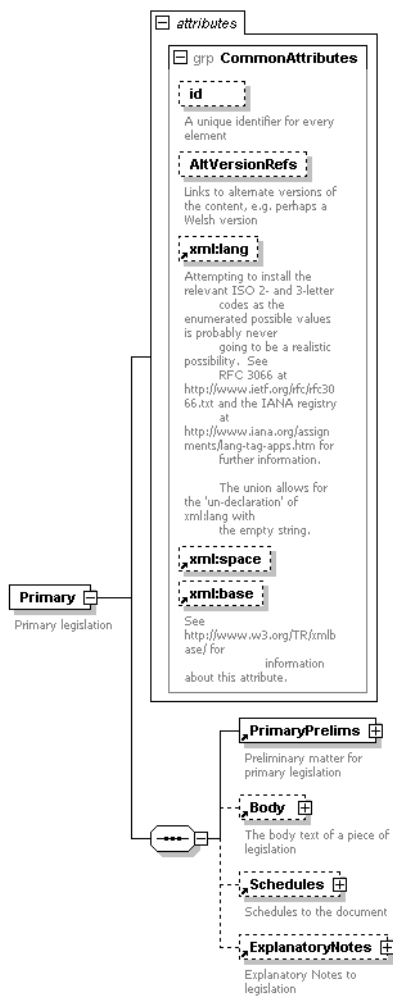
```
<xsd:element name="Body">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>The body text of a piece of legislation</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:choice>
          <xsd:element ref="P" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
          <xsd:element ref="Group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
          <xsd:element ref="Part" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
          <xsd:element ref="Chapter" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
          <xsd:element ref="Pblock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P1group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </xsd:choice>
        <xsd:element ref="Tabular"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Figure"/>
        <xsd:element ref="IncludedDocument"/>
      </xsd:choice>
      <xsd:element ref="SignedSection" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Appendix" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="StructureNumberFormattingAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```



Primary

A container for a primary legislation document.

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content complex					
children	PrimaryPrelims Body Schedules ExplanatoryNotes					
used by	element	Legislation				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					

```
source <xsd:element name="Primary">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Primary legislation</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="PrimaryPrelims"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Body" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Schedules" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ExplanatoryNotes" minOccurs="0"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## Reference

Certain parts of the document may reference back to the main section of the document where there are explanations or further detail about those sections. In general this happens in schedules.

### Align

Controls the positioning of the reference. By default it will automatically be placed on either the left or right hand side of the numbered heading (this is up to the rendering engine to decide). However, this attribute can be used to force it to be output in a certain position if required (in certain legacy documents the reference has been output on the opposite side to the normal).

The only values that should be used are:

- inherit (the alignment will be automatic)
- left (the reference will be output to the left of the heading)
- right (the reference will be output to the right of the heading)

Any other values should be ignored.

### Example code

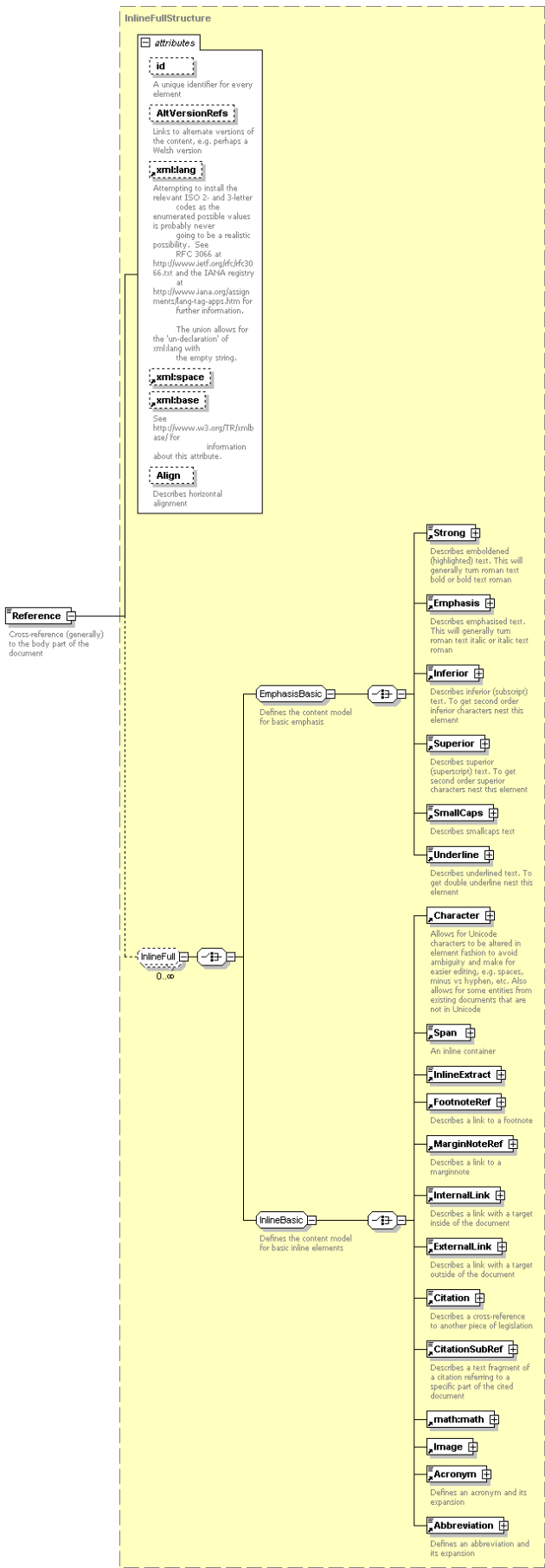
```
<Schedules>
  <Schedule>
    <Number>Schedule</Number>
    <Reference>Regulation 2(g)</Reference>
    <ScheduleBody>
      <BlockAmendment TargetClass="secondary" TargetSubClass="regulation" Context="schedule"
Format="default">
        <Schedule>
          <Number>Schedule 1A</Number>
          <TitleBlock>
            <Title>Meaning of End of Series Vehicle</Title>
          </TitleBlock>
          <Reference>Regulation 18A(7)</Reference>
          <ScheduleBody>
            <P1>
              <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
              <P1para>
                <P2>
                  <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
                  <P2para>
                    <Text>A vehicle is an end of series vehicle for an EC type approval to which regulation
18A applies if--</Text>
                    <P3>
                      <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
                      <P3para>
                        <Text>an EC certificate of conformity has been issued in respect of the vehicle under
the EC type approval (whether before or after the giving of the direction by the Secretary of
State);</Text>
                      </P3para>
                    </P3>
                  </P2>
                </P1para>
              </P1>
            </ScheduleBody>
          </Schedule>
        </BlockAmendment>
      </ScheduleBody>
    </Schedule>
  </Schedules>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1099

Example image

SCHEDULE	Regulation 2(g)
“SCHEDULE 1A	Regulation 18A(7)
MEANING OF END OF SERIES VEHICLE	
<p><b>1.—</b>(1) A vehicle is an end of series vehicle for an EC type approval to which regulation 18A applies if—</p>	
<p>(a) an EC certificate of conformity has been issued in respect of the vehicle under the EC type approval (whether before or after the giving of the direction by the Secretary of State);</p>	
<p>(b) the vehicle was in the territory of an EEA State at a time when the EC type approval had effect;</p>	
<p>(c) it was manufactured with the intention that it should be supplied by retail for use in the United Kingdom;</p>	
<p>(d) it was not registered under the 1994 Act on the date on which the relevant EC type approval ceased to have effect; and</p>	
<p>(e) it is a vehicle forming part of the allocation of vehicles to a relevant person under sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) of this paragraph.</p>	

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineFullStructure				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	elements	Appendix Chapter Form Group Part Pblock PsubBlock Schedule			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	Align	derived by: xsd:string	optional		
	<xsd:element name="Reference" type="InlineFullStructure">				
	<xsd:annotation>				
	<xsd:documentation>Cross-reference (generally) to the body part of the document</xsd:documentation>				
	</xsd:annotation>				
</xsd:element>					

## Schedule

A schedule to a document.

### Example code

```
<Schedules>
  <Schedule>
    <Number>Schedule</Number>
    <Reference>Regulation 2(g).</Reference>
    <ScheduleBody>
      <BlockAmendment TargetClass="secondary" TargetSubClass="regulation" Context="schedule"
Format="default">
        <Schedule>
          <Number>Schedule 1A</Number>
          <TitleBlock>
            <Title>Meaning of End of Series Vehicle</Title>
          </TitleBlock>
          <Reference>Regulation 18A(7)</Reference>
          <ScheduleBody>
            <P1>
              <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
              <P1para>
                <P2>
                  <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
                  <P2para>
                    <Text>A vehicle is an end of series vehicle for an EC type approval to which regulation
18A applies if--</Text>
                    <P3>
                      <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
                      <P3para>
                        <Text>an EC certificate of conformity has been issued in respect of the vehicle under
the EC type approval (whether before or after the giving of the direction by the Secretary of
State);</Text>
                      </P3para>
                    </P3>
                      <P3>
                        <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
                        <P3para>
                          <Text>the vehicle was in the territory of an EEA State at a time when the EC type
approval had effect;</Text>
                        </P3para>
                      </P3>
                      <P3>
                        <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
                        <P3para>
                          <Text>it was manufactured with the intention that it should be supplied by retail for
use in the United Kingdom;</Text>
                        </P3para>
                      </P3>
                      <P3>
                        <Pnumber>d</Pnumber>
                        <P3para>
                          <Text>it was not registered under the 1994 Act on the date on which the relevant EC
type approval ceased to have effect; and</Text>
                        </P3para>
                      </P3>
                    </P3>
                  </P2para>
                </P2>
              </P1para>
            </P1>
          </ScheduleBody>
        </Schedule>
      </BlockAmendment>
    </ScheduleBody>
  </Schedule>
</Schedules>
```

```

        <P3>
        <Pnumber>e</Pnumber>
        <P3para>
        <Text>it is a vehicle forming part of the allocation of vehicles to a relevant person
under sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) of this paragraph.</Text>
        </P3para>
        </P3>
    </P2para>
</P2>
<P2>
    <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
    <P2para>
        <Text>The Secretary of State shall make an allocation in accordance with sub-paragraph
(3) to each relevant person who makes a request to him under regulation 18A(2) not later than one
month before the relevant EC type approval ceases to have effect.</Text>
        </P2para>
    </P2>
    <P2>
        <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
            <Text>The Secretary of State shall allocate to each relevant person in respect of each
vehicle model manufactured in conformity with the relevant EC type approval-</Text>
            <P3>
            <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
                <Text>the number of vehicles of that model in respect of which the request is made,
or</Text>
            </P3para>
            </P3>
            <P3>
            <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
                <Text>the number of vehicles of that model for which an EC certificate of conformity
was issued on or after the date of manufacture and which remained valid for at least 3 months after
its date of issue but subsequently lost its validity because of the provisions of the Framework
Directive or a separate Directive,</Text>
            </P3para>
            </P3>
            <Text>whichever is the less.</Text>
        </P2para>
    </P2>
</P1para>
</P1>
<P1>
    <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
        <P2>
            <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
            <P2para>
                <Text>In this Schedule-</Text>
                <UnorderedList Decoration="none">
                    <ListItem>
                        <Para>
                            <Text>"date of manufacture" means, in relation to a vehicle, the date on which its
final assembly is completed;</Text>
                        </Para>
                    </ListItem>
                    <ListItem>
                        <Para>
                            <Text>"relevant person" means a person who has made a request to the Secretary of
State under regulation 18A(2);</Text>
                        </Para>
                    </ListItem>
                    <ListItem>
                        <Para>
                            <Text>"the relevant EC type approval" means the EC type approval in respect of which
the request has been made to the Secretary of State under regulation 18A(2).</Text>
                        </Para>
                    </ListItem>
                </UnorderedList>
            </P2para>
        </P2>
    </P1para>

```



```

        </UnorderedList>
      </P2para>
    </P2>
  </P1para>
</P1>
</ScheduleBody>
</Schedule>
</BlockAmendment>
</ScheduleBody>
</Schedule>
</Schedules>

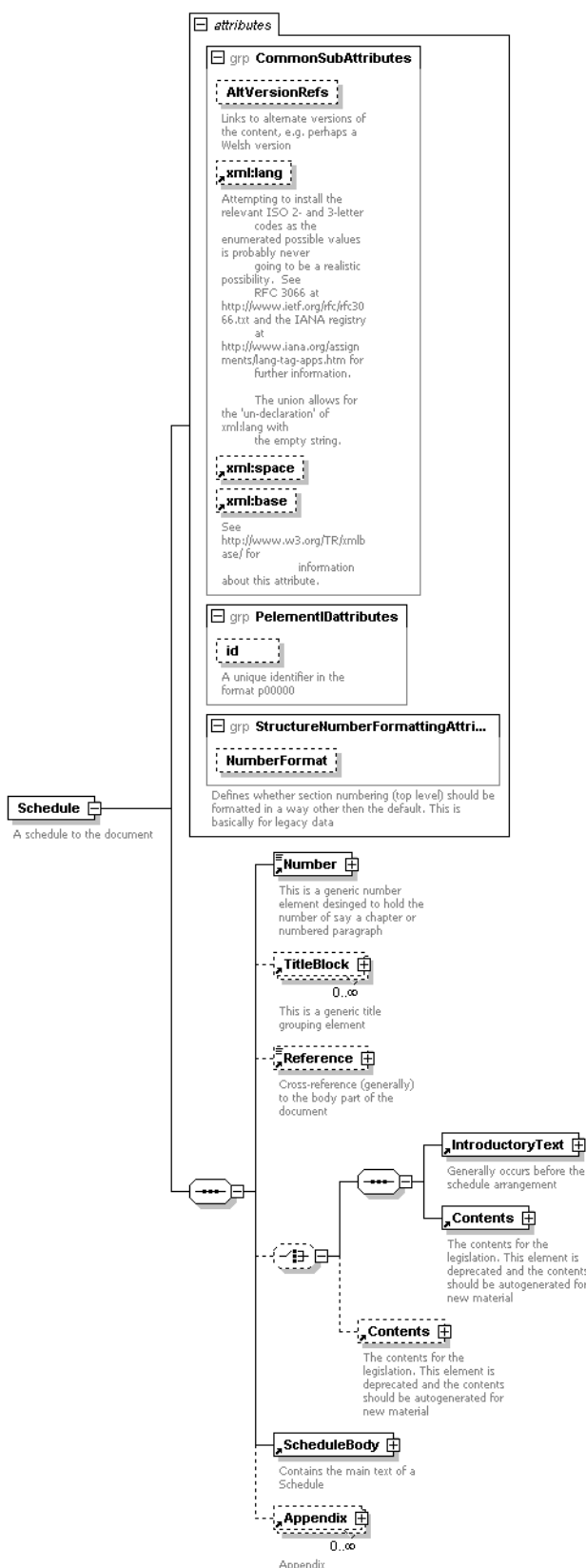
```

Ref: SI 2003 1099

## Example image

SCHEDULE	Regulation 2(g)
"SCHEDULE 1A	Regulation 18A(7)
MEANING OF END OF SERIES VEHICLE	
1.—(1) A vehicle is an end of series vehicle for an EC type approval to which regulation 18A applies if—	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) an EC certificate of conformity has been issued in respect of the vehicle under the EC type approval (whether before or after the giving of the direction by the Secretary of State);</li> <li>(b) the vehicle was in the territory of an EEA State at a time when the EC type approval had effect;</li> <li>(c) it was manufactured with the intention that it should be supplied by retail for use in the United Kingdom;</li> <li>(d) it was not registered under the 1994 Act on the date on which the relevant EC type approval ceased to have effect; and</li> <li>(e) it is a vehicle forming part of the allocation of vehicles to a relevant person under sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) of this paragraph.</li> </ul>	
(2) The Secretary of State shall make an allocation in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) to each relevant person who makes a request to him under regulation 18A(2) not later than one month before the relevant EC type approval ceases to have effect.	
(3) The Secretary of State shall allocate to each relevant person in respect of each vehicle model manufactured in conformity with the relevant EC type approval—	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the number of vehicles of that model in respect of which the request is made, or</li> <li>(b) the number of vehicles of that model for which an EC certificate of conformity was issued on or after the date of manufacture and which remained valid for at least 3 months after its date of issue but subsequently lost its validity because of the provisions of the Framework Directive or a separate Directive,</li> </ul>	
whichever is the less.	
2.—(1) In this Schedule—	
"date of manufacture" means, in relation to a vehicle, the date on which its final assembly is completed;	
"relevant person" means a person who has made a request to the Secretary of State under regulation 18A(2);	
"the relevant EC type approval" means the EC type approval in respect of which the request has been made to the Secretary of State under regulation 18A(2)."	

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Number TitleBlock Reference IntroductoryText Contents ScheduleBody Appendix**

used by elements **BlockAmendment Form Schedules**  
complexType **BlockExtractStructure**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	NumberFormat	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>		default	
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="Schedule"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A schedule to the document&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Number"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="TitleBlock" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Reference" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0"&gt;         &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="IntroductoryText"&gt;             &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;               &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Generally occurs before the schedule arrangement&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;             &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;           &lt;/xsd:element&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Contents"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Contents" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ScheduleBody"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Appendix" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="StructureNumberFormattingAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## ScheduleBody

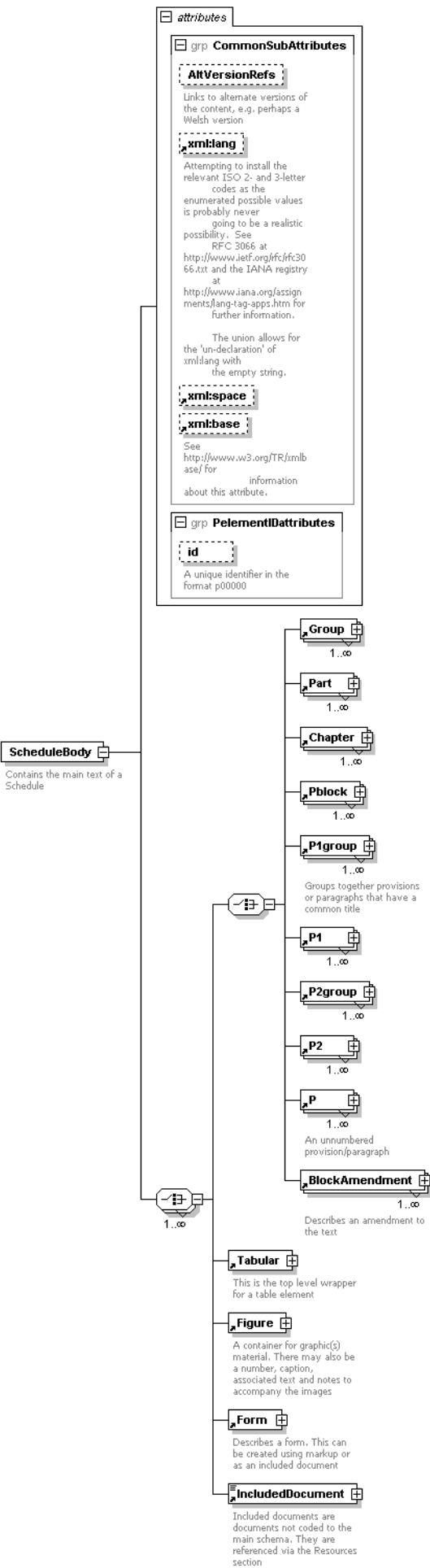
The body text of a schedule.

### Example code

```
<Schedules>
  <Schedule>
    <Number>Schedule 1</Number>
    <TitleBlock>
      <Title>Form of Part 1 of an Outturn Statement</Title>
    </TitleBlock>
    <Reference>Regulation 4 (1) (a)</Reference>
    <ScheduleBody>
      <P>
        <Text>Part 1 of an outturn statement shall be in the following form.</Text>
      </P>
      <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
        <Image ResourceRef="r00000" Width="580pt" Height="auto"/>
      </Figure>
      <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
        <Image ResourceRef="r00001" Width="scale-to-fit" Height="auto"/>
      </Figure>
      <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
        <Image ResourceRef="r00002" Width="scale-to-fit" Height="auto"/>
      </Figure>
      <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
        <Image ResourceRef="r00003" Width="scale-to-fit" Height="auto"/>
      </Figure>
    </ScheduleBody>
  </Schedule>
  <Schedule>
    <Number>Schedule 2</Number>
    <TitleBlock>
      <Title>Form of Part 2 of an Outturn Statement</Title>
    </TitleBlock>
    <Reference>Regulation 4 (1) (b)</Reference>
    <ScheduleBody>
      <P>
        <Text>Part 2 of an outturn statement shall be in the following form.</Text>
      </P>
      <Figure Orientation="landscape" ImageLayout="vertical">
        <Image ResourceRef="r00004" Width="580pt" Height="auto"/>
      </Figure>
    </ScheduleBody>
  </Schedule>
</Schedules>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1153

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content complex				
children	<b>Group Part Chapter Pblock P1group P1 P2group P2 P BlockAmendment Tabular Figure Form IncludedDocument</b>				
used by	element <b>Schedule</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="ScheduleBody"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Contains the main text of a Schedule&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Part" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Chapter" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Pblock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P1group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P2group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P2" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="BlockAmendment" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Tabular"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Figure"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Form"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="IncludedDocument"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## Schedules

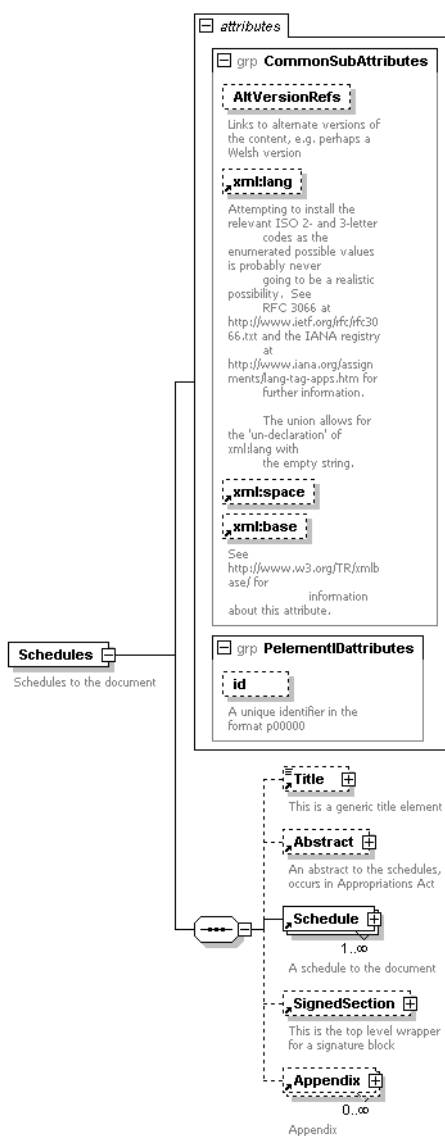
A container for the schedules of a document.

### Example code

```
<Schedules>
  <Schedule>
    <Number>Schedule 1</Number>
    <TitleBlock>
      <Title>Form of Part 1 of an Outturn Statement</Title>
    </TitleBlock>
    <Reference>Regulation 4(1) (a)</Reference>
    <ScheduleBody>
      <P>
        <Text>Part 1 of an outturn statement shall be in the following form.</Text>
      </P>
      <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
        <Image ResourceRef="r00000" Width="580pt" Height="auto"/>
      </Figure>
      <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
        <Image ResourceRef="r00001" Width="scale-to-fit" Height="auto"/>
      </Figure>
      <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
        <Image ResourceRef="r00002" Width="scale-to-fit" Height="auto"/>
      </Figure>
      <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
        <Image ResourceRef="r00003" Width="scale-to-fit" Height="auto"/>
      </Figure>
    </ScheduleBody>
  </Schedule>
  <Schedule>
    <Number>Schedule 2</Number>
    <TitleBlock>
      <Title>Form of Part 2 of an Outturn Statement</Title>
    </TitleBlock>
    <Reference>Regulation 4(1) (b)</Reference>
    <ScheduleBody>
      <P>
        <Text>Part 2 of an outturn statement shall be in the following form.</Text>
      </P>
      <Figure Orientation="landscape" ImageLayout="vertical">
        <Image ResourceRef="r00004" Width="580pt" Height="auto"/>
      </Figure>
    </ScheduleBody>
  </Schedule>
</Schedules>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1153

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Title Abstract Schedule SignedSection Appendix**

used by elements **BlockAmendment Form Primary Secondary**  
complexType **BlockExtractStructure**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			

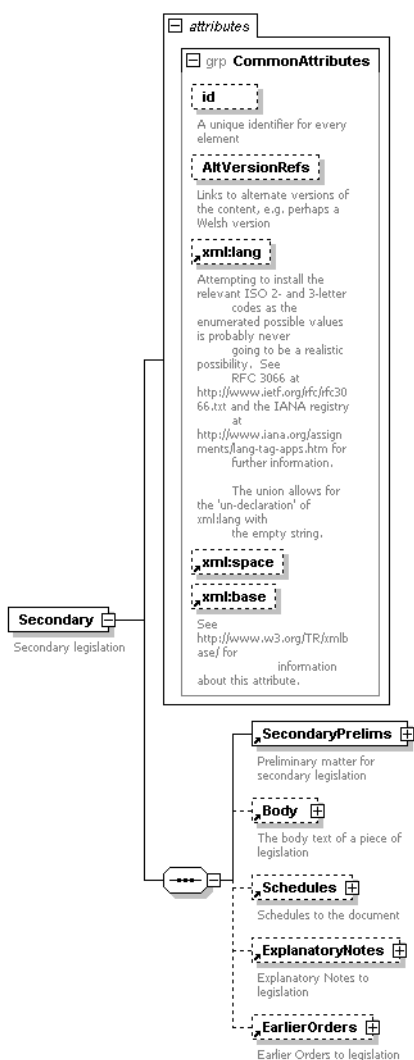


```
source <xsd:element name="Schedules">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Schedules to the document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="Title" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Abstract" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Schedule" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <xsd:element ref="SignedSection" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Appendix" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## Secondary

A container for a piece of secondary legislation.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **SecondaryPrelims Body Schedules ExplanatoryNotes EarlierOrders**

used by element **Legislation**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

```
source <xsd:element name="Secondary">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Secondary legislation</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="SecondaryPrelims"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Body" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Schedules" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ExplanatoryNotes" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="EarlierOrders" minOccurs="0"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## Address

A container for a group of one or more <AddressLine> elements that constitutes a postal address.

### Example code

```
<SignedSection>
  <Signatory>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>Beverley Hughes</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Minister of State</JobTitle>
      <Address>
        <AddressLine>Home Office</AddressLine>
      </Address>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-01-04">
        <DateText>4th January 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
</SignedSection>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0001

### Example image

#### Citation and interpretation

1.—(1) This Order may be cited as the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (Commencement No. 2) Order 2003.

(2) In this Order:

“the 1971 Act” means the Immigration Act 1971**(b)**;

“the 1999 Act” means the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999**(c)**; and

“the 2002 Act” means the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002.

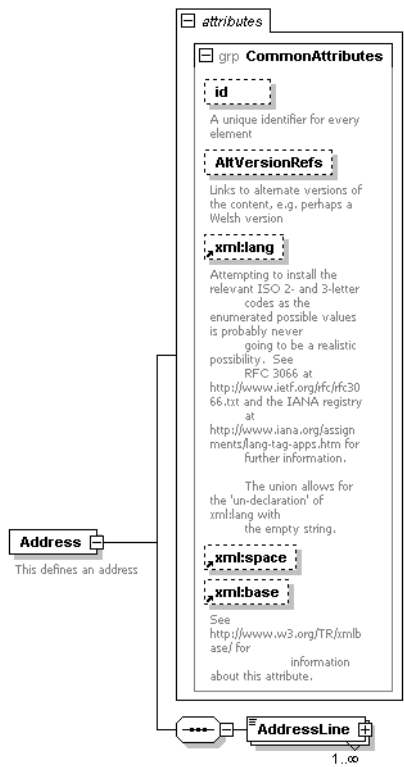
#### Commencement

2. The provisions of the 2002 Act specified in column 1 of the Schedule to this Order shall come into force on the date specified in column 2 of that Schedule, but where a particular purpose is specified in relation to any such provision in column 3 of that Schedule, the provision concerned shall come into force on that date only for that purpose.

Home Office  
4th January 2003

*Beverley Hughes*  
Minister of State

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content	complex				
children	AddressLine					
used by	element	Signee				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Address"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;This defines an address&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element name="AddressLine" type="InlineStructure" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## AddressLine

A single line of a postal address.

### Example code

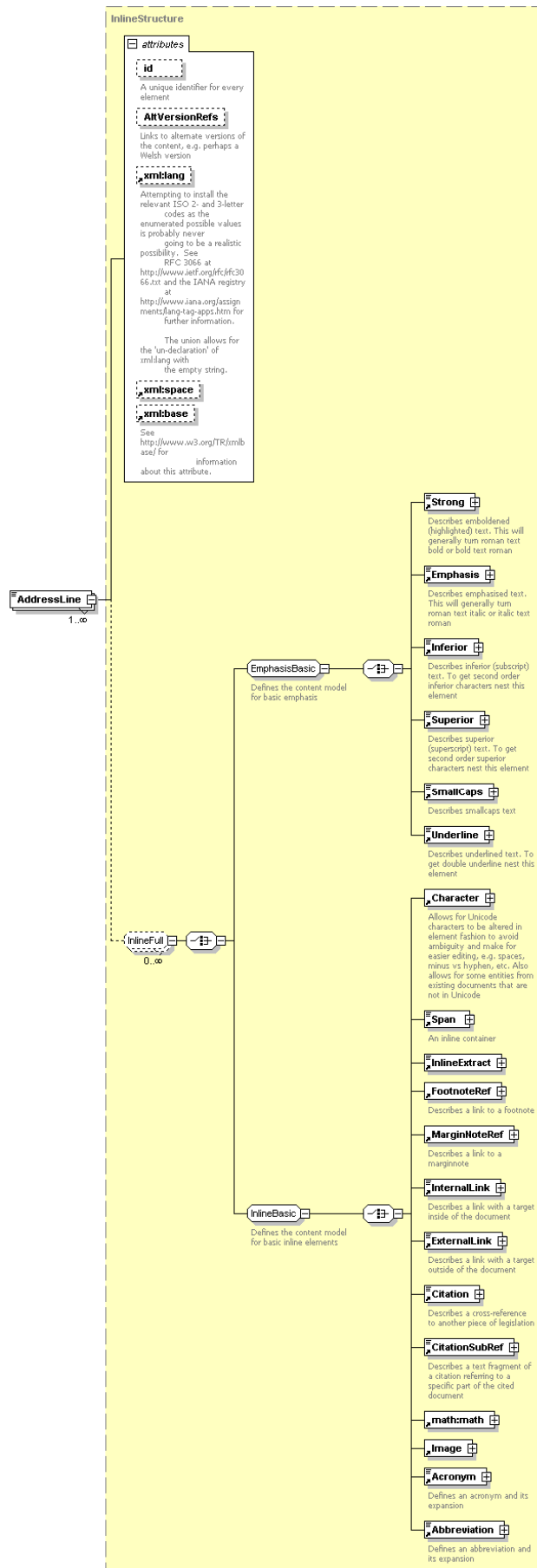
```
<SignedSection>
  <Signatory>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>Beverley Hughes</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Minister of State</JobTitle>
      <Address>
        <AddressLine>Home Office</AddressLine>
      </Address>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-01-04">
        <DateText>4th January 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
</SignedSection>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0001

### Example image

<b>Citation and interpretation</b>	
1.—(1) This Order may be cited as the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (Commencement No. 2) Order 2003.	
(2) In this Order:	
“the 1971 Act” means the Immigration Act 1971(b);	
“the 1999 Act” means the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999(c); and	
“the 2002 Act” means the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002.	
<b>Commencement</b>	
2. The provisions of the 2002 Act specified in column 1 of the Schedule to this Order shall come into force on the date specified in column 2 of that Schedule, but where a particular purpose is specified in relation to any such provision in column 3 of that Schedule, the provision concerned shall come into force on that date only for that purpose.	
Home Office 4th January 2003	<i>Beverley Hughes</i> Minister of State

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineStructure				
properties	isRef	0			
	minOcc	1			
	maxOcc	unbounded			
	content	complex			
	mixed	true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<xsd:element name="AddressLine" type="InlineStructure" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>				



## Character

Although the schema is designed to be used in a full Unicode manner certain characters can be difficult to distinguish when viewing in an XML editor. Additionally certain concepts cannot be described as a character, e.g. dot padding. For this reason the <Character> element can be used to describe an equivalent Unicode character

### Name

The value of the character being described.

The list of characters is given in the table below:

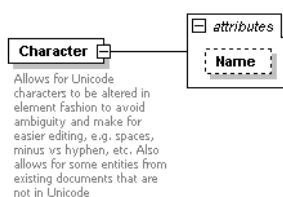
Attribute value	Explanation
DotPadding	Fills to the end of the line with dots and gives a similar effect to a right tab with a dot leader
EmSpace	Unicode x2003
EnSpace	Unicode x2002
LinePadding	Fills to the end of the line with space and gives a similar effect to a right tab
NonBreakingSpace	Unicode x00a0
Minus	Unicode x2212, included to avoid confusion with a hyphen
ThinSpace	Unicode x2009

## Example code

```
<Tabular Orientation="portrait">
  <table cols="2" fo:border-top-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid"
xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
    <col width="85%"/>
    <col width="15%"/>
    <thead fo:border-bottom-style="solid">
      <tr>
        <th rowspan="1" colspan="1">Office</th>
        <th rowspan="1" colspan="1">Salary £</th>
      </tr>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <tr>
        <td rowspan="1" colspan="1">Prime Minister and First Lord of the Treasury<ukl:Character
Name="DotPadding"/>
        </td>
        <td rowspan="1" colspan="1">46,109</td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td rowspan="1" colspan="1">
          <DecoratedGroup Decoration="}" Orientation="leftToRight"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">
            <GroupItem>
              <Para>
                <Text Hanging="hanging">Chancellor of the Exchequer<Character Name="DotPadding"/>
              </Text>
                <Text Hanging="hanging">Secretary of State<Character Name="DotPadding"/>
              </Text>
                <Text Hanging="hanging">Minister of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food<Character
Name="DotPadding"/>
              </Text>
                <Text Hanging="hanging">Any of the following offices for so long as the holder is a member
of the Cabinet-<Character Name="DotPadding"/>
              </Text>
            </Para>
          </GroupItem>
          <GroupItemRef Ref="t01000"/>
        </DecoratedGroup>
      </td>
      <td id="t01000" valign="middle">41,997</td>
    </tr>
  </table>
```

Ref: SI 1988 2253

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

used by elements **Abbreviation Acronym ExternalLink InternalLink**  
 complexType **BasicStringStructure**  
 groups **InlineBasic InlineBasicRestricted InlineLegislationCitation**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Name	derived by: xsd:string			

```
source <xsd:element name="Character">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Allows for Unicode characters to be altered in element fashion to avoid ambiguity
    and make for easier editing, e.g. spaces, minus vs hyphen, etc. Also allows for some entities from existing
    documents that are not in Unicode</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:attribute name="Name">
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
          <xsd:enumeration value="DotPadding"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="EmSpace"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="EnSpace"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="LinePadding"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NonBreakingSpace"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="Minus"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="ThinSpace"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## Department

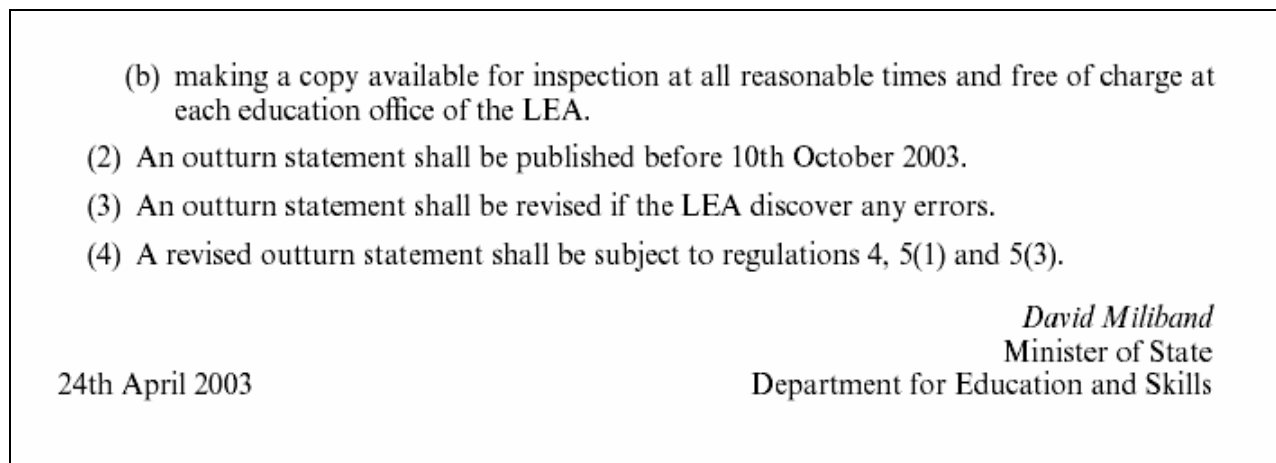
The name of a department within an organisation.

### Example code

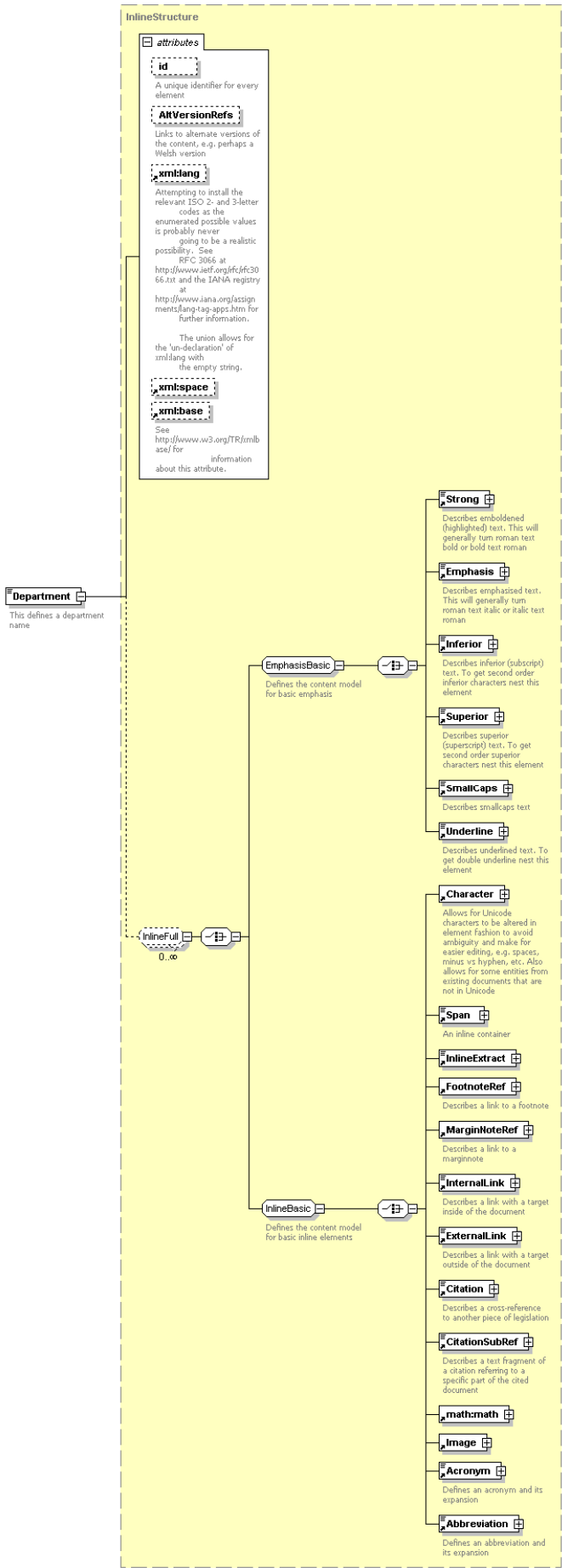
```
<SignedSection>
  <Signatory>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>David Miliband</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Minister of State</JobTitle>
      <Department>Department for Education and Skills</Department>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-24">
        <DateText>24th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
</SignedSection>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1153

### Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineStructure				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	element	Signee			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Department" type="InlineStructure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;This defines a department name&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## JobTitle

The title of a person's job.

### Example code

```
<SignedSection>
  <Signatory>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>David Miliband</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Minister of State</JobTitle>
      <Department>Department for Education and Skills</Department>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-24">
        <DateText>24th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
</SignedSection>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1153

### Example image

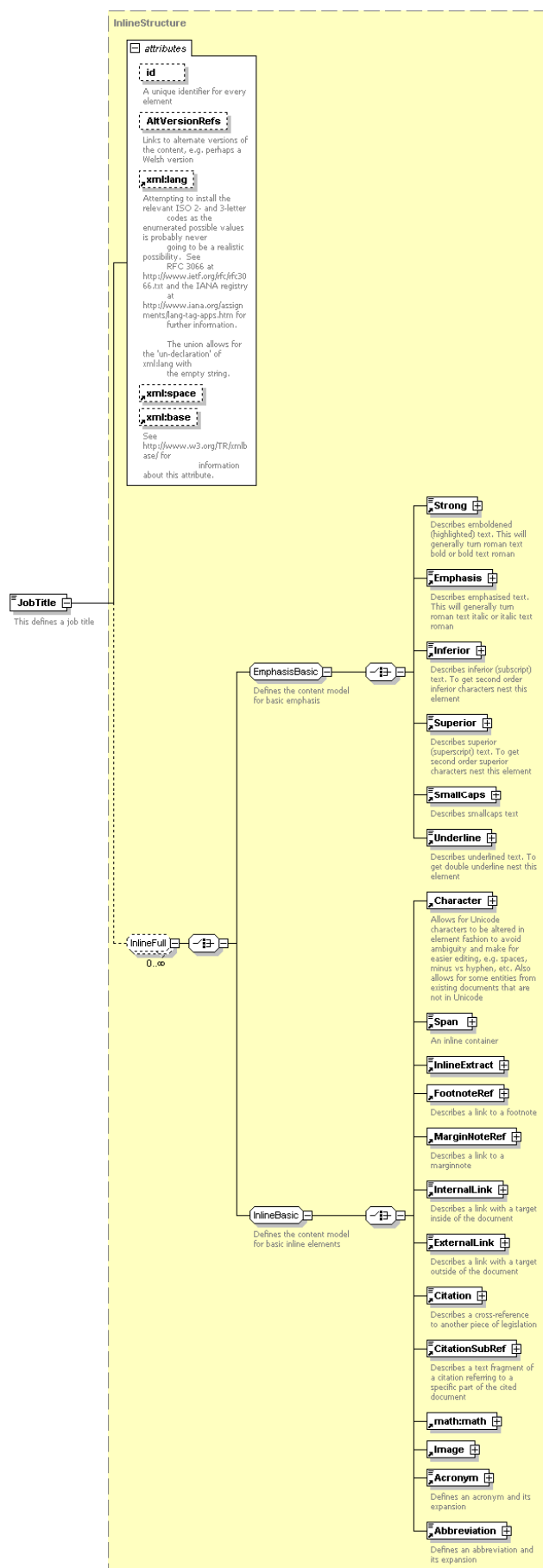
(b) making a copy available for inspection at all reasonable times and free of charge at each education office of the LEA.

- (2) An outturn statement shall be published before 10th October 2003.
- (3) An outturn statement shall be revised if the LEA discover any errors.
- (4) A revised outturn statement shall be subject to regulations 4, 5(1) and 5(3).

24th April 2003

*David Miliband*  
Minister of State  
Department for Education and Skills

diagram



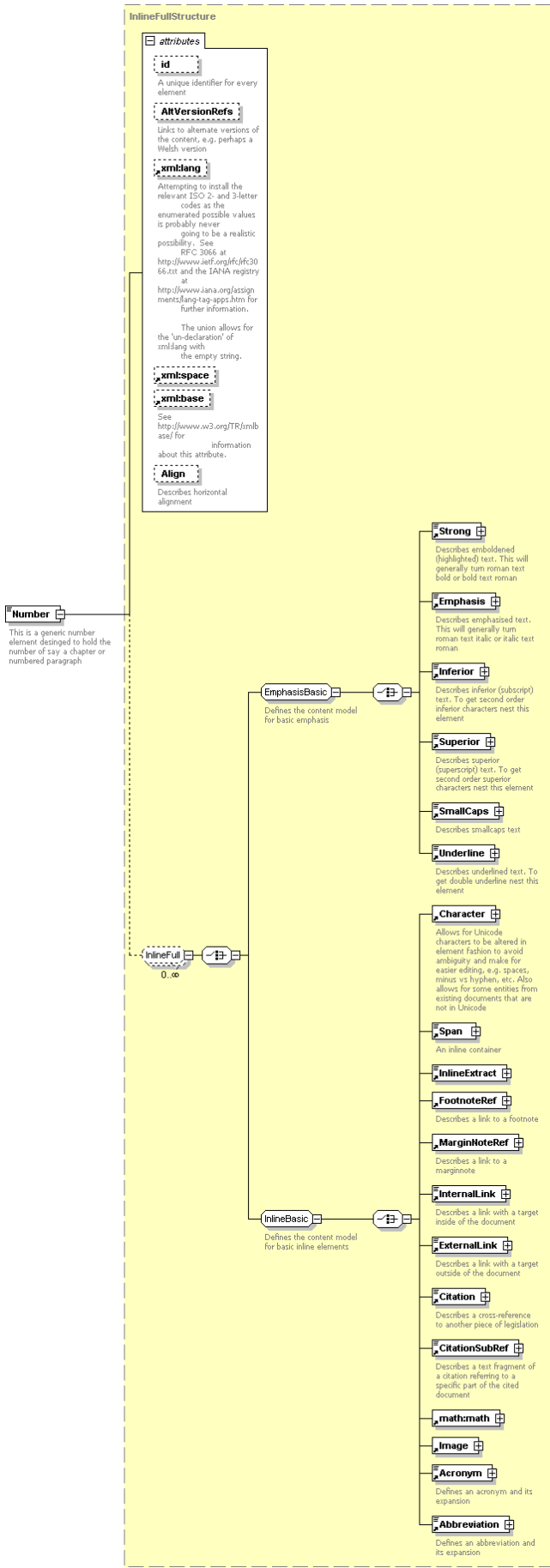


namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineStructure				
properties	content	complex			
	mixed	true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	element	Signee			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<xsd:element name="JobTitle" type="InlineStructure"> <xsd:annotation> <xsd:documentation>This defines a job title</xsd:documentation> </xsd:annotation> </xsd:element>				

## Number

A generic number element.

diagram





## Para

A general paragraph of text. The schema concept of a paragraph is that it consists of items, such as lines of text, lists, tables etc. These items can *belong* to a paragraph. Thus, a paragraph will usually consist of a mixture of <Text>, <Table>, <OrderedList> etc. elements.

## Align

Controls the horizontal alignment of the content of the element.

The permissible values are:

- inherit (the alignment is inherited from the parent element)
- left
- centre
- right
- justify (the entire paragraph is justified. Note that the last line is not force-justified. The decision on whether the last line should be is left to the implementation).

This attribute is optional. The default alignment will be decided by the implementation. The alignment should cascade down into child elements.

### Example code

```
<EnactingText>
  <Para>
    <Text>Whereas the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/> ("the Scheme") was
    brought into force on 14th June 1982;</Text>
  </Para>
  <Para>
    <Text>Whereas the Scheme has been varied<FootnoteRef Ref="f00002"/>;</Text>
  </Para>
  <Text>And whereas the Secretary of State, after consultation with the representatives of authors
  and library authorities and of others who appear likely to be affected, has further varied the
  Scheme;</Text>
  </Para>
  <Para>
    <Text>Now, therefore, the Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred by section 3(7)
    of the Public Lending Right Act 1979<FootnoteRef Ref="f00003"/> and now vested in him<FootnoteRef
    Ref="f00004"/>, hereby makes the following Order:-</Text>
  </Para>
</EnactingText>
```

Ref: SI 2000 0933

### Example image

### The Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 (Commencement of Variations) Order 2000

<i>Made</i>	- - -	<i>30th March 2000</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>		<i>3rd April 2000</i>
<i>Coming into force</i>		<i>1st July 2000</i>

Whereas the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982**(a)** ("the Scheme") was brought into force on 14th June 1982;

Whereas the Scheme has been varied**(b)**;

And whereas the Secretary of State, after consultation with the representatives of authors and library authorities and of others who appear likely to be affected, has further varied the Scheme;

Now, therefore, the Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred by section 3(7) of the Public Lending Right Act 1979**(c)** and now vested in him**(d)**, hereby makes the following Order:—

1. This Order may be cited as the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 (Commencement of Variations) Order 2000.
2. The variation in the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 which was made on 30th March 2000 by the Secretary of State and is set out in the Appendix to this Order shall come into force on 1st July 2000.

**Example code**

```

<UnorderedList Decoration="none">
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text>"amount A" is the smaller of-</Text>
      <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="alpha">
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>the maximum savings credit; and</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>a prescribed percentage of the amount by which the claimant's qualifying income exceeds
the savings credit threshold; and</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </OrderedList>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text>"amount B" is-</Text>
      <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="alpha">
        <ListItem id="p00017">
          <Para>
            <Text>a prescribed percentage of the amount (if any) by which the claimant's income exceeds
the appropriate minimum guarantee; or</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>if there is no such excess, nil.</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </OrderedList>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</UnorderedList>

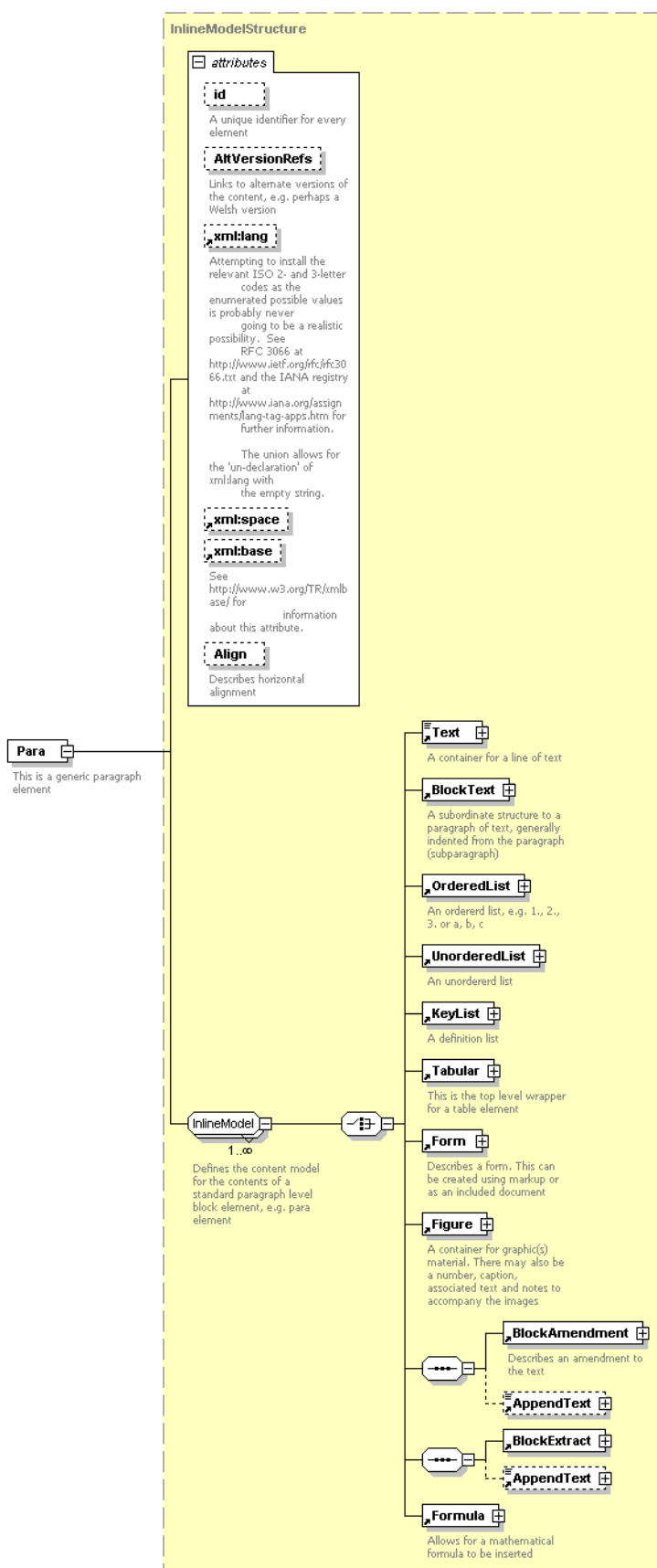
```

Ref: 2002 0016

**Example image**

- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3)–
- “amount A” is the smaller of–
- (a) the maximum savings credit; and
  - (b) a prescribed percentage of the amount by which the claimant’s qualifying income exceeds the savings credit threshold; and
- “amount B” is–
- (a) a prescribed percentage of the amount (if any) by which the claimant’s income exceeds the appropriate minimum guarantee; or
  - (b) if there is no such excess, nil.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type **InlineModelStructure**



properties	content	complex
children	<b>Text BlockText OrderedList UnorderedList KeyList Tabular Form Figure BlockAmendment AppendText BlockExtract Formula</b>	
used by	elements	<b>BlockAmendment Comment EnactingText EnactingTextOmitted Figure Resolution Signatory Where</b>
	groups	<b>ParaBasic ParaRestricted TableTextLocal</b>
attributes	Name	Type
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>
	lang	
	space	
	base	
	Align	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b> optional
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Para" type="InlineModelStructure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;This is a generic paragraph element&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>	

## PersonName

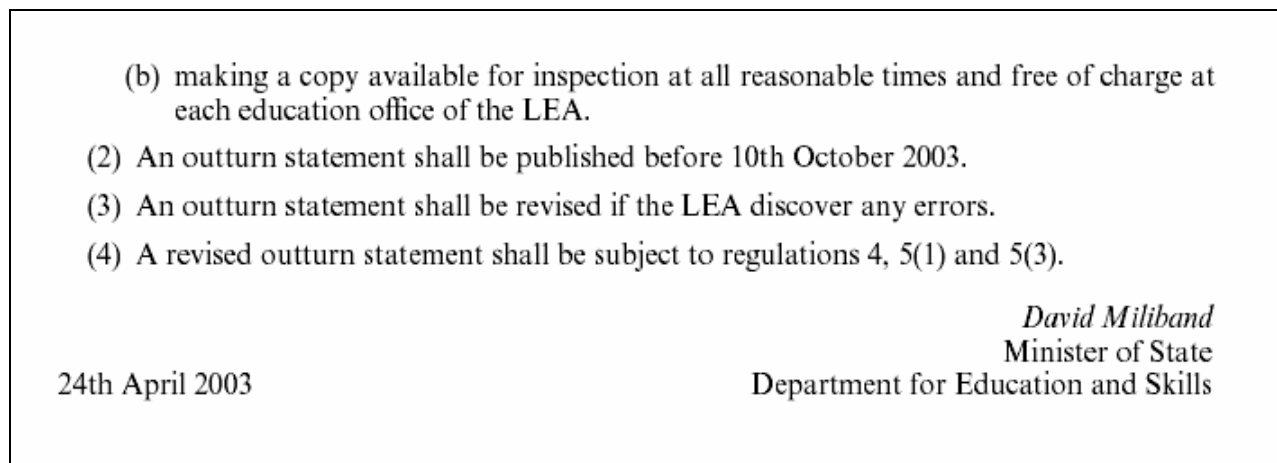
A person's name.

### Example code

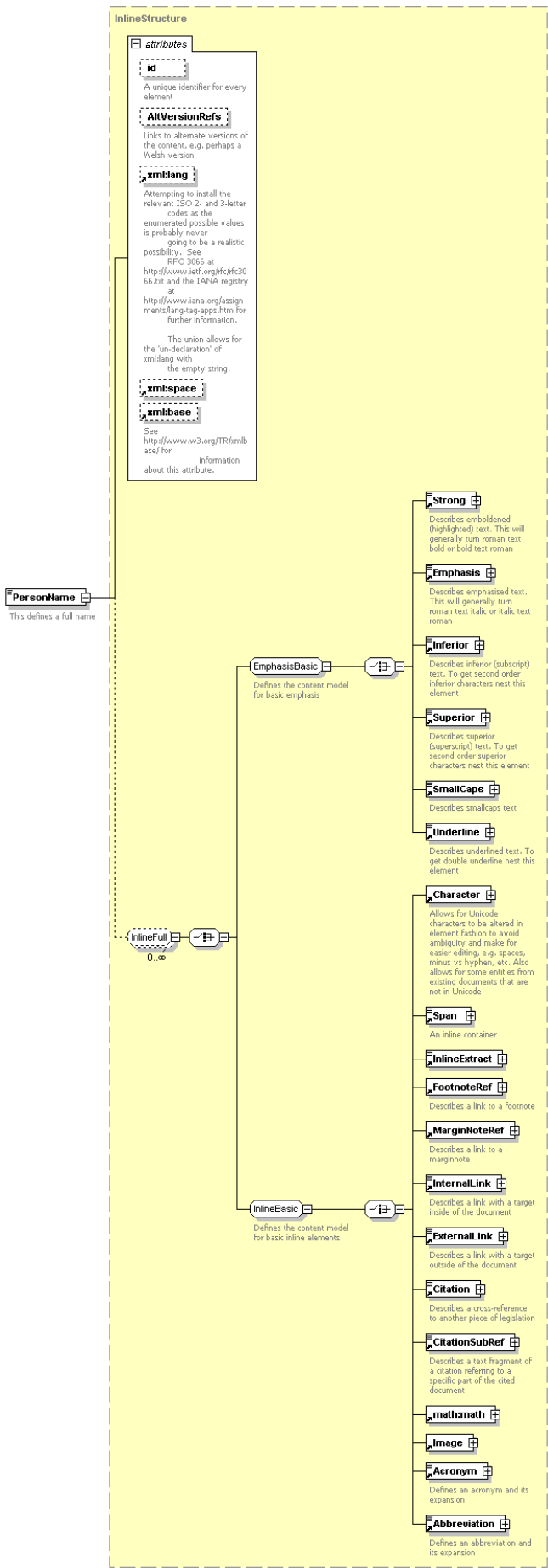
```
<SignedSection>
  <Signatory>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>David Miliband</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Minister of State</JobTitle>
      <Department>Department for Education and Skills</Department>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-24">
        <DateText>24th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
</SignedSection>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1153

### Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineStructure				
properties	content	complex			
	mixed	true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	element	Signee			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="PersonName" type="InlineStructure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;This defines a full name&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## Subtitle

A generic subtitle (subheading) element.

## Align

Controls the horizontal alignment of the content of the element. The use of this attribute is expected to be extremely rare.

The permissible values are:

- inherit (the alignment is inherited from the parent element)
- left
- centre
- right
- justify (the entire paragraph is justified. Note that the last line is not force-justified. The decision on whether the last line should be is left to the implementation).

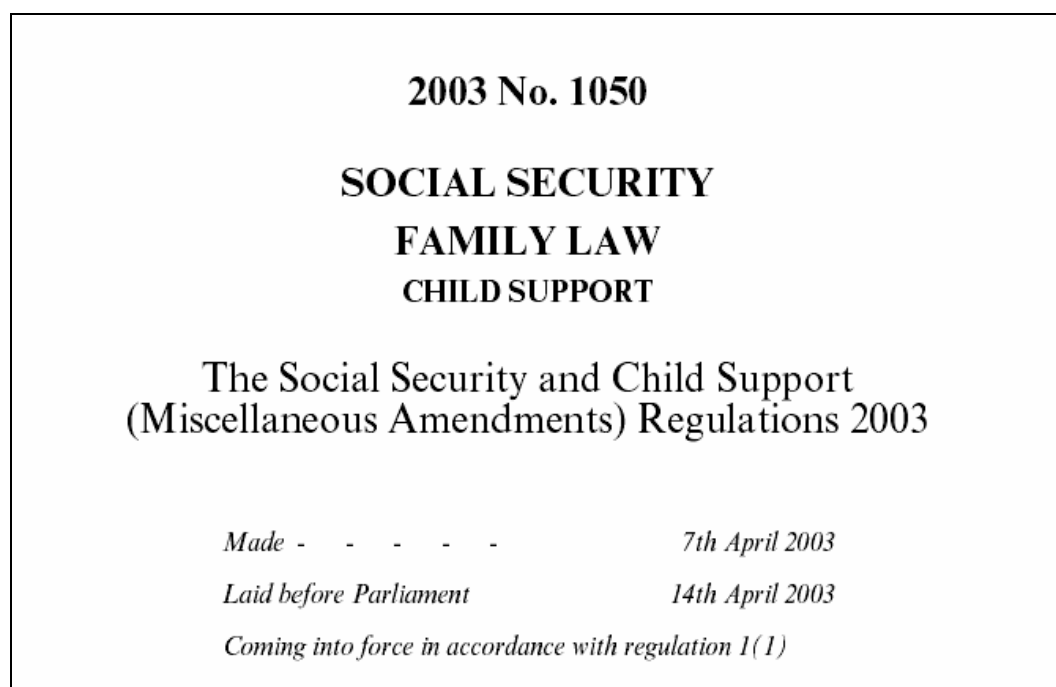
This attribute is optional. The default alignment will be decided by the implementation.

## Example code

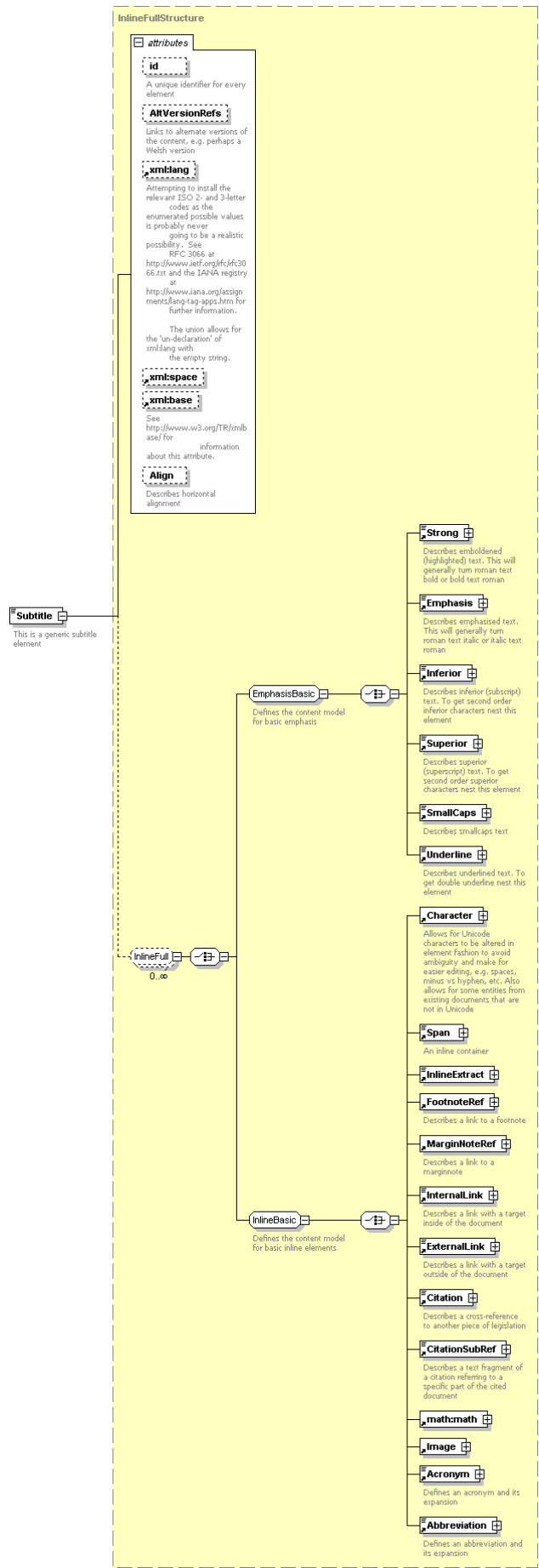
```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>2003 No. 1050</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Social Security</Title>
    </Subject>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Family Law</Title>
      <Subtitle>Child Support</Subtitle>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Social Security and Child Support (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003</Title>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>7th April 2003</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1050

Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineFullStructure				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	elements	SubjectInformation/Subject Tabular TitleBlock			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	Align	derived by: xsd:string		optional	
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Subtitle" type="InlineFullStructure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;This is a generic subtitle element&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				



## Title

A generic title (heading) element.

The following is a list of some of the contexts in which the title may be used and references to the *Statutory Instrument Practice*, 3rd edition (June 2003)

- Secondary/Title: Titles of Statutory Instruments 2.3.10

## Align

Controls the horizontal alignment of the content of the element. The use of this attribute is expected to be extremely rare.

The permissible values are:

- inherit (the alignment is inherited from the parent element)
- left
- centre
- right
- justify (the entire paragraph is justified. Note that the last line is not force-justified. The decision on whether the last line should be is left to the implementation).

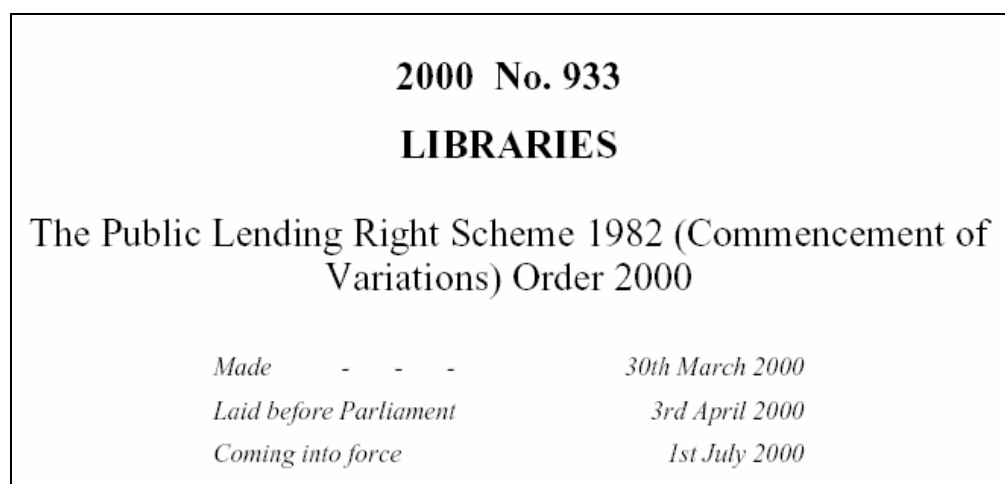
This attribute is optional. The default alignment will be decided by the implementation.

## Example code

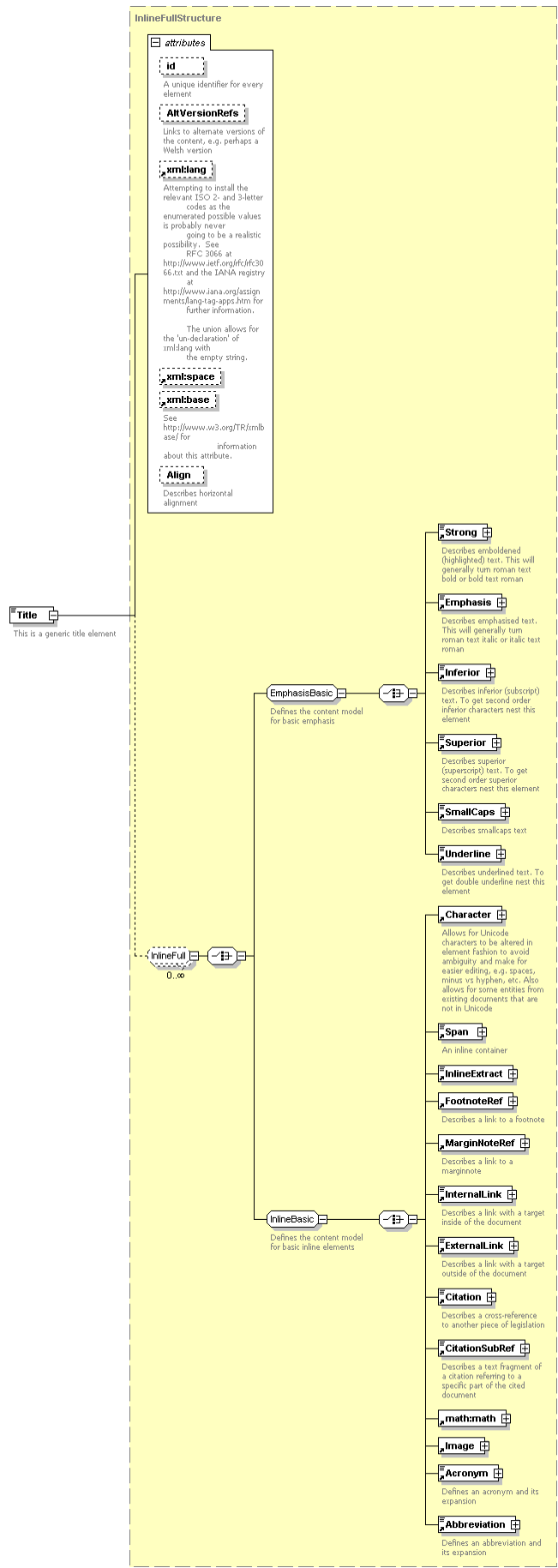
```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>2000 No. 933</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Libraries</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 (Commencement of Variations) Order 2000</Title>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>30th March 2000</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
```

Ref: SI 2000 0933

Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineFullStructure				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	elements	Chapter Chapter EarlierOrders ExplanatoryNotes Figure FragmentTitle Group Group Notes P1group P2group P3group Part Part Pblock Pblock PsubBlock PsubBlock Schedules SubjectInformation/Subject Tabular TitleBlock			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	Align	derived by: xsd:string	optional		
source	<xsd:element name="Title" type="InlineFullStructure"> <xsd:annotation> <xsd:documentation>This is a generic title element</xsd:documentation> </xsd:annotation> </xsd:element>				

## TitleBlock

A generic grouping element for a set of titles (headings) containing a <Title> and optionally a <Subtitle>

## Align

Controls the horizontal alignment of the content of the element. The use of this attribute is expected to be extremely rare.

The permissible values are:

- inherit (the alignment is inherited from the parent element)
- left
- centre
- right
- justify (the entire paragraph is justified. Note that the last line is not force-justified. The decision on whether the last line should be is left to the implementation).

This attribute is optional. The default alignment will be decided by the implementation.

## Example code

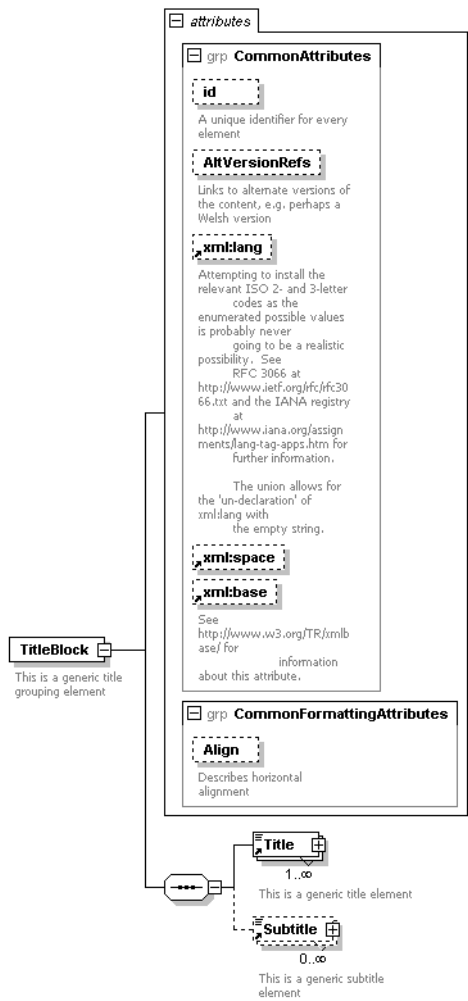
```
<Schedule>
<Schedules>
  <Schedule>
    <Number>Schedule</Number>
    <Reference>Regulation 2(g)</Reference>
    <ScheduleBody>
      <BlockAmendment TargetClass="secondary" TargetSubClass="regulation" Context="schedule"
Format="default">
        <Schedule>
          <Number>Schedule 1A</Number>
          <TitleBlock>
            <Title>Meaning of End of Series Vehicle</Title>
          </TitleBlock>
          <Reference>Regulation 18A(7)</Reference>
          <ScheduleBody>
            <P1>
              <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
              <P1para>
                <P2>
                  <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
                  <P2para>
                    <Text>A vehicle is an end of series vehicle for an EC type approval to which regulation
18A applies if-</Text>
                    <P3>
                      <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
                      <P3para>
                        <Text>an EC certificate of conformity has been issued in respect of the vehicle under
the EC type approval (whether before or after the giving of the direction by the Secretary of
State);</Text>
                      </P3para>
                    </P3>
                  </P2>
                </P1para>
              </P1>
            </ScheduleBody>
          </Schedule>
        </BlockAmendment>
      </ScheduleBody>
    </Schedule>
  </Schedules>
</Schedule>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1099

Example image

SCHEDULE	Regulation 2(g)
“SCHEDULE 1A	Regulation 18A(7)
MEANING OF END OF SERIES VEHICLE	
<p><b>1.—(1)</b> A vehicle is an end of series vehicle for an EC type approval to which regulation 18A applies if—</p>	
<p>(a) an EC certificate of conformity has been issued in respect of the vehicle under the EC type approval (whether before or after the giving of the direction by the Secretary of State);</p>	
<p>(b) the vehicle was in the territory of an EEA State at a time when the EC type approval had effect;</p>	
<p>(c) it was manufactured with the intention that it should be supplied by retail for use in the United Kingdom;</p>	
<p>(d) it was not registered under the 1994 Act on the date on which the relevant EC type approval ceased to have effect; and</p>	
<p>(e) it is a vehicle forming part of the allocation of vehicles to a relevant person under sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) of this paragraph.</p>	

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content complex					
children	Title Subtitle					
used by	elements	Abstract Appendix Form Schedule				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	Align	derived by: xsd:string	optional			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="TitleBlock"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;This is a generic title grouping element&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Subtitle" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonFormattingAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## Chapter

A container element for a chapter of text.

In terms of hierarchy the high-level structure for the schema is:

- Part
- Chapter
- Pblock
- PsubBlock

### id

A unique identifier for the element. The format of this identifier should be pxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, p00010, p01353.

### Example code

```
<Body>
  <Part>
    <Number>Part 1</Number>
    <Title>Access rights</Title>
    <Chapter>
      <Number>Chapter 1</Number>
      <Title>Nature and extent of access rights</Title>
      <Plgroup>
        <Title>Access rights</Title>
        <P1>
          <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
          <P1para>
            <P2>
              <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
              <P2para>
                <Text>Everyone has the statutory rights established by this Part of this Act.</Text>
              </P2para>
            </P2>
            <P2>
              <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
              <P2para>
                <Text>Those rights (in this Part of this Act called "access rights") are—</Text>
                <P3>
                  <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
                  <P3para>
                    <Text>the right to be, for any of the purposes set out in subsection (3) below, on land;
and</Text>
                  </P3para>
                </P3>
                <P3>
                  <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
                  <P3para>
                    <Text>the right to cross land.</Text>
                  </P3para>
                </P3>
              </P2para>
            </P2>
          </P1>
        </Plgroup>
      </Chapter>
    </Part>
  </Body>
```

Ref: ASP 2003 0002



**Example image**

**The Bill for this Act of the Scottish Parliament was passed by the Parliament on 23rd January 2003 and received Royal Assent on 25th February 2003**

An Act of the Scottish Parliament to establish statutory public rights of access to land for recreational and other purposes, and to extend some of the provisions for that purpose to rights of way and other rights; to make provision under which bodies representing rural and crofting communities may buy the land with which those communities have a connection; and for connected purposes.

**PART 1**

**ACCESS RIGHTS**

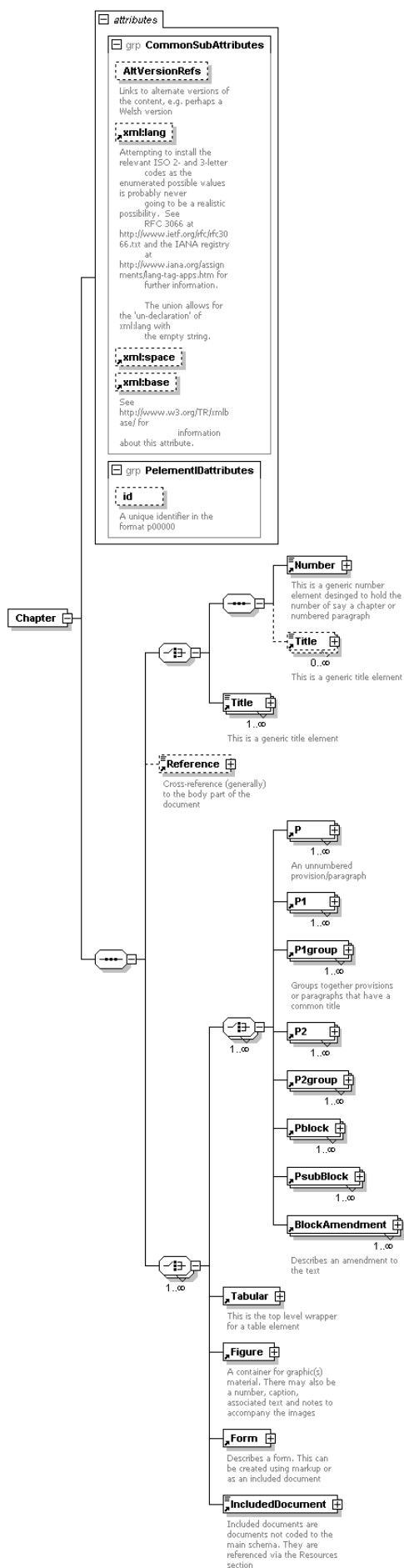
**CHAPTER 1**

**NATURE AND EXTENT OF ACCESS RIGHTS**

**1 Access rights**

- (1) Everyone has the statutory rights established by this Part of this Act.
- (2) Those rights (in this Part of this Act called “access rights”) are—
  - (a) the right to be, for any of the purposes set out in subsection (3) below, on land; and
  - (b) the right to cross land.

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content    complex				
children	Number Title Reference P P1 P1group P2 P2group Pblock PsubBlock BlockAmendment Tabular Figure Form IncludedDocument				
used by	elements	AbstractBody AppendixBody BlockAmendment Body Form Group Part ScheduleBody			
	complexType	BlockExtractStructure			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Chapter"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Number"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Reference" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P1group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P2" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P2group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Pblock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="PsubBlock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="BlockAmendment" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Tabular"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Figure"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Form"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="IncludedDocument"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

### Group

A container element that is at a level above Part.

In terms of hierarchy the high-level structure for the schema is:

- Group
- Part
- Chapter
- Pblock
- PsubBlock

### id

A unique identifier for the element. The format of this identifier should be pxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, p00010, p01353.

### Example code

```
<Body NumberFormat="default">
  <Group>
    <Number>First Group of Parts</Number>
    <Title>Discipline</Title>
    <Part>
      <Number>Part 1</Number>
      <Title>Offences</Title>
      <Pblock>
        <Title>Assisting an enemy, misconduct on operations etc</Title>
        <Plgroup>
          <Title>Assisting an enemy</Title>
          <P1>
            <Pnumber PuncAfter="">1</Pnumber>
            <Plpara>
              <P2>
                <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
                <P2para>
                  <Text>A person subject to service law commits an offence if, without lawful excuse, he
intentionally-</Text>
                <P3>
                  <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
                  <P3para>
                    <Text>communicates with an enemy;</Text>
                  </P3para>
                </P3>
                <P3>
                  <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
                  <P3para>
                    <Text>gives an enemy information that would or might be useful to the enemy;</Text>
                  </P3para>
                </P3>
                <P3>
                  <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
                  <P3para>
                    <Text>fails to make known to the proper authorities any information received by him
from an enemy;</Text>
                  </P3para>
                </P3>
              </P2>
            </P1>
          </Plgroup>
        </Pblock>
      </Part>
    </Group>
  </Body>
```

```

<P3>
  <Pnumber>d</Pnumber>
  <P3para>
    <Text>provides an enemy with any supplies; or</Text>
  </P3para>
</P3>
<P3>
  <Pnumber>e</Pnumber>
  <P3para>
    <Text>harbours or protects an enemy other than a prisoner of war.</Text>
  </P3para>
</P3>
</P2para>
</P2>

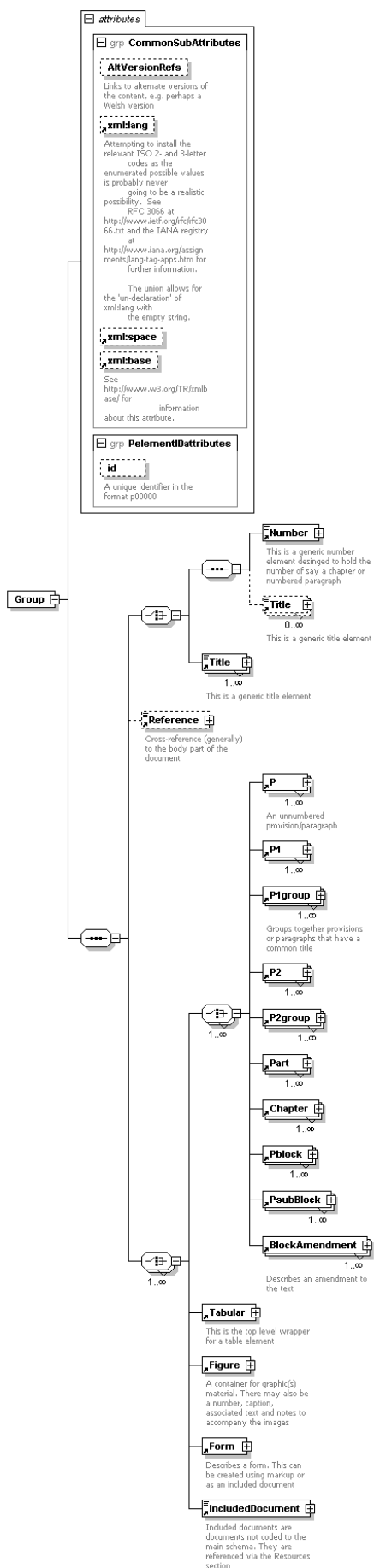
```

Ref: UKPGA 2006 0052

### Example image

<p style="text-align: center;"><b>FIRST GROUP OF PARTS</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;">DISCIPLINE</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PART 1</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OFFENCES</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Assisting an enemy, misconduct on operations etc</i></p>	
<b>1</b>	<p><b>Assisting an enemy</b></p> <p>(1) A person subject to service law commits an offence if, without lawful excuse, he intentionally—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) communicates with an enemy;</li> <li>(b) gives an enemy information that would or might be useful to the enemy;</li> <li>(c) fails to make known to the proper authorities any information received by him from an enemy;</li> <li>(d) provides an enemy with any supplies; or</li> <li>(e) harbours or protects an enemy other than a prisoner of war.</li> </ul>

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content complex				
children	Number Title Reference P P1 P1group P2 P2group Part Chapter Pblock PsubBlock BlockAmendment Tabular Figure Form IncludedDocument				
used by	elements	AbstractBody AppendixBody BlockAmendment Body ScheduleBody			
	complexType	BlockExtractStructure			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Group"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Number"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Reference" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P1group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P2" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P2group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Part" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Chapter" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Pblock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="PsubBlock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="BlockAmendment" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Tabular"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Figure"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Form"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="IncludedDocument"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

### Part

A container element for a document part.

In terms of hierarchy the high-level structure for the schema is:

- Part
- Chapter
- Pblock
- PsubBlock

### id

A unique identifier for the element. The format of this identifier should be pxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, p00010, p01353.

### Example code

```
<Body>
  <Part>
    <Number>Part 1</Number>
    <Title>Access rights</Title>
    <Chapter>
      <Number>Chapter 1</Number>
      <Title>Nature and extent of access rights</Title>
      <Plgroup>
        <Title>Access rights</Title>
        <P1>
          <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
          <P1para>
            <P2>
              <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
              <P2para>
                <Text>Everyone has the statutory rights established by this Part of this Act.</Text>
              </P2para>
            </P2>
          <P2>
            <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
            <P2para>
              <Text>Those rights (in this Part of this Act called "access rights") are—</Text>
              <P3>
                <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
                <P3para>
                  <Text>the right to be, for any of the purposes set out in subsection (3) below, on land;
and</Text>
                </P3para>
              </P3>
            <P3>
              <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
              <P3para>
                <Text>the right to cross land.</Text>
              </P3para>
            </P3>
          </P2para>
        </P2>
      </Plgroup>
    </Chapter>
  </Part>
</Body>
```

Ref: ASP 2003 0002



**Example image**

**The Bill for this Act of the Scottish Parliament was passed by the Parliament on 23rd January 2003 and received Royal Assent on 25th February 2003**

An Act of the Scottish Parliament to establish statutory public rights of access to land for recreational and other purposes, and to extend some of the provisions for that purpose to rights of way and other rights; to make provision under which bodies representing rural and crofting communities may buy the land with which those communities have a connection; and for connected purposes.

**PART 1**

ACCESS RIGHTS

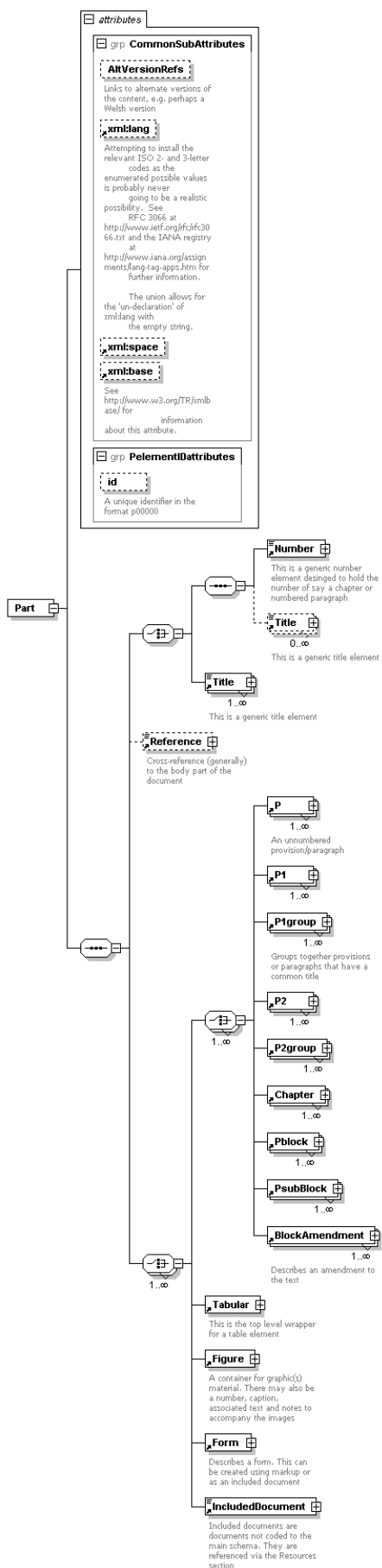
**CHAPTER 1**

NATURE AND EXTENT OF ACCESS RIGHTS

**1 Access rights**

- (1) Everyone has the statutory rights established by this Part of this Act.
- (2) Those rights (in this Part of this Act called “access rights”) are—
  - (a) the right to be, for any of the purposes set out in subsection (3) below, on land; and
  - (b) the right to cross land.

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content complex				
children	Number Title Reference P P1 P1group P2 P2group Chapter Pblock PsubBlock BlockAmendment Tabular Figure Form IncludedDocument				
used by	elements	AbstractBody AppendixBody BlockAmendment Body Form Group ScheduleBody			
	complexType	BlockExtractStructure			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Part"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Number"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Reference" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P1group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P2" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P2group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Chapter" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Pblock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="PsubBlock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="BlockAmendment" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Tabular"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Figure"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Form"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="IncludedDocument"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## Pblock

A container element for a block of text.

In terms of hierarchy the high-level structure for the schema is:

- Part
- Chapter
- Pblock
- PsubBlock

### id

A unique identifier for the element. The format of this identifier should be pxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, p00010, p01353.

### Example code

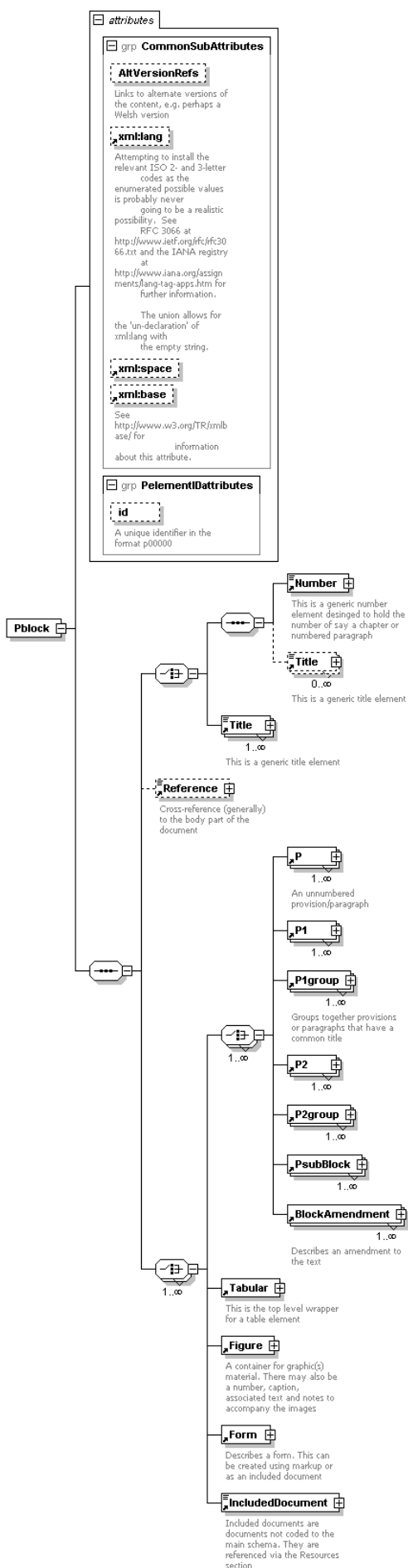
```
<Part>
  <Number>Part 2</Number>
  <Title>First registration of title</Title>
  <Chapter>
    <Number>Chapter 1</Number>
    <Title>First registration</Title>
    <Pblock>
      <Title>Voluntary registration</Title>
      <Plgroup>
        <Title>When title may be registered</Title>
        <P1>
          <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
          <Plpara>
            <P2>
              <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
              <P2para>
                <Text>This section applies to any unregistered legal estate which is an interest of any of
the following kinds-</Text>
                <P3>
                  <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
                  <P3para>
                    <Text>an estate in land,</Text>
                  </P3para>
                </P3>
              </P2>
            </P1>
          </Plpara>
        </P2>
      </P1>
    </Pblock>
  </Chapter>
</Part>
```

Ref: PGA 2002 0009

Example image

	<b>PART 2</b>
	FIRST REGISTRATION OF TITLE
	<b>CHAPTER 1</b>
	FIRST REGISTRATION
	<i>Voluntary registration</i>
<b>3</b>	<b>When title may be registered</b>
(1)	This section applies to any unregistered legal estate which is an interest of any of the following kinds—
(a)	an estate in land,
(b)	a rentcharge,
(c)	a franchise, and
(d)	a profit a prendre in gross.

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content complex				
children	Number Title Reference P P1 P1group P2 P2group PsubBlock BlockAmendment Tabular Figure Form IncludedDocument				
used by	elements	AbstractBody AppendixBody BlockAmendment Body Chapter Form Group Part ScheduleBody			
attributes	complexType	BlockExtractStructure			
	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Pblock"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Number"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Reference" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P1group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P2" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P2group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="PsubBlock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="BlockAmendment" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Tabular"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Figure"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Form"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="IncludedDocument"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## **PsubBlock**

A container element for a subblock of text.

In terms of hierarchy the high-level structure for the schema is:

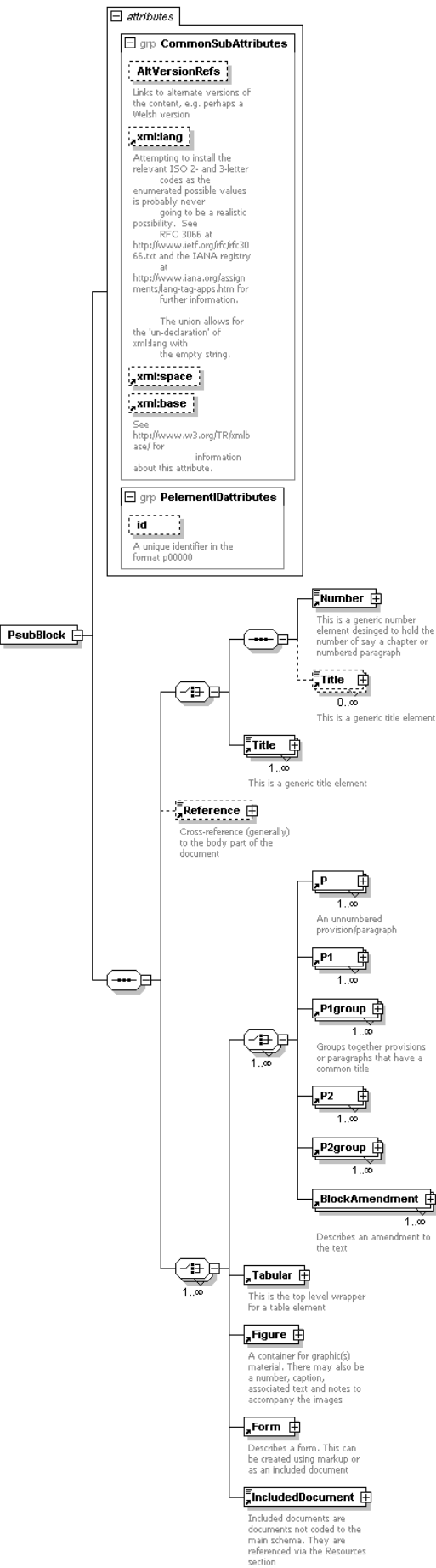
- Part
- Chapter
- Pblock
- PsubBlock

### **id**

A unique identifier for the element. The format of this identifier should be pxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, p00010, p01353.



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation							
properties	content complex							
children	Number Title Reference P P1 P1group P2 P2group BlockAmendment Tabular Figure Form IncludedDocument							
used by	elements	BlockAmendment Chapter Form Group Part Pblock						
	complexType	BlockExtractStructure						
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS						
	lang							
	space							
	base							
	id	derived by: xsd:ID						
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="PsubBlock"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Number"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Reference" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P1group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P2" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P2group" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="BlockAmendment" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Tabular"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Figure"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="Form"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="IncludedDocument"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>							

## P

This is a top-level provision or paragraph. This basically constitutes an unnumbered P1.

### id

A unique identifier for the element. The format of this identifier should be pxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example: p00010, p01353.

### Align

Controls the horizontal alignment of the content of the element.

The permissible values are:

- inherit (the alignment is inherited from the parent element)
- left
- centre
- right
- justify (the entire paragraph is justified. Note that the last line is not force-justified. The decision on whether the last line should be is left to the implementation).

This attribute is optional. The default alignment will be decided by the implementation. The alignment should cascade down into child elements.

### Example code

```
<ExplanatoryNotes>
  <Title>Explanatory Note</Title>
  <Comment>
    <Para>
      <Text>(This note is not part of the Order)</Text>
    </Para>
  </Comment>
  <P>
    <Text>This Order brings into force a variation to the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 made by the
Secretary of State on 30th March 2000.</Text>
  </P>
  <P>
    <Text>The variation is set out in the Appendix. The effect of the variation is to include within
the Scheme as eligible persons under Article 5 of the Scheme those authors who are resident in any
country of the European Economic Area.</Text>
  </P>
</ExplanatoryNotes>
```

Ref: SI 2000 933

**Example image**

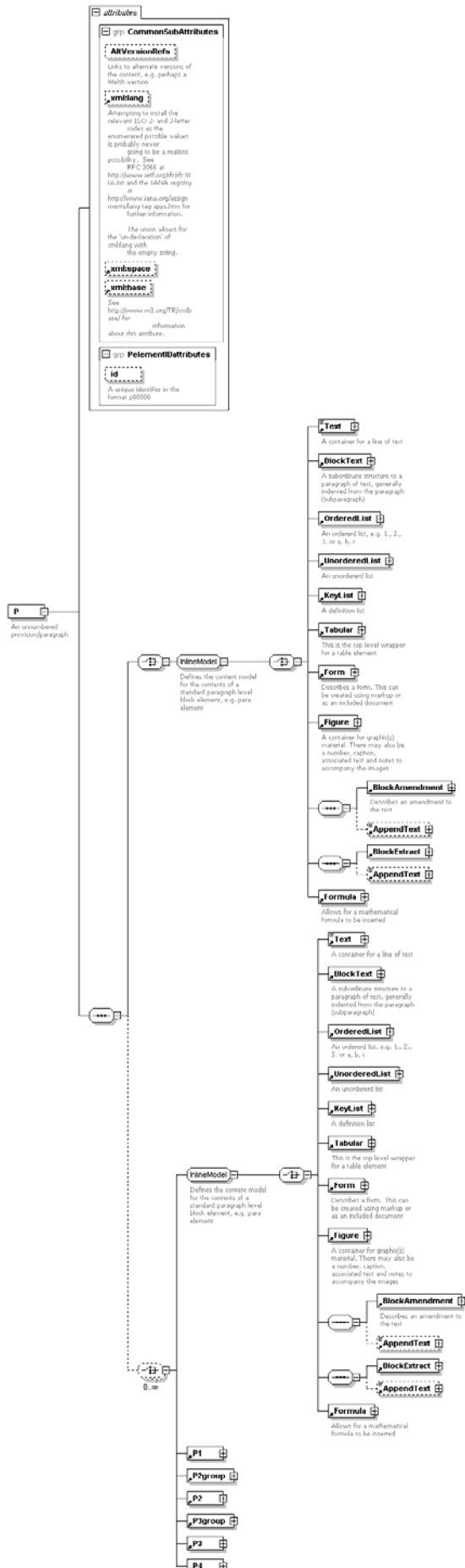
**EXPLANATORY NOTE**

*(This note is not part of the Order)*

This Order brings into force a variation to the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 made by the Secretary of State on 30th March 2000.

The variation is set out in the Appendix. The effect of the variation is to include within the Scheme as eligible persons under Article 5 of the Scheme those authors who are resident in any country of the European Economic Area.

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content complex					
children	Text BlockText OrderedList UnorderedList KeyList Tabular Form Figure BlockAmendment AppendText BlockExtract Formula P1 P2group P2 P3group P3 P4					
used by	elements	AbstractBody AppendixBody Body Chapter Group IntroductoryText P1group Part Pblock PsubBlock ScheduleBody				
	groups	BlockBasic TableCellLocal				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="P"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;An unnumbered provision/paragraph&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The model forces text before structure to avoid e.g. P1 straight inside a P&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineModel"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;           &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineModel"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P1"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P2group"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P2"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P3group"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P3"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:element ref="P4"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt;   &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

**P1**

A level 1 provision/paragraph.

**id**

A unique identifier for the element. The format of this identifier should be pxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, p00010, p01353.

**FootnoteRef**

Very occasionally there will be a footnote that relates to a structural element. This attribute allows for a footnote to an entire <P1> to be referenced. The usual display format in this situation is for the footnote reference to be placed to the right of the <P1> number.

**Example code**

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Citation and interpretation</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>This Order may be cited as the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (Commencement
No. 2) Order 2003.</Text>
        </P2para>
      </P2>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>In this Order:</Text>
          <UnorderedList Decoration="none">
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>"the 1971 Act" means the Immigration Act 1971<FootnoteRef Ref="f00002"/>;</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>"the 1999 Act" means the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999<FootnoteRef Ref="f00003"/>;
and</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>"the 2002 Act" means the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002.</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
          </UnorderedList>
        </P2para>
      </P2>
    </P1para>
  </P1>
</Plgroup>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0001

**Example image**

**Citation and interpretation**

1.—(1) This Order may be cited as the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (Commencement No. 2) Order 2003.

(2) In this Order:

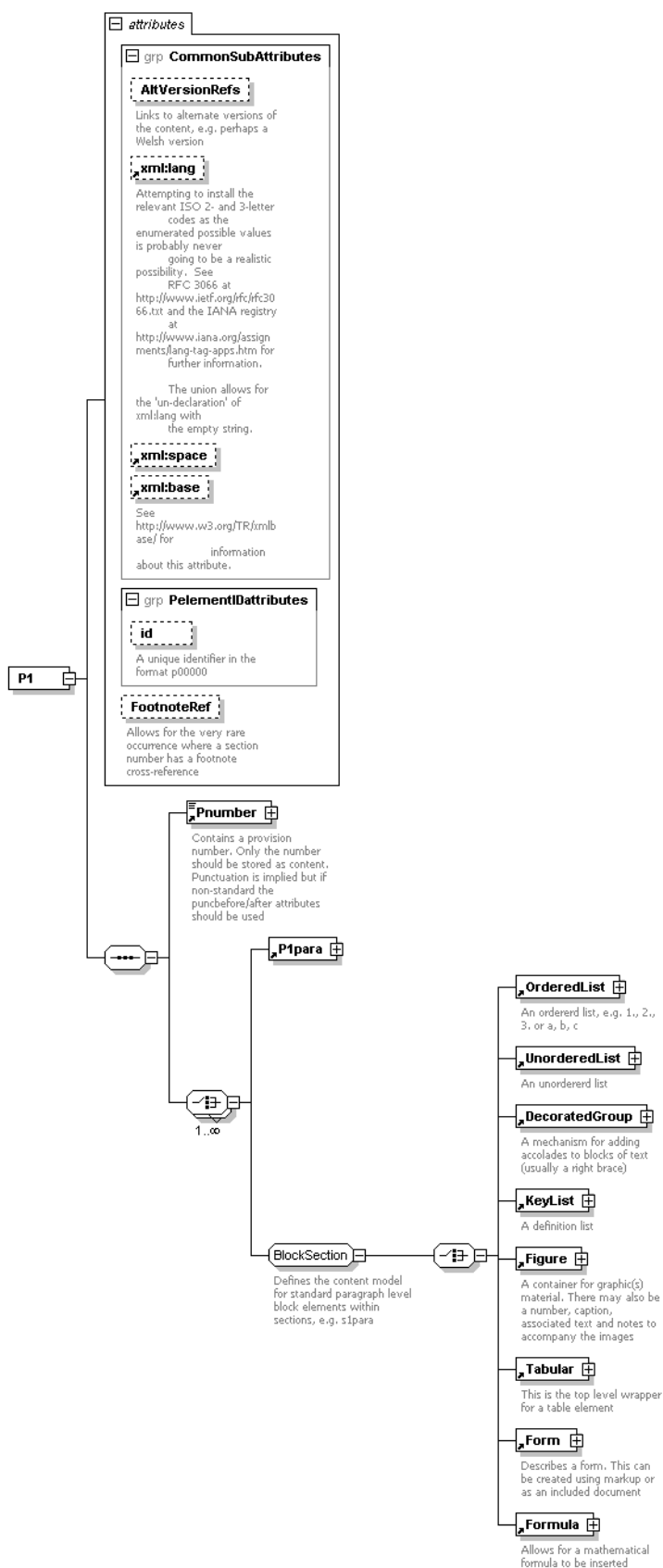
“the 1971 Act” means the Immigration Act 1971(**b**);

“the 1999 Act” means the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999(**c**); and

“the 2002 Act” means the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002.



diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Pnumber P1para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula**

used by	elements	AbstractBody AppendixBody BlockAmendment Body Chapter EarlierOrders ExplanatoryNotes Form Group P P1group Part Pblock PsubBlock ScheduleBody			
	complexType	BlockExtractStructure			
	groups	TableCellLocal TableTextLocal			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	FootnoteRef	xsd:IDREFS			
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="P1"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Pnumber"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P1para"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:group ref="BlockSection"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="FootnoteRef" type="xsd:IDREFS"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Allows for the very rare occurrence where a section number has a footnote cross- reference&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## P1group

A container for <P1> elements. A <P1group> has a title that groups together the child elements in a logical manner.

### Layout

In general the layout of a P1group is defined by its context, whether in the document as a provision or in an amendment. However, for some legacy documents the layout breaks the standard conventions. This attribute can be used to define how the layout of this heading and child P1 elements should be related.

The permissible values are:

- default
- side (the first P1 number is formatted to the left of the P1group title)
- below

### Example code

```
<P1group>
  <Title>Citation and interpretation</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>This Order may be cited as the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (Commencement
No. 2) Order 2003.</Text>
        </P2para>
      </P2>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>In this Order:</Text>
          <UnorderedList Decoration="none">
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>"the 1971 Act" means the Immigration Act 1971<FootnoteRef Ref="f00002"/>;</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>"the 1999 Act" means the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999<FootnoteRef Ref="f00003"/>;
and</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>"the 2002 Act" means the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002.</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
          </UnorderedList>
        </P2para>
      </P2>
    </P1para>
  </P1>
</P1group>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0001

## Example image

**Citation and interpretation**

1.—(1) This Order may be cited as the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (Commencement No. 2) Order 2003.

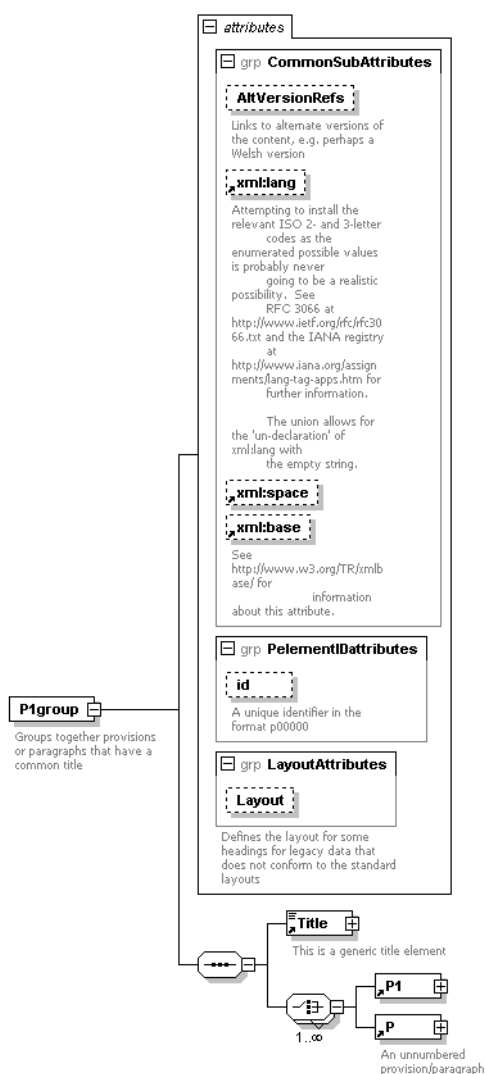
(2) In this Order:

“the 1971 Act” means the Immigration Act 1971(b);

“the 1999 Act” means the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999(c); and

“the 2002 Act” means the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Title P1 P**

used by elements **AbstractBody AppendixBody BlockAmendment Body Chapter EarlierOrders ExplanatoryNotes Form Group Part Pblock PsubBlock ScheduleBody BlockExtractStructure TableCellLocal**

complexType group

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	Layout	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="P1group"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Groups together provisions or paragraphs that have a common title&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Title"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P1"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="LayoutAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## P1para

A paragraph of text within a P1 element.

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Citation and interpretation</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>This Order may be cited as the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (Commencement
No. 2) Order 2003.</Text>
        </P2para>
      </P2>
    </P2>
    <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
    <P2para>
      <Text>In this Order:</Text>
      <UnorderedList Decoration="none">
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>"the 1971 Act" means the Immigration Act 1971<FootnoteRef Ref="f00002"/>;</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>"the 1999 Act" means the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999<FootnoteRef Ref="f00003"/>;
and</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>"the 2002 Act" means the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002.</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </UnorderedList>
    </P2para>
  </P1para>
</P1>
</Plgroup>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0001

### Example image

#### Citation and interpretation

1.—(1) This Order may be cited as the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (Commencement No. 2) Order 2003.

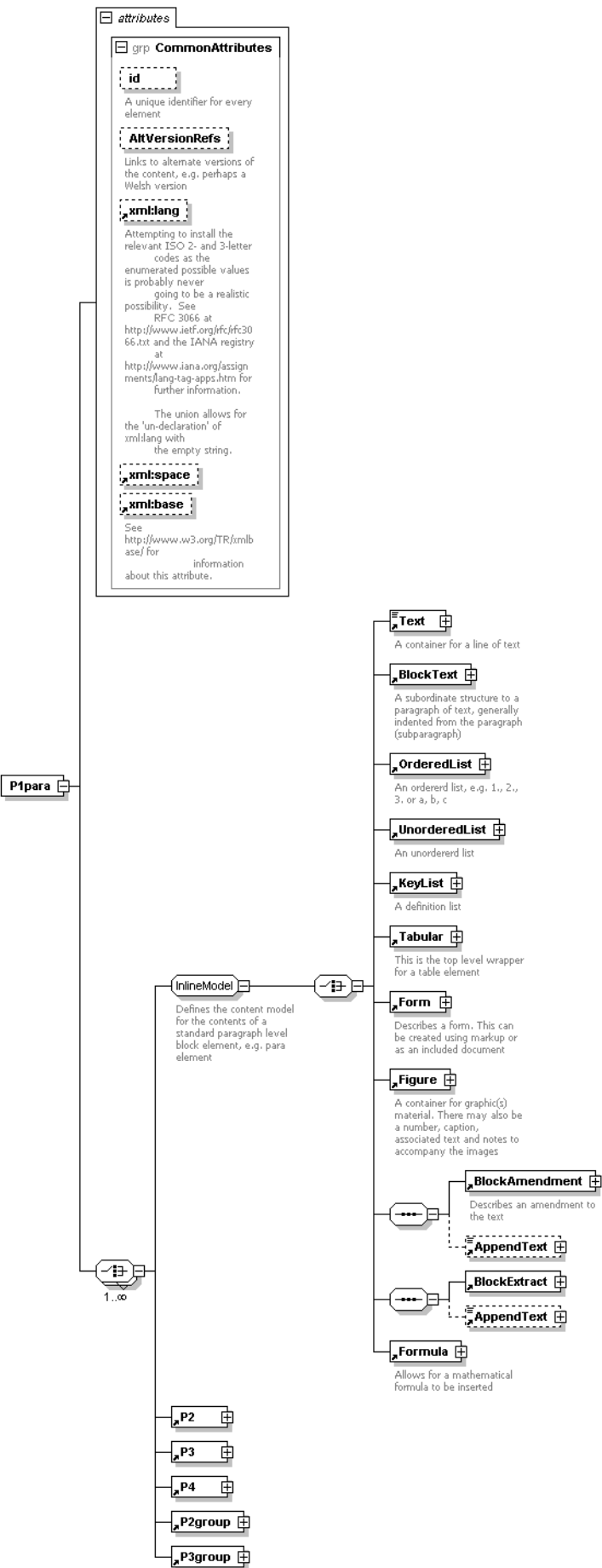
(2) In this Order:

“the 1971 Act” means the Immigration Act 1971**(b)**;

“the 1999 Act” means the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999**(c)**; and

“the 2002 Act” means the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002.

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content complex					
children	Text BlockText OrderedList UnorderedList KeyList Tabular Form Figure BlockAmendment AppendText BlockExtract Formula P2 P3 P4 P2group P3group					
used by	elements	BlockAmendment Form P1				
	complexType	BlockExtractStructure				
attributes	Name	Type		Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	source	<xsd:element name="P1para"> <xsd:complexType> <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"> <xsd:group ref="InlineModel"/> <xsd:element ref="P2"/> <xsd:element ref="P3"/> <xsd:element ref="P4"/> <xsd:element ref="P2group"/> <xsd:element ref="P3group"/> </xsd:choice> <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/> </xsd:complexType> </xsd:element>				



## P2

A level 2 provision/paragraph.

### id

A unique identifier for the element. The format of this identifier should be pxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, p00010, p01353.

### FootnoteRef

Very occasionally there will be a footnote that relates to a structural element. This attribute allows for a footnote to an entire <P2> to be referenced. The usual display format in this situation is for the footnote reference to be placed to the right of the <P2> number.

### Example code

```

<Plgroup>
  <Title>Applications for grant</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>6</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>Any application for a grant under this Scheme shall be made in such form and manner and
by such date as the Secretary of State shall determine, and an applicant shall provide all such
particulars and information relating to the application as the Secretary of State may reasonably
require, including, where specified by her, relevant documents and records.</Text>
        </P2para>
      </P2>
    <P2>
      <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
      <P2para>
        <Text>The Secretary of State shall inform an applicant in writing whether the application is
approved or not and, if it is not approved, shall give the reasons.</Text>
      </P2para>
    </P2>
  </P1para>
</P1>
</Plgroup>

```

Ref: SI 2003 0562

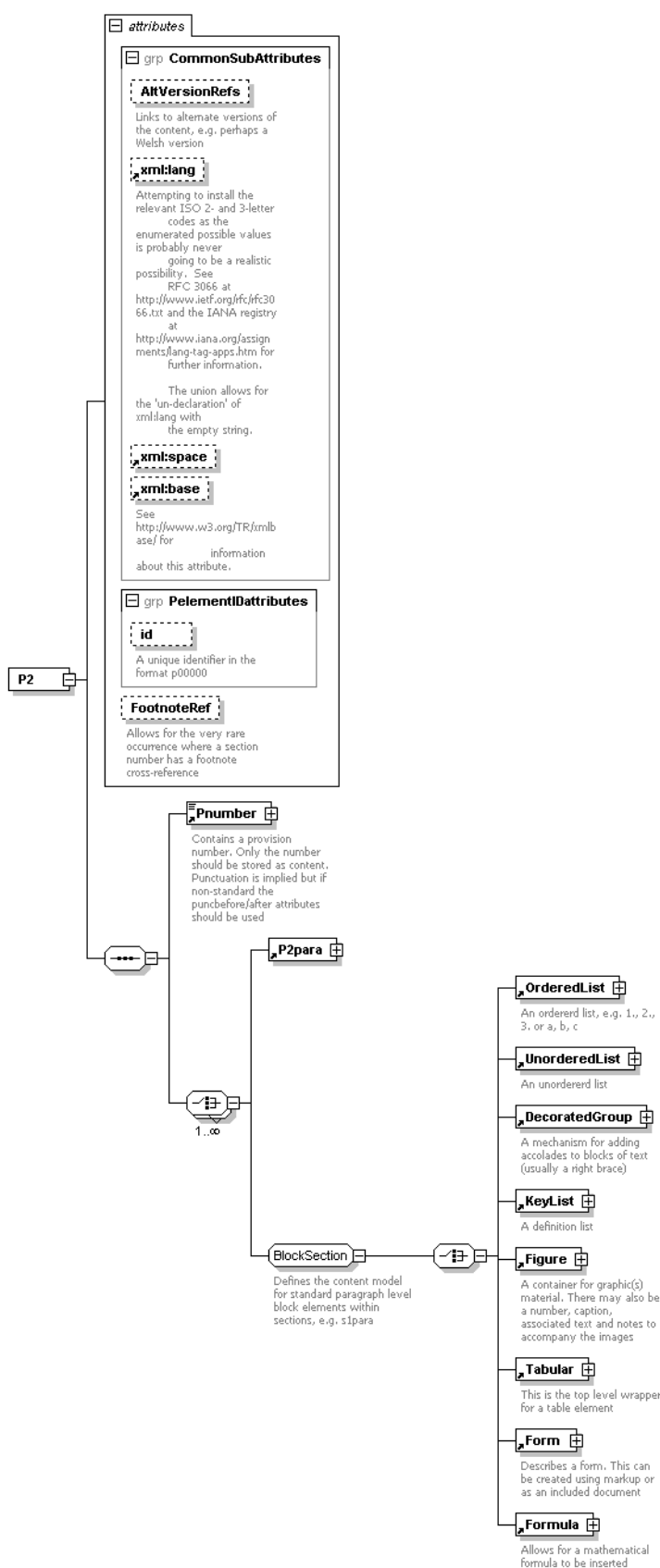
### Example image

#### Applications for grant

6.—(1) Any application for a grant under this Scheme shall be made in such form and manner and by such date as the Secretary of State shall determine, and an applicant shall provide all such particulars and information relating to the application as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, including, where specified by her, relevant documents and records.

(2) The Secretary of State shall inform an applicant in writing whether the application is approved or not and, if it is not approved, shall give the reasons.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Pnumber P2para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula**

used by	elements	AbstractBody AppendixBody BlockAmendment Chapter Form Group P P1para P2group Part Pblock PsubBlock ScheduleBody BlockExtractStructure TableCellLocal			
	complexType				
	group				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	FootnoteRef	xsd:IDREFS			
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="P2"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Pnumber"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P2para"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:group ref="BlockSection"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="FootnoteRef" type="xsd:IDREFS"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Allows for the very rare occurrence where a section number has a footnote cross- reference&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## P2group

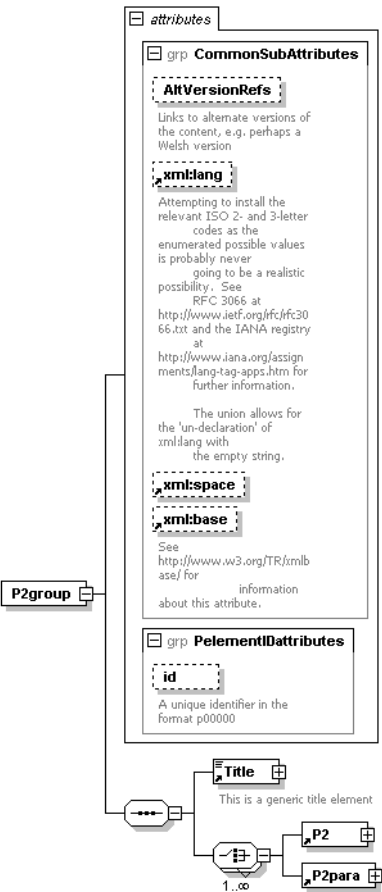
A container for <P2> elements. A <P2group> has a title that groups together the child elements in a logical manner.

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Non-registration test</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
    <Plpara>
      <P2group>
        <Title>Induction meters</Title>
        <P2>
          <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
          <P2para>
            <Text>Induction meters shall be tested to ensure that when the current circuits are open and a
voltage of 110 per cent. of the declared system voltage is applied to the voltage circuits, rotors
cease to rotate before completing one revolution.</Text>
          </P2para>
        </P2>
      </P2group>
    </P1para>
  </P1>
  <P2group>
    <Title>Static meters</Title>
    <P2>
      <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
      <P2para>
        <Text>Static meters shall be tested for non-registration by one of the following methods-
</Text>
        <P3group>
          <Title>Method 1</Title>
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <P4>
                <Pnumber>i</Pnumber>
                <P4para>
                  <Text>When subjected to the test conditions specified in paragraph 2(1), the meter
shall not emit more than one output pulse over the minimum test period determined in paragraph
(ii);</Text>
                </P4para>
              </P4>
            </P3para>
          </P3>
        </P3group>
      </P2para>
    </P2>
  </P2group>
</Plgroup>
```

Ref: UKSI 1998 1566

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children Title P2 P2para

used by elements AbstractBody AppendixBody BlockAmendment Chapter Form Group P P1para Part Pblock PsubBlock ScheduleBody BlockExtractStructure TableCellLocal

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			

source 

```
<xsd:element name="P2group">
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="Title"/>
      <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:element ref="P2"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P2para"/>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## P2para

A paragraph of text within a <P2> element.

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Applications for grant</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>6</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>Any application for a grant under this Scheme shall be made in such form and manner and
by such date as the Secretary of State shall determine, and an applicant shall provide all such
particulars and information relating to the application as the Secretary of State may reasonably
require, including, where specified by her, relevant documents and records.</Text>
        </P2para>
      </P2>
    </P1>
  </P1>
  <P2>
    <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
    <P2para>
      <Text>The Secretary of State shall inform an applicant in writing whether the application is
approved or not and, if it is not approved, shall give the reasons.</Text>
    </P2para>
  </P2>
</Plgroup>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0562

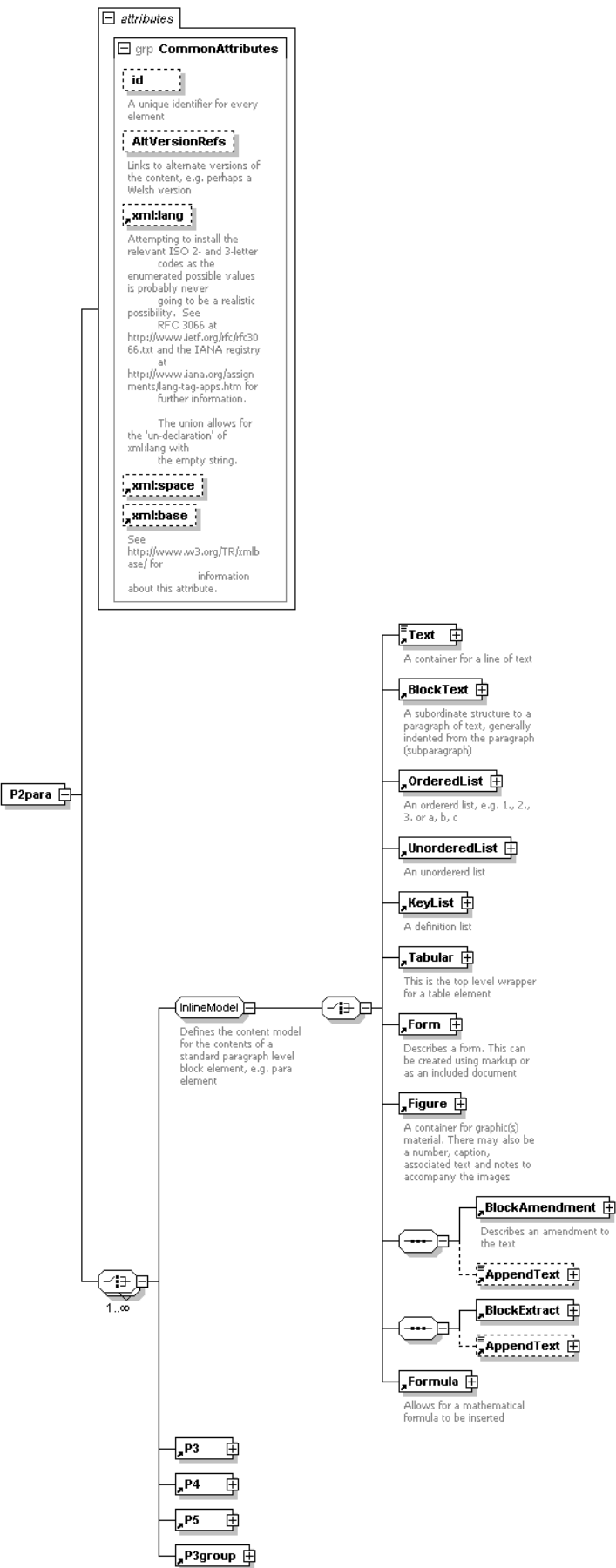
### Example image

#### Applications for grant

**6.—(1)** Any application for a grant under this Scheme shall be made in such form and manner and by such date as the Secretary of State shall determine, and an applicant shall provide all such particulars and information relating to the application as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, including, where specified by her, relevant documents and records.

**(2)** The Secretary of State shall inform an applicant in writing whether the application is approved or not and, if it is not approved, shall give the reasons.

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content complex				
children	Text BlockText OrderedList UnorderedList KeyList Tabular Form Figure BlockAmendment AppendText BlockExtract Formula P3 P4 P5 P3group				
used by	elements	BlockAmendment Form P2 P2group			
	complexType	BlockExtractStructure			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="P2para"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineModel"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P3"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P4"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P5"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P3group"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				



## P3

A level 3 provision/paragraph.

The examples below show two typical scenarios. The first example has text jumping straight from a <P1> to a <P3> – the implication here is that there is only one <P2> and as such it is not marked up. The second example shows a more common situation with levels 1, 2, and 3 all following in sequence.

### id

A unique identifier for the element. The format of this identifier should be pxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, p00010, p01353.

### FootnoteRef

Very occasionally there will be a footnote that relates to a structural element. This attribute allows for a footnote to an entire <P3> to be referenced. The usual display format in this situation is for the footnote reference to be placed to the right of the <P3> number.

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
      <Text>Where an occupier of land (or a person acting with the occupier's permission) is using a
bird of prey, or a firearm or shotgun, for the purpose of sport, that person does not commit an
offence under section 1(1) by using a dog under control to stalk a wild mammal, or flush it from
cover above ground, for the purpose of providing quarry for the sport, but only if—</Text>
      <P3>
        <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
        <P3para>
          <Text>that person acts to ensure that, once a wild mammal is found or emerges from cover, it is
shot, or killed by a bird of prey, as soon as possible;</Text>
        </P3para>
      </P3>
    <P3>
      <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>where a firearm or shotgun is used, that person holds a valid firearms or shotgun
certificate or a valid visitor's firearm or shot gun permit; and</Text>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
  <P3>
    <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
    <P3para>
      <Text>where a wild mammal is shot and injured, that person takes all reasonable steps to
retrieve it and, once retrieved, to kill it as humanely as possible.</Text>
    </P3para>
  </P3>
</P1para>
</P1>
</Plgroup>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

**Example image****3 Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting**

Where an occupier of land (or a person acting with the occupier's permission) is using a bird of prey, or a firearm or shotgun, for the purpose of sport, that person does not commit an offence under section 1(1) by using a dog under control to stalk a wild mammal, or flush it from cover above ground, for the purpose of providing quarry for the sport, but only if—

- (a) that person acts to ensure that, once a wild mammal is found or emerges from cover, it is shot, or killed by a bird of prey, as soon as possible;
- (b) where a firearm or shotgun is used, that person holds a valid firearms or shotgun certificate or a valid visitor's firearm or shot gun permit; and
- (c) where a wild mammal is shot and injured, that person takes all reasonable steps to retrieve it and, once retrieved, to kill it as humanely as possible.

**Example code**

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Arrest, search and seizure</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>7</Pnumber>
    <Plpara>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>A constable who suspects with reasonable cause that a person has committed or is
committing an offence under this Act may without warrant—</Text>
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <Text>arrest that person;</Text>
            </P3para>
          </P3>
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <Text>stop and search that person, if the constable suspects with reasonable cause that
evidence in connection with the offence is to be found on that person;</Text>
            </P3para>
          </P3>
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <Text>search or examine a vehicle, animal or article which appears to belong to, or be in
the possession or control of, that person, if the constable suspects with reasonable cause that
evidence in connection with the offence is to be found in or on it;</Text>
            </P3para>
          </P3>
        </P2>
      </P1>
    </Plpara>
  </P1>
</Plgroup>
```

```

    <P3>
      <Pnumber>d</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>seize and detain for the purpose of proceedings under this Act a vehicle, animal or
        article which may be evidence in connection with the offence or which may be made the subject of an
        order under Part II of the Proceeds of Crime (Scotland) Act <Citation id="c00001" Class="ukpga"
        Year="1995" Number="0043">1995 (c. 43)</Citation>.</Text>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
  </P2para>
</P2>
<P2>
  <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
  <P2para>
    <Text>A vehicle, animal or article seized under subsection (1)(d) above shall be returned to
    the person from whom it was seized as soon as any proceedings under this Act are concluded without
    the conviction of the person accused.</Text>
  </P2para>
</P2>
<P2>
  <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
  <P2para>
    <Text>A constable may enter land (but not a dwelling house) in order to exercise a power given
    by subsection (1).</Text>
  </P2para>
</P2>
</P1para>
</P1>
</P1group>

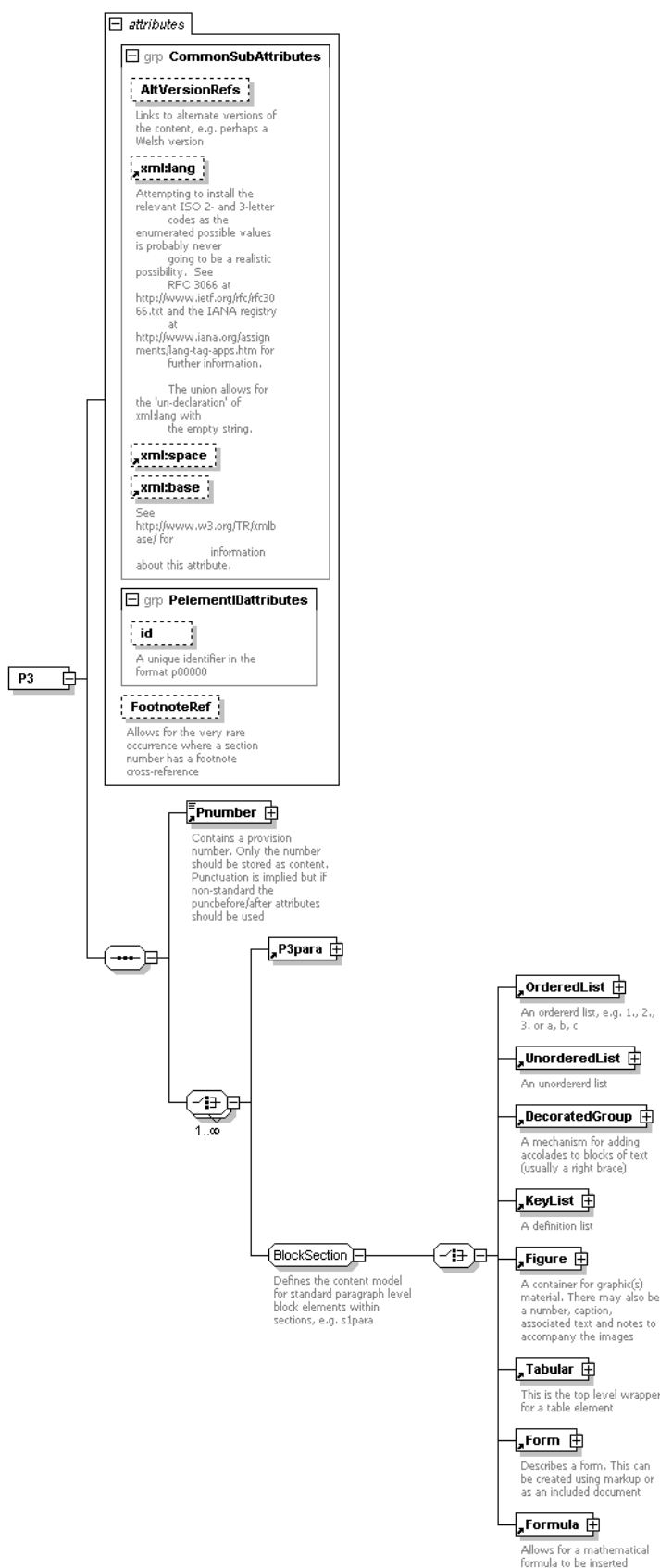
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

## Example image

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>7</b></p> <p>(1)</p> <p>(a)</p> <p>(b)</p> <p>(c)</p> <p>(d)</p> <p>(2)</p> <p>(3)</p> | <p><b>Arrest, search and seizure</b></p> <p>A constable who suspects with reasonable cause that a person has committed or is committing an offence under this Act may without warrant—</p> <p>arrest that person;</p> <p>stop and search that person, if the constable suspects with reasonable cause that evidence in connection with the offence is to be found on that person;</p> <p>search or examine a vehicle, animal or article which appears to belong to, or be in the possession or control of, that person, if the constable suspects with reasonable cause that evidence in connection with the offence is to be found in or on it;</p> <p>seize and detain for the purpose of proceedings under this Act a vehicle, animal or article which may be evidence in connection with the offence or which may be made the subject of an order under <b>Part II</b> of the <b>Proceeds of Crime (Scotland) Act 1995 (c.43)</b>.</p> <p>A vehicle, animal or article seized under subsection (1)(d) above shall be returned to the person from whom it was seized as soon as any proceedings under this Act are concluded without the conviction of the person accused.</p> <p>A constable may enter land (but not a dwelling house) in order to exercise a power given by subsection (1).</p> |
|--|--|

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Pnumber P3para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula**

used by	elements complexType group	<b>BlockAmendment Form P P1para P2para P3group</b> <b>BlockExtractStructure</b> <b>TableCellLocal</b>			
attributes	Name AltVersionRefs lang space base id FootnoteRef	Type <b>xsd:IDREFS</b>   <b>derived by: xsd:ID</b> <b>xsd:IDREFS</b>	Use	Default	Fixed
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="P3"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Pnumber"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P3para"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:group ref="BlockSection"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="FootnoteRef" type="xsd:IDREFS"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Allows for the very rare occurrence where a section number has a footnote cross- reference&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## P3group

A container for <P3> elements. A <P3group> has a title that groups together the child elements in a logical manner.

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Non-registration test</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
    <Plpara>
      <P2group>
        <Title>Induction meters</Title>
        <P2>
          <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
          <P2para>
            <Text>Induction meters shall be tested to ensure that when the current circuits are open and a
voltage of 110 per cent. of the declared system voltage is applied to the voltage circuits, rotors
cease to rotate before completing one revolution.</Text>
          </P2para>
        </P2>
      </P2group>
    </P1para>
  </P1>
  <P2group>
    <Title>Static meters</Title>
    <P2>
      <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
      <P2para>
        <Text>Static meters shall be tested for non-registration by one of the following methods—
</Text>
        <P3group>
          <Title>Method 1</Title>
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <P4>
                <Pnumber>i</Pnumber>
                <P4para>
                  <Text>When subjected to the test conditions specified in paragraph 2(1), the meter
shall not emit more than one output pulse over the minimum test period determined in paragraph
(ii);</Text>
                </P4para>
              </P4>
            </P3para>
          </P3>
          <P4>
            <Pnumber>ii</Pnumber>
            <P4para>
              <Text>the minimum test period shall be computed by the formula—</Text>
              <Formula>
                <math xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">
                  <mrow>
                    <mi style="font-style: normal">t</mi>
                    <mo>&gt;=</mo>
                    <mfrac>
                      <mrow>
                        <mn>480</mn>
                        <mo>*</mo>
                        <msup>
                          <mn>10</mn>
                          <mn>6</mn>
                        </msup>
                      </mrow>
                    </mfrac>
                  </mrow>
                </math>
              </Formula>
            </P4para>
          </P4>
        </P3group>
      </P2para>
    </P2>
  </P2group>
</Plgroup>
```

```

        <mrow>
          <mi style="font-style: normal">k</mi>
          <mo>.</mo>
          <mi style="font-style: normal">m</mi>
          <mo>.</mo>
          <mi style="font-style: normal">V</mi>
          <mo>.</mo>
          <mi style="font-style: normal">Im</mi>
        </mrow>
      </mfrac>
      <mtext>minutes</mtext>
    </mrow>
  </math>
  <Where>
    <Para>
      <Text>where</Text>
      <KeyList separator="">
        <KeyListItem>
          <Key>t</Key>
          <ListItem>
            <Para><Text>minimum test period</Text></Para>
          </ListItem>
        </KeyListItem>
        <KeyListItem>
          <Key>k</Key>
          <ListItem>
            <Para><Text>number of pulses per kWh emitted by the meter</Text></Para>
          </ListItem>
        </KeyListItem>
        <KeyListItem>
          <Key>m</Key>
          <ListItem>
            <Para><Text>number of elements</Text></Para>
          </ListItem>
        </KeyListItem>
        <KeyListItem>
          <Key>V</Key>
          <ListItem>
            <Para><Text>declared system voltage</Text></Para>
          </ListItem>
        </KeyListItem>
        <KeyListItem>
          <Key>Im</Key>
          <ListItem>
            <Para><Text>maximum rated current.</Text></Para>
          </ListItem>
        </KeyListItem>
      </KeyList>
    </Para>
  </Where>
</Formula>
</P4para>
<P4para>
  <Text>For transformer-operated meters, k and Im must either both relate to primary
  values or both relate to secondary values.</Text>
</P4para>
</P4>
</P3para>
</P3>
</P3group>
<P3group>
  <Title>Method 2</Title>
  <P3>
    <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
  </P3para>

```

<Text>When static meters are fitted with inhibiting circuits, they may be tested for non-registration with a current which is less than the threshold current in respect of a meter of that type and at a voltage of 100 per cent. of the declared system voltage of the meters under test. Meters shall not emit more than one output pulse over the minimum test period determined as follows-</Text>

```
<Formula>
  <math xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">
    <mrow>
      <mi style="font-style: normal">t</mi>
      <mo>=</mo>
      <mfrac>
        <mrow>
          <mn>12600</mn>
        </mrow>
        <mrow>
          <mi style="font-style: normal">V</mi>
          <mo>×</mo>
          <mi style="font-style: normal">I</mi>
          <mo>×</mo>
          <mi style="font-style: normal">k</mi>
          <mo>×</mo>
          <mi style="font-style: normal">pf</mi>
        </mrow>
      </mfrac>
      <mtext>minutes</mtext>
    </mrow>
  </math>
  <Where>
    <Para>
      <Text>where</Text>
      <KeyList separator="=">
        <KeyListItem>
          <Key>t</Key>
          <ListItem>
            <Para><Text>minimum test period</Text></Para>
          </ListItem>
        </KeyListItem>
        <KeyListItem>
          <Key>V</Key>
          <ListItem>
            <Para><Text>declared system voltage</Text></Para>
          </ListItem>
        </KeyListItem>
        <KeyListItem>
          <Key>I</Key>
          <ListItem>
            <Para><Text>total current of all phases</Text></Para>
          </ListItem>
        </KeyListItem>
        <KeyListItem>
          <Key>k</Key>
          <ListItem>
            <Para><Text>number of pulses emitted per kWh by the meter</Text></Para>
          </ListItem>
        </KeyListItem>
        <KeyListItem>
          <Key>pf</Key>
          <ListItem>
            <Para>
              <Text>power factor.</Text>
            </Para>
          </ListItem>
        </KeyListItem>
      </KeyList>
    </Para>
  </Where>
</Formula>
</P3para>
</P3>
```



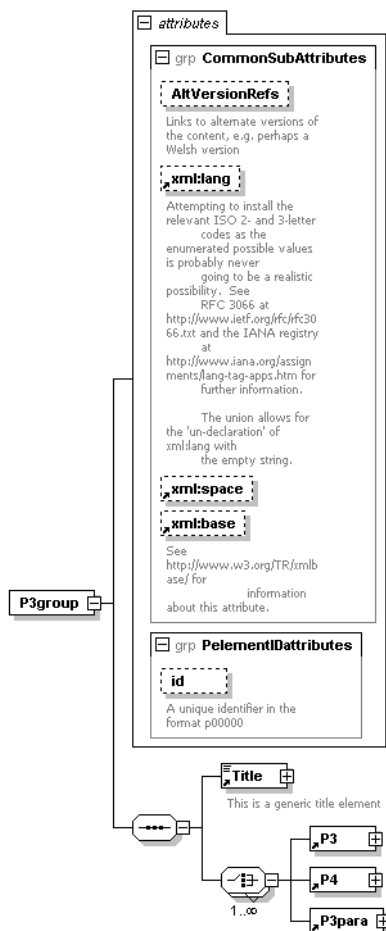
```

</P3group>
<P3group>
  <Title>Method 3</Title>
  <P3>
    <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
    <P3para>
      <Text>The period calculated for method 1 or method 2 may be halved if the meters under
test do not emit any output pulses during the period of the test.</Text>
    </P3para>
  </P3>
</P3group>
</P2para>
</P2>
</P2group>
</P1para>
</P1>
</P1group>

```

Ref: UKSI 1998 1566

diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children Title P3 P4 P3para

used by elements BlockAmendment Form P P1para P2para  
 complexType BlockExtractStructure  
 group TableCellLocal

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			

```
source <xsd:element name="P3group">
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="Title"/>
      <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:element ref="P3"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P4"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P3para"/>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## P3para

A paragraph of text within a <P3> element.

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
      <Text>Where an occupier of land (or a person acting with the occupier's permission) is using a
bird of prey, or a firearm or shotgun, for the purpose of sport, that person does not commit an
offence under section 1(1) by using a dog under control to stalk a wild mammal, or flush it from
cover above ground, for the purpose of providing quarry for the sport, but only if—</Text>
      <P3>
        <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
        <P3para>
          <Text>that person acts to ensure that, once a wild mammal is found or emerges from cover, it is
shot, or killed by a bird of prey, as soon as possible;</Text>
        </P3para>
      </P3>
    </P3>
    <P3>
      <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>where a firearm or shotgun is used, that person holds a valid firearms or shotgun
certificate or a valid visitor's firearm or shot gun permit; and</Text>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
    <P3>
      <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>where a wild mammal is shot and injured, that person takes all reasonable steps to
retrieve it and, once retrieved, to kill it as humanely as possible.</Text>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
  </P1para>
</P1>
</Plgroup>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

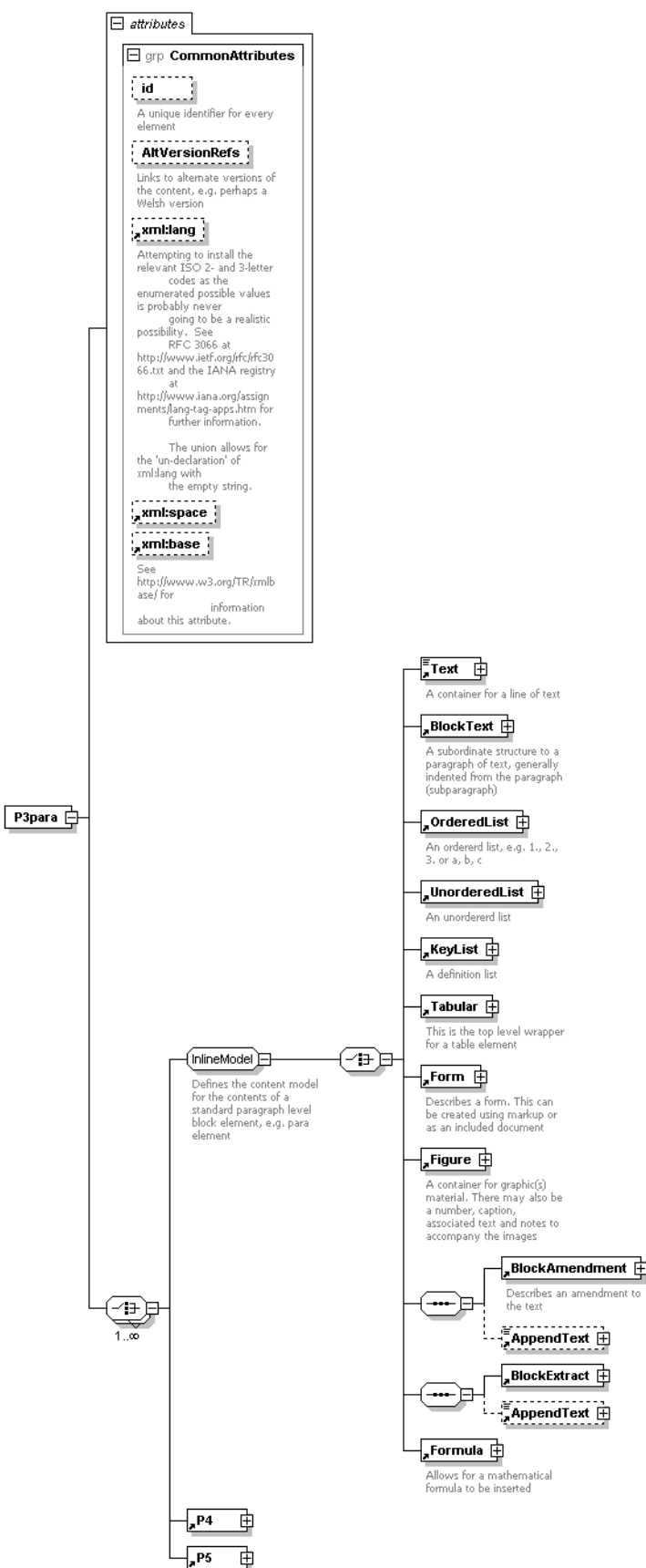
### Example image

#### 3 Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting

Where an occupier of land (or a person acting with the occupier's permission) is using a bird of prey, or a firearm or shotgun, for the purpose of sport, that person does not commit an offence under section 1(1) by using a dog under control to stalk a wild mammal, or flush it from cover above ground, for the purpose of providing quarry for the sport, but only if—

- (a) that person acts to ensure that, once a wild mammal is found or emerges from cover, it is shot, or killed by a bird of prey, as soon as possible;
- (b) where a firearm or shotgun is used, that person holds a valid firearms or shotgun certificate or a valid visitor's firearm or shot gun permit; and
- (c) where a wild mammal is shot and injured, that person takes all reasonable steps to retrieve it and, once retrieved, to kill it as humanely as possible.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>  
 properties content complex

children	<b>Text BlockText OrderedList UnorderedList KeyList Tabular Form Figure BlockAmendment AppendText BlockExtract Formula P4 P5</b>				
used by	elements	<b>BlockAmendment Form P3 P3group</b>			
	complexType	<b>BlockExtractStructure</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="P3para"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineModel"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P4"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P5"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## P4

A level 4 provision/paragraph.

### id

A unique identifier for the element. The format of this identifier should be pxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, p00010, p01353.

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Payment and amount of grants</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>Subject to the following provisions of this Scheme, the Secretary of State may make to
any person one or more grants representing 40 per cent. of the expenditure to be incurred by him for
the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business, being expenditure
incurred after 16th April 2003 but before 31st October 2005 and which—</Text>
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <Text>is incurred in respect of—</Text>
              <P4>
                <Pnumber>i</Pnumber>
                <P4para>
                  <Text>the provision, replacement or improvement of—</Text>
                  <P5>
                    <Pnumber>aa</Pnumber>
                    <P5para>
                      <Text>facilities (including safety fencing) for the handling and storage of manure,
slurry and silage effluent;</Text>
                    </P5para>
                  </P5>
                <P5>
                  <Pnumber>bb</Pnumber>
                  <P5para>
                    <Text>fixed disposal activities for slurry and silage effluent, or</Text>
                  </P5para>
                </P5>
              <P5>
                <Pnumber>cc</Pnumber>
                <P5para>
                  <Text>facilities (other than roofing) for the separation of clean and dirty water,
where those facilities reduce the need to store slurry; or</Text>
                </P5para>
              </P5>
            </P4para>
          </P4>
        <P4>
          <Pnumber>ii</Pnumber>
          <P4para>
            <Text>any work, facility or transaction (including conservation or amenity works)
incidental to any matter in respect of which a grant may be made under the foregoing provisions of
this paragraph;</Text>
          </P4para>
        </P4>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
  </P1>
</P1>
```

```

    <P3>
      <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>appears to the Secretary of State to be of a capital nature or incurred in connection
with expenditure of a capital nature;</Text>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
  <P3>
    <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
    <P3para>
      <Text>is approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of a grant under this Scheme;
and</Text>
    </P3para>
  </P3>
  <P3>
    <Pnumber>d</Pnumber>
    <P3para>
      <Text>does not in aggregate exceed £85,000.</Text>
    </P3para>
  </P3>
</P2para>
</P2>
<P2>
  <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
  <P2para>
    <Text>Where it appears to the Secretary of State that expenditure, in respect of which an
application is made for a grant under sub-paragraph (1), is to be incurred partly for the purposes of
or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business and partly for other purposes she
may treat as being incurred for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an
agricultural business so much of that expenditure as appears to her to be referable to the carrying
on of that agricultural business.</Text>
  </P2para>
</P2>
</P1para>
</P1>
</Plgroup>

```

Ref: SI 2003 0562

## Example image

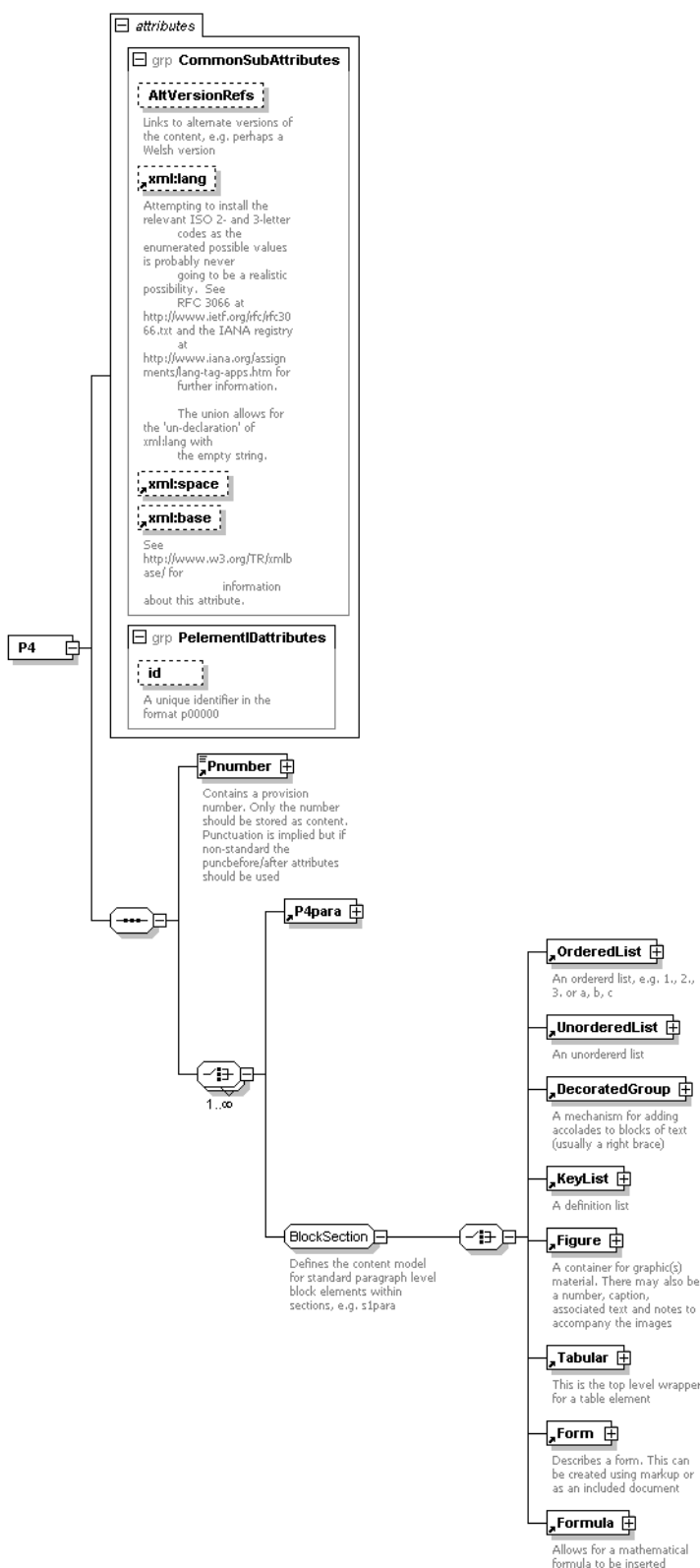
### Payment and amount of grants

3.—(1) Subject to the following provisions of this Scheme, the Secretary of State may make to any person one or more grants representing 40 per cent. of the expenditure to be incurred by him for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business, being expenditure incurred after 16th April 2003 but before 31st October 2005 and which—

- (a) is incurred in respect of—
  - (i) the provision, replacement or improvement of—
    - (aa) facilities (including safety fencing) for the handling and storage of manure, slurry and silage effluent;
    - (bb) fixed disposal activities for slurry and silage effluent, or
    - (cc) facilities (other than roofing) for the separation of clean and dirty water, where those facilities reduce the need to store slurry; or
  - (ii) any work, facility or transaction (including conservation or amenity works) incidental to any matter in respect of which a grant may be made under the foregoing provisions of this paragraph;
- (b) appears to the Secretary of State to be of a capital nature or incurred in connection with expenditure of a capital nature;
- (c) is approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of a grant under this Scheme; and
- (d) does not in aggregate exceed £85,000.

(2) Where it appears to the Secretary of State that expenditure, in respect of which an application is made for a grant under sub-paragraph (1), is to be incurred partly for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business and partly for other purposes she may treat as being incurred for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business so much of that expenditure as appears to her to be referable to the carrying on of that agricultural business.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Pnumber P4para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula**

used by elements **BlockAmendment Form P P1para P2para P3group P3para**  
complexType **BlockExtractStructure**  
group **TableCellLocal**



attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="P4"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Pnumber"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P4para"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:group ref="BlockSection"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## P4para

A paragraph of text within a <P4> element.

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Payment and amount of grants</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>Subject to the following provisions of this Scheme, the Secretary of State may make to
any person one or more grants representing 40 per cent. of the expenditure to be incurred by him for
the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business, being expenditure
incurred after 16th April 2003 but before 31st October 2005 and which-</Text>
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <Text>is incurred in respect of-</Text>
              <P4>
                <Pnumber>i</Pnumber>
                <P4para>
                  <Text>the provision, replacement or improvement of-</Text>
                  <P5>
                    <Pnumber>aa</Pnumber>
                    <P5para>
                      <Text>facilities (including safety fencing) for the handling and storage of manure,
slurry and silage effluent;</Text>
                    </P5para>
                  </P5>
                <P5>
                  <Pnumber>bb</Pnumber>
                  <P5para>
                    <Text>fixed disposal activities for slurry and silage effluent, or</Text>
                  </P5para>
                </P5>
              <P5>
                <Pnumber>cc</Pnumber>
                <P5para>
                  <Text>facilities (other than roofing) for the separation of clean and dirty water,
where those facilities reduce the need to store slurry; or</Text>
                </P5para>
              </P5>
            </P4para>
          </P4>
        <P4>
          <Pnumber>ii</Pnumber>
          <P4para>
            <Text>any work, facility or transaction (including conservation or amenity works)
incidental to any matter in respect of which a grant may be made under the foregoing provisions of
this paragraph;</Text>
          </P4para>
        </P4>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
  <P3>
    <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
    <P3para>
      <Text>appears to the Secretary of State to be of a capital nature or incurred in connection
with expenditure of a capital nature;</Text>
    </P3para>
  </P3>
</Plgroup>
```

```

    <P3>
      <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>is approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of a grant under this Scheme;
and</Text>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
  <P3>
    <Pnumber>d</Pnumber>
    <P3para>
      <Text>does not in aggregate exceed £85,000.</Text>
    </P3para>
  </P3>
</P2para>
</P2>
<P2>
  <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
  <P2para>
    <Text>Where it appears to the Secretary of State that expenditure, in respect of which an
application is made for a grant under sub-paragraph (1), is to be incurred partly for the purposes of
or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business and partly for other purposes she
may treat as being incurred for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an
agricultural business so much of that expenditure as appears to her to be referable to the carrying
on of that agricultural business.</Text>
  </P2para>
</P2>
</P1para>
</P1>
</P1group>

```

Ref: SI 2003 0562

## Example image

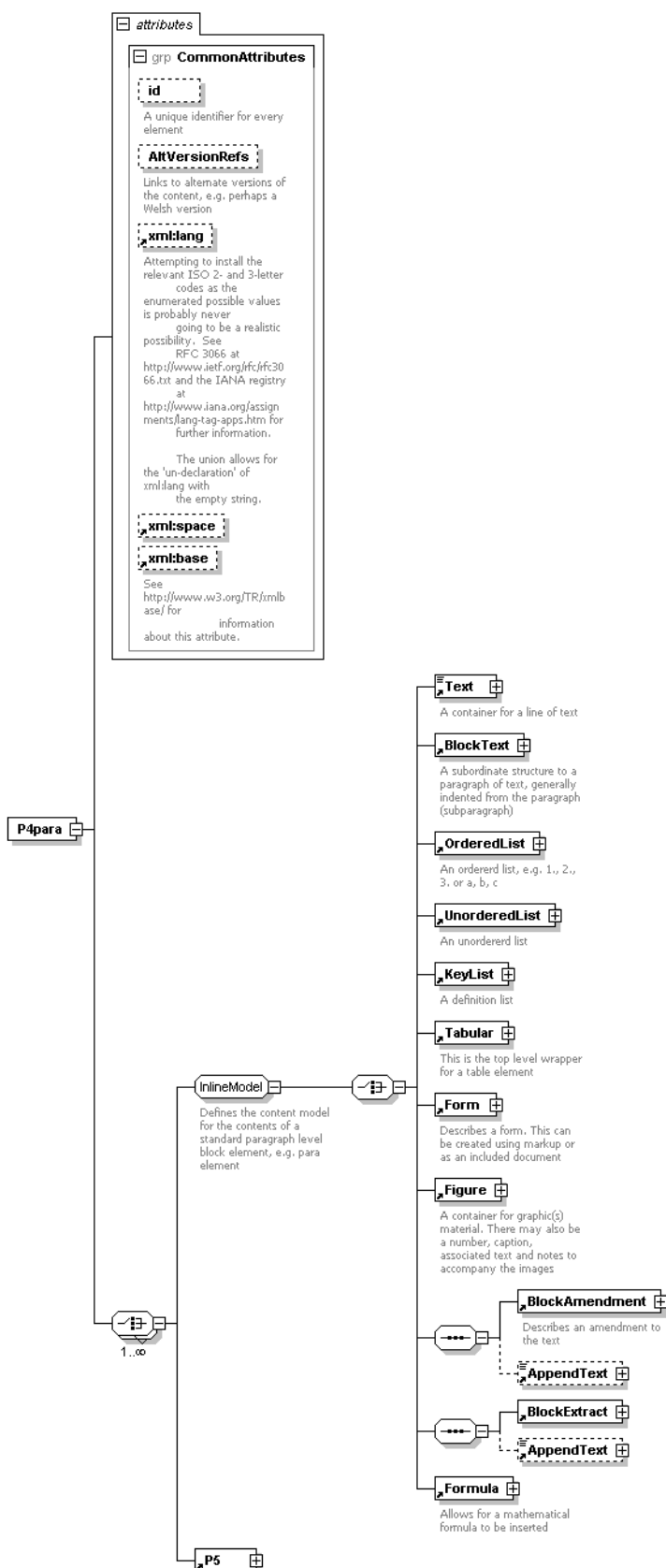
### Payment and amount of grants

**3.—**(1) Subject to the following provisions of this Scheme, the Secretary of State may make to any person one or more grants representing 40 per cent. of the expenditure to be incurred by him for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business, being expenditure incurred after 16th April 2003 but before 31st October 2005 and which—

- (a) is incurred in respect of—
  - (i) the provision, replacement or improvement of—
    - (aa) facilities (including safety fencing) for the handling and storage of manure, slurry and silage effluent;
    - (bb) fixed disposal activities for slurry and silage effluent, or
    - (cc) facilities (other than roofing) for the separation of clean and dirty water, where those facilities reduce the need to store slurry; or
  - (ii) any work, facility or transaction (including conservation or amenity works) incidental to any matter in respect of which a grant may be made under the foregoing provisions of this paragraph;
- (b) appears to the Secretary of State to be of a capital nature or incurred in connection with expenditure of a capital nature;
- (c) is approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of a grant under this Scheme; and
- (d) does not in aggregate exceed £85,000.

(2) Where it appears to the Secretary of State that expenditure, in respect of which an application is made for a grant under sub-paragraph (1), is to be incurred partly for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business and partly for other purposes she may treat as being incurred for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business so much of that expenditure as appears to her to be referable to the carrying on of that agricultural business.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>  
 properties content complex

children	<b>Text BlockText OrderedList UnorderedList KeyList Tabular Form Figure BlockAmendment AppendText BlockExtract Formula P5</b>				
used by	elements	<b>BlockAmendment Form P4</b>			
	complexType	<b>BlockExtractStructure</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="P4para"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineModel"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P5"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>			

## P5

A level 5 provision/paragraph.

### id

A unique identifier for the element. The format of this identifier should be pxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, p00010, p01353.

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Payment and amount of grants</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>Subject to the following provisions of this Scheme, the Secretary of State may make to
any person one or more grants representing 40 per cent. of the expenditure to be incurred by him for
the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business, being expenditure
incurred after 16th April 2003 but before 31st October 2005 and which-</Text>
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <Text>is incurred in respect of-</Text>
              <P4>
                <Pnumber>i</Pnumber>
                <P4para>
                  <Text>the provision, replacement or improvement of-</Text>
                  <P5>
                    <Pnumber>aa</Pnumber>
                    <P5para>
                      <Text>facilities (including safety fencing) for the handling and storage of manure,
slurry and silage effluent;</Text>
                    </P5para>
                  </P5>
                <P5>
                  <Pnumber>bb</Pnumber>
                  <P5para>
                    <Text>fixed disposal activities for slurry and silage effluent, or</Text>
                  </P5para>
                </P5>
              <P5>
                <Pnumber>cc</Pnumber>
                <P5para>
                  <Text>facilities (other than roofing) for the separation of clean and dirty water,
where those facilities reduce the need to store slurry; or</Text>
                </P5para>
              </P5>
            </P4para>
          </P4>
        <P4>
          <Pnumber>ii</Pnumber>
          <P4para>
            <Text>any work, facility or transaction (including conservation or amenity works)
incidental to any matter in respect of which a grant may be made under the foregoing provisions of
this paragraph;</Text>
          </P4para>
        </P4>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
  </P1>
</P1>
```

```

    <P3>
    <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
    <P3para>
    <Text>appears to the Secretary of State to be of a capital nature or incurred in connection
with expenditure of a capital nature;</Text>
    </P3para>
  </P3>
<P3>
  <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
  <P3para>
    <Text>is approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of a grant under this Scheme;
and</Text>
  </P3para>
</P3>
<P3>
  <Pnumber>d</Pnumber>
  <P3para>
    <Text>does not in aggregate exceed £85,000.</Text>
  </P3para>
</P3>
</P2para>
</P2>
<P2>
  <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
  <P2para>
    <Text>Where it appears to the Secretary of State that expenditure, in respect of which an
application is made for a grant under sub-paragraph (1), is to be incurred partly for the purposes of
or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business and partly for other purposes she
may treat as being incurred for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an
agricultural business so much of that expenditure as appears to her to be referable to the carrying
on of that agricultural business.</Text>
  </P2para>
</P2>
</P1para>
</P1>
</Plgroup>

```

Ref: SI 2003 0562

## Example image

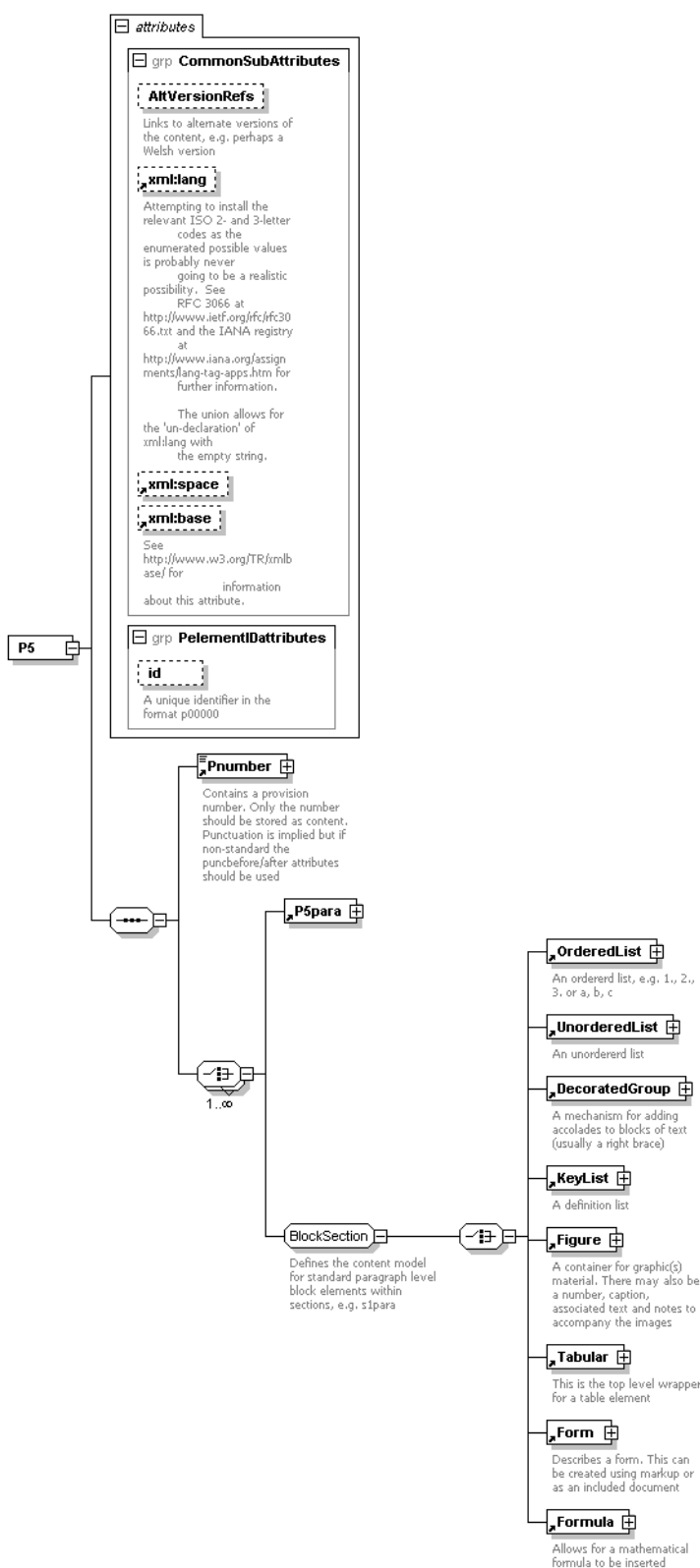
### Payment and amount of grants

3.—(1) Subject to the following provisions of this Scheme, the Secretary of State may make to any person one or more grants representing 40 per cent. of the expenditure to be incurred by him for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business, being expenditure incurred after 16th April 2003 but before 31st October 2005 and which—

- (a) is incurred in respect of—
  - (i) the provision, replacement or improvement of—
    - (aa) facilities (including safety fencing) for the handling and storage of manure, slurry and silage effluent;
    - (bb) fixed disposal activities for slurry and silage effluent, or
    - (cc) facilities (other than roofing) for the separation of clean and dirty water, where those facilities reduce the need to store slurry; or
  - (ii) any work, facility or transaction (including conservation or amenity works) incidental to any matter in respect of which a grant may be made under the foregoing provisions of this paragraph;
- (b) appears to the Secretary of State to be of a capital nature or incurred in connection with expenditure of a capital nature;
- (c) is approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of a grant under this Scheme; and
- (d) does not in aggregate exceed £85,000.

(2) Where it appears to the Secretary of State that expenditure, in respect of which an application is made for a grant under sub-paragraph (1), is to be incurred partly for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business and partly for other purposes she may treat as being incurred for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business so much of that expenditure as appears to her to be referable to the carrying on of that agricultural business.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Pnumber P5para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula**



used by	elements complexType group	BlockAmendment Form P2para P3para P4para BlockExtractStructure TableCellLocal				
attributes	Name AltVersionRefs lang space base id	Type xsd:IDREFS    derived by: xsd:ID	Use	Default	Fixed	
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="P5"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Pnumber"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P5para"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:group ref="BlockSection"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## P5para

A paragraph of text within a <P5> element.

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Payment and amount of grants</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>Subject to the following provisions of this Scheme, the Secretary of State may make to
any person one or more grants representing 40 per cent. of the expenditure to be incurred by him for
the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business, being expenditure
incurred after 16th April 2003 but before 31st October 2005 and which-</Text>
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <Text>is incurred in respect of-</Text>
              <P4>
                <Pnumber>i</Pnumber>
                <P4para>
                  <Text>the provision, replacement or improvement of-</Text>
                  <P5>
                    <Pnumber>aa</Pnumber>
                    <P5para>
                      <Text>facilities (including safety fencing) for the handling and storage of manure,
slurry and silage effluent;</Text>
                    </P5para>
                  </P5>
                </P5>
                <Pnumber>bb</Pnumber>
                <P5para>
                  <Text>fixed disposal activities for slurry and silage effluent, or</Text>
                </P5para>
              </P5>
            </P5>
            <Pnumber>cc</Pnumber>
            <P5para>
              <Text>facilities (other than roofing) for the separation of clean and dirty water,
where those facilities reduce the need to store slurry; or</Text>
            </P5para>
          </P5>
        </P4para>
      </P4>
    </P4>
    <Pnumber>ii</Pnumber>
    <P4para>
      <Text>any work, facility or transaction (including conservation or amenity works)
incidental to any matter in respect of which a grant may be made under the foregoing provisions of
this paragraph;</Text>
    </P4para>
  </P4>
</P3para>
</P3>
<P3>
  <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
  <P3para>
    <Text>appears to the Secretary of State to be of a capital nature or incurred in connection
with expenditure of a capital nature;</Text>
  </P3para>
</P3>
```

```

    <P3>
      <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>is approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of a grant under this Scheme;
and</Text>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
  <P3>
    <Pnumber>d</Pnumber>
    <P3para>
      <Text>does not in aggregate exceed £85,000.</Text>
    </P3para>
  </P3>
</P2para>
</P2>
<P2>
  <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
  <P2para>
    <Text>Where it appears to the Secretary of State that expenditure, in respect of which an
application is made for a grant under sub-paragraph (1), is to be incurred partly for the purposes of
or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business and partly for other purposes she
may treat as being incurred for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an
agricultural business so much of that expenditure as appears to her to be referable to the carrying
on of that agricultural business.</Text>
  </P2para>
</P2>
</P1para>
</P1>
</P1group>

```

Ref: SI 2003 0562

## Example image

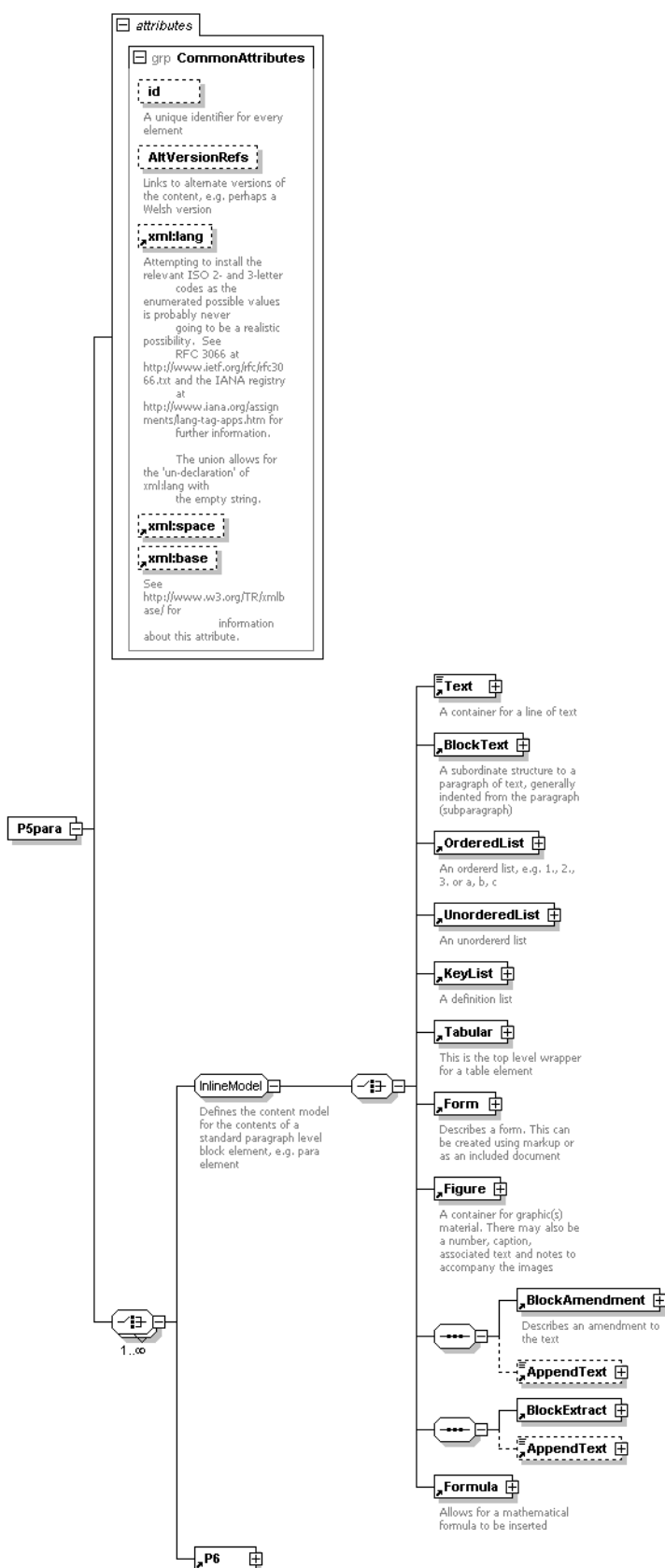
### Payment and amount of grants

**3.—**(1) Subject to the following provisions of this Scheme, the Secretary of State may make to any person one or more grants representing 40 per cent. of the expenditure to be incurred by him for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business, being expenditure incurred after 16th April 2003 but before 31st October 2005 and which—

- (a) is incurred in respect of—
  - (i) the provision, replacement or improvement of—
    - (aa) facilities (including safety fencing) for the handling and storage of manure, slurry and silage effluent;
    - (bb) fixed disposal activities for slurry and silage effluent, or
    - (cc) facilities (other than roofing) for the separation of clean and dirty water, where those facilities reduce the need to store slurry; or
  - (ii) any work, facility or transaction (including conservation or amenity works) incidental to any matter in respect of which a grant may be made under the foregoing provisions of this paragraph;
- (b) appears to the Secretary of State to be of a capital nature or incurred in connection with expenditure of a capital nature;
- (c) is approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of a grant under this Scheme; and
- (d) does not in aggregate exceed £85,000.

(2) Where it appears to the Secretary of State that expenditure, in respect of which an application is made for a grant under sub-paragraph (1), is to be incurred partly for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business and partly for other purposes she may treat as being incurred for the purposes of or in connection with the carrying on of an agricultural business so much of that expenditure as appears to her to be referable to the carrying on of that agricultural business.

diagram



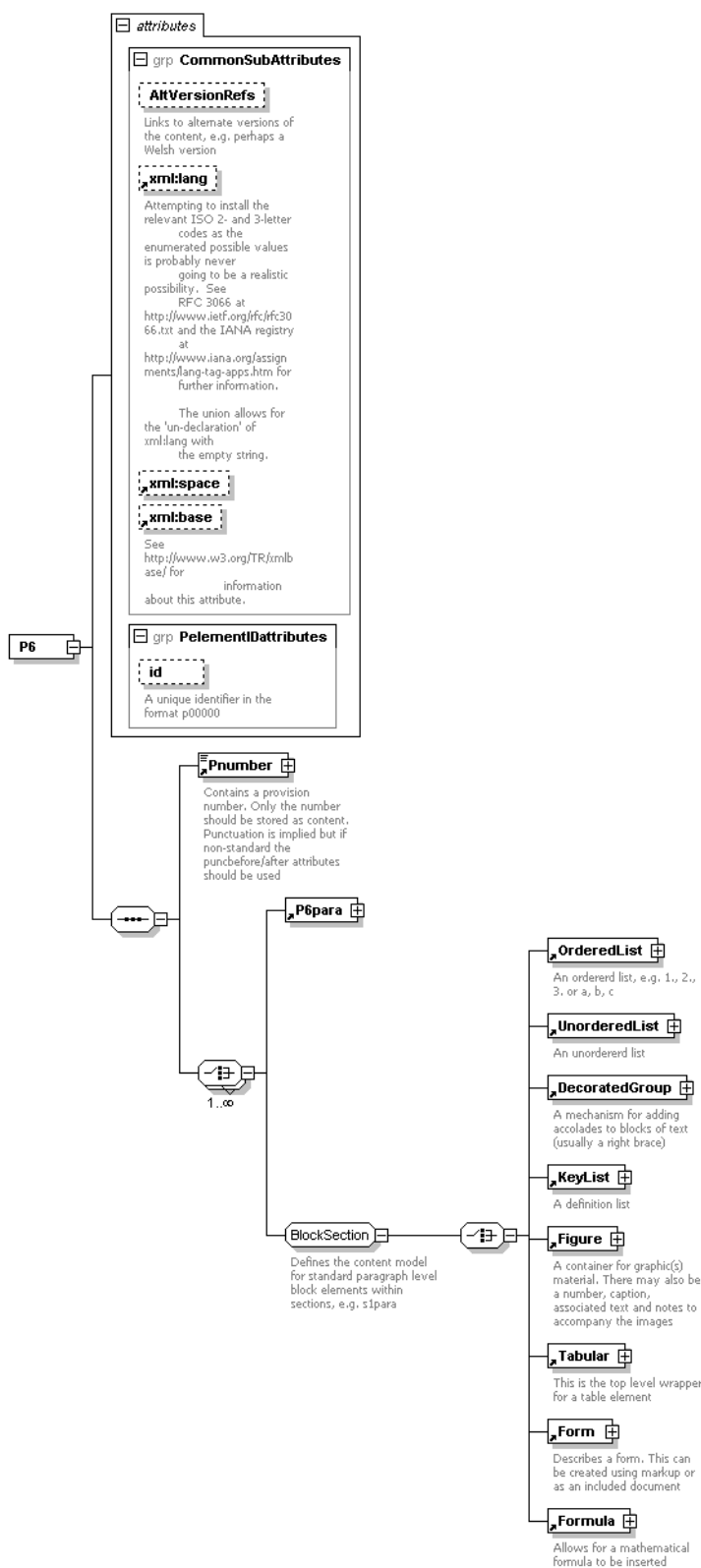
namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>  
 properties content complex

children	<b>Text BlockText OrderedList UnorderedList KeyList Tabular Form Figure BlockAmendment AppendText BlockExtract Formula P6</b>				
used by	elements	<b>BlockAmendment Form P5</b>			
	complexType	<b>BlockExtractStructure</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="P5para"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineModel"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="P6"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>			

## P6

A level 6 provision/paragraph.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children    **Pnumber P6para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula**

used by        elements    **BlockAmendment P5para**  
              complexType    **BlockExtractStructure**  
              group        **TableCellLocal**

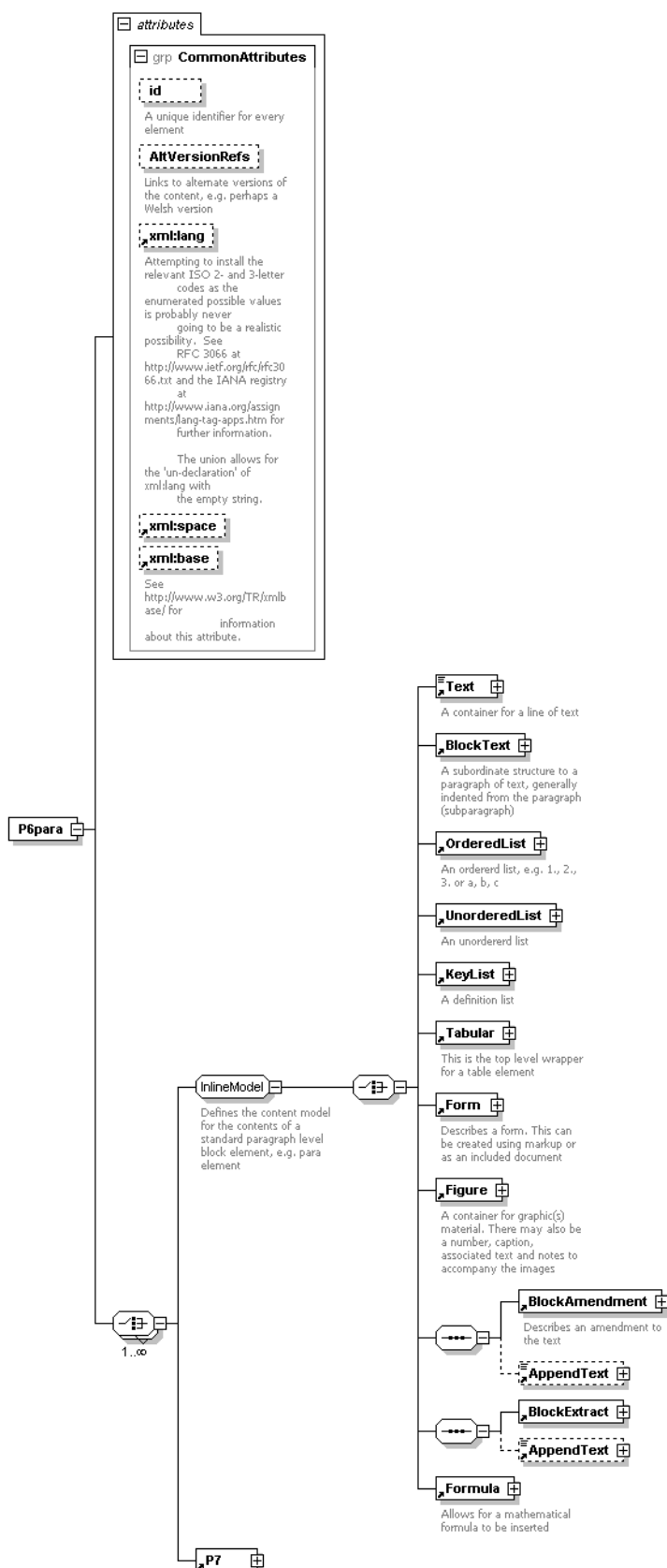
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			

source    <xsd:element name="P6">  
          <xsd:complexType>  
          <xsd:sequence>  
          <xsd:element ref="Pnumber"/>  
          <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">  
          <xsd:element ref="P6para"/>  
          <xsd:group ref="BlockSection"/>  
          </xsd:choice>  
          </xsd:sequence>  
          <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>  
          <xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/>  
          </xsd:complexType>  
          </xsd:element>

## P6para

A paragraph of text within a <P6> element.

diagram



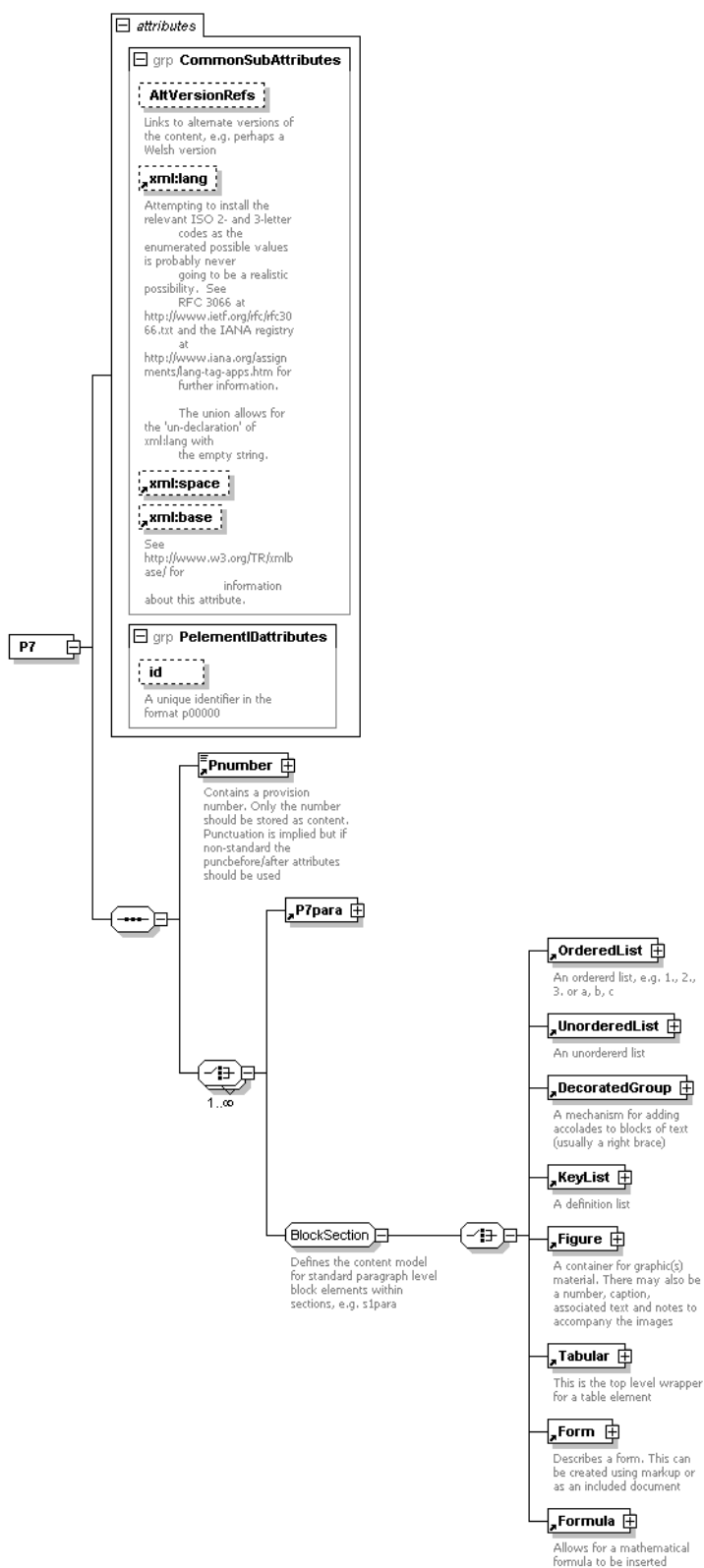


namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content    complex				
children	Text BlockText OrderedList UnorderedList KeyList Tabular Form Figure BlockAmendment AppendText BlockExtract Formula P7				
used by	elements	BlockAmendment P6			
	complexType	BlockExtractStructure			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<xsd:element name="P6para"> <xsd:complexType> <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"> <xsd:group ref="InlineModel"/> <xsd:element ref="P7"/> </xsd:choice> <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/> </xsd:complexType> </xsd:element>				

## P7

A level 7 provision/paragraph.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children    **Pnumber P7para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula**

used by        elements    **BlockAmendment P6para**  
              complexType    **BlockExtractStructure**  
              group        **TableCellLocal**

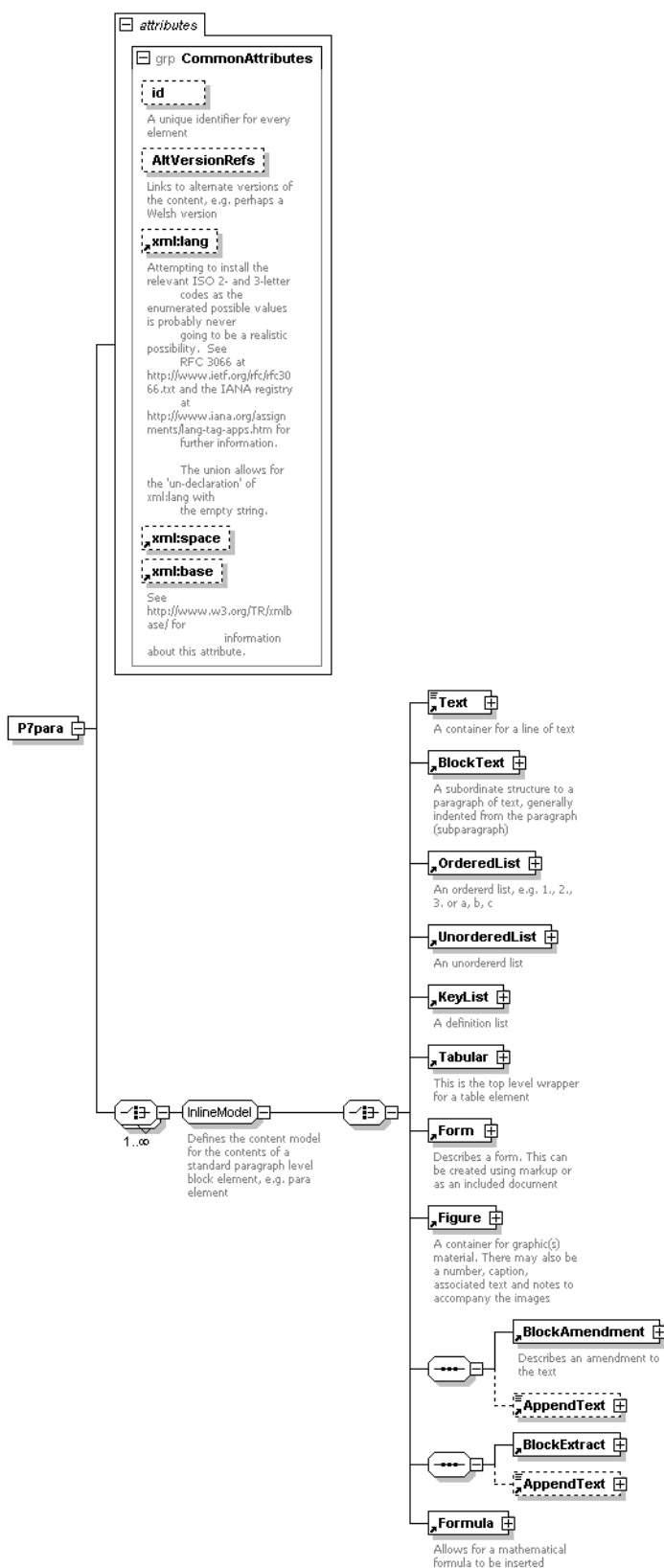
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			

source    <xsd:element name="P7">  
          <xsd:complexType>  
          <xsd:sequence>  
          <xsd:element ref="Pnumber"/>  
          <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">  
          <xsd:element ref="P7para"/>  
          <xsd:group ref="BlockSection"/>  
          </xsd:choice>  
          </xsd:sequence>  
          <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>  
          <xsd:attributeGroup ref="PelementIDattributes"/>  
          </xsd:complexType>  
          </xsd:element>

## P7para

A paragraph of text within a p7 element.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties	content	complex				
children	Text BlockText OrderedList UnorderedList KeyList Tabular Form Figure BlockAmendment AppendText BlockExtract Formula					
used by	elements	BlockAmendment P7				
	complexType	BlockExtractStructure				
attributes	Name	Type	Use		Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<xsd:element name="P7para"> <xsd:complexType> <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"> <xsd:group ref="InlineModel"/> </xsd:choice> <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/> </xsd:complexType> </xsd:element>					

### Pnumber

A paragraph/number provision.

### PuncBefore

Defines any punctuation characters that should be output before the number. The default is implicit.

### PuncAfter

Defines any punctuation characters that should be output after the number. The default is implicit.

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting</Title>
  <P1>
    <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
    <P1para>
      <Text>Where an occupier of land (or a person acting with the occupier's permission) is using a
bird of prey, or a firearm or shotgun, for the purpose of sport, that person does not commit an
offence under section 1(1) by using a dog under control to stalk a wild mammal, or flush it from
cover above ground, for the purpose of providing quarry for the sport, but only if—</Text>
      <P3>
        <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
        <P3para>
          <Text>that person acts to ensure that, once a wild mammal is found or emerges from cover, it is
shot, or killed by a bird of prey, as soon as possible;</Text>
        </P3para>
      </P3>
    <P3>
      <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>where a firearm or shotgun is used, that person holds a valid firearms or shotgun
certificate or a valid visitor's firearm or shot gun permit; and</Text>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
  <P3>
    <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
    <P3para>
      <Text>where a wild mammal is shot and injured, that person takes all reasonable steps to
retrieve it and, once retrieved, to kill it as humanely as possible.</Text>
    </P3para>
  </P3>
</P1para>
</P1>
</Plgroup>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

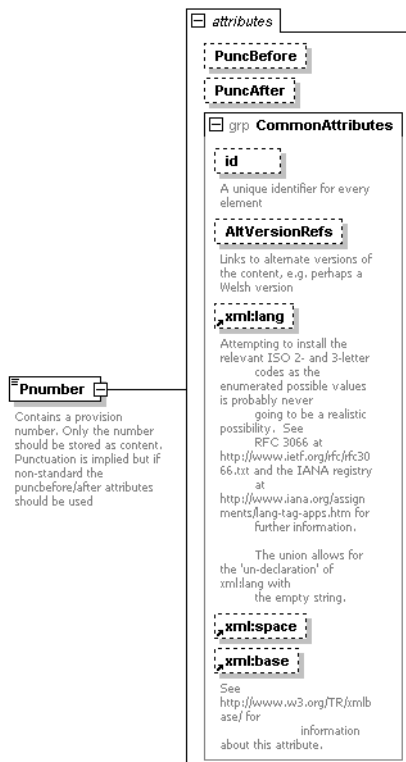
## Example image

**3 Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting**

Where an occupier of land (or a person acting with the occupier's permission) is using a bird of prey, or a firearm or shotgun, for the purpose of sport, that person does not commit an offence under section 1(1) by using a dog under control to stalk a wild mammal, or flush it from cover above ground, for the purpose of providing quarry for the sport, but only if—

- (a) that person acts to ensure that, once a wild mammal is found or emerges from cover, it is shot, or killed by a bird of prey, as soon as possible;
- (b) where a firearm or shotgun is used, that person holds a valid firearms or shotgun certificate or a valid visitor's firearm or shot gun permit; and
- (c) where a wild mammal is shot and injured, that person takes all reasonable steps to retrieve it and, once retrieved, to kill it as humanely as possible.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type extension of **SectionNo**

properties content complex

used by elements **P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6 P7**

facets minLength 1

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	PuncBefore	<b>xsd:string</b>			
	PuncAfter	<b>xsd:string</b>			
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="Pnumber"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Contains a provision number. Only the number should be stored as content.     Punctuation is implied but if non-standard the puncbefore/after attributes should be     used&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:simpleContent&gt;       &lt;xsd:extension base="SectionNo"&gt;         &lt;xsd:attribute name="PuncBefore" type="xsd:string"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:attribute name="PuncAfter" type="xsd:string"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:extension&gt;     &lt;/xsd:simpleContent&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				



## AppendText

In some circumstances this element may follow `<BlockAmendment>` element where the text runs on from the amendment.

### Example code

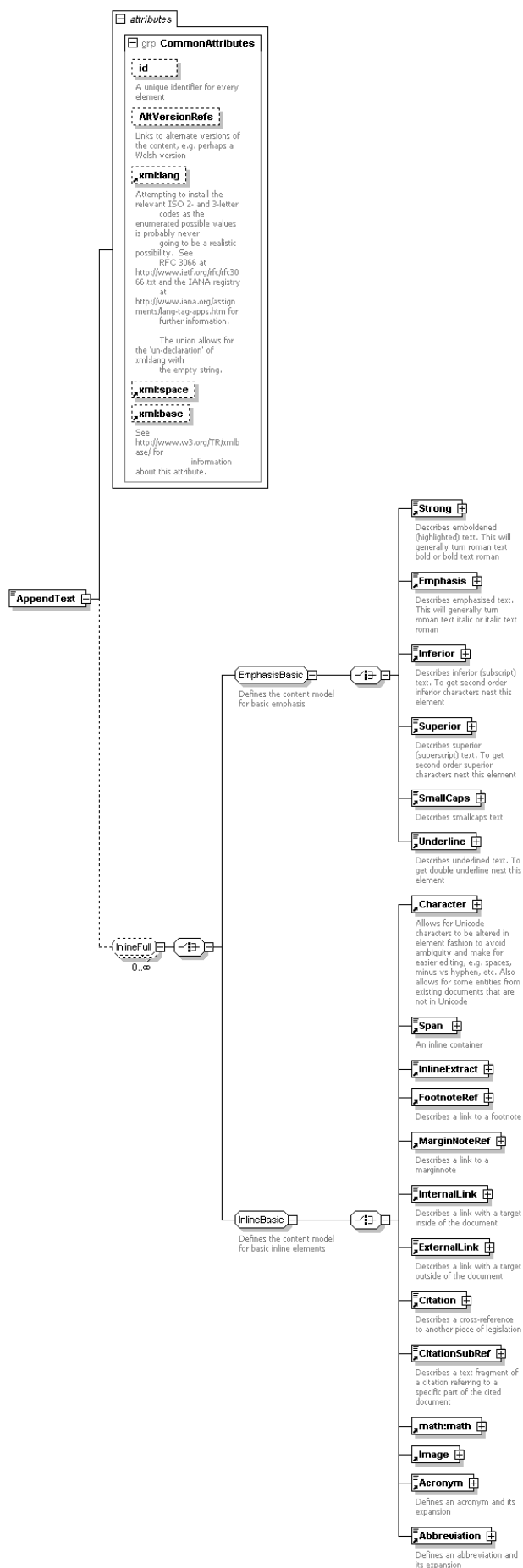
```
<P3>
  <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
  <P3para>
    <Text>in paragraph (2)—</Text>
    <P4>
      <Pnumber>i</Pnumber>
      <P4para>
        <Text>in sub-paragraph (a) the word "or" shall be deleted.</Text>
      </P4para>
    </P4>
    <P4>
      <Pnumber>ii</Pnumber>
      <P4para>
        <Text>in sub-paragraph (b) there shall be added at the end the word "or", and</Text>
      </P4para>
    </P4>
    <P4>
      <Pnumber>iii</Pnumber>
      <P4para>
        <Text>after sub-paragraph (b) there shall be inserted the following sub-paragraph—</Text>
        <BlockAmendment TargetClass="secondary" TargetSubClass="regulation" Context="main"
Format="default">
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <Text>that the content of the water is not in accordance with paragraph 2(c) in Part I or,
as the case may be, paragraph 2(c) in Part II, of Schedule 1,</Text>
            </P3para>
          </P3>
        </BlockAmendment>
        <AppendText>;</AppendText>
      </P4para>
    </P4>
  </P3para>
</P3>
```

Ref: 2003 0666

### Example image

<p>(a) for sub-paragraph (a), there shall be substituted the following sub-paragraphs—</p> <p>    “(a) the water does not contain—</p> <p>        (i) any micro-organism (other than a parameter) or parasite, or</p> <p>        (ii) any property, element or substance (other than a parameter),</p> <p>    at a concentration or value which would constitute a potential danger to human health;</p> <p>    (aA) the water does not contain any substance (whether or not a parameter) at a concentration or value which, in conjunction with any other property, element, substance or organism it contains (whether or not a parameter), would constitute a potential danger to human health;”;</p>
---

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content mixed	complex true				
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation</b>					
used by	element complexType groups	<b>BlockAmendment BlockExtractStructure InlineModel InlineModel</b>				
attributes	Name id AltVersionRefs lang space base	Type <b>derived by: xsd:ID xsd:IDREFS</b>	Use	Default	Fixed	
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="AppendText"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineFull" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## BlockText

This element encapsulates the concept of text that is subordinate to a paragraph. This text will generally be indented more on the left than the paragraph that contains it. There is a subtle but significant difference between a `<BlockText>` element and an `<UnorderedList>` element: it comes down to the semantics of the text rather than how the text looks.

### Example code

```
<P1>
  <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
  <P1para>
    <Text>The following countries are hereby designated for the purposes of section 323 of the Income
and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 and section 11(1) of the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992</Text>
    <BlockText>
      <Para>
        <Text>Armenia, Austria, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Finland, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, the
Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, Moldova, Russia, Switzerland, Turkmenistan, Ukraine, and
Uzbekistan.</Text>
      </Para>
    </BlockText>
  </P1para>
</P1>
```

Ref: UKSI 1998 1514

```
<ExplanatoryNotes>
  <Title>Explanatory Note</Title>
  <Comment>
    <Para>
      <Text>(This note is not part of the Regulations)</Text>
    </Para>
  </Comment>
  <P>
    <Text>These Regulations replace provisions of the National Health Service (General Medical
Services) Regulations 1992 ("the GMS Regulations") relating to the right (which is now enshrined in
section 28F of the National Health Service Act 1977 ("the 1977 Act")) of any person to choose the
doctor from whom he is to receive primary medical services. These Regulations make provision in
relation to both doctors who provide general medical services under Part II of the 1977 Act, and
doctors who perform personal medical services in connection with a pilot scheme under section 1(1) of
the National Health Service (Primary Care) Act 1997.</Text>
  </P>
  <P>
    <Text>The Regulations specify the procedures for applying to be included in a doctor's list of
patients (regulation 2) and for changing doctor (regulation 3). They also make provision for
temporary residents, who are not included in the list of a doctor in the vicinity of the place where
they are presently residing, to choose the doctor by whom they are to be treated (regulation 7). They
confirm that a person who has chosen a particular doctor will, in certain circumstances, continue to
be included in that doctor's list of patients if the doctor transfers from the provision of general
medical services to the performance of personal medical services or <Emphasis>vice versa</Emphasis>
(regulation 8).</Text>
  </P>
  <P>
    <Text>The Regulations make provision for assignment to a doctor of persons who have not chosen a
doctor, or who have not been accepted for inclusion in the list of the doctor of their choice. A
Health Authority is required either to assign such a person to a doctor who provides general medical
services in its area, or to require a person who provides piloted services ("a pilot scheme
provider") to make an assignment to a doctor who performs personal medical services under the pilot
scheme in question. The Regulations set out the matters to which the Health Authority or, as the case
may be, the pilot scheme provider must have regard in making or requiring an assignment, and
specifies circumstances in which an assignment may not be made to a particular doctor (regulations 4
and 5). They also provide for a doctor providing general medical services and a pilot scheme provider
to make representations to the Health Authority about an assignment or, as the case may be, a
requirement to assign a person to a doctor performing personal medical services (regulation 6).</Text>
  </P>
```

<P>

<Text>The Directions to Health Authorities Concerning Patient Lists (Personal Medical Services) and the Directions to Health Authorities Concerning the Implementation of Pilot Schemes (Personal Medical Services) which are referred to in these Regulations can be obtained from:</Text>

<BlockText>

<Para>

<Text>Primary Care Division</Text>

<Text>Primary Care Act—Personal Medical Services Pilots</Text>

<Text>Room 7E60</Text>

<Text>NHS Executive Headquarters</Text>

<Text>Quarry House</Text>

<Text>Quarry Hill</Text>

<Text>Leeds LS2 7UE.</Text>

</Para>

</BlockText>

</P>

<P>

<Text>These Regulations impose no costs on business.</Text>

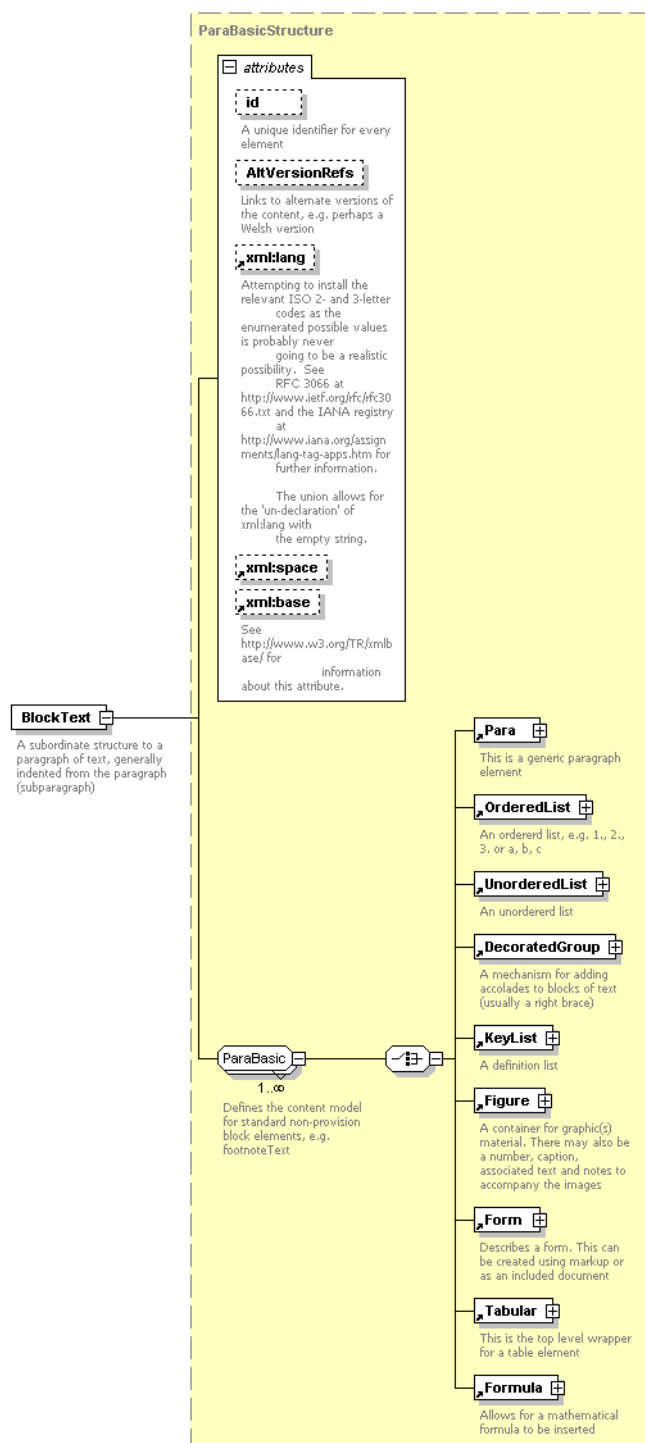
</P>

</ExplanatoryNotes>

Ref: SI 1998 0668

## Example code

diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>type **ParaBasicStructure**

properties content complex

children **Para** **OrderedList** **UnorderedList** **DecoratedGroup** **KeyList** **Figure** **Form** **Tabular** **Formula**used by group **InlineModel**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="BlockText" type="ParaBasicStructure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A subordinate structure to a paragraph of text, generally indented from the     paragraph (subparagraph)&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

### Span

This is a general-purpose inline container. Its main uses are:

- to serve as an anchor for an `<InternalLink>` to provide character accurate linking
- to allow for language information to be added. For example if there is a fragment of Welsh the span element can use the `xml:lang` attribute to describe the language of the content, therefore allowing all the benefits that can be provided by this such as localised spellchecking.
- to act as a container of inline content when an alternate version is available (for example a graphical version of inline MathML)

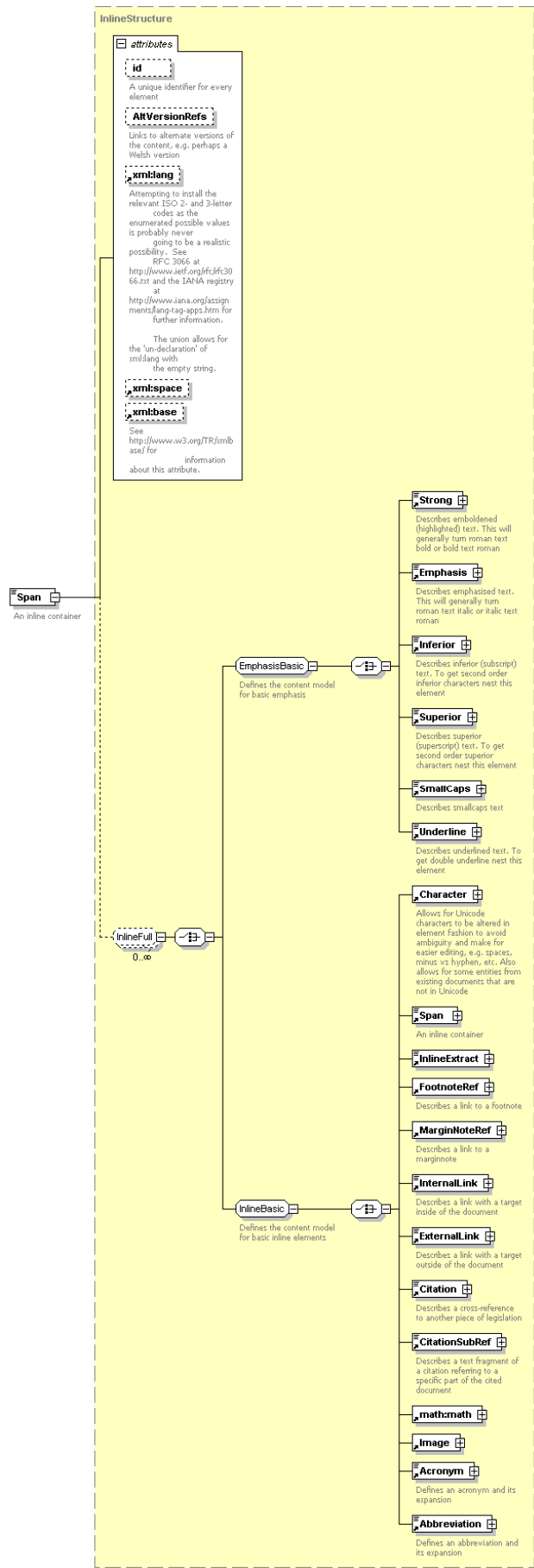
#### Example code

```
<P4>
  <Pnumber>i</Pnumber>
  <P4para>
    <Text>in question 4 of "<Span xml:lang="cy">Ffurflen Rhif 5</Span>", "<Span xml:lang="cy">Ffurflen Rhif 6</Span>", "<Span xml:lang="cy">Ffurflen Rhif 7</Span>", "<Span xml:lang="cy">Ffurflen Rhif 9A</Span>" and "<Span xml:lang="cy">Ffurflen Rhif 10</Span>", add after the words "<Span xml:lang="cy">ar ba lawr</Span>" the words "<Span xml:lang="cy">neu loriau</Span>";</Text>
  </P4para>
</P4>
```

Ref: SI 1994 0725



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
type	InlineStructure					
properties	content mixed	complex true				
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation					
used by	elements groups	ExternalLink InternalLink InlineBasic InlineBasicRestricted InlineLegislationCitation				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<xsd:element name="Span" type="InlineStructure"> <xsd:annotation> <xsd:documentation>An inline container</xsd:documentation> </xsd:annotation> </xsd:element>					

## Text

Describes a line of text. The schema concept of a paragraph is that it consists of items, such as lines of text, lists, tables etc. These items can *belong* to a paragraph. It is also possible for multiple `<Text>` elements to belong to a paragraph.

The examples below show:

- multiple paragraphs of enacting text
- text within a `<P2para>` element continuing after the `<P3>` elements, i.e. the paragraph consists of a `<Text>` element, followed by 2 `<P3>` elements, followed by another `<Text>` element.
- a `<BlockAmendment>` as part of a paragraph (`<P3para>`) with `<Text>` elements before and after. The first `<Text>` element is lead-in text to the amendment. The second merely holds a semi-colon which is placed immediately after the end quote of the amendment – the semi-colon is part of the paragraph – not the amendment.

## Align

Controls the horizontal alignment of the content of the element.

The permissible values are:

- inherit (the alignment is inherited from the parent element)
- left
- centre
- right
- justify (the entire paragraph is justified. Note that the last line is not force-justified. The decision on whether the last line should be is left to the implementation).

This attribute is optional. The default alignment will be decided by the implementation. The alignment should cascade down into child elements.

## Hanging

Controls whether the content of the element should be formatted as a hanging indent. Note that this attribute may not be applicable in all circumstances and should be ignored if so.

The permissible values are:

- hanging (the output should be formatted with a hanging indent. The size of the indent is left to the implementation).
- indented (the first line of the paragraph is indented).

### Example code

```
<EnactingText>
  <Para>
    <Text>Whereas the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/> ("the Scheme") was
    brought into force on 14th June 1982;</Text>
  </Para>
  <Para>
    <Text>Whereas the Scheme has been varied<FootnoteRef Ref="f00002"/>;</Text>
  </Para>
  <Para>
    <Text>And whereas the Secretary of State, after consultation with the representatives of authors
    and library authorities and of others who appear likely to be affected, has further varied the
    Scheme;</Text>
  </Para>
  <Para>
    <Text>Now, therefore, the Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred by section 3(7)
    of the Public Lending Right Act 1979<FootnoteRef Ref="f00003"/> and now vested in him<FootnoteRef
    Ref="f00004"/>, hereby makes the following Order:-</Text>
  </Para>
</EnactingText>
```

Ref: SI 2000 0933

### Example image

### The Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 (Commencement of Variations) Order 2000

<i>Made</i>	- - -	<i>30th March 2000</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>		<i>3rd April 2000</i>
<i>Coming into force</i>		<i>1st July 2000</i>

Whereas the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982(a) ("the Scheme") was brought into force on 14th June 1982;

Whereas the Scheme has been varied(b);

And whereas the Secretary of State, after consultation with the representatives of authors and library authorities and of others who appear likely to be affected, has further varied the Scheme;

Now, therefore, the Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred by section 3(7) of the Public Lending Right Act 1979(c) and now vested in him(d), hereby makes the following Order:—

1. This Order may be cited as the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 (Commencement of Variations) Order 2000.
2. The variation in the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 which was made on 30th March 2000 by the Secretary of State and is set out in the Appendix to this Order shall come into force on 1st July 2000.

**Example code**

```

<P2>
  <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
  <P2para>
    <Text>Notice of</Text>
    <P3>
      <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>a decision</Text>
        <P4>
          <Pnumber>i</Pnumber>
          <P4para>
            <Text>to suspend consideration of any application under sub-paragraph (1) (a); or</Text>
          </P4para>
        </P4>
        <P4>
          <Pnumber>ii</Pnumber>
          <P4para>
            <Text>to reject any application without further consideration under sub-paragraph (1) (b),
or</Text>
          </P4para>
        </P4>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
  <P3>
    <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
    <P3para>
      <Text>of the termination of the relevant period,</Text>
    </P3para>
  </P3>
  <Text>shall be published in The London Gazette.</Text>
</P2para>
</P2>

```

Ref: 2003 0562

**Example image****Financial Limits**

4.—(1) If, in view of the total number of applications for grant already approved or received, the Secretary of State is at any time of the opinion that the financial resources which are available for payment of grant under this Scheme during any period are insufficient to satisfy any payment during the period which would result from the approval of any further application, she may, in respect of any application received at the date of her decision but not yet accepted, or any application she may receive during the relevant period—

- (a) suspend further consideration of any such application until such time as may subsequently be specified by her; or
- (b) reject any such application without further consideration.

(2) Notice of—

- (a) a decision—
  - (i) to suspend consideration of any application under sub-paragraph (1)(a); or
  - (ii) to reject any application without further consideration under sub-paragraph (1)(b), or
- (b) of the termination of the relevant period,

shall be published in The London Gazette.

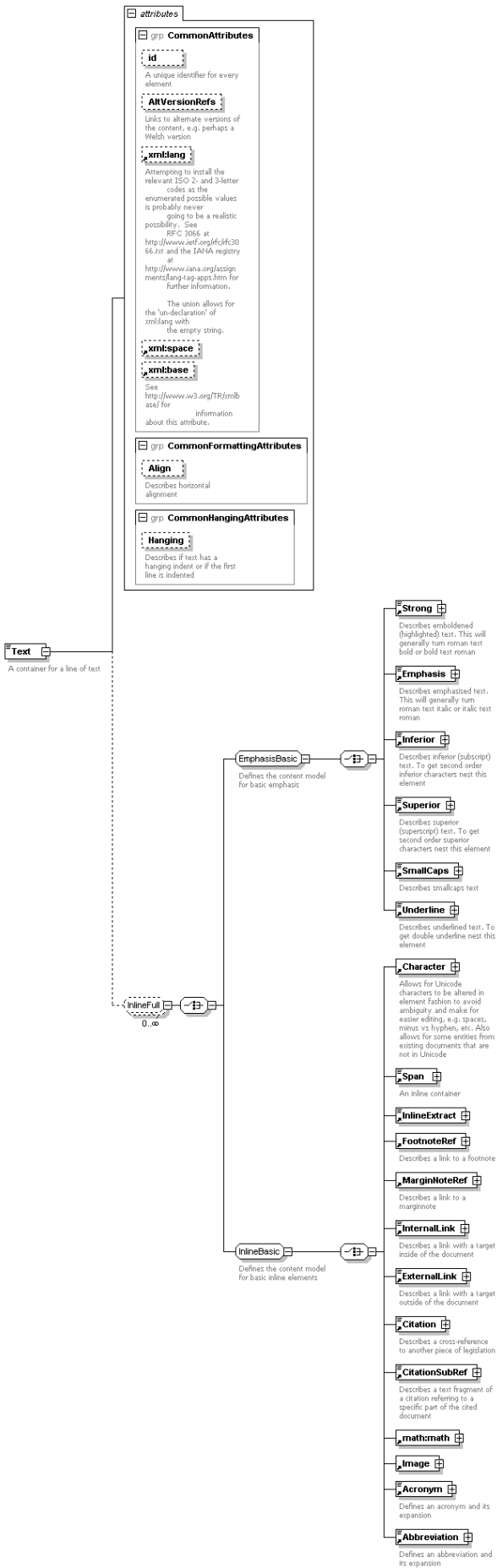
(3) In sub-paragraphs (1) and (2), “the relevant period” means the period beginning with the day after the date of the Secretary of State’s decision referred to in sub-paragraph (1), or any subsequent date specified by her in a notice under sub-paragraph (2)(a), and ending with such date as may be specified by her in a notice under sub-paragraph (2)(b).

### Example code

```
<P3>
  <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
  <P3para>
    <Text>in paragraph (2)—</Text>
    <P4>
      <Pnumber>i</Pnumber>
      <P4para>
        <Text>in sub-paragraph (a) the word "or" shall be deleted.</Text>
      </P4para>
    </P4>
    <P4>
      <Pnumber>ii</Pnumber>
      <P4para>
        <Text>in sub-paragraph (b) there shall be added at the end the word "or", and</Text>
      </P4para>
    </P4>
    <P4>
      <Pnumber>iii</Pnumber>
      <P4para>
        <Text>after sub-paragraph (b) there shall be inserted the following sub-paragraph—</Text>
        <BlockAmendment TargetClass="secondary" TargetSubClass="regulation" Context="main"
Format="default">
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <Text>that the content of the water is not in accordance with paragraph 2(c) in Part I or,
as the case may be, paragraph 2(c) in Part II, of Schedule 1,</Text>
            </P3para>
          </P3>
        </BlockAmendment>
        <Text>;</Text>
      </P4para>
    </P4>
  </P3para>
</P3>
```

Ref: 2003 0666

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content mixed	complex true				
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation</b>					
used by	elements	<b>BlockAmendment ComingIntoForce ComingIntoForce/ComingIntoForceClauses LaidDate LaidDraft MadeDate InlineModel</b>				
attributes	group					
	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>				
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	Align	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	optional			
	Hanging	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	optional			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Text"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A container for a line of text&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineFull" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonFormattingAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonHangingAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					



## Emphasis

Emphasised text. This will generally be italicised text. Where the text would already be in italic or if this element is nested then the text will become roman.

### Example code

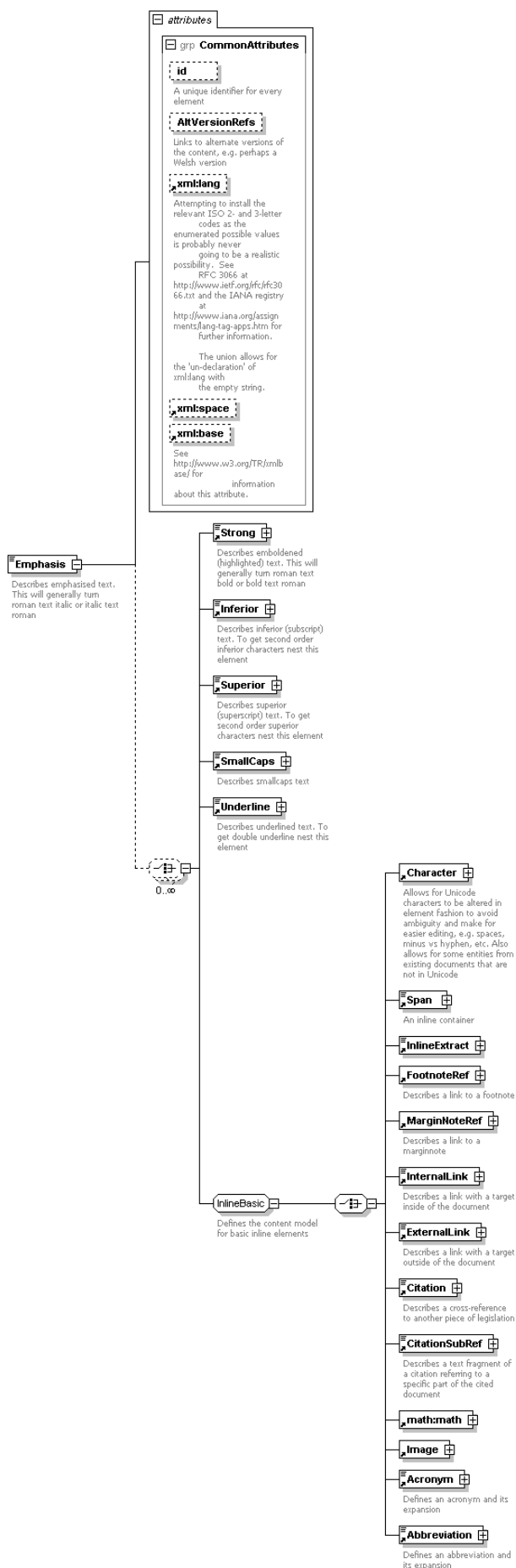
```
<Schedules>
  <Schedule>
    <Number>Schedule</Number>
    <TitleBlock>
      <Title>Consequential amendments and repeals</Title>
    </TitleBlock>
    <Reference>(<Emphasis>introduced by section 11</Emphasis>)</Reference>
    <ScheduleBody>
      <Plgroup>
        <Title>
          <Citation id="c00002" Class="ukpga" Year="1832" Number="0068">Game (Scotland) Act 1832 (c.
68)</Citation>
        </Title>
        <Pl>
          <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
          <Plpara>
            <Text>Section 4 of the Game (Scotland) Act 1832 (provisions about trespassers not to apply to
persons hunting) is repealed.</Text>
          </Plpara>
        </Pl>
      </Plgroup>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

### Example image

<i>Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act 2002 (asp 5)</i>		7
<i>Schedule—Consequential amendments and repeals</i>		
<p style="text-align: center;">SCHEDULE (introduced by section 11)</p> <p style="text-align: center;">CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS AND REPEALS</p> <p><i>Game (Scotland) Act 1832 (c.68)</i></p>		
1	Section 4 of the Game (Scotland) Act 1832 (provisions about trespassers not to apply to persons hunting) is repealed.	

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	<b>Strong Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation</b>				
used by	elements group	<b>SmallCaps Strong EmphasisBasic</b>			
attributes	Name id AltVersionRefs lang space base	Type <b>derived by: xsd:ID xsd:IDREFS</b>	Use	Default	Fixed
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Emphasis"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Describes emphasised text. This will generally turn roman text italic or italic text roman&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The content model allows all standard inline constructs apart from emphasis which should not be nested&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Strong"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Inferior"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Superior"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="SmallCaps"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Underline"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasic"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## Inferior

Indicates that the contained text should be in inferior to the surrounding text. If this element is nested the effect is to product a second-order inferior, e.g. an inferior to an inferior.

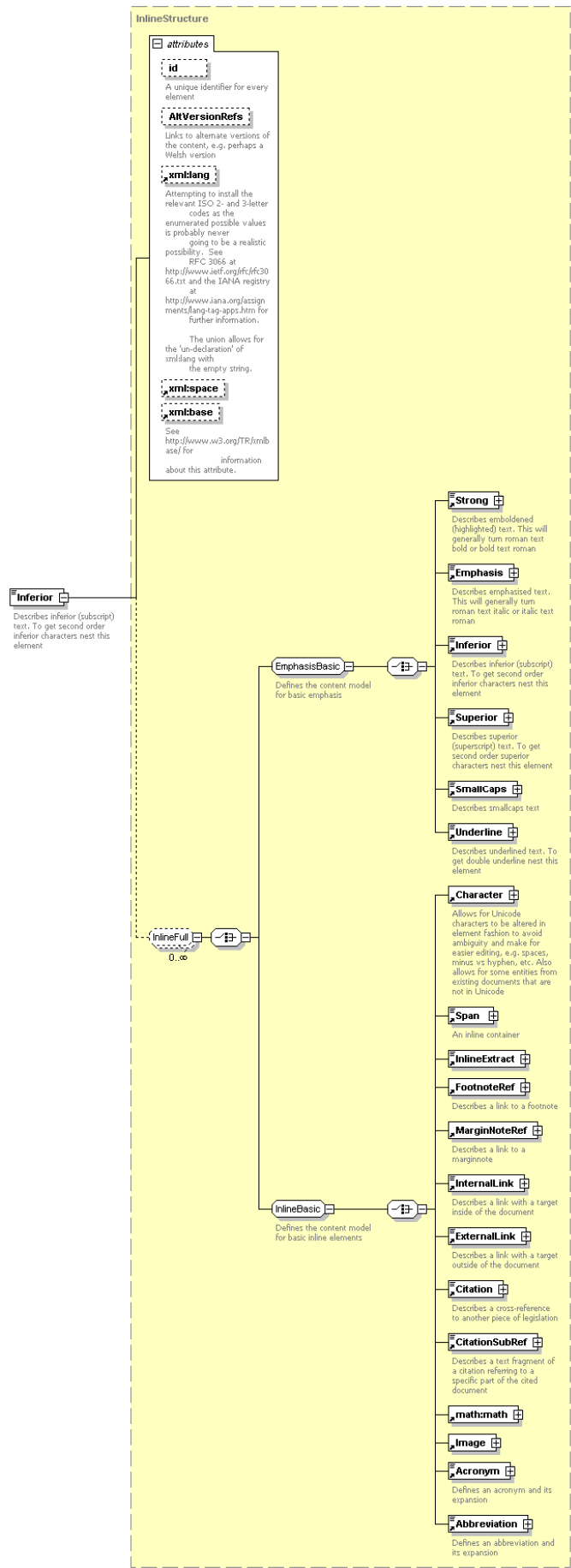
### Example code

```
<tr>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">5.</td>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">Sulphate</td>
  <td align="center" fo:border-right-style="solid">mg SO<ukl:Inferior>4</ukl:Inferior>/l</td>
  <td align="center">250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">6.</td>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">Sodium</td>
  <td align="center" fo:border-right-style="solid">mg Na/l</td>
  <td align="center">200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">7.</td>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">Nitrate</td>
  <td align="center" fo:border-right-style="solid">mg NO<ukl:Inferior>3</ukl:Inferior>/l</td>
  <td align="center">50 (note 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">8.</td>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">Nitrite</td>
  <td align="center" fo:border-right-style="solid">mg NO<ukl:Inferior>2</ukl:Inferior>/l</td>
  <td align="center">0.5 (note 1)</td>
</tr>
```

### Example image

Column 1 <i>Item</i>	Column 2 <i>Parameters</i>	Column 3 <i>Units of Measurement</i>	Column 4 <i>Concentration or Value (maximum unless otherwise stated)</i>
1.	Colour	mg/l Pt/Co scale	20
2.	Turbidity	NTU	4
3.	Odour	Dilution number	3 at 25°C
4.	Taste	Dilution number	3 at 25°C
5.	Sulphate	mg SO <sub>4</sub> /l	250
6.	Sodium	mg Na/l	200
7.	Nitrate	mg NO <sub>3</sub> /l	50 (note 1)
8.	Nitrite	mg NO <sub>2</sub> /l	0.5 (note 1)
9.	Aluminium	µg Al/l	200
10.	Copper	mg Cu/l	2
11.	Fluoride	mg F/l	1.5
12.	Hydrogen ion concentration	pH units	6.5 (minimum) 9.5 (maximum)
13.	Tritium (for radioactivity)	Bq/l	100
14.	Total indicative dose	mSv/year	0.10 (note 2)
15.	Manganese	µg Mn/l	50

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
type	InlineStructure					
properties	content mixed	complex true				
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation					
used by	elements group	Emphasis SmallCaps Strong EmphasisBasic				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Inferior" type="InlineStructure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Describes inferior (subscript) text. To get second order inferior characters nest this element&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The content model allows all standard inline constructs&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## SmallCaps

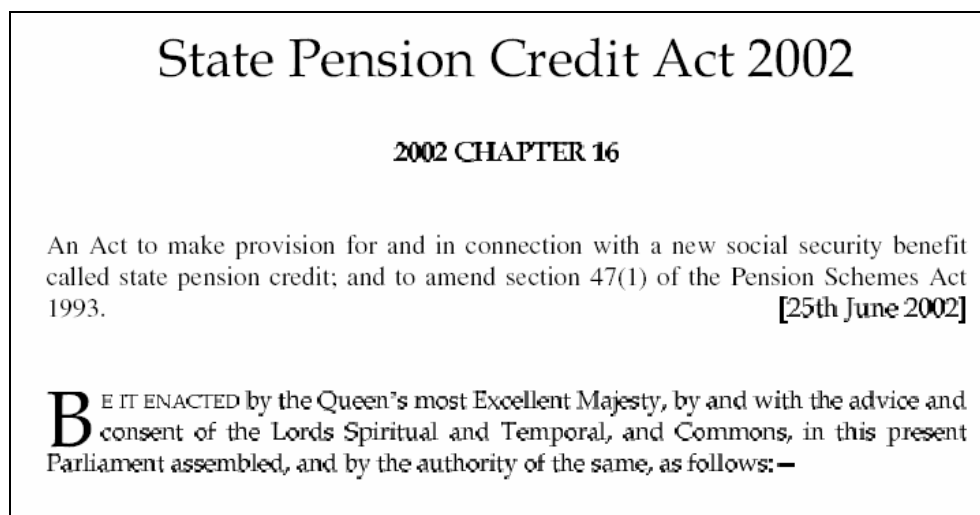
Indicates that the contained text should be formatted as small capitals.

### Example code

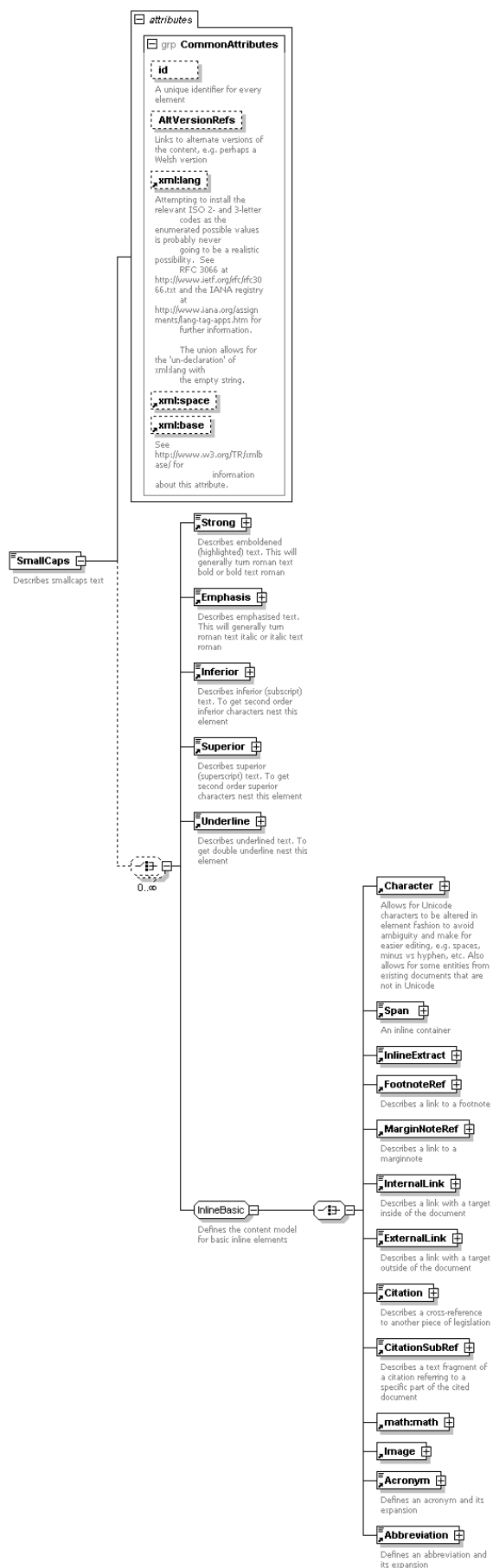
```
<EnactingText>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <SmallCaps>Be it enacted</SmallCaps> by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the
advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament
assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—</Text>
    </Para>
  </EnactingText>
```

Ref: UKPGA 2002 0016

### Example image



diagram





namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation</b>				
used by	elements group	<b>Emphasis Strong EmphasisBasic</b>			
attributes	Name id AltVersionRefs lang space base	Type <b>derived by: xsd:ID xsd:IDREFS</b>	Use	Default	Fixed
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="SmallCaps"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Describes smallcaps text&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The content model allows all standard inline constructs apart from small caps which should not be nested&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Strong"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Emphasis"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Inferior"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Superior"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Underline"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasic"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

### Strong

Strongly emphasised text. This will generally be emboldened text. Where the text would already be emboldened or if this element is nested then the text will become not emboldened

#### Example code

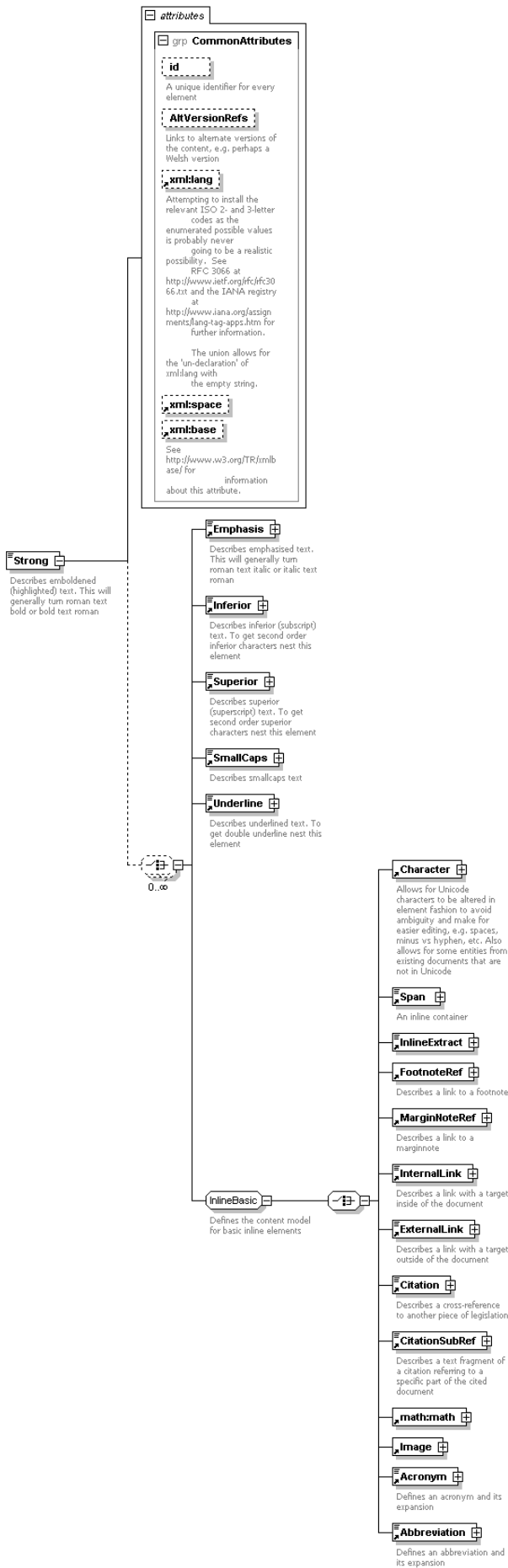
```
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Strong>S</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under
regulation 8.</Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text>
        <Strong>P</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under
regulation 40 of the Income Tax (Employments) Regulations 1993<FootnoteRef Ref="f00006"/> if any
adjustment to that amount under regulation 7(2) of the Working Tax Credit (Payments by Employers)
Regulations 2002<FootnoteRef Ref="f00007"/> (funding of payment of working tax credit) were
disregarded.</Text>
      </Para>
    </ListItem>
```

#### Example image

**S** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under regulation 8.

**P** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under regulation 40 of the Income Tax (Employments) Regulations 1993(a) if any adjustment to that amount under regulation 7(2) of the Working Tax Credit (Payments by Employers) Regulations 2002(b) (funding of payment of working tax credit) were disregarded.

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	<b>Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation</b>				
used by	elements group	<b>Emphasis SmallCaps EmphasisBasic</b>			
attributes	Name id AltVersionRefs lang space base	Type <b>derived by: xsd:ID xsd:IDREFS</b>	Use	Default	Fixed
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Strong"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Describes emboldened (highlighted) text. This will generally turn roman text bold or     bold text roman&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The content model allows all standard inline constructs apart from strong which     should not be nested&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Emphasis"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Inferior"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Superior"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="SmallCaps"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Underline"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasic"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## Superior

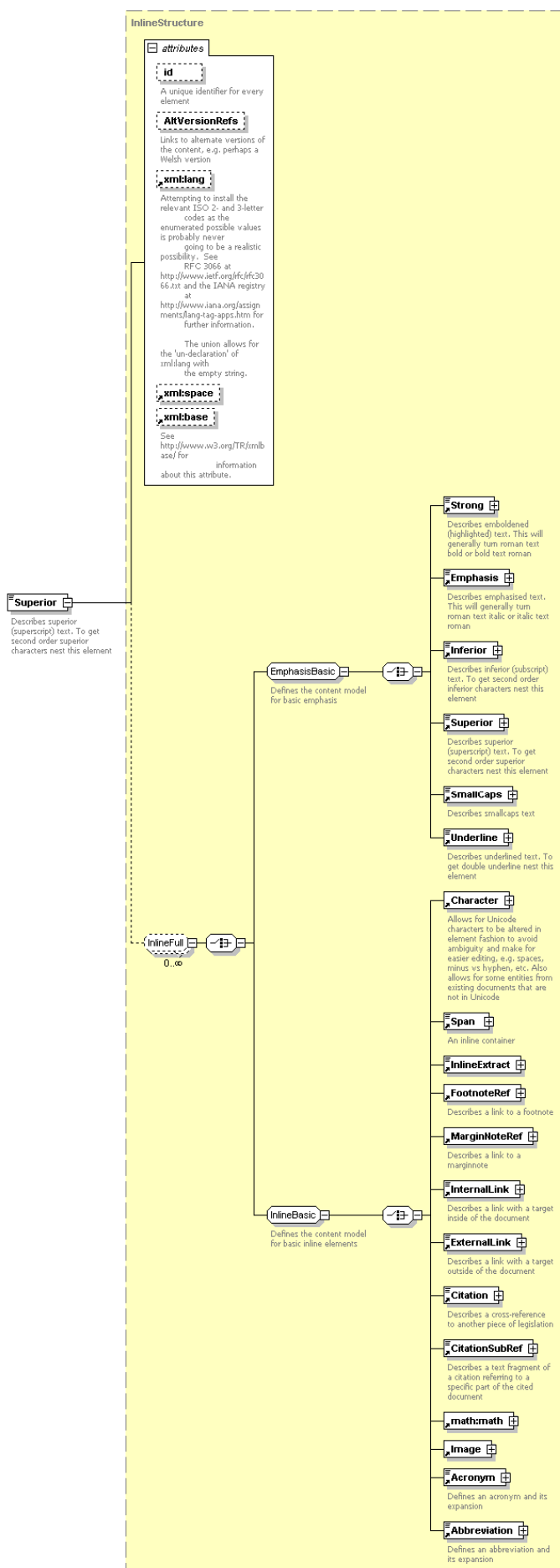
Indicates that the contained text should be in superior to the surrounding text. If this element is nested the effect is to produce a second-order superior, e.g. a superior to a superior.

### Example code

```
<P1>
  <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
  <P1para>
    <Text>This Order may be cited as the Education (Funding for Teacher Training) Designation Order
    2003 and shall come into force on 7<Superior>th</Superior> March 2003.</Text>
  </P1para>
</P1>
```

Ref: UKSI 2003 0271

diagram



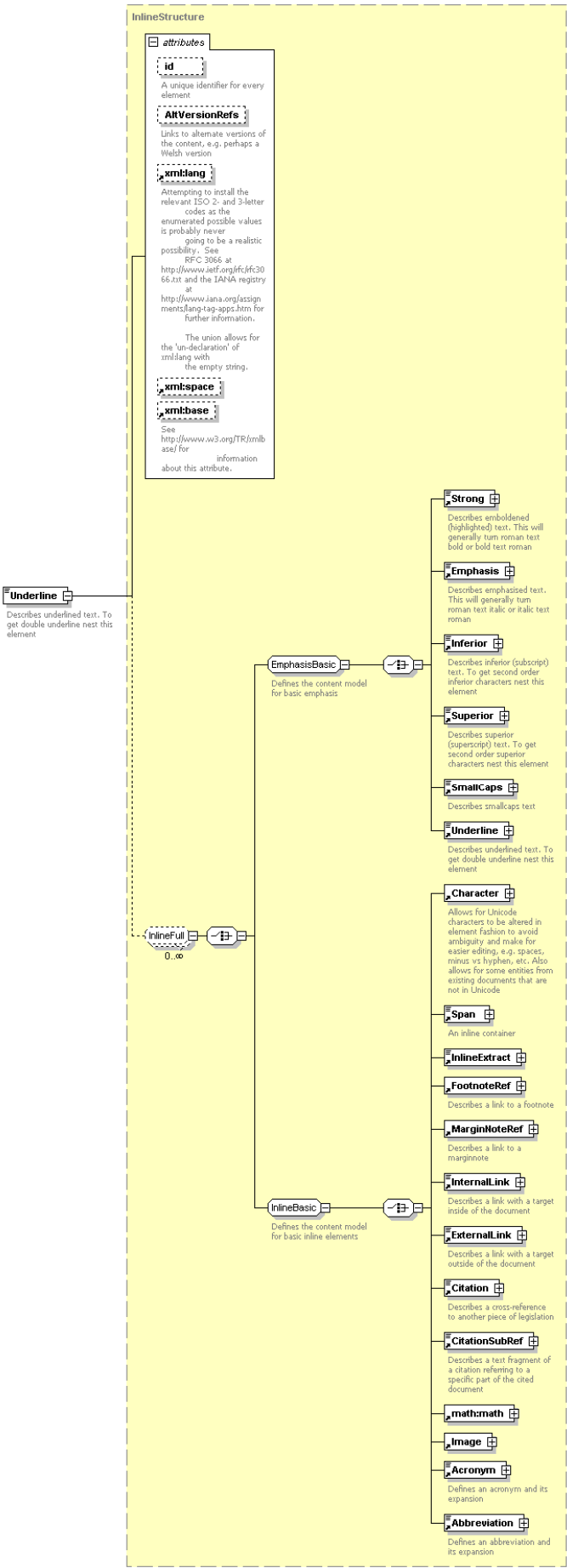
namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
type	InlineStructure					
properties	content	complex				
	mixed	true				
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation					
used by	elements	Emphasis SmallCaps Strong				
	group	EmphasisBasic				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default		
	id	derived by: xsd:ID		Fixed		
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Superior" type="InlineStructure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Describes superior (superscript) text. To get second order superior characters nest this element&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The content model allows all standard inline constructs&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## Underline

Indicates that the contained text should be underlined. If this element is nested then the effect is to double underline the contents.



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
type	InlineStructure					
properties	content mixed	complex true				
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation					
used by	elements group	Emphasis SmallCaps Strong EmphasisBasic				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Underline" type="InlineStructure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Describes underlined text. To get double underline nest this element&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The content model allows all standard inline constructs&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## Emphasis (EmphasisRestricted)

Emphasised text. This will generally be italicised text. Where the text would already be in italic or if this element is nested then the text will become roman.

### Example code

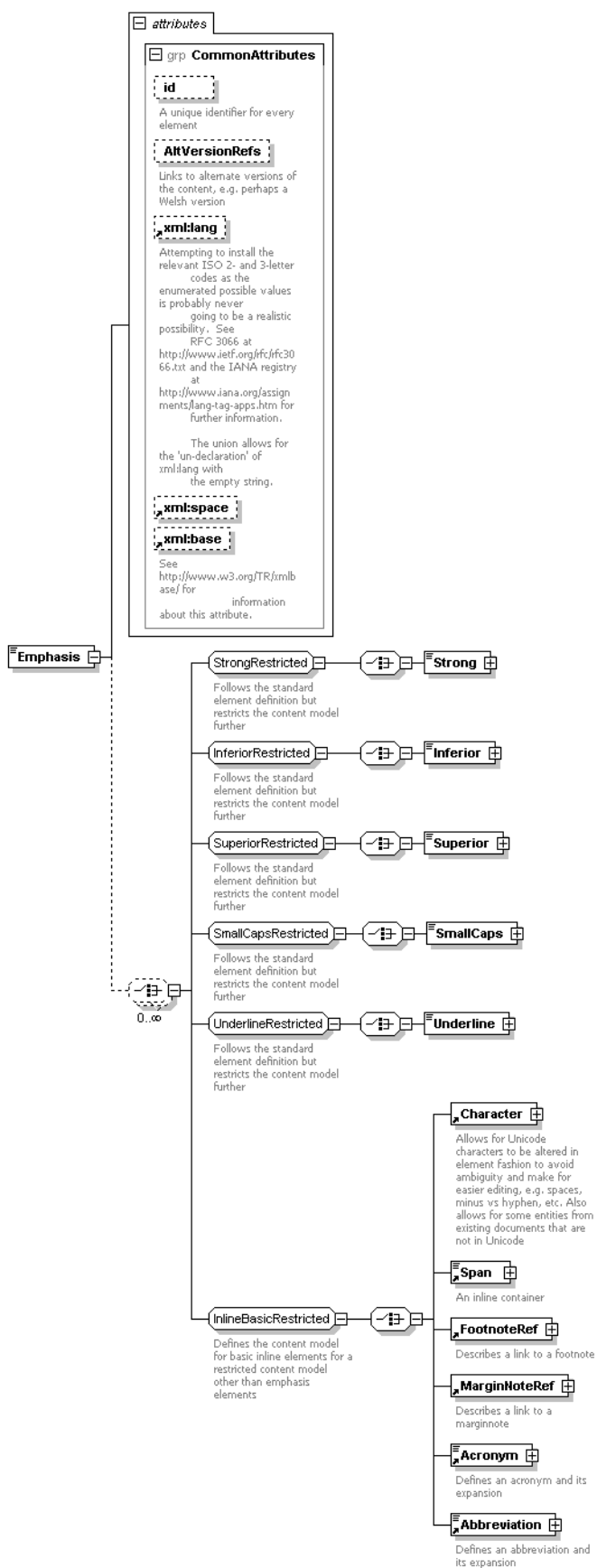
```
<Schedules>
  <Schedule>
    <Number>Schedule</Number>
    <TitleBlock>
      <Title>Consequential amendments and repeals</Title>
    </TitleBlock>
    <Reference>(<Emphasis>introduced by section 11</Emphasis>)</Reference>
    <ScheduleBody>
      <Plgroup>
        <Title>
          <Citation id="c00002" Class="ukpga" Year="1832" Number="0068">Game (Scotland) Act 1832 (c.
68)</Citation>
        </Title>
        <Pl>
          <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
          <Plpara>
            <Text>Section 4 of the Game (Scotland) Act 1832 (provisions about trespassers not to apply to
persons hunting) is repealed.</Text>
          </Plpara>
        </Pl>
      </Plgroup>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

### Example image

<i>Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act 2002 (asp 5)</i>		7
<i>Schedule—Consequential amendments and repeals</i>		
<p style="text-align: center;">SCHEDULE</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>(introduced by section 11)</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;">CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS AND REPEALS</p> <p><i>Game (Scotland) Act 1832 (c.68)</i></p>		
1	Section 4 of the Game (Scotland) Act 1832 (provisions about trespassers not to apply to persons hunting) is repealed.	

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties	isRef	0				
	content	complex				
	mixed	true				
children	<b>Strong Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation</b>					
used by	elements	<b>SmallCaps Strong</b>				
	group	<b>EmphasisBasic</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>				
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Emphasis"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="StrongRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="SmallCapsRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="UnderlineRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## Inferior (InferiorRestricted)

Indicates that the contained text should be in inferior to the surrounding text. If this element is nested the effect is to product a second-order inferior, e.g. an inferior to an inferior.

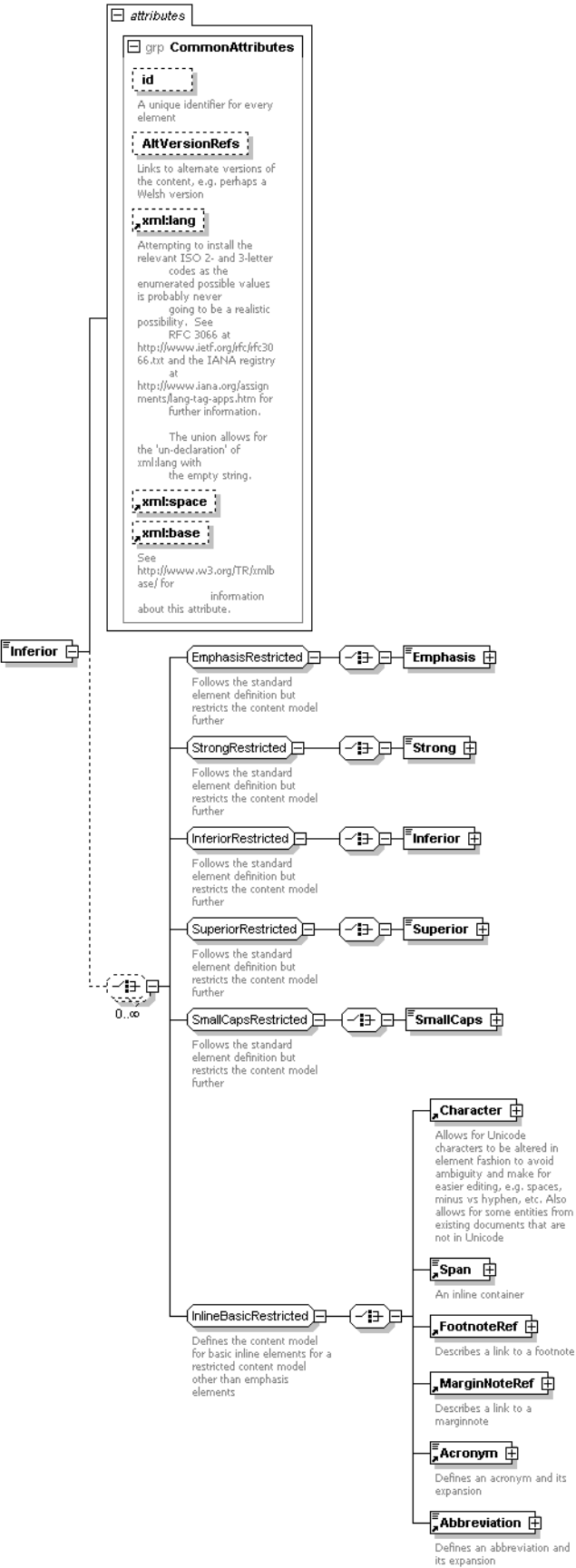
### Example code

```
<tr>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">5.</td>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">Sulphate</td>
  <td align="center" fo:border-right-style="solid">mg SO<ukl:Inferior>4</ukl:Inferior>/l</td>
  <td align="center">250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">6.</td>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">Sodium</td>
  <td align="center" fo:border-right-style="solid">mg Na/l</td>
  <td align="center">200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">7.</td>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">Nitrate</td>
  <td align="center" fo:border-right-style="solid">mg NO<ukl:Inferior>3</ukl:Inferior>/l</td>
  <td align="center">50 (note 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">8.</td>
  <td fo:border-right-style="solid">Nitrite</td>
  <td align="center" fo:border-right-style="solid">mg NO<ukl:Inferior>2</ukl:Inferior>/l</td>
  <td align="center">0.5 (note 1)</td>
</tr>
```

### Example image

Column 1 <i>Item</i>	Column 2 <i>Parameters</i>	Column 3 <i>Units of Measurement</i>	Column 4 <i>Concentration or Value (maximum unless otherwise stated)</i>
1.	Colour	mg/l Pt/Co scale	20
2.	Turbidity	NTU	4
3.	Odour	Dilution number	3 at 25°C
4.	Taste	Dilution number	3 at 25°C
5.	Sulphate	mg SO <sub>4</sub> /l	250
6.	Sodium	mg Na/l	200
7.	Nitrate	mg NO <sub>3</sub> /l	50 (note 1)
8.	Nitrite	mg NO <sub>2</sub> /l	0.5 (note 1)
9.	Aluminium	µg Al/l	200
10.	Copper	mg Cu/l	2
11.	Fluoride	mg F/l	1.5
12.	Hydrogen ion concentration	pH units	6.5 (minimum) 9.5 (maximum)
13.	Tritium (for radioactivity)	Bq/l	100
14.	Total indicative dose	mSv/year	0.10 (note 2)
15.	Manganese	µg Mn/l	50

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties	isRef content mixed 0 complex true
children	<b>Emphasis Strong Inferior Superior SmallCaps Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation</b>
used by	elements <b>Emphasis SmallCaps Strong EmphasisBasic</b> group
attributes	Name Type Use Default Fixed id derived by: xsd:ID AltVersionRefs xsd:IDREFS lang space base
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Inferior"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="EmphasisRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="StrongRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="SmallCapsRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>



## SmallCaps (SmallCapsRestricted)

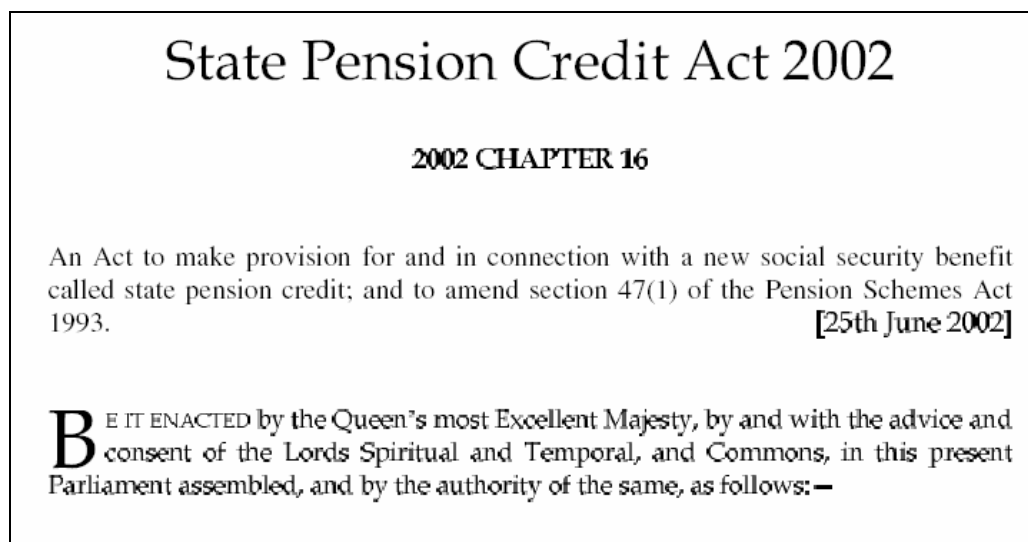
Indicates that the contained text should be formatted as small capitals.

### Example code

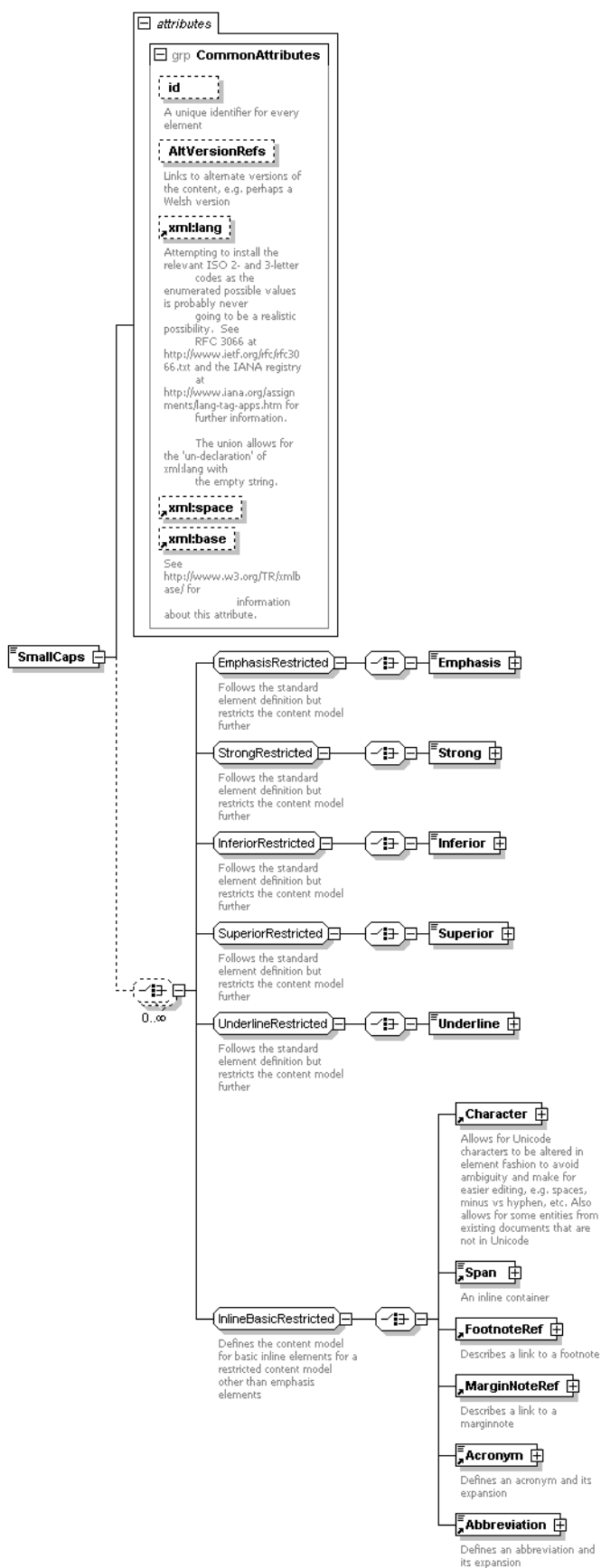
```
<EnactingText>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <SmallCaps>Be it enacted</SmallCaps> by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the
advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament
assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—</Text>
    </Para>
  </EnactingText>
```

Ref: UKPGA 2002 0016

### Example image



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties	isRef	0								
	content	complex								
	mixed	true								
children	<b>Emphasis Strong Inferior Superior Underline Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation</b>									
used by	elements	<b>Emphasis Strong</b>								
	group	<b>EmphasisBasic</b>								
attributes	Name	Type	Use			Default			Fixed	
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>								
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>								
	lang									
	space									
	base									
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="SmallCaps"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="EmphasisRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="StrongRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="UnderlineRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>									

## Strong (StrongRestricted)

Strongly emphasised text. This will generally be emboldened text. Where the text would already be emboldened or if this element is nested then the text will become not emboldened

### Example code

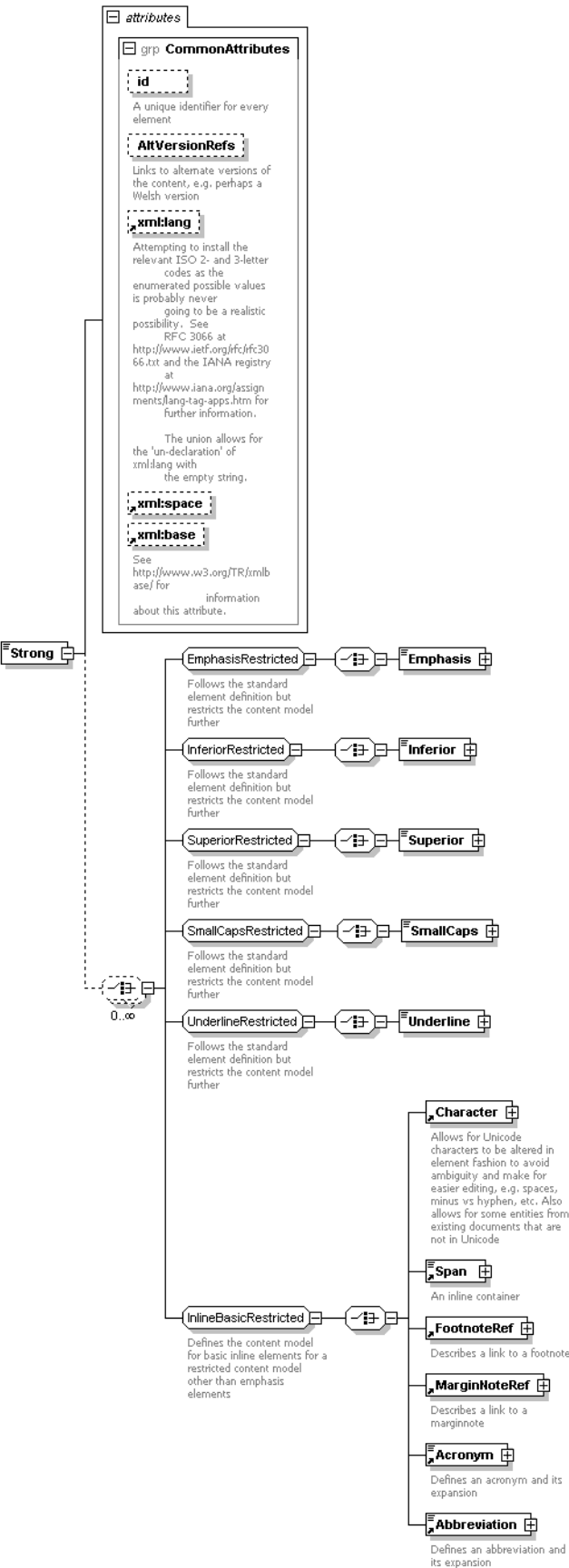
```
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Strong>S</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under
regulation 8.</Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text>
        <Strong>P</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under
regulation 40 of the Income Tax (Employments) Regulations 1993<FootnoteRef Ref="f00006"/> if any
adjustment to that amount under regulation 7(2) of the Working Tax Credit (Payments by Employers)
Regulations 2002<FootnoteRef Ref="f00007"/> (funding of payment of working tax credit) were
disregarded.</Text>
      </Para>
    </ListItem>
```

### Example image

**S** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under regulation 8.

**P** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under regulation 40 of the Income Tax (Employments) Regulations 1993(a) if any adjustment to that amount under regulation 7(2) of the Working Tax Credit (Payments by Employers) Regulations 2002(b) (funding of payment of working tax credit) were disregarded.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties	isRef	0				
	content	complex				
	mixed	true				
children	<b>Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation</b>					
used by	elements	<b>Emphasis SmallCaps</b>				
	group	<b>EmphasisBasic</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>				
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="Strong"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="EmphasisRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="SmallCapsRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="UnderlineRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>					

## Superior (SuperiorRestricted)

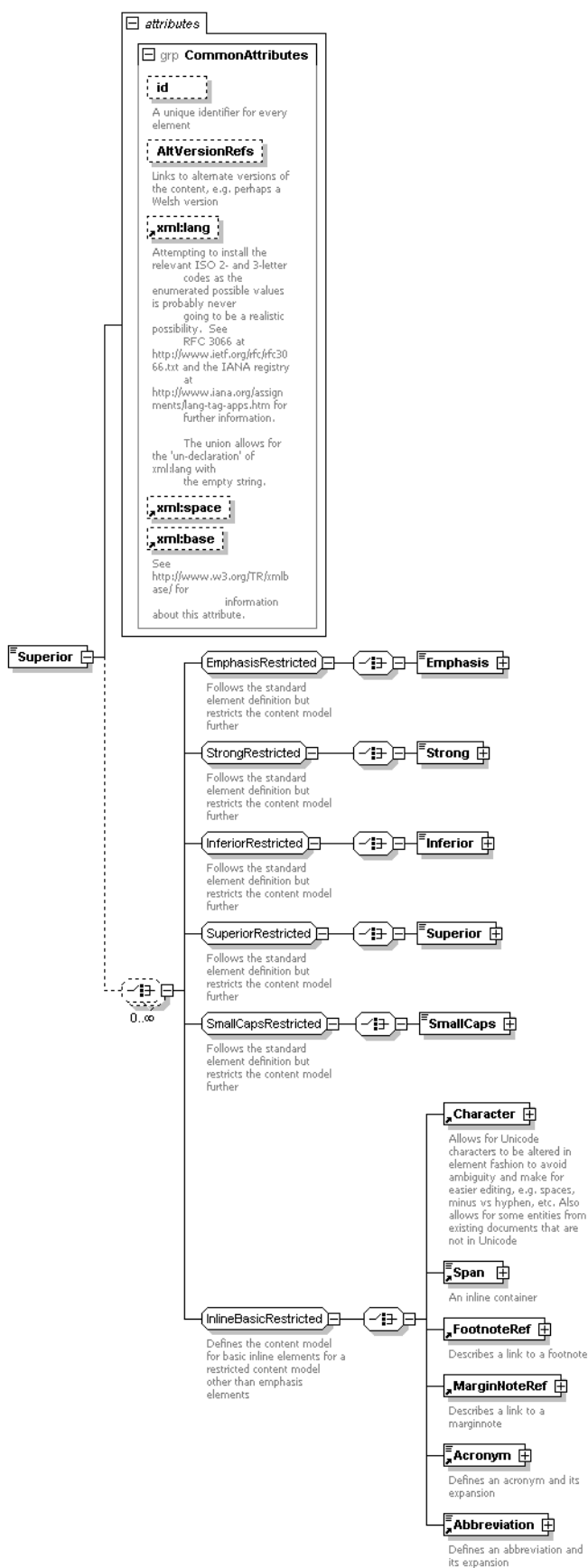
Indicates that the contained text should be in superior to the surrounding text. If this element is nested the effect is to produce a second-order superior, e.g. a superior to a superior.

### Example code

```
<P1>
  <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
  <P1para>
    <Text>This Order may be cited as the Education (Funding for Teacher Training) Designation Order
    2003 and shall come into force on 7<Superior>th</Superior> March 2003.</Text>
  </P1para>
</P1>
```

Ref: UKSI 2003 0271

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

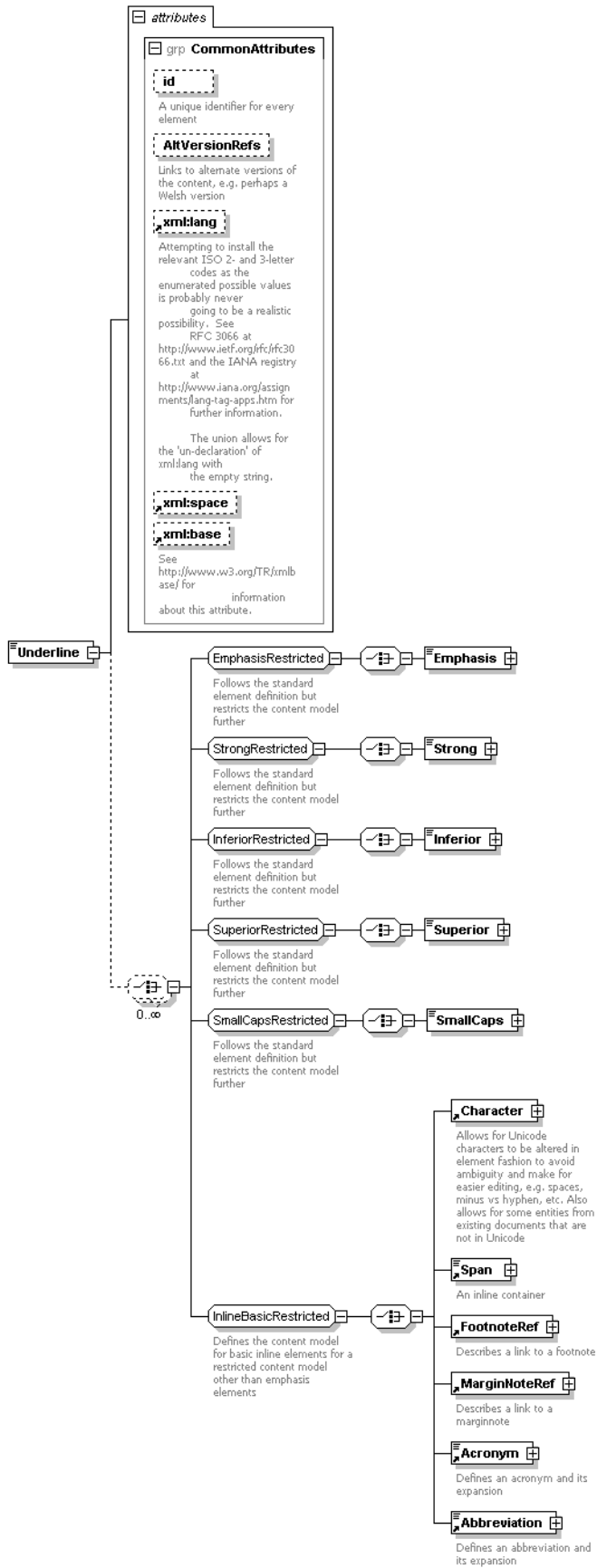


properties	isRef	0					
	content	complex					
	mixed	true					
children	<b>Emphasis Strong Inferior Superior SmallCaps Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation</b>						
used by	elements	<b>Emphasis SmallCaps Strong</b>					
	group	<b>EmphasisBasic</b>					
attributes	Name	Type	Use		Default		Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>					
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>					
	lang						
	space						
	base						
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="Superior"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="EmphasisRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="StrongRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="SmallCapsRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>						

## **Underline (UnderlineRestricted)**

Indicates that the contained text should be underlined. If this element is nested then the effect is to double underline the contents.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties	isRef	0									
	content	complex									
	mixed	true									
children	<b>Emphasis Strong Inferior Superior SmallCaps Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation</b>										
used by	elements	<b>Emphasis SmallCaps Strong</b>									
	group	<b>EmphasisBasic</b>									
attributes	Name	Type	Use				Default			Fixed	
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>									
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>									
	lang										
	space										
	base										
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Underline"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="EmphasisRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="StrongRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="SmallCapsRestricted"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>										

## Abbreviation

An abbreviation. It is recommended that the first instance of the use of an abbreviation is marked up. It is not required to mark up every instance.

## Expansion

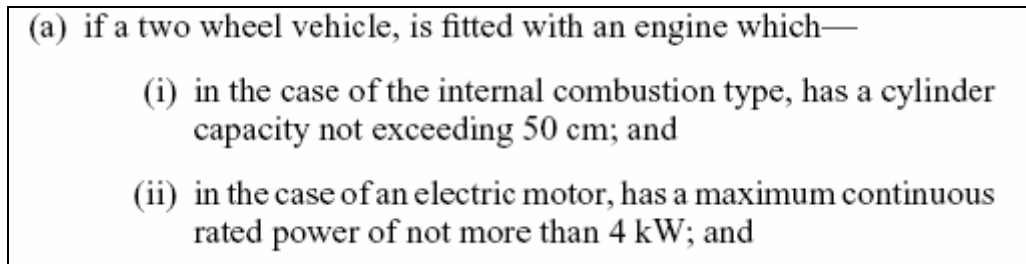
This should contain the expanded form of the acronym. For example, ‘cm’ would be expanded to ‘centimetres’.

## Example code

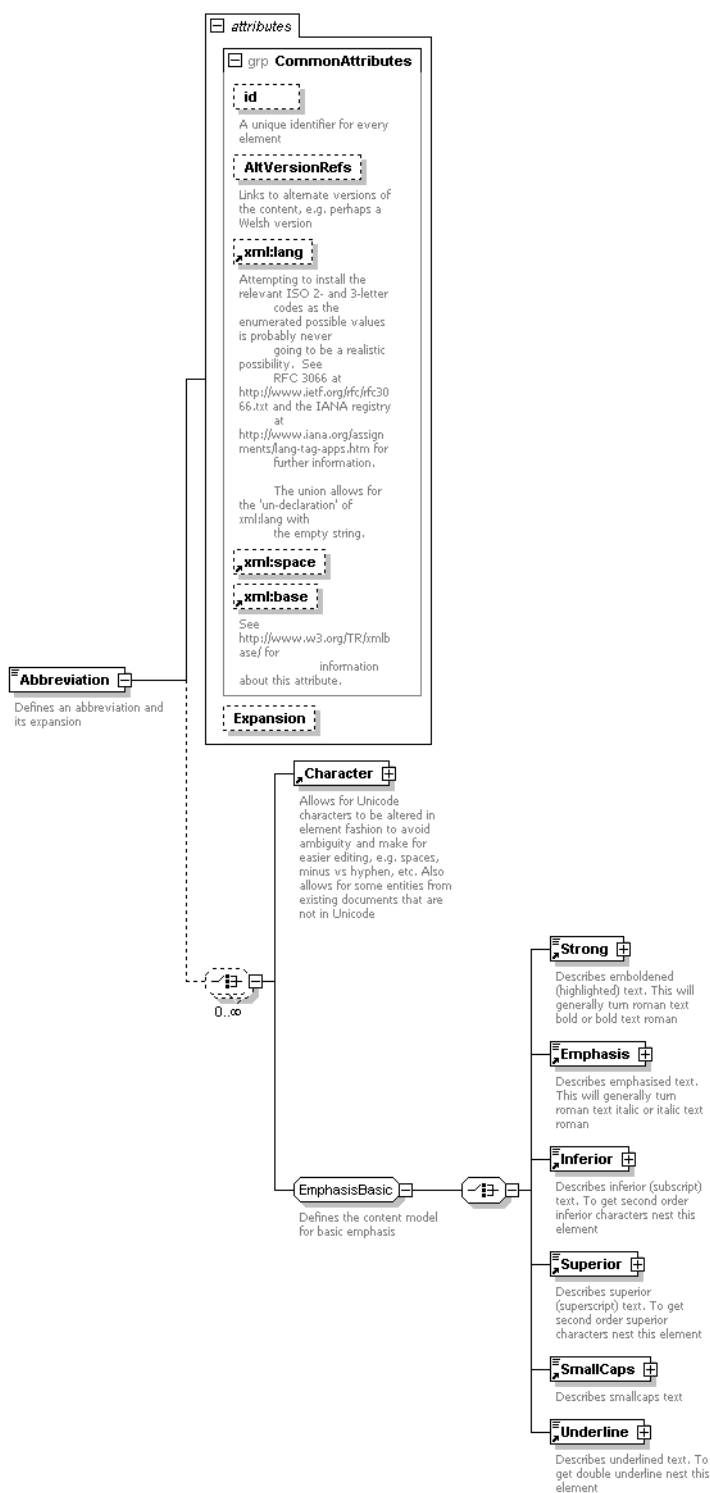
```
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>if a two wheel vehicle, is fitted with an engine which-</Text>
    <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="roman">
      <ListItem>
        <Para>
          <Text>in the case of the internal combustion type, has a cylinder capacity not exceeding 50
<Abbreviation Expansion="centimetres">cm</Abbreviation>; and</Text>
        </Para>
      </ListItem>
      <ListItem>
        <Para>
          <Text>in the case of an electric motor, has a maximum continuous rated power of not more than 4
<Abbreviation Expansion="kilowatts">kW</Abbreviation>; and</Text>
        </Para>
      </ListItem>
    </OrderedList>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
```

Ref: UKSI 2003 1099

## Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation	
properties	content	complex
	mixed	true
children	<b>Character Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline</b>	
used by	groups	<b>InlineBasic InlineBasicRestricted InlineLegislationCitation</b>

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	Expansion	<b>xsd:string</b>			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Abbreviation"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines an abbreviation and its expansion&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Character"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="EmphasisBasic"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Expansion" type="xsd:string"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## Acronym

An acronym. It is recommended that the first instance of the use of an acronym is marked up. It is not required to mark up every instance.

## Expansion

This should contain the expanded form of the acronym. For example, ‘VAT’ would be expanded to ‘Value Added Tax’.

## Example code

```
<Secondary>
  <SecondaryPrelims>
    <Number>2003 No. 1099</Number>
    <SubjectInformation>
      <Subject>
        <Title>Road Traffic</Title>
      </Subject>
    </SubjectInformation>
    <Title>The Motor Cycles Etc. (<Acronym Expansion="European Commission">EC</Acronym> Type Approval)
    (Amendment) Regulations 2003</Title>
    <MadeDate>
      <Text>Made</Text>
      <DateText>14th April 2003</DateText>
    </MadeDate>
```

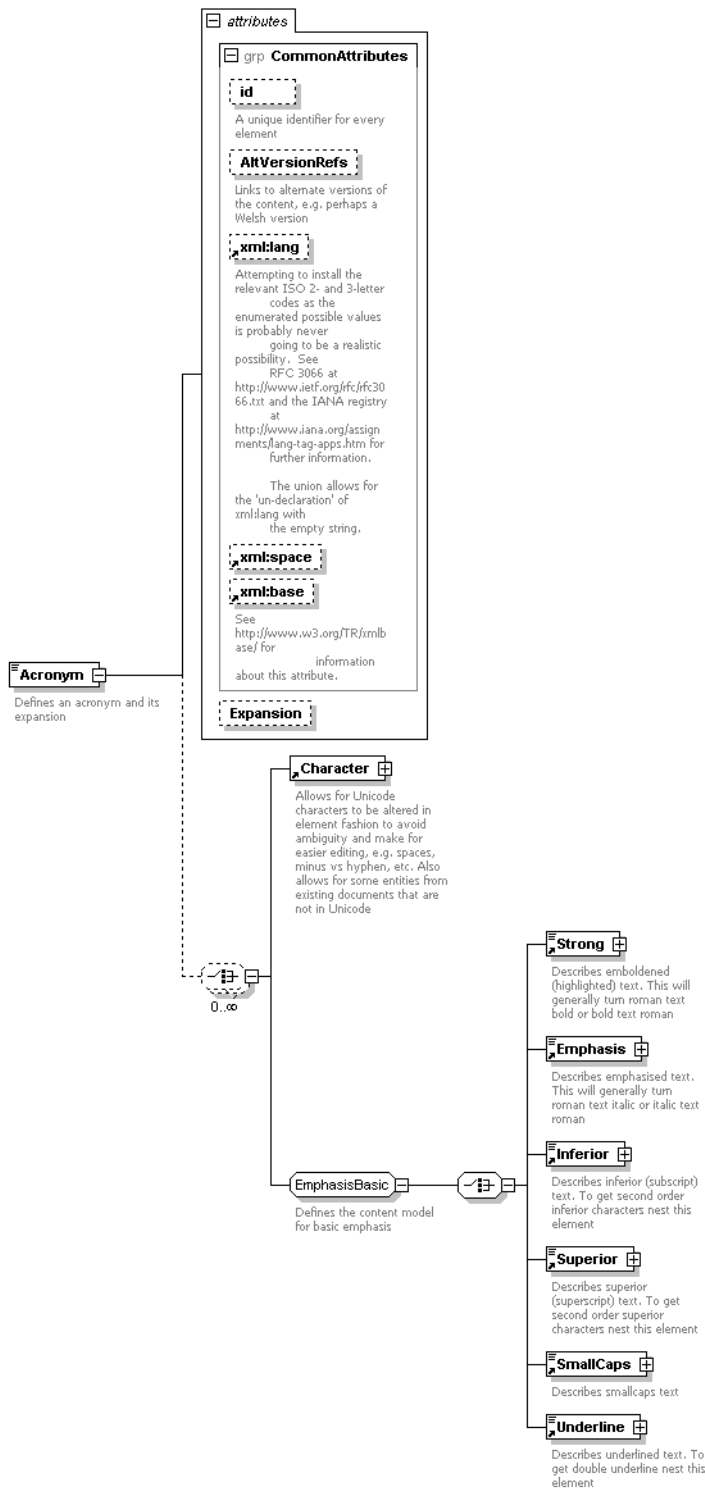
Ref: UKSI 2003 1099

## Example image

<b>2003 No. 1099</b>	
<b>ROAD TRAFFIC</b>	
The Motor Cycles Etc. (EC Type Approval) (Amendment) Regulations 2003	
<i>Made</i> - - - -	<i>14th April 2003</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>	<i>15th April 2003</i>



diagram



namespace	<a href="http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation">http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation</a>	
properties	content	complex
	mixed	true
children	<b>Character Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline</b>	
used by	groups	<b>InlineBasic InlineBasicRestricted InlineLegislationCitation</b>

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	Expansion	<b>xsd:string</b>			
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="Acronym"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines an acronym and its expansion&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Character"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="EmphasisBasic"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Expansion" type="xsd:string"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## Footnote

A footnote to the document.

For a definitive definition of the use of footnotes in secondary legislation please see *Statutory Instrument Practice*, 3rd edition (June 2003), section 2.11 (Footnotes).

The Number element can be used to override the default automatic footnote numbering. The value of the element should be the text required as the number. Any footnotes following on from those with overridden numbers should continue the sequence from before the overridden value, e.g. footnotes may be numbered, 1, 2, 2A, 3, 4 ...

For secondary legislation the default for numbering on the hardcopy is lettered (a), (b), (c), restarting on each page. That is, apart from instruments made by the National Assembly for Wales, where the numbering is Arabic.

### id

A unique identifier for the footnote. The format of this identifier should be fxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, f00010, f01353.

### Example code

```
<Footnotes>
  <Footnote id="f00001">
    <FootnoteText>
      <Para>
        <Text>
          <Citation id="c00001" Class="ukpga" Year="1998" Number="0046">1998 c. 46</Citation>.</Text>
        </Para>
      </FootnoteText>
    </Footnote>
    <Footnote id="f00002">
      <FootnoteText>
        <Para>
          <Text>
            <Citation id="c00002" Class="ukpga" Year="1965" Number="0025">1965 c. 25</Citation>. The
            functions of the Minister of Transport were transferred to the Scottish Ministers by virtue of
            section 53 of the Scotland Act 1998</Text>
          </Para>
        </FootnoteText>
      </Footnote>
    </Footnotes>
```

Ref: SI 1999 3320

## Example image

Her Majesty, in exercise of the powers conferred upon Her by sections 93(3) and 113 of the Scotland Act 1998(a), and of all other powers enabling Her in that behalf, is pleased, by and with the advice of Her Privy Council to order, and it is hereby ordered, as follows:

#### Citation, commencement and interpretation

1.—(1) This Order may be cited as the Scotland Act 1998 (Agency Arrangements) (Specification) (No. 2) Order 1999.

(2) This Order shall come into force on 1st February 2000.

#### Specification of functions

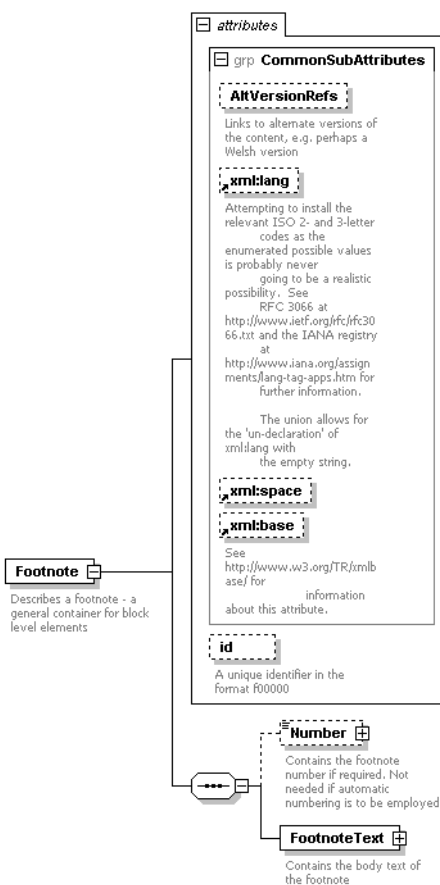
2. The functions conferred on the Scottish Ministers by section 92(1) and (2) of the Finance Act 1965(b) are hereby specified for the purposes of section 93(1) of the Scotland Act 1998.

*A.K. Galloway*  
Clerk of the Privy Council

(a) 1998 c.46.

(b) 1965 c.25. The functions of the Minister of Transport were transferred to the Scottish Ministers by virtue of section 53 of the Scotland Act 1998.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Number FootnoteText**

used by elements **Footnotes Notes**  
group **TableFootnoteCellLocal**

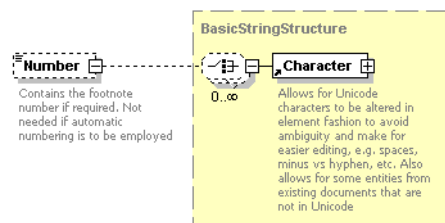
attributes Name Type Use Default Fixed  
AltVersionRefs **xsd:IDREFS**  
lang  
space  
base  
id **derived by: xsd:ID**

source `<xsd:element name="Footnote">`  
`<xsd:annotation>`  
`<xsd:documentation>`Describes a footnote - a general container for block level  
`elements</xsd:documentation>`  
`</xsd:annotation>`  
`<xsd:complexType>`  
`<xsd:sequence>`  
`<xsd:element name="Number" type="BasicStringStructure" minOccurs="0">`  
`<xsd:annotation>`  
`<xsd:documentation>`Contains the footnote number if required. Not needed if automatic numbering is  
to be employed`</xsd:documentation>`  
`</xsd:annotation>`  
`</xsd:element>`  
`<xsd:element name="FootnoteText" type="ParaBasicStructure">`  
`<xsd:annotation>`  
`<xsd:documentation>`Contains the body text of the footnote`</xsd:documentation>`  
`</xsd:annotation>`  
`</xsd:element>`  
`</xsd:sequence>`  
`<xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>`  
`<xsd:attribute name="id">`  
`<xsd:annotation>`  
`<xsd:documentation>`A unique identifier in the format f00000`</xsd:documentation>`  
`</xsd:annotation>`  
`<xsd:simpleType>`  
`<xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID">`  
`<xsd:pattern value="f[0-9]{5}"/>`  
`</xsd:restriction>`  
`</xsd:simpleType>`  
`</xsd:attribute>`  
`</xsd:complexType>`  
`</xsd:element>`

## Footnote/Number

The number for a footnote. This is optional and should only be used where automatic footnote numbering is to be overridden.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type **BasicStringStructure**

properties

isRef	0
minOcc	0
maxOcc	1
content	complex
mixed	true

children **Character**

used by elements **Appendix Chapter Figure Form FragmentNumber Group Part Pblock PsubBlock Schedule Tabular**

source

```
<xsd:element name="Number" type="BasicStringStructure" minOccurs="0">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Contains the footnote number if required. Not needed if automatic numbering is to be
    employed</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
</xsd:element>
```

element

## FootnoteRef

A cross-reference to a footnote. It is possible for more than one <FootnoteRef> element to cross-reference the same footnote. The text of the cross-reference will, by default, be automatically generated to match the footnote. The value of the generated text is left to the implementation. However, where a footnote has a number attribute the cross-reference should use the text of this attribute.

The first part of the sample code below show a cross-reference. The second part show the corresponding <Footnotes> fragment of the document.

## Ref

A unique identifier which corresponds with the id attribute of a footnote element. The format of this identifier should be fxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example: f00010, f01353.

## Example code

```
<EnactingText>
  <Para>
    <Text>Her Majesty, in exercise of the powers conferred upon Her by sections 93(3) and 113 of the
    Scotland Act 1998<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/>, and of all other powers enabling Her in that behalf, is
    pleased, by and with the advice of Her Privy Council to order, and it is hereby ordered, as
    follows:</Text>
  </Para>
</EnactingText>

<Footnotes>
  <Footnote id="f00001">
    <FootnoteText>
      <Para>
        <Text>
          <Citation id="c00001" Class="ukpga" Year="1998" Number="0046">1998 c. 46</Citation>.</Text>
        </Para>
      </FootnoteText>
    </Footnote>
  <Footnote id="f00002">
    <FootnoteText>
      <Para>
        <Text>
          <Citation id="c00002" Class="ukpga" Year="1965" Number="0025">1965 c. 25</Citation>. The
          functions of the Minister of Transport were transferred to the Scottish Ministers by virtue of
          section 53 of the Scotland Act 1998</Text>
        </Para>
      </FootnoteText>
    </Footnote>
  </Footnotes>
```

Ref: SI 1999 3320

## Example image

Her Majesty, in exercise of the powers conferred upon Her by sections 93(3) and 113 of the Scotland Act 1998(a), and of all other powers enabling Her in that behalf, is pleased, by and with the advice of Her Privy Council to order, and it is hereby ordered, as follows:

### Citation, commencement and interpretation

1.—(1) This Order may be cited as the Scotland Act 1998 (Agency Arrangements) (Specification) (No. 2) Order 1999.

(2) This Order shall come into force on 1st February 2000.

### Specification of functions

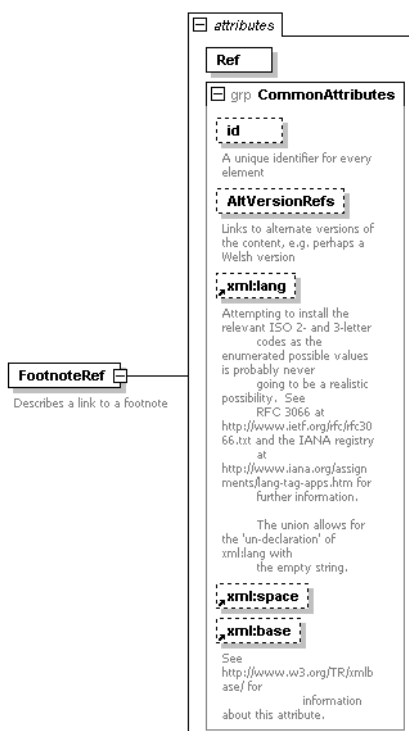
2. The functions conferred on the Scottish Ministers by section 92(1) and (2) of the Finance Act 1965(b) are hereby specified for the purposes of section 93(1) of the Scotland Act 1998.

*A.K. Galloway*  
Clerk of the Privy Council

(a) 1998 c.46.

(b) 1965 c.25. The functions of the Minister of Transport were transferred to the Scottish Ministers by virtue of section 53 of the Scotland Act 1998.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex



used by	element	<b>Form</b>				
	groups	<b>InlineBasic</b>	<b>InlineBasic</b>	<b>Restricted</b>	<b>Inline</b>	<b>LegislationCitation</b>
attributes	Name		Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Ref		<b>xsd:string</b>	required		
	id		<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs		<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang					
	space					
	base					

```
source <xsd:element name="FootnoteRef">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Describes a link to a footnote</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>The Ref attribute should point to an ID attribute on a footnote</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:attribute name="Ref" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## Footnotes

A container for footnotes to the document.

For a definitive definition of the use of footnotes in secondary legislation please see *Statutory Instrument Practice*, 3rd edition (June 2003), section 2.11 (Footnotes).

### Example code

```
<Footnotes>
  <Footnote id="f00001">
    <FootnoteText>
      <Para>
        <Text>
          <Citation id="c00001" Class="ukpga" Year="1998" Number="0046">1998 c. 46</Citation>.</Text>
        </Para>
      </FootnoteText>
    </Footnote>
    <Footnote id="f00002">
      <FootnoteText>
        <Para>
          <Text>
            <Citation id="c00002" Class="ukpga" Year="1965" Number="0025">1965 c. 25</Citation>. The
            functions of the Minister of Transport were transferred to the Scottish Ministers by virtue of
            section 53 of the Scotland Act 1998</Text>
          </Para>
        </FootnoteText>
      </Footnote>
    </Footnotes>
```

Ref: SI 1999 3320

### Example image

Her Majesty, in exercise of the powers conferred upon Her by sections 93(3) and 113 of the Scotland Act 1998(a), and of all other powers enabling Her in that behalf, is pleased, by and with the advice of Her Privy Council to order, and it is hereby ordered, as follows:

#### **Citation, commencement and interpretation**

1.—(1) This Order may be cited as the Scotland Act 1998 (Agency Arrangements) (Specification) (No. 2) Order 1999.

(2) This Order shall come into force on 1st February 2000.

#### **Specification of functions**

2. The functions conferred on the Scottish Ministers by section 92(1) and (2) of the Finance Act 1965(b) are hereby specified for the purposes of section 93(1) of the Scotland Act 1998.

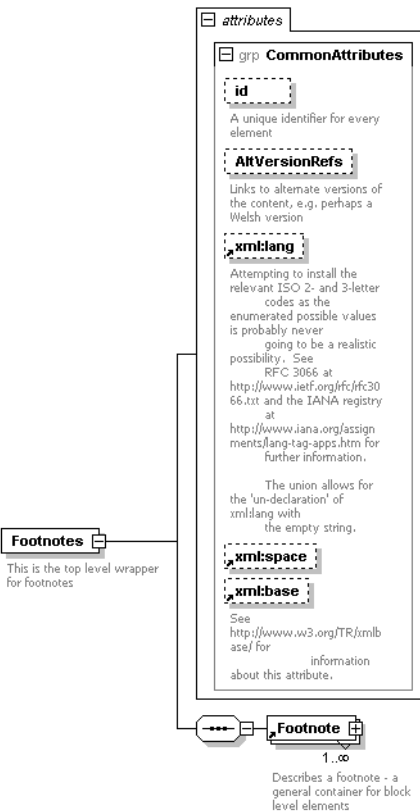
*A.K. Galloway*  
Clerk of the Privy Council

---

(a) 1998 c.46.

(b) 1965 c.25. The functions of the Minister of Transport were transferred to the Scottish Ministers by virtue of section 53 of the Scotland Act 1998.

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content	complex				
children	Footnote					
used by	element	Legislation				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Footnotes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;This is the top level wrapper for footnotes&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Footnote" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## MarginNote

This is a margin note (or sidenote) to a section of the document. These are printed to the side of the main text of the document at the point where they are referenced. Margin notes are referenced with a `<MarginNoteRef>` element.

### id

This is a unique identifier for the margin note. The format of this identifier should be mxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example: m00010, m01353.

### Example code

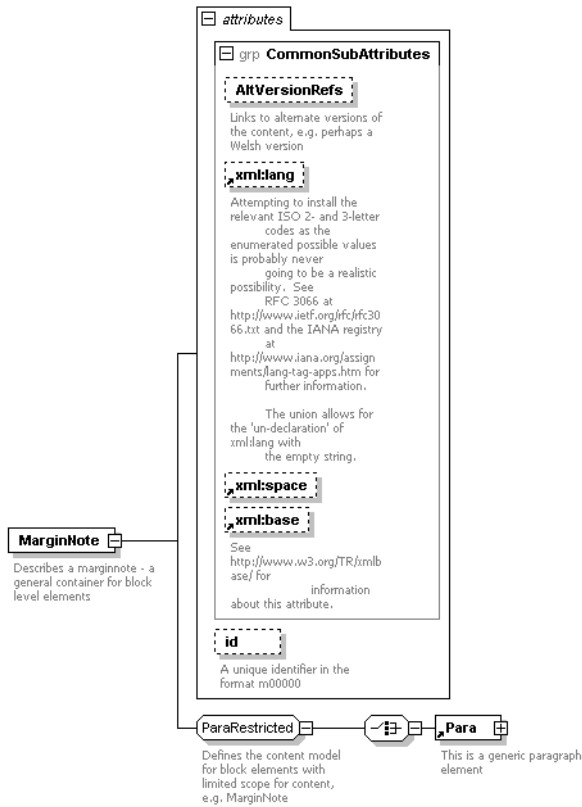
```
<MarginNote id="m00076">
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Citation id="c00108" Class="ukpga" Year="1989" Number="0026">1989 c. 26</Citation>.</Text>
    </Para>
  </MarginNote>
<MarginNote id="m00077">
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Citation id="c00109" Class="nia" Year="1972" Number="0010">1972 c. 10</Citation> (N.I.).</Text>
    </Para>
  </MarginNote>
```

Ref: UKPGA 1994 0022

### Example image

<i>Assignment of registration marks</i>	
1989 c. 26.	11. The inclusion in this Act of subsection (2), and the words “for the time being” in subsection (3), of section 23 (which reproduce the amendments of the Vehicles (Excise) Act 1971 made by section 10(2) and (3) of the Finance Act 1989) shall not be construed as affecting the operation of—
1972 c. 10 (N.I.).	(a) the Vehicles (Excise) Act 1971 or the Vehicles (Excise) Act (Northern Ireland) 1972, or
	(b) any regulations made under either of those Acts,
	in relation to any time before 27th July 1989 (the day on which the Finance Act 1989 was passed).

diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Para**used by element **MarginNotes**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			

source

```

<xsd:element name="MarginNote">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Describes a marginnote - a general container for block level
elements</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:group ref="ParaRestricted"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="id">
      <xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:documentation>A unique identifier in the format m00000</xsd:documentation>
      </xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID">
          <xsd:pattern value="m[0-9]{5}"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## MarginNoteRef

This is a cross-reference to a margin note. It is possible for more than one <MarginNoteRef> element to cross-reference the same <MarginNote>. The text of the margin note generally floats to the side of the main text at the point of reference.

### Ref

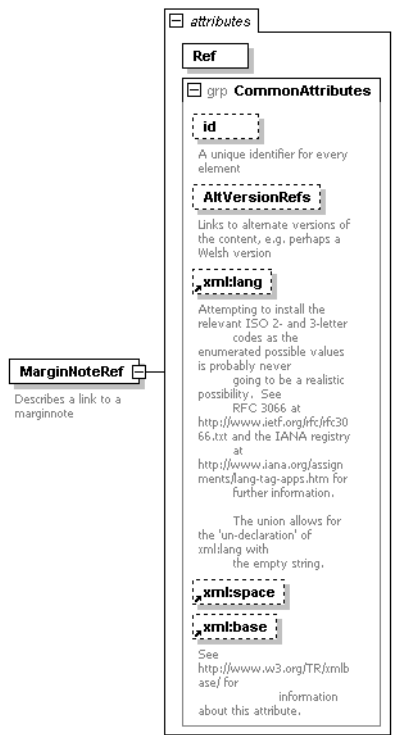
This is a unique identifier that corresponds with the id attribute of a <MarginNote> element. The format of this identifier should be mxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example: m00010, m01353.

### Example code

```
<P2>
  <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
  <P2para>
    <Text>In subsections (1) and (2) "statement" and "document"—</Text>
    <P3>
      <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>in England and Wales, have the same meanings as in section 10(1) of the <MarginNoteRef
Ref="m00020"/>Civil Evidence Act 1968,</Text>
        </P3para>
      </P3>
    <P3>
      <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>in Scotland, have the same meanings as in section 17(3) of the <MarginNoteRef
Ref="m00021"/>Law Reform (Miscellaneous Provisions) (Scotland) Act 1968, and</Text>
        </P3para>
      </P3>
    <P3>
      <Pnumber>c</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>in Northern Ireland, have the same meanings as in section 6(1) of the <MarginNoteRef
Ref="m00022"/>Civil Evidence Act (Northern Ireland) 1971.</Text>
        </P3para>
      </P3>
    </P2para>
  </P2>
```

Ref: UKPGA 1994 0022

diagram

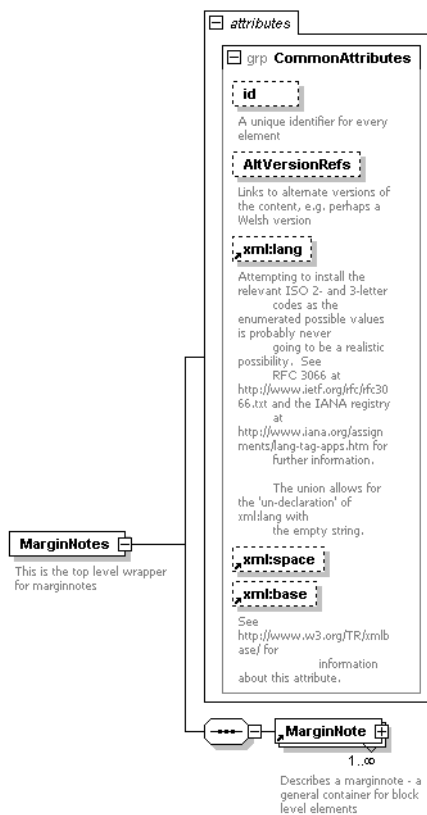


namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content	complex			
used by	groups	InlineBasic InlineBasicRestricted InlineLegislationCitation			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Ref	xsd:string	required		
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="MarginNoteRef"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Describes a link to a marginnote&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The Ref attribute should point to an ID attribute on a marginnote&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Ref" type="xsd:string" use="required"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## MarginNotes

A container for the margin notes in the document.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **MarginNote**

used by element **Legislation**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

source

```
<xsd:element name="MarginNotes">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>This is the top level wrapper for marginnotes</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="MarginNote" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```



## ExternalLink

A generic external link element. This allows for hyperlinks to other documents to be created.

### URI

Should describe the target as a URI. For DOIs use the URN format, e.g. doi:10.1000/182

### Title

Allows for a description of the hyperlink.

### Example code

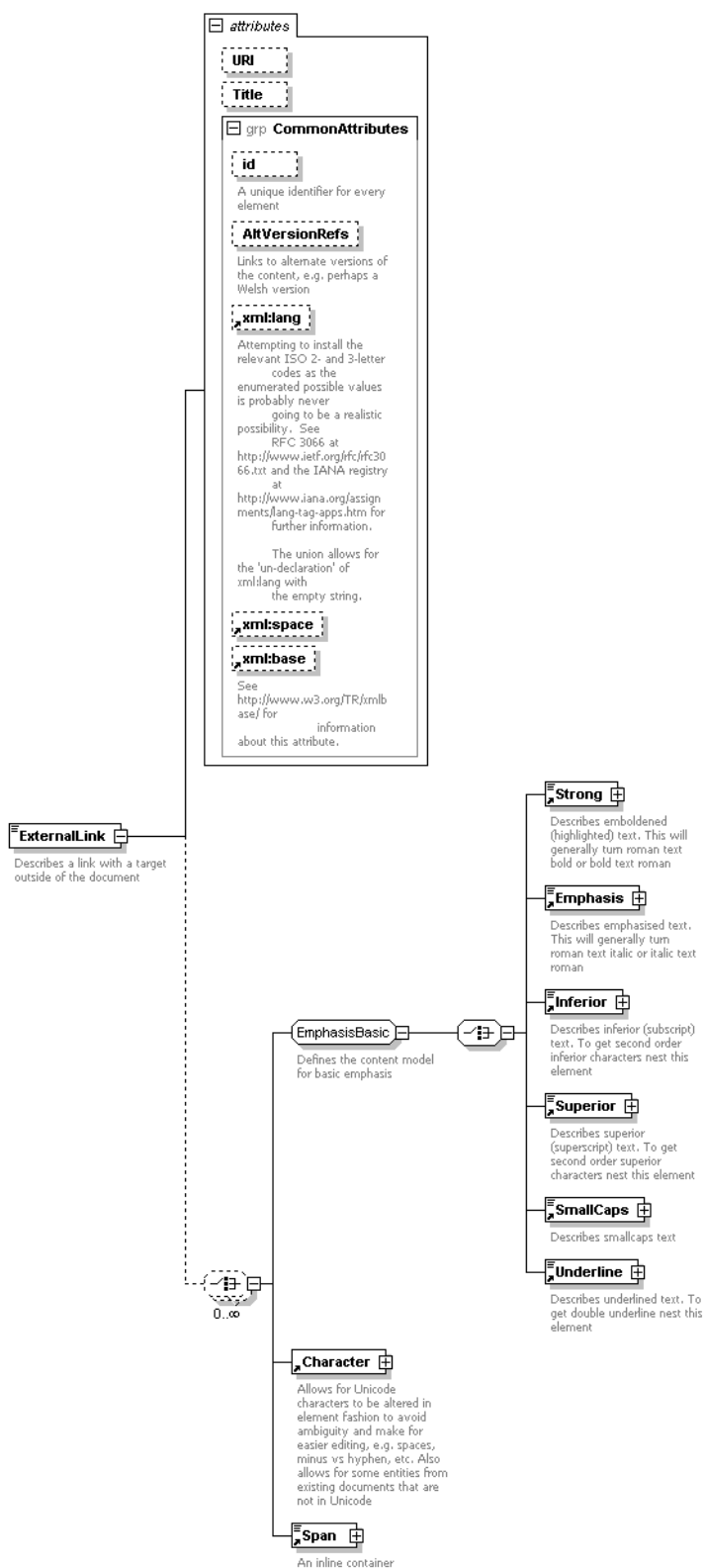
```
<P>
  <Text Hanging="indented">Copies of the Directives referred to in the Regulations may be obtained
from the Stationery Office. Copies of the Transposition Note are available from the Vehicle
Certification Agency, 1 The Eastgate Office Centre, Eastgate Road, Bristol, BS5 6XX (Telephone
number: 0117 9524106; fax number: 0117 9524104). Access to copies of the Note can also be obtained by
visiting the Vehicle Certification Agency's website at <ExternalLink URI="http://www.vca.gov.uk"
Title="Vehicle Certification Agency website">www.vca.gov.uk</ExternalLink>.</Text>
</P>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1099

### Example image

Copies of the Directives referred to in the Regulations may be obtained from the Stationery Office. Copies of the Transposition Note are available from the Vehicle Certification Agency, 1 The Eastgate Office Centre, Eastgate Road, Bristol, BS5 6XX (Telephone number: 0117 9524106; fax number: 0117 9524104). Access to copies of the Note can also be obtained by visiting the Vehicle Certification Agency's website at [www.vca.gov.uk](http://www.vca.gov.uk).

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties  
content mixed  
complex true

children **Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span**

used by group **InlineBasic**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	URI	<b>xsd:anyURI</b>			
	Title	<b>xsd:string</b>			
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="ExternalLink"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Describes a link with a target outside of the document&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The uri attribute should describe the target as a URI. For DOIs use the format doi:10.1000/182&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The title attribute should describe the link&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="EmphasisBasic"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Character"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Span"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="URI" type="xsd:anyURI"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Title" type="xsd:string"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## InternalLink

A generic internal linking mechanism. This allows for user-defined links to be created to any element (or range of elements ) that has a unique id attribute.

### Ref

Defines the target of the link. To be more precise it defines the *start* of the range of the target. If the EndRef attribute is not present then it also defines the end of the range – that is the target is a point and not a range.

### EndRef

An optional attribute. If present this defines the end of the range for the target of the link.

### Example code

```
<P2 id="p00009">
  <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
  <P2para>
    <Text>A claimant who is entitled to state pension credit is entitled-</Text>
    <P3 id="p00006">
      <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>to a guarantee credit, calculated in accordance with <InternalLink Ref="p00004">section
2</InternalLink>, if he satisfies the condition in <InternalLink Ref="p00001">subsection
(1)</InternalLink> of that section, or</Text>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
    <P3 id="p00007">
      <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
      <P3para>
        <Text>to a savings credit, calculated in accordance with <InternalLink Ref="p00005">section
3</InternalLink>, if he satisfies the conditions in <InternalLink Ref="p00002">subsections
(1)</InternalLink> and <InternalLink Ref="p00003">(2)</InternalLink> of that section,</Text>
      </P3para>
    </P3>
    <Text>(or to both, if he satisfies both the condition mentioned in <InternalLink
Ref="p00006">paragraph (a)</InternalLink> and the conditions mentioned in <InternalLink
Ref="p00007">paragraph (b)</InternalLink>).</Text>
  </P2para>
</P2>
```

Ref: SI 2002 0016

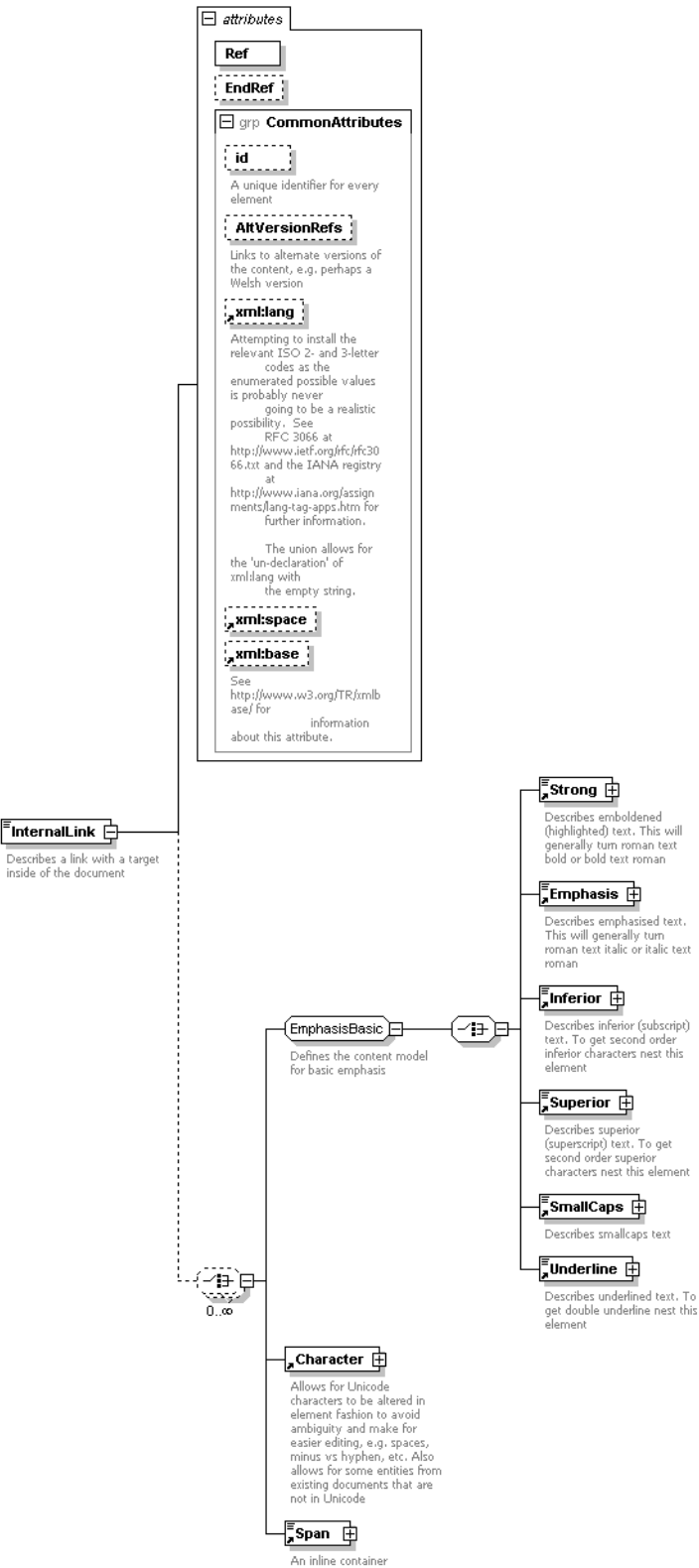
### Example code

```
<P2>
  <Pnumber>7</Pnumber>
  <P2para>
    <Text>This section and <InternalLink Ref="p00026" EndRef="p00300">sections 7 to 10</InternalLink>
shall be construed as one.</Text>
  </P2para>
</P2>
```

Ref: SI 2002 0016

### Example code

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation	
properties	content	complex
	mixed	true
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span	
used by	group	InlineBasic

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Ref	<b>xsd:IDREF</b>	required		
	EndRef	<b>xsd:IDREF</b>	optional		
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="InternalLink"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Describes a link with a target inside of the document&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The ref attribute should point to an ID attribute&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="EmphasisBasic"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Character"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Span"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Ref" type="xsd:IDREF" use="required"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="EndRef" type="xsd:IDREF" use="optional"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## Contents

Legislation sometimes includes Table of Contents for the whole document or for document fragments. These include the Schedules section, individual schedules and the appendices. There is no definitive rule as to whether a document should or should not contain a TOC.

These are usually called Arrangement of Sections or Arrangement of Regulations but are basically just TOCS with section reference numbers.

Critically, the headings in the TOC do not necessarily match up completely with the headings in the main body of the document. Either some are missing, or there are extra entries, or the content of the heading is slightly different to the TOC entry.

The contents heading elements are based directly upon the hierarchical heading elements that are used in the main content.

If an auto-generated TOC is required then this element should be inserted and left element. This acts as a flag.

### Example code

```
<Contents>
  <ContentsTitle>Contents</ContentsTitle>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>1</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Offences</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>2</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: stalking and flushing from cover</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>3</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>4</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: search by authorised person</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>5</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: retrieval and location</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>6</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Excepted activities</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>7</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Arrest, search and seizure</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>8</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Proceedings and penalties</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
```

```
<ContentsItem>
  <ContentsNumber>9</ContentsNumber>
  <ContentsTitle>Disqualification orders</ContentsTitle>
</ContentsItem>
<ContentsItem>
  <ContentsNumber>10</ContentsNumber>
  <ContentsTitle>Meaning of expressions</ContentsTitle>
</ContentsItem>
<ContentsItem>
  <ContentsNumber>11</ContentsNumber>
  <ContentsTitle>Consequential amendments and repeals</ContentsTitle>
</ContentsItem>
<ContentsItem>
  <ContentsNumber>12</ContentsNumber>
  <ContentsTitle>Short title and commencement</ContentsTitle>
</ContentsItem>
<ContentsSchedules>
  <ContentsSchedule>
    <ContentsNumber>Schedule</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Consequential amendments and repeals</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsSchedule>
</ContentsSchedules>
</Contents>
```

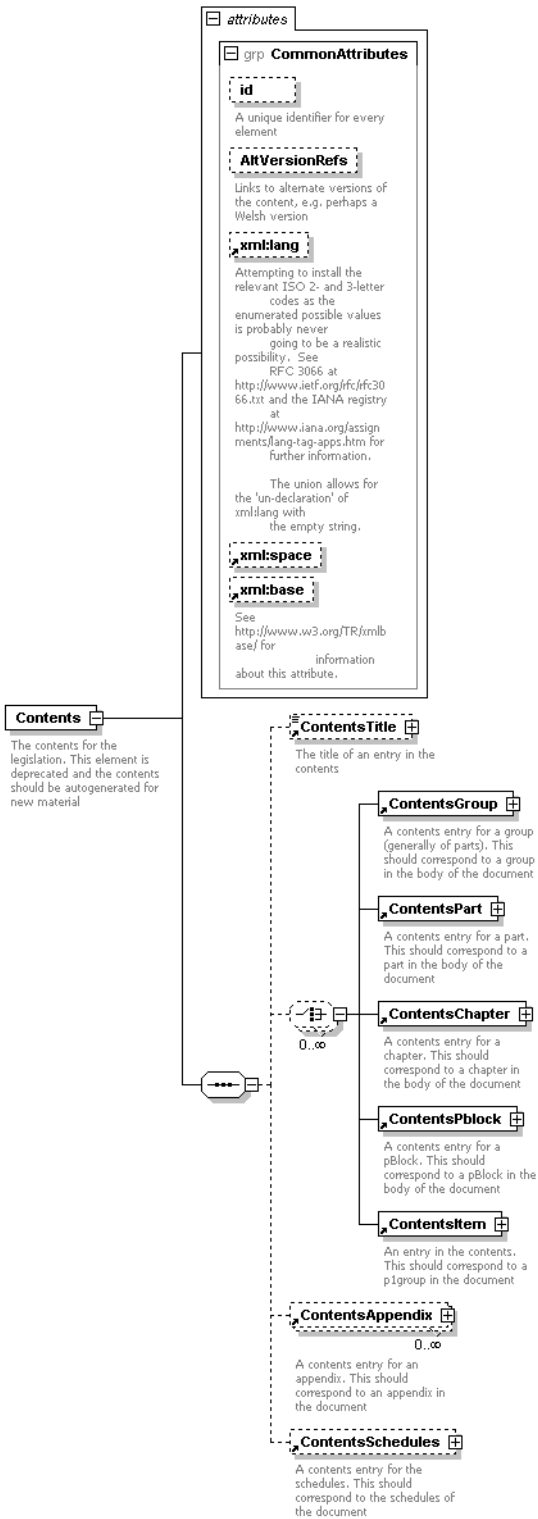
Ref: ASP 2002 0006

### Example image

<b>Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act</b>	
<b>2002</b>	
<b>2002 asp 6</b>	
<b>CONTENTS</b>	
Section	
1	Offences
2	Exception: stalking and flushing from cover
3	Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting
4	Exception: search by authorised person
5	Exception: retrieval and location
6	Excepted activities
7	Arrest, search and seizure
8	Proceedings and penalties
9	Disqualification orders
10	Meaning of expressions
11	Consequential amendments and repeals
12	Short title and commencement
<hr/>	
Schedule—Consequential amendments and repeals	



diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **ContentsTitle ContentsGroup ContentsPart ContentsChapter ContentsPblock ContentsItem ContentsAppendix ContentsSchedules**used by elements **Appendix BlockAmendment Legislation Schedule Schedule**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="Contents"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The contents for the legislation. This element is deprecated and the contents should be autogenerated for new material&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsTitle" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsGroup"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsPart"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsChapter"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsPblock"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsItem"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsAppendix" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsSchedules" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## **ContentsAppendix**

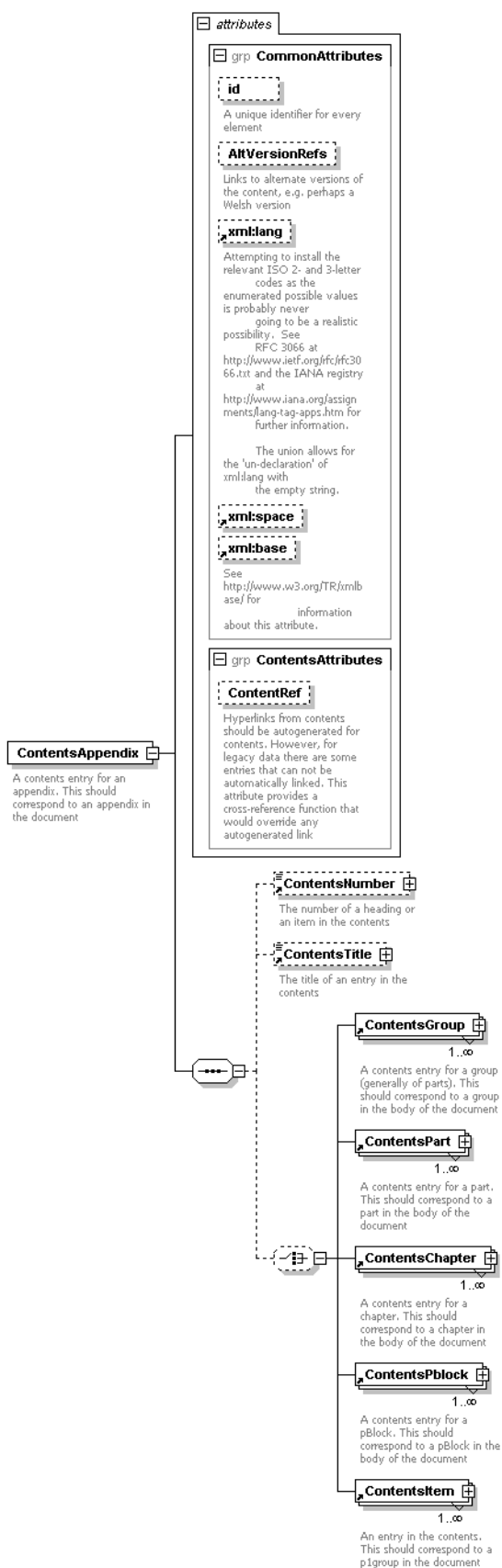
This is a container for an appendix in the contents.

### **ContentRef**

This attribute should contain the id of the element to which the contents item applies. This then allows for the content item to be hyperlinked by a rendering engine.

This attribute is optional but it is highly recommended to use it.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **ContentsNumber ContentsTitle ContentsGroup ContentsPart ContentsChapter ContentsPblock ContentsItem**

used by	elements	BlockAmendment	Contents	ContentsSchedule	ContentsSchedules	
attributes	Name		Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id		derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs		<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	ContentRef		<b>xsd:IDREF</b>			
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="ContentsAppendix"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A contents entry for an appendix. This should correspond to an appendix in the document&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsNumber" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsTitle" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0"&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsGroup" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsPart" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsChapter" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsPblock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsItem" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="ContentsAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>					

## ContentsChapter

A chapter entry in a Table of Contents.

### ContentRef

This attribute should contain the id of the element to which the contents item applies. This then allows for the content item to be hyperlinked by a rendering engine.

This attribute is optional but it is highly recommended to use it.

### Example code

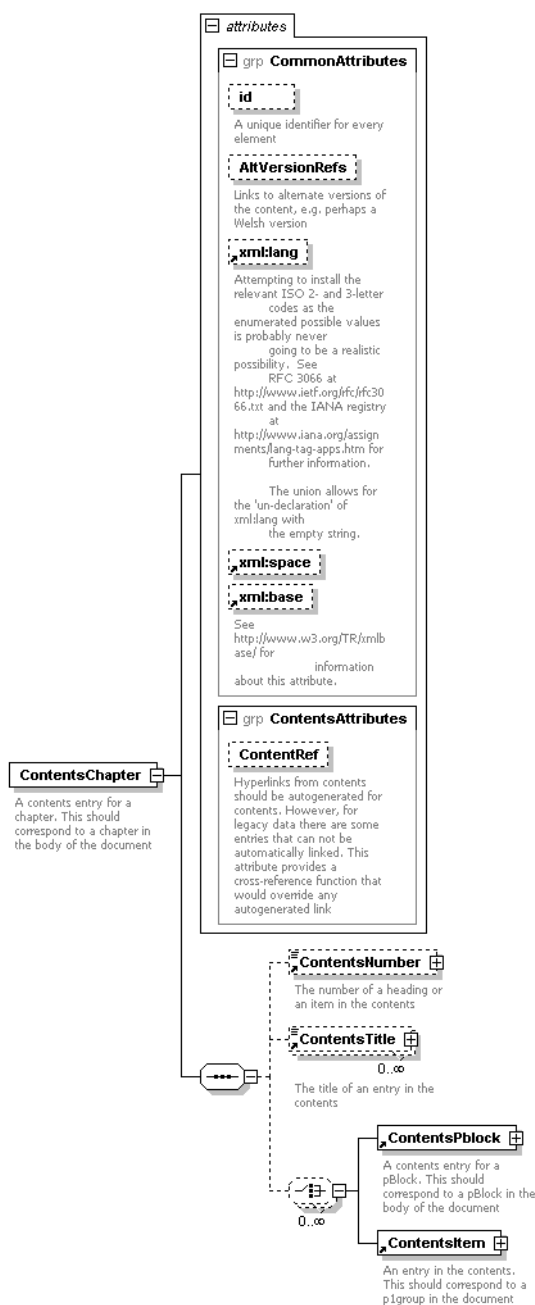
```
<Contents>
  <ContentsTitle>Contents</ContentsTitle>
  <ContentsPart>
    <ContentsNumber>Part 1</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Access rights</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsChapter>
      <ContentsNumber>Chapter 1</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Nature and extent of access rights</ContentsTitle>
      <ContentsItem>
        <ContentsNumber>1</ContentsNumber>
        <ContentsTitle>Access rights</ContentsTitle>
      </ContentsItem>
      <ContentsItem>
        <ContentsNumber>2</ContentsNumber>
        <ContentsTitle>Access rights to be exercised responsibly</ContentsTitle>
      </ContentsItem>
      <ContentsItem>
        <ContentsNumber>3</ContentsNumber>
        <ContentsTitle>Reciprocal obligations of owners</ContentsTitle>
      </ContentsItem>
      <ContentsItem>
        <ContentsNumber>4</ContentsNumber>
        <ContentsTitle>Modification of sections 9, 14 and 23</ContentsTitle>
      </ContentsItem>
      <ContentsItem>
        <ContentsNumber>5</ContentsNumber>
        <ContentsTitle>Access rights, reciprocal obligations and other rules and rights</ContentsTitle>
      </ContentsItem>
    </ContentsChapter>
  </ContentsPart>
</Contents>
```

Ref: ASP 2003 0002

## Example image

	<b>Land Reform (Scotland) Act 2003</b>
	<b>2003 asp 2</b>
	<b>CONTENTS</b>
Section	
	<b>PART 1</b>
	ACCESS RIGHTS
	<b>CHAPTER 1</b>
	NATURE AND EXTENT OF ACCESS RIGHTS
1	Access rights
2	Access rights to be exercised responsibly
3	Reciprocal obligations of owners
4	Modification of sections 9, 14 and 23
5	Access rights, reciprocal obligations and other rules and rights
	<b>CHAPTER 2</b>
	NATURE AND EXTENT OF ACCESS RIGHTS: FURTHER PROVISIONS
6	Land over which access rights not exercisable

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **ContentsNumber ContentsTitle ContentsPblock ContentsItem**

used by elements **BlockAmendment Contents ContentsAppendix ContentsGroup ContentsPart ContentsSchedule**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	ContentRef	xsd:IDREF			



```
source <xsd:element name="ContentsChapter">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A contents entry for a chapter. This should correspond to a chapter in the body of
the document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsNumber" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsTitle" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:element ref="ContentsPblock"/>
        <xsd:element ref="ContentsItem"/>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="ContentsAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## ContentsGroup

A group entry in a Table of Contents.

### ContentRef

This attribute should contain the id of the element to which the contents item applies. This then allows for the content item to be hyperlinked by a rendering engine.

This attribute is optional but it is highly recommended to use it.

### Example code

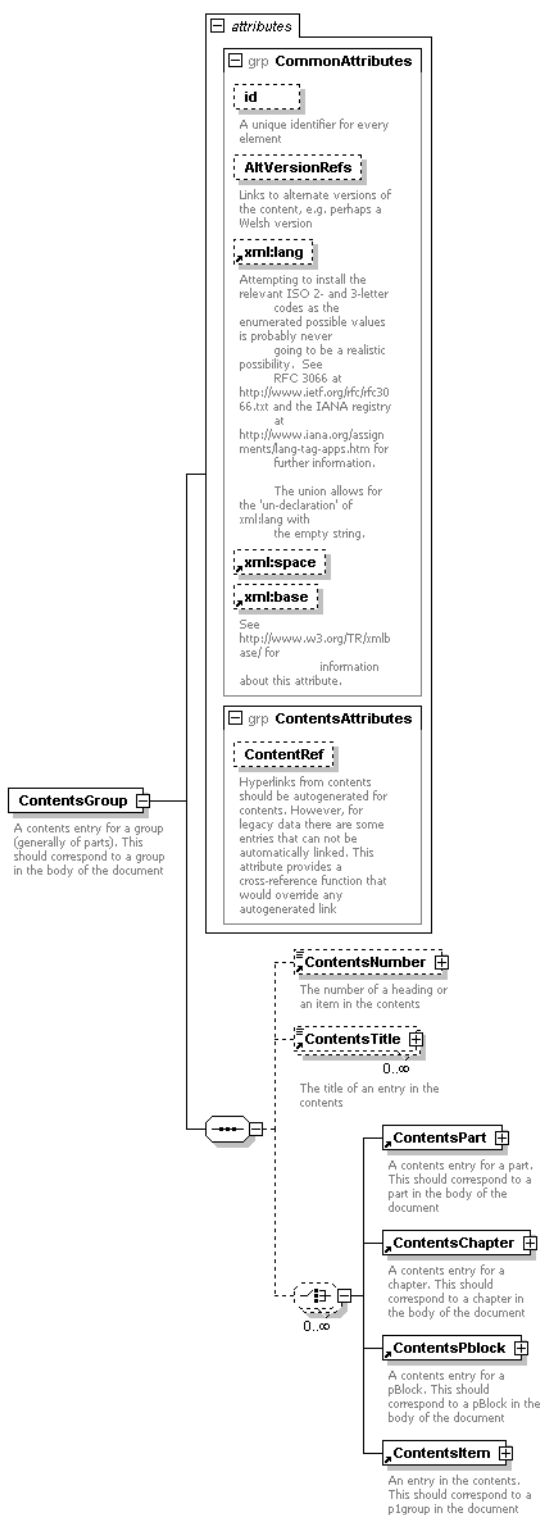
```
<Contents>
  <ContentsTitle>CONTENTS</ContentsTitle>
  <ContentsGroup>
    <ContentsNumber>First Group of Parts</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Discipline</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsPart>
      <ContentsNumber>Part 1</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Offences</ContentsTitle>
      <ContentsPblock>
        <ContentsTitle>Assisting an enemy, misconduct on operations etc</ContentsTitle>
        <ContentsItem>
          <ContentsNumber>1</ContentsNumber>
          <ContentsTitle>Assisting an enemy</ContentsTitle>
        </ContentsItem>
        <ContentsItem>
          <ContentsNumber>2</ContentsNumber>
          <ContentsTitle>Misconduct on operations</ContentsTitle>
        </ContentsItem>
        <ContentsItem>
          <ContentsNumber>3</ContentsNumber>
          <ContentsTitle>Obstructing operations</ContentsTitle>
        </ContentsItem>
        <ContentsItem>
          <ContentsNumber>4</ContentsNumber>
          <ContentsTitle>Looting</ContentsTitle>
        </ContentsItem>
        <ContentsItem>
          <ContentsNumber>5</ContentsNumber>
          <ContentsTitle>Failure to escape etc</ContentsTitle>
        </ContentsItem>
      </ContentsPblock>
    </ContentsPart>
  </ContentsGroup>
  ...
</Contents>
```

Ref: UKPGA 2006 0005

## Example image

CONTENTS	
FIRST GROUP OF PARTS	
DISCIPLINE	
PART 1	
OFFENCES	
<i>Assisting an enemy, misconduct on operations etc</i>	
1	Assisting an enemy
2	Misconduct on operations
3	Obstructing operations
4	Looting
5	Failure to escape etc
<i>Mutiny</i>	
6	Mutiny
7	Failure to suppress mutiny
<i>Desertion and absence without leave</i>	
8	Desertion
9	Absence without leave
10	Failure to cause apprehension of deserters or absentees

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **ContentsNumber ContentsTitle ContentsPart ContentsChapter ContentsPblock ContentsItem**

used by elements **Contents ContentsAppendix ContentsSchedule**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	ContentRef	<b>xsd:IDREF</b>			
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="ContentsGroup"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A contents entry for a group (generally of parts). This should correspond to a group in the body of the document&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsNumber" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsTitle" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsPart"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsChapter"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsPblock"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsItem"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="ContentsAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## ContentsItem

A container for a subentry in a table of contents.

### Example code

```
<Contents>
  <ContentsTitle>Contents</ContentsTitle>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>1</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Offences</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>2</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: stalking and flushing from cover</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>3</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>4</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: search by authorised person</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>5</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: retrieval and location</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>6</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Excepted activities</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>7</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Arrest, search and seizure</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>8</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Proceedings and penalties</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>9</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Disqualification orders</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>10</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Meaning of expressions</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>11</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Consequential amendments and repeals</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>12</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Short title and commencement</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsSchedules>
    <ContentsSchedule>
      <ContentsNumber>Schedule</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Consequential amendments and repeals</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsSchedule>
  </ContentsSchedules>
</Contents>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

## Example image

# Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act

## 2002

### 2002 asp 6

## CONTENTS

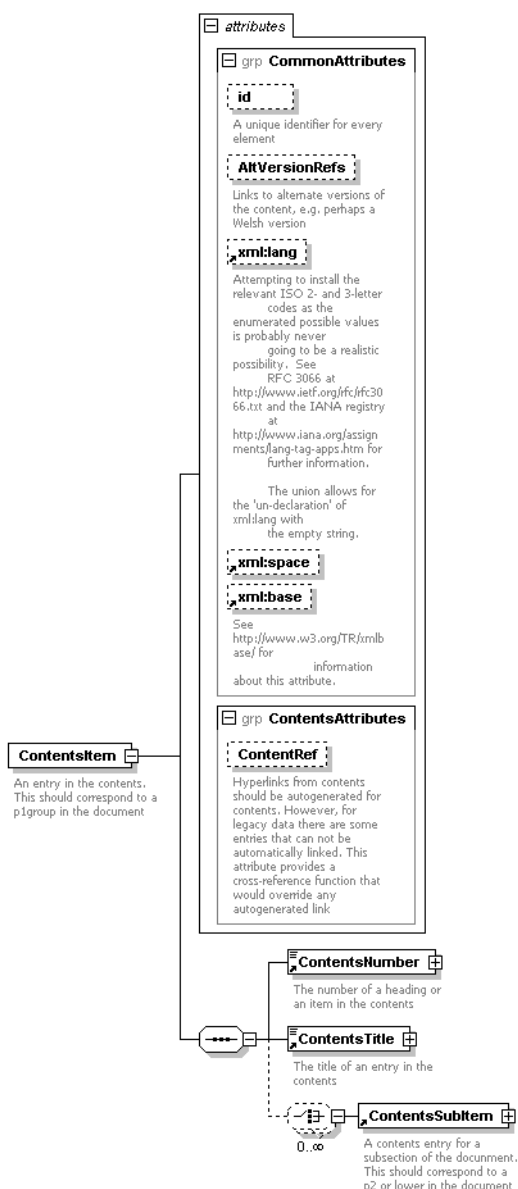
### Section

- 1 Offences
- 2 Exception: stalking and flushing from cover
- 3 Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting
- 4 Exception: search by authorised person
- 5 Exception: retrieval and location
- 6 Excepted activities
- 7 Arrest, search and seizure
- 8 Proceedings and penalties
- 9 Disqualification orders
- 10 Meaning of expressions
- 11 Consequential amendments and repeals
- 12 Short title and commencement

---

Schedule—Consequential amendments and repeals

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **ContentsNumber ContentsTitle ContentsSubItem**

used by elements **BlockAmendment Contents ContentsAppendix ContentsChapter ContentsGroup ContentsPart ContentsPblock ContentsPsubBlock ContentsSchedule**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	ContentRef	xsd:IDREF			



```
source <xsd:element name="ContentsItem">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>An entry in the contents. This should correspond to a p1group in the
document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsNumber"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsTitle"/>
      <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:element ref="ContentsSubItem"/>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="ContentsAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## ContentsNumber

Holds the number of the item, e.g. part or chapter, in the table of contents.

### Example code

```
<Contents>
  <ContentsTitle>Contents</ContentsTitle>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>1</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Offences</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>2</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: stalking and flushing from cover</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>3</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>4</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: search by authorised person</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>5</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: retrieval and location</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>6</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Excepted activities</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>7</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Arrest, search and seizure</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>8</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Proceedings and penalties</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>9</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Disqualification orders</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>10</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Meaning of expressions</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>11</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Consequential amendments and repeals</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>12</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Short title and commencement</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsSchedules>
    <ContentsSchedule>
      <ContentsNumber>Schedule</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Consequential amendments and repeals</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsSchedule>
  </ContentsSchedules>
</Contents>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

## Example image

Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act  
2002  
2002 asp 6

## CONTENTS

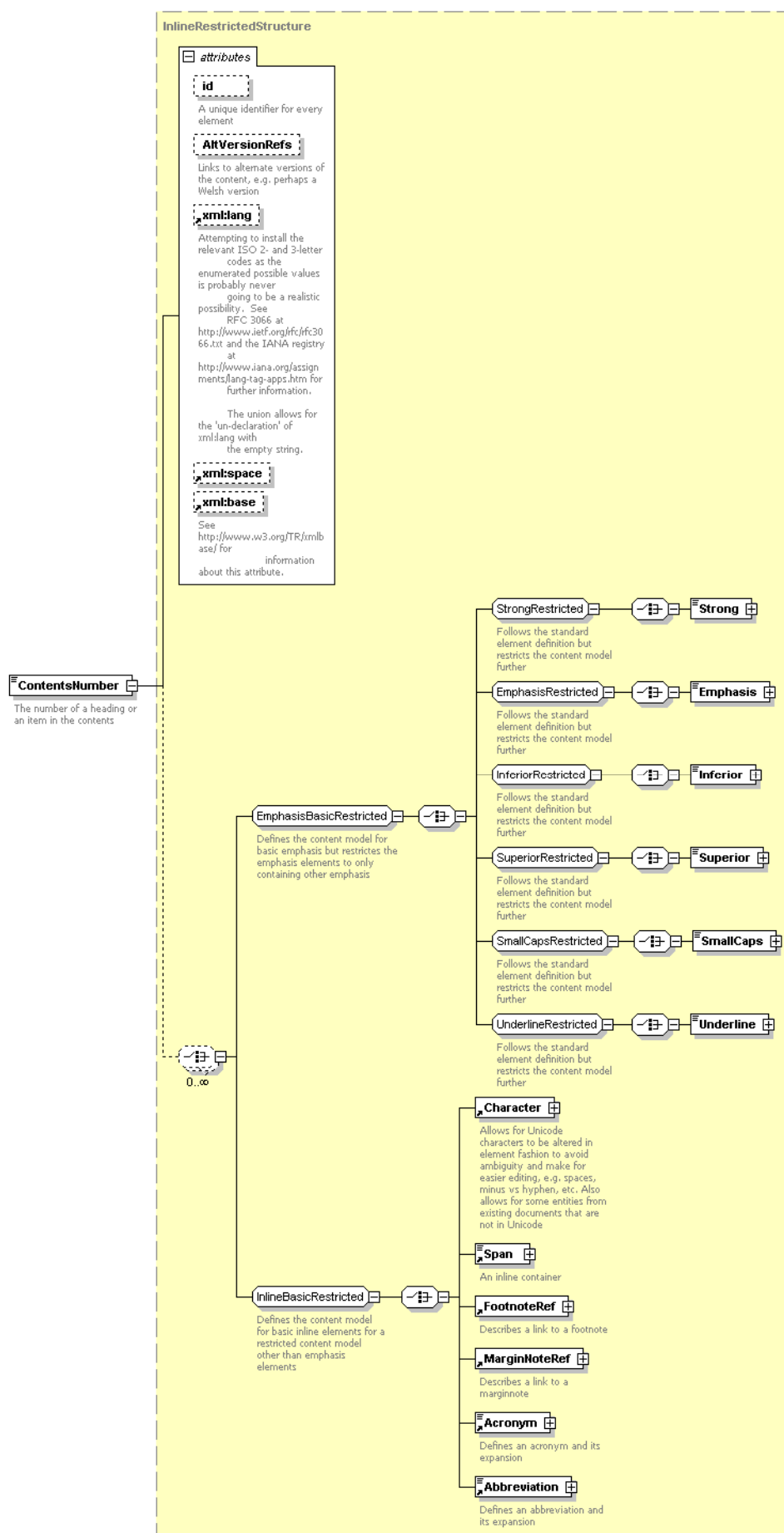
## Section

- 1 Offences
- 2 Exception: stalking and flushing from cover
- 3 Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting
- 4 Exception: search by authorised person
- 5 Exception: retrieval and location
- 6 Excepted activities
- 7 Arrest, search and seizure
- 8 Proceedings and penalties
- 9 Disqualification orders
- 10 Meaning of expressions
- 11 Consequential amendments and repeals
- 12 Short title and commencement

---

Schedule—Consequential amendments and repeals

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineRestrictedStructure				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	elements	ContentsAppendix ContentsChapter ContentsGroup ContentsItem ContentsPart ContentsPblock ContentsPsubBlock ContentsSchedule ContentsSubItem			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<xsd:element name="ContentsNumber" type="InlineRestrictedStructure"> <xsd:annotation> <xsd:documentation>The number of a heading or an item in the contents</xsd:documentation> </xsd:annotation> </xsd:element>				

## ContentsPart

A part entry in a Table of Contents.

### ContentRef

This attribute should contain the id of the element to which the contents item applies. This then allows for the content item to be hyperlinked by a rendering engine.

This attribute is optional but it is highly recommended to use it.

### Example code

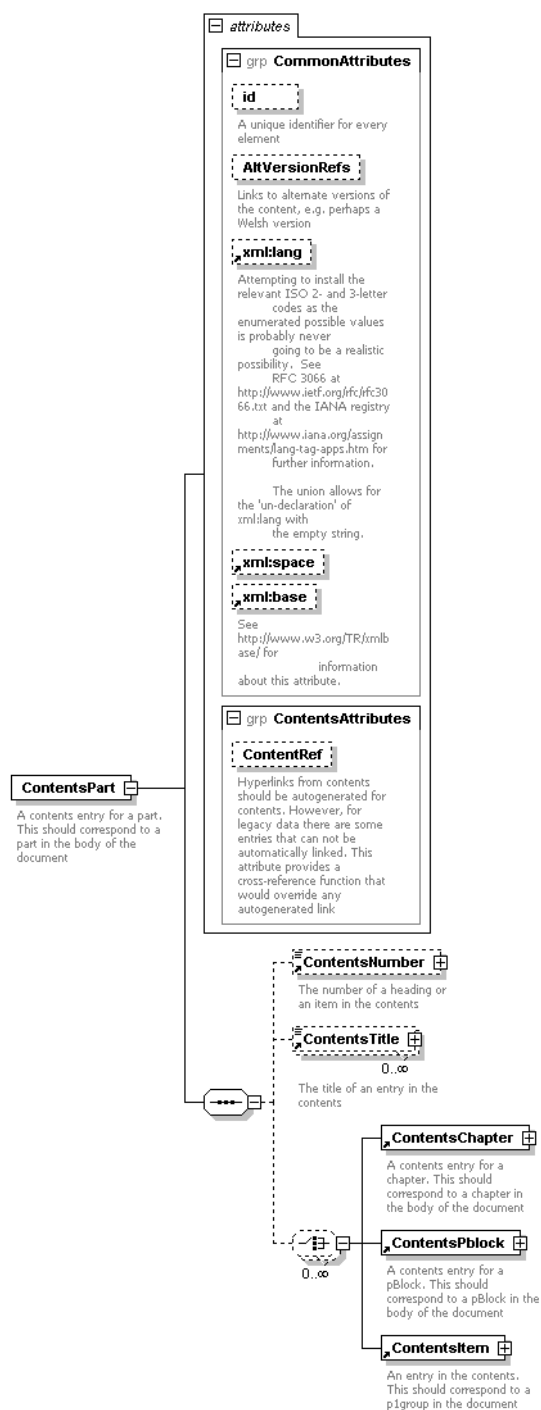
```
<Contents>
  <ContentsTitle>Contents</ContentsTitle>
  <ContentsPart>
    <ContentsNumber>Part 1</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Access rights</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsChapter>
      <ContentsNumber>Chapter 1</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Nature and extent of access rights</ContentsTitle>
      <ContentsItem>
        <ContentsNumber>1</ContentsNumber>
        <ContentsTitle>Access rights</ContentsTitle>
      </ContentsItem>
      <ContentsItem>
        <ContentsNumber>2</ContentsNumber>
        <ContentsTitle>Access rights to be exercised responsibly</ContentsTitle>
      </ContentsItem>
      <ContentsItem>
        <ContentsNumber>3</ContentsNumber>
        <ContentsTitle>Reciprocal obligations of owners</ContentsTitle>
      </ContentsItem>
      <ContentsItem>
        <ContentsNumber>4</ContentsNumber>
        <ContentsTitle>Modification of sections 9, 14 and 23</ContentsTitle>
      </ContentsItem>
      <ContentsItem>
        <ContentsNumber>5</ContentsNumber>
        <ContentsTitle>Access rights, reciprocal obligations and other rules and rights</ContentsTitle>
      </ContentsItem>
    </ContentsChapter>
  </ContentsPart>
</Contents>
```

Ref: ASP 2003 0002

## Example image

	<b>Land Reform (Scotland) Act 2003</b>
	<b>2003 asp 2</b>
	<b>CONTENTS</b>
Section	
	<b>PART 1</b>
	ACCESS RIGHTS
	<b>CHAPTER 1</b>
	NATURE AND EXTENT OF ACCESS RIGHTS
1	Access rights
2	Access rights to be exercised responsibly
3	Reciprocal obligations of owners
4	Modification of sections 9, 14 and 23
5	Access rights, reciprocal obligations and other rules and rights
	<b>CHAPTER 2</b>
	NATURE AND EXTENT OF ACCESS RIGHTS: FURTHER PROVISIONS
6	Land over which access rights not exercisable

diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **ContentsNumber ContentsTitle ContentsChapter ContentsPblock ContentsItem**used by elements **BlockAmendment Contents ContentsAppendix ContentsGroup ContentsSchedule**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	ContentRef	xsd:IDREF			



```
source <xsd:element name="ContentsPart">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A contents entry for a part. This should correspond to a part in the body of the
document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsNumber" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsTitle" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:element ref="ContentsChapter"/>
        <xsd:element ref="ContentsPblock"/>
        <xsd:element ref="ContentsItem"/>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="ContentsAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

### ContentsPblock

A container for a Pblock level structure within the Table of Contents.

### ContentRef

This attribute should contain the id of the element to which the contents item applies. This then allows for the content item to be hyperlinked by a rendering engine.

This attribute is optional but it is highly recommended to use it.

### Example code

```
<Contents>
  <ContentsTitle>Contents</ContentsTitle>
  <ContentsPblock>
    <ContentsTitle>Community Health Councils</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>1</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Community Health Councils in Wales</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
  </ContentsPblock>
  <ContentsPblock>
    <ContentsTitle>Wales Centre for Health</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>2</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Wales Centre for Health</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>3</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Functions of the Centre</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
  </ContentsPblock>
  <ContentsPblock>
    <ContentsTitle>Health Professions Wales</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>4</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Health Professions Wales</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>5</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Further provision about HPW</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
  </ContentsPblock>
  <ContentsPblock>
    <ContentsTitle>Supplementary and general provisions</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>6</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Powers of National Assembly for Wales under amended Acts</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>7</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Minor and consequential amendments and repeals</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>8</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Orders and regulations</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>9</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Financial provision</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
  </ContentsPblock>
</Contents>
```

```

<ContentsItem>
  <ContentsNumber>10</ContentsNumber>
  <ContentsTitle>Short title, commencement and extent</ContentsTitle>
</ContentsItem>
</ContentsPblock>
<ContentsSchedules>
  <ContentsSchedule>
    <ContentsNumber>Schedule 1</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Schedule 7A to be inserted in the National Health Service Act 1977</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsSchedule>
  <ContentsSchedule>
    <ContentsNumber>Schedule 2</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Wales Centre for Health: Further Provision</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsSchedule>
  <ContentsSchedule>
    <ContentsNumber>Schedule 3</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Minor and Consequential Amendments</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsSchedule>

```

### Example code

```

<ContentsSchedule>
  <ContentsNumber>Schedule 4</ContentsNumber>
  <ContentsTitle>Repeals</ContentsTitle>
</ContentsSchedule>
</ContentsSchedules>
</Contents>

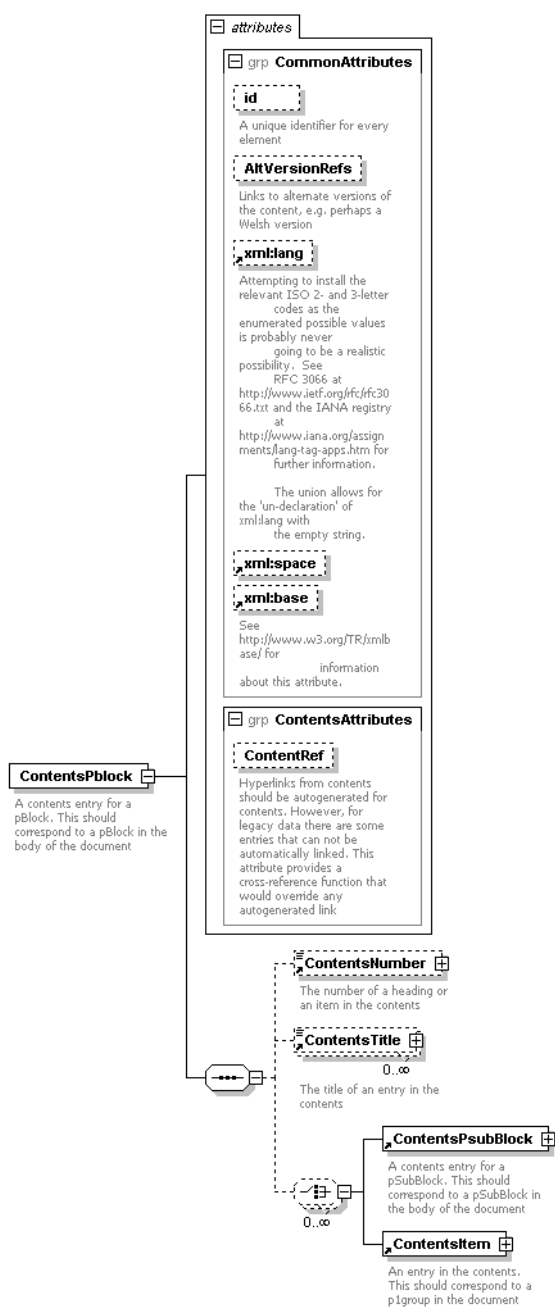
```

Ref: UKPGA 2003 0004

### Example image

Health (Wales) Act 2003	
CHAPTER 4	
CONTENTS	
<i>Community Health Councils</i>	
1	Community Health Councils in Wales
<i>Wales Centre for Health</i>	
2	Wales Centre for Health
3	Functions of the Centre
<i>Health Professions Wales</i>	
4	Health Professions Wales
5	Further provision about HPW
<i>Supplementary and general provisions</i>	
6	Powers of National Assembly for Wales under amended Acts
7	Minor and consequential amendments and repeals
8	Orders and regulations
9	Financial provision
10	Short title, commencement and extent
<hr/>	
Schedule 1 – Schedule 7A to be inserted in the National Health Service Act 1977	
Schedule 2 – Wales Centre for Health: Further Provision	
Schedule 3 – Minor and Consequential Amendments	
Schedule 4 – Repeals	

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content	complex			
children	ContentsNumber ContentsTitle ContentsPsubBlock ContentsItem				
used by	elements	BlockAmendment Contents ContentsAppendix ContentsChapter ContentsGroup ContentsPart ContentsSchedule			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	ContentRef	xsd:IDREF			

```
source <xsd:element name="ContentsPblock">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A contents entry for a pBlock. This should correspond to a pBlock in the body of the
document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsNumber" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsTitle" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:element ref="ContentsPsubBlock"/>
        <xsd:element ref="ContentsItem"/>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="ContentsAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## ContentsPsubBlock

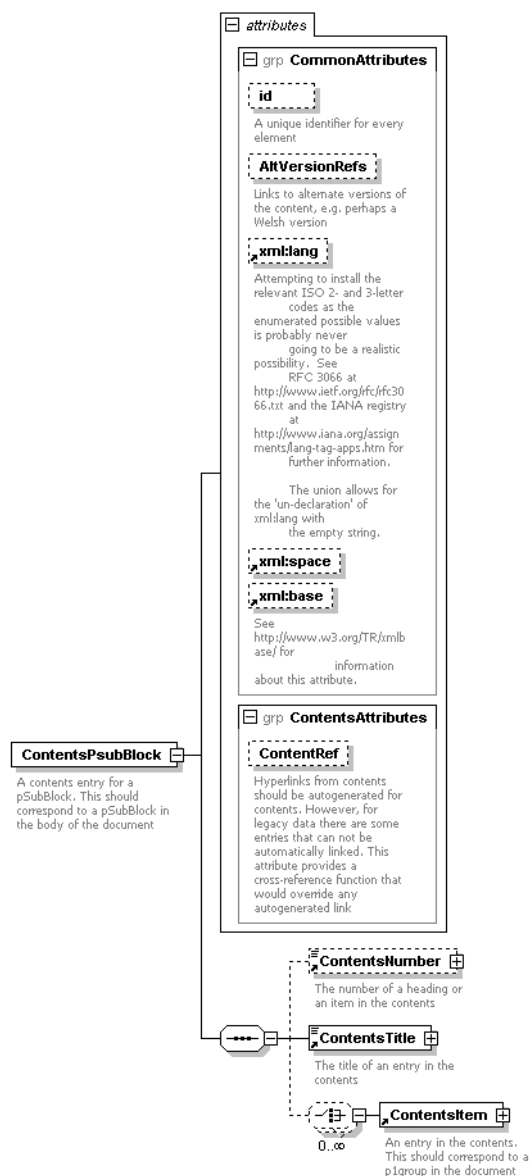
An entry in the contents for a <PsubBlock> level structure in the Table of Contents.

### ContentRef

This attribute should contain the id of the element to which the contents item applies. This then allows for the content item to be hyperlinked by a rendering engine.

This attribute is optional but it is highly recommended to use it.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **ContentsNumber** **ContentsTitle** **ContentsItem**

used by elements **BlockAmendment** **ContentsPblock**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	ContentRef	<b>xsd:IDREF</b>			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="ContentsPsubBlock"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A contents entry for a pSubBlock. This should correspond to a pSubBlock in the body of the document&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsNumber" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsTitle"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsItem"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="ContentsAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## ContentsSchedule

A container for a schedule within a Table of Contents.

### ContentRef

This attribute should contain the id of the element to which the contents item applies. This then allows for the content item to be hyperlinked by a rendering engine.

This attribute is optional but it is highly recommended to use it.

### Example code

```
<Contents>
  <ContentsTitle>Contents</ContentsTitle>
  <ContentsPblock>
    <ContentsTitle>Community Health Councils</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>1</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Community Health Councils in Wales</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
  </ContentsPblock>
  <ContentsPblock>
    <ContentsTitle>Wales Centre for Health</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>2</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Wales Centre for Health</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>3</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Functions of the Centre</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
  </ContentsPblock>
  <ContentsPblock>
    <ContentsTitle>Health Professions Wales</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>4</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Health Professions Wales</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>5</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Further provision about HPW</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
  </ContentsPblock>
  <ContentsPblock>
    <ContentsTitle>Supplementary and general provisions</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>6</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Powers of National Assembly for Wales under amended Acts</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>7</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Minor and consequential amendments and repeals</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>8</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Orders and regulations</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>9</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Financial provision</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
  </ContentsPblock>
</Contents>
```



```

<ContentsItem>
  <ContentsNumber>10</ContentsNumber>
  <ContentsTitle>Short title, commencement and extent</ContentsTitle>
</ContentsItem>
</ContentsPblock>
<ContentsSchedules>
  <ContentsSchedule>
    <ContentsNumber>Schedule 1</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Schedule 7A to be inserted in the National Health Service Act 1977</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsSchedule>
  <ContentsSchedule>
    <ContentsNumber>Schedule 2</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Wales Centre for Health: Further Provision</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsSchedule>
  <ContentsSchedule>
    <ContentsNumber>Schedule 3</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Minor and Consequential Amendments</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsSchedule>

```

### Example code

```

<ContentsSchedule>
  <ContentsNumber>Schedule 4</ContentsNumber>
  <ContentsTitle>Repeals</ContentsTitle>
</ContentsSchedule>
</ContentsSchedules>
</Contents>

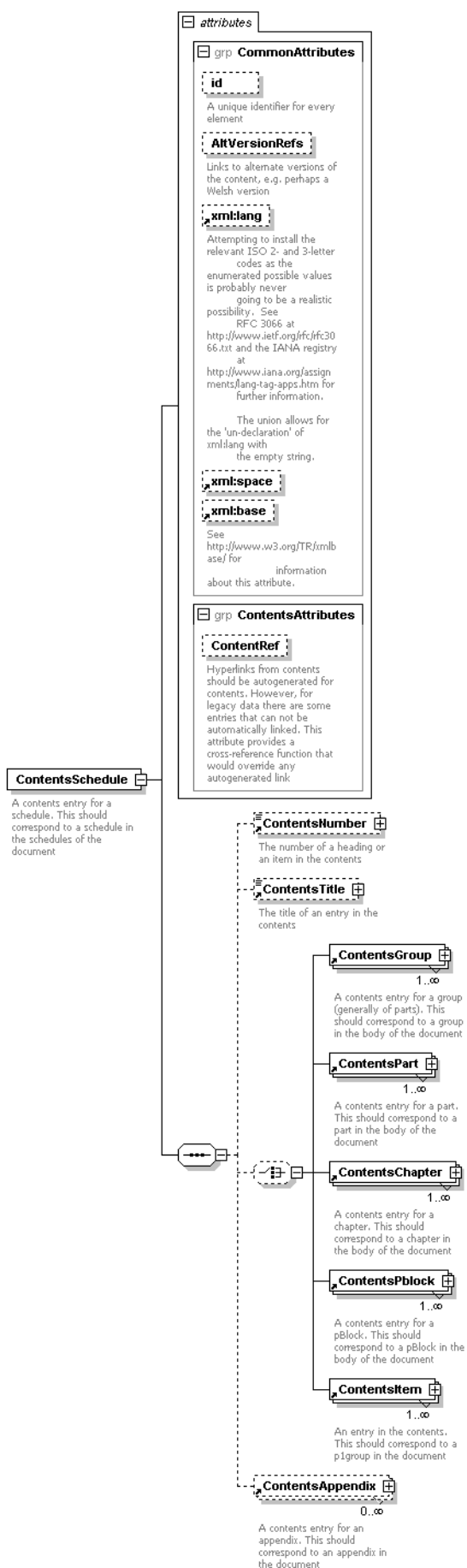
```

Ref: UKPGA 2003 0004

### Example image

Health (Wales) Act 2003	
CHAPTER 4	
CONTENTS	
	<i>Community Health Councils</i>
1	Community Health Councils in Wales
	<i>Wales Centre for Health</i>
2	Wales Centre for Health
3	Functions of the Centre
	<i>Health Professions Wales</i>
4	Health Professions Wales
5	Further provision about HPW
	<i>Supplementary and general provisions</i>
6	Powers of National Assembly for Wales under amended Acts
7	Minor and consequential amendments and repeals
8	Orders and regulations
9	Financial provision
10	Short title, commencement and extent
<hr/>	
Schedule 1 – Schedule 7A to be inserted in the National Health Service Act 1977	
Schedule 2 – Wales Centre for Health: Further Provision	
Schedule 3 – Minor and Consequential Amendments	
Schedule 4 – Repeals	

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content complex					
children	<b>ContentsNumber ContentsTitle ContentsGroup ContentsPart ContentsChapter ContentsPblock ContentsItem ContentsAppendix</b>					
used by	elements	<b>BlockAmendment ContentsSchedules</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>				
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	ContentRef	<b>xsd:IDREF</b>				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="ContentsSchedule"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A contents entry for a schedule. This should correspond to a schedule in the schedules of the document&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsNumber" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsTitle" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0"&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsGroup" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsPart" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsChapter" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsPblock" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsItem" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ContentsAppendix" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="ContentsAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## ContentsSchedules

A container for schedule items within a table of contents.

### Example code

```
<Contents>
  <ContentsTitle>Contents</ContentsTitle>
  <ContentsPblock>
    <ContentsTitle>Community Health Councils</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>1</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Community Health Councils in Wales</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
  </ContentsPblock>
  <ContentsPblock>
    <ContentsTitle>Wales Centre for Health</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>2</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Wales Centre for Health</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>3</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Functions of the Centre</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
  </ContentsPblock>
  <ContentsPblock>
    <ContentsTitle>Health Professions Wales</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>4</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Health Professions Wales</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>5</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Further provision about HPW</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
  </ContentsPblock>
  <ContentsPblock>
    <ContentsTitle>Supplementary and general provisions</ContentsTitle>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>6</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Powers of National Assembly for Wales under amended Acts</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>7</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Minor and consequential amendments and repeals</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>8</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Orders and regulations</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>9</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Financial provision</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
    <ContentsItem>
      <ContentsNumber>10</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Short title, commencement and extent</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsItem>
  </ContentsPblock>
```

```

<ContentsSchedules>
  <ContentsSchedule>
    <ContentsNumber>Schedule 1</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Schedule 7A to be inserted in the National Health Service Act 1977</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsSchedule>
  <ContentsSchedule>
    <ContentsNumber>Schedule 2</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Wales Centre for Health: Further Provision</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsSchedule>
  <ContentsSchedule>
    <ContentsNumber>Schedule 3</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Minor and Consequential Amendments</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsSchedule>

```

### Example code

```

<ContentsSchedule>
  <ContentsNumber>Schedule 4</ContentsNumber>
  <ContentsTitle>Repeals</ContentsTitle>
</ContentsSchedule>
</ContentsSchedules>
</Contents>

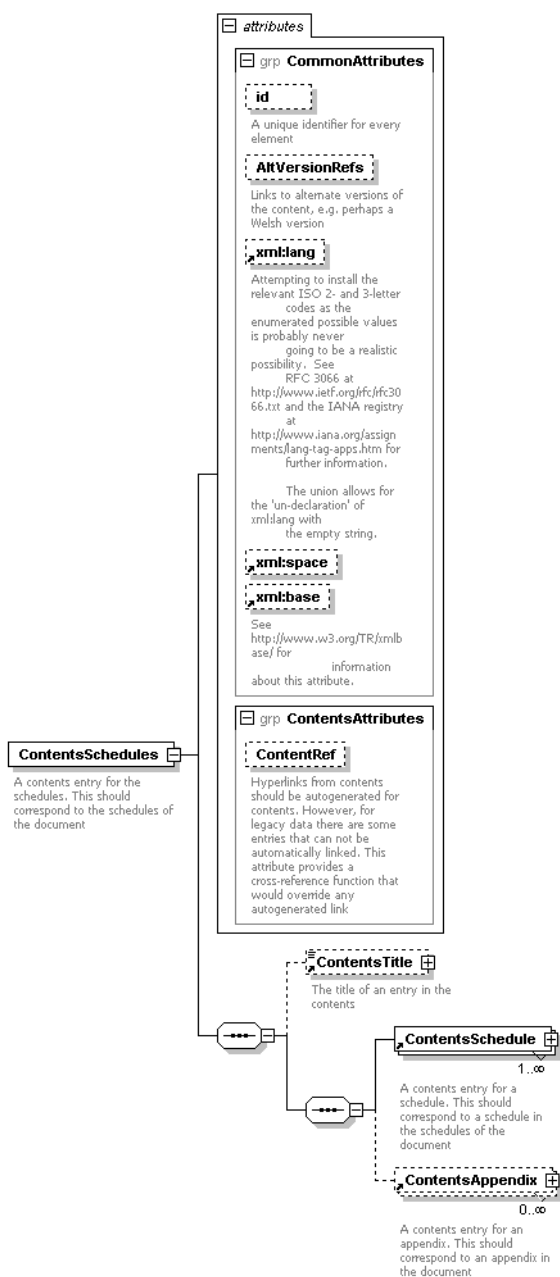
```

Ref: UKPGA 2003 0004

### Example image

Health (Wales) Act 2003	
CHAPTER 4	
CONTENTS	
	<i>Community Health Councils</i>
1	Community Health Councils in Wales
	<i>Wales Centre for Health</i>
2	Wales Centre for Health
3	Functions of the Centre
	<i>Health Professions Wales</i>
4	Health Professions Wales
5	Further provision about HPW
	<i>Supplementary and general provisions</i>
6	Powers of National Assembly for Wales under amended Acts
7	Minor and consequential amendments and repeals
8	Orders and regulations
9	Financial provision
10	Short title, commencement and extent
<hr/>	
Schedule 1 — Schedule 7A to be inserted in the National Health Service Act 1977	
Schedule 2 — Wales Centre for Health: Further Provision	
Schedule 3 — Minor and Consequential Amendments	
Schedule 4 — Repeals	

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content	complex			
children	<b>ContentsTitle ContentsSchedule ContentsAppendix</b>				
used by	elements	<b>BlockAmendment Contents</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	ContentRef	<b>xsd:IDREF</b>			

```
source <xsd:element name="ContentsSchedules">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A contents entry for the schedules. This should correspond to the schedules of the
document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsTitle" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="ContentsSchedule" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="ContentsAppendix" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="ContentsAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```





```
source <xsd:element name="ContentsSubItem">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A contents entry for a subsection of the document. This should correspond to a p2
or lower in the document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsNumber" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsTitle"/>
      <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:element ref="ContentsSubItem"/>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="ContentsAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## ContentsTitle

A generic element that holds the text of an entry in the table of contents.

### Example code

```
<Contents>
  <ContentsTitle>Contents</ContentsTitle>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>1</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Offences</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>2</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: stalking and flushing from cover</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>3</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>4</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: search by authorised person</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>5</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Exception: retrieval and location</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>6</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Excepted activities</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>7</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Arrest, search and seizure</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>8</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Proceedings and penalties</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>9</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Disqualification orders</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>10</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Meaning of expressions</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>11</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Consequential amendments and repeals</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsItem>
    <ContentsNumber>12</ContentsNumber>
    <ContentsTitle>Short title and commencement</ContentsTitle>
  </ContentsItem>
  <ContentsSchedules>
    <ContentsSchedule>
      <ContentsNumber>Schedule</ContentsNumber>
      <ContentsTitle>Consequential amendments and repeals</ContentsTitle>
    </ContentsSchedule>
  </ContentsSchedules>
</Contents>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

## Example image

# Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act 2002

2002 asp 6

## CONTENTS

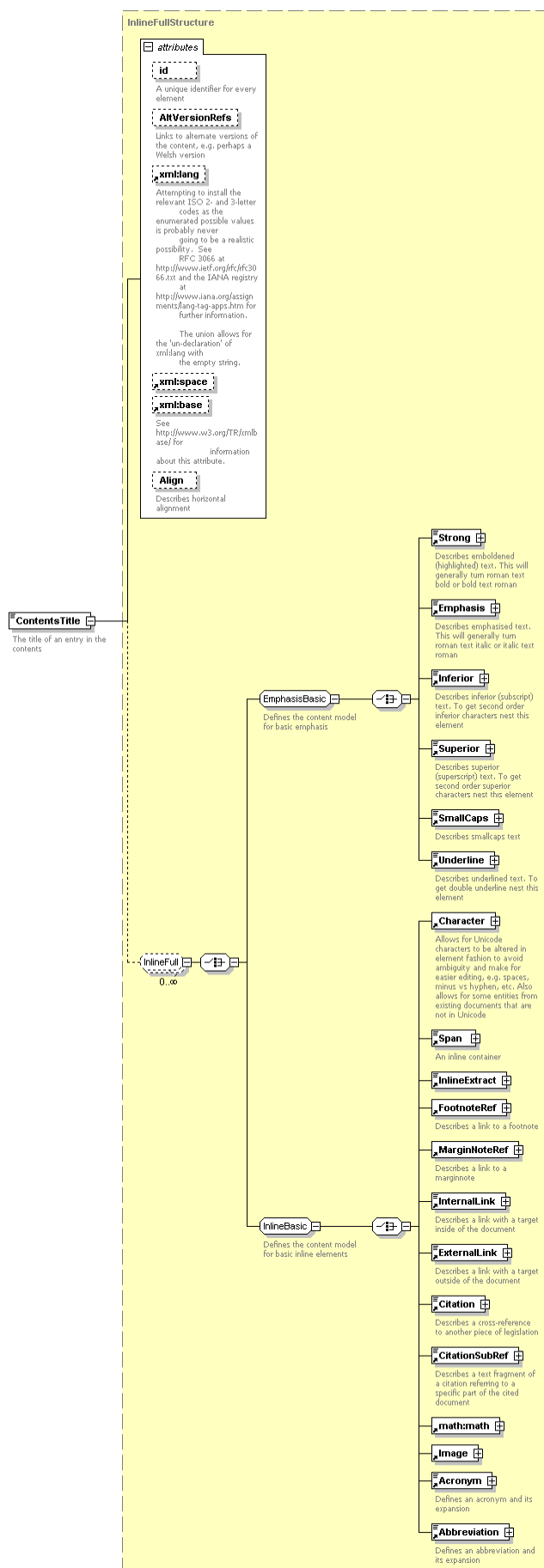
### Section

- 1 Offences
- 2 Exception: stalking and flushing from cover
- 3 Exception: use of a dog in connection with falconry and shooting
- 4 Exception: search by authorised person
- 5 Exception: retrieval and location
- 6 Excepted activities
- 7 Arrest, search and seizure
- 8 Proceedings and penalties
- 9 Disqualification orders
- 10 Meaning of expressions
- 11 Consequential amendments and repeals
- 12 Short title and commencement

---

Schedule—Consequential amendments and repeals

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineFullStructure				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	elements	Contents ContentsAppendix ContentsChapter ContentsGroup ContentsItem ContentsPart ContentsPblock ContentsPsubBlock ContentsSchedule ContentsSchedules ContentsSubItem			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	Align	derived by: xsd:string	optional		
source	<xsd:element name="ContentsTitle" type="InlineFullStructure"> <xsd:annotation> <xsd:documentation>The title of an entry in the contents</xsd:documentation> </xsd:annotation> </xsd:element>				

### Key

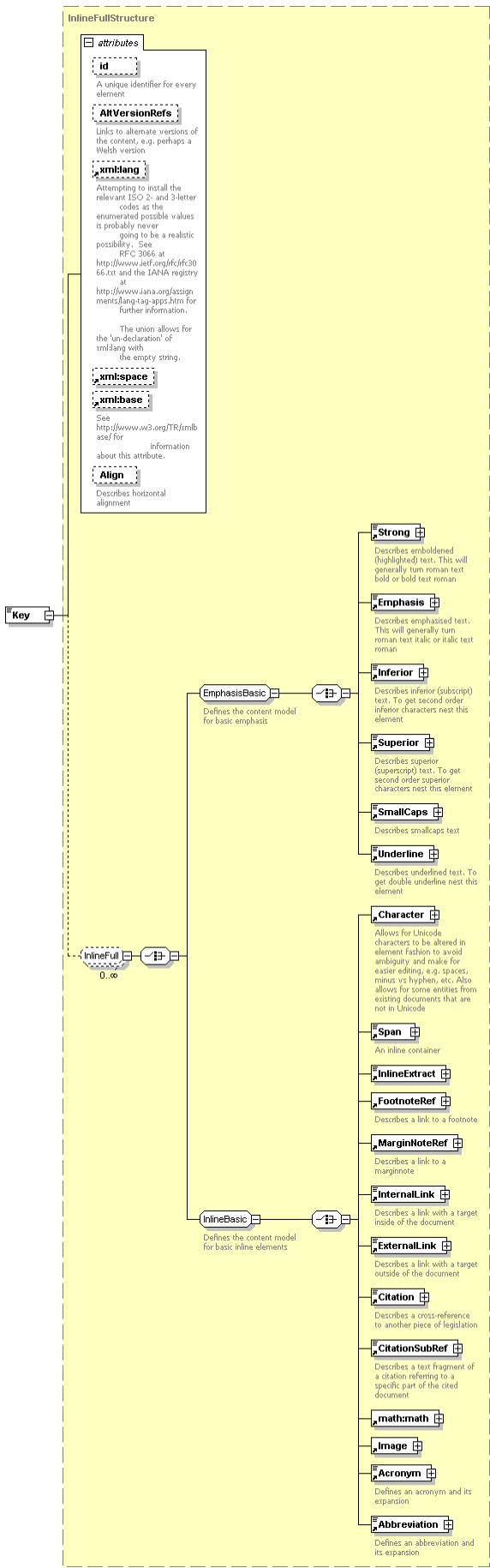
The item (or variable) being defined in a key list item.

#### Example code

```
<Where>
  <Para>
    <Text>where</Text>
    <KeyList separator="">
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>t</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>minimum test period</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>k</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>number of pulses per kWh emitted by the meter</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>m</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>number of elements</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>V</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>declared system voltage</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>Im</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>maximum rated current.</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
    </KeyList>
  </Para>
</Where>
```

Ref: UKSI 1988 1566

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineFullStructure				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	element	KeyListItem			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	Align	derived by: xsd:string		optional	
source	<xsd:element name="Key" type="InlineFullStructure"/>				



## KeyList

A list used for defining the meanings of variables/symbols. It is normally used in the <Where> element in a formula where it provides an explanation of the variables used in the formula.

### separator

Defines the value that will be used as a separator between the key item and the key text.

### Example code

```
<Where>
  <Para>
    <Text>where</Text>
    <KeyList Separator="=">
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>t</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>minimum test period</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>k</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>number of pulses per kWh emitted by the meter</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>m</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>number of elements</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>V</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>declared system voltage</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>Im</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>maximum rated current.</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
    </KeyList>
  </Para>
</Where>
```

Ref: UKSI 1988 1566

## Example image

$$t \geq \frac{480 \times 10^6 \text{ minutes}}{k.m. V.I_m}$$

where

t = minimum test period

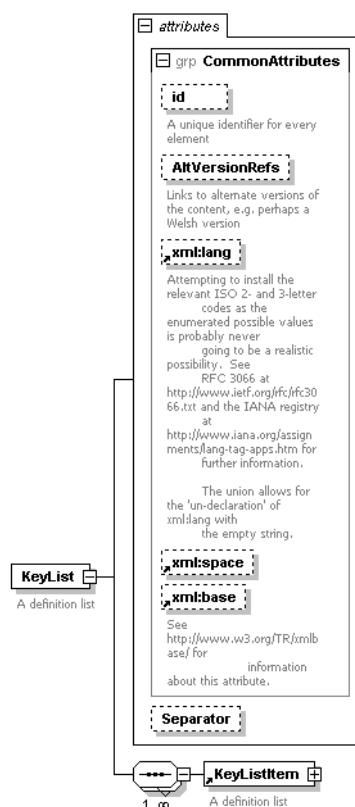
k = number of pulses per kWh emitted by the meter

m = number of elements

V = declared system voltage

I<sub>m</sub> = maximum rated current.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **KeyListItem**

used by element **Where**  
groups **BlockBasic BlockSection InlineModel ParaBasic**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	Separator	xsd:string			

```
source <xsd:element name="KeyList">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A definition list</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <xsd:element ref="KeyListItem"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="Separator" type="xsd:string"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## KeyListItem

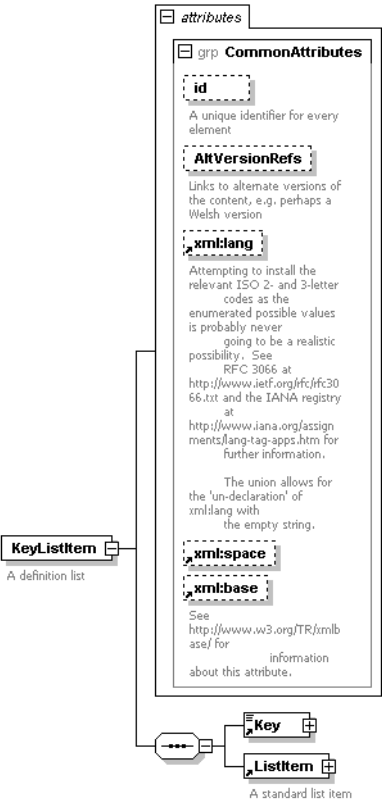
An item within a key list.

### Example code

```
<Where>
  <Para>
    <Text>where</Text>
    <KeyList separator="=">
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>t</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>minimum test period</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>k</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>number of pulses per kWh emitted by the meter</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>m</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>number of elements</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>V</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>declared system voltage</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
      <KeyListItem>
        <Key>Im</Key>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>maximum rated current.</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </KeyListItem>
    </KeyList>
  </Para>
</Where>
```

Ref: UKSI 1988 1566

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content	complex				
children	Key ListItem					
used by	element	KeyList				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="KeyListItem"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A definition list&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Key"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ListItem"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## ListItem

An item within either an ordered – or an unordered – list.

### NumberOverride

Overrides the default number given to this list item. This can be useful where for instance an entry has been inserted into a list, e.g. so the sequence reads, 1, 2, 2a, 3, 4 ... After an overridden entry the numbering for the rest of the sequence should revert back to the next logical number: that is in the example just given the sequence should revert to 3 automatically after the 2a entry.

This attribute is only really applicable to an ordered list item. If used within an unordered list then the value would override the bullet type. E.g. to do a starred list the attribute could contain the character ★. The selection of the decoration attribute in this case would be unimportant although it is suggested that the closest possible match is used: in this case ‘bullet’.

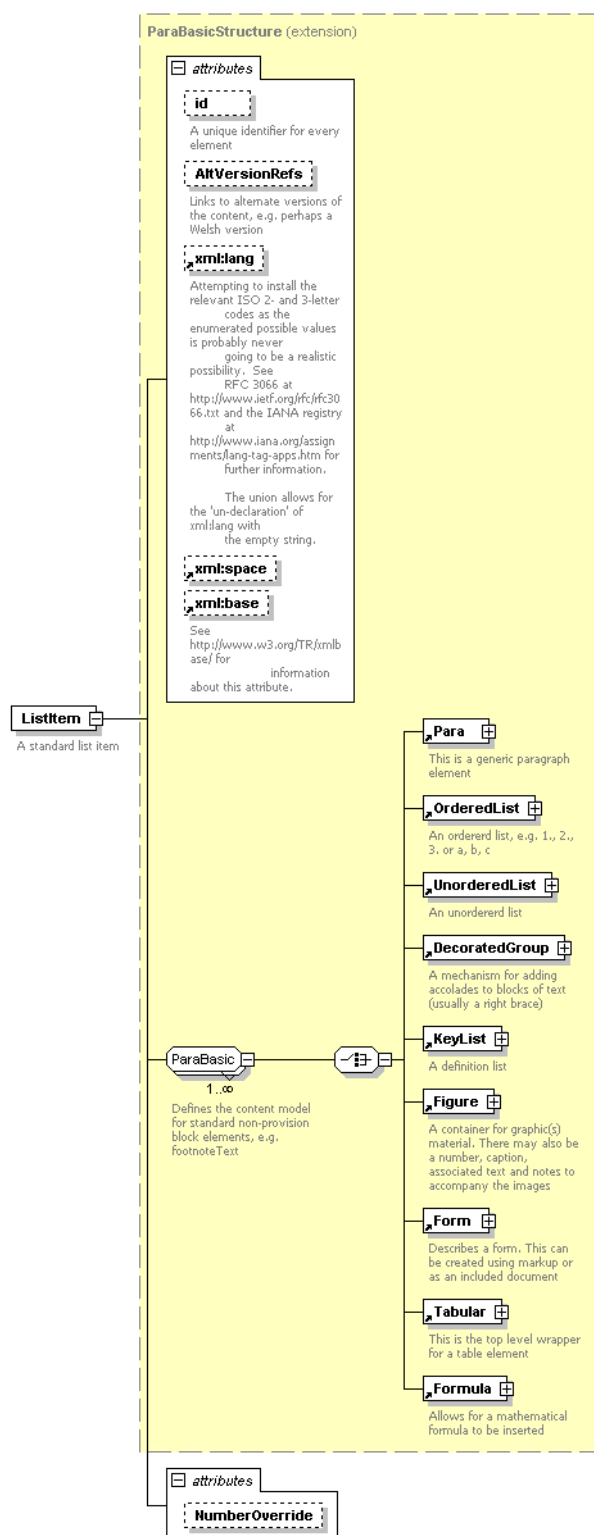
### Example code

```
<BlockAmendment TargetClass="secondary" TargetSubClass="regulation" Context="main" Format="default">
  <Plpara>
    <UnorderedList Decoration="none">
      <ListItem>
        <Para>
          <Text>"moped" means a two or three wheel vehicle with a maximum design speed of not more than
45 km/h which-</Text>
          <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="alpha">
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>if a two wheel vehicle, is fitted with an engine which-</Text>
                <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="roman">
                  <ListItem>
                    <Para>
                      <Text>in the case of the internal combustion type, has a cylinder capacity not
exceeding 50 cm; and</Text>
                    </Para>
                  </ListItem>
                  <ListItem>
                    <Para>
                      <Text>in the case of an electric motor, has a maximum continuous rated power of not
more than 4 kW; and</Text>
                    </Para>
                  </ListItem>
                </OrderedList>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>if a three wheel vehicle, is fitted with an engine which-</Text>
                <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="roman">
                  <ListItem>
                    <Para>
                      <Text>in the case of the spark (positive) ignition type, has a cylinder capacity not
exceeding 50 cm;</Text>
                    </Para>
                  </ListItem>
                  <ListItem>
                    <Para>
                      <Text>in the case of an internal combustion type other than of the spark (positive)
ignition type, has a maximum net power output not exceeding 4 kW; and</Text>
                    </Para>
                  </ListItem>
                </OrderedList>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
          </OrderedList>
        </Para>
      </ListItem>
    </UnorderedList>
  </Plpara>
</BlockAmendment>
```

### Example image

349

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type extension of **ParaBasicStructure**

properties content complex

children **Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula**

used by elements **KeyListitem OrderedList UnorderedList**



attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	NumberOverride	<b>xsd:string</b>			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="ListItem"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A standard list item&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The content model is defined as standard paragraph level block elements&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:complexContent&gt;       &lt;xsd:extension base="ParaBasicStructure"&gt;         &lt;xsd:attribute name="NumberOverride" type="xsd:string"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:extension&gt;     &lt;/xsd:complexContent&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## OrderedList

An ordered list of items. There may sometimes be some difficulty in determining whether something is a list or a numbered provision. The schema takes the approach that if there is a break in the hierarchy of the provisions then any subsequent structure *must* be a list. This typically occurs in similar situation to the sample below where defined terms contain numbered items. These should be done as ordered lists within unordered lists, i.e. the defined term is an entry in an unordered list. Subsequently the chain of numbered provisions is broken and any children must be ordered lists. This approach comes from the schema provisions as being controlled by the indent of the provisions.

### Type

The format of the list. The possible values for this attribute are listed in the table below:

Attribute value	Format
arabic	1, 2, 3, 4 ...
roman	i, ii, iii, iv ...
romanUpper	I, II, III, IV ...
alpha	a, b, c, d ...
alphaUpper	A, B, C, D ...

---

### Decoration

This defines the punctuation to surround the number of the list item. The possible values are listed in the table below:

Attribute value	Format
none	1, 2, 3, 4 ...
parens	(1), (2), (3), (4) ...
parenRight	1), 2), 3), 4) ...
brackets	[1], [2], [3], [4] ...
bracketRight	1], 2], 3], 4] ...
period	1., 2., 3., 4., ...
colon	1:, 2:, 3:, 4: ...

---

### Start

Defines the starting value for the index number. For example a value of 3 in an alpha list would start the numbering with a letter 'c'. The default value is 1.

## Example code

```

<BlockAmendment TargetClass="secondary" TargetSubClass="regulation" Context="main" Format="default">
  <Ppara>
    <UnorderedList Decoration="none">
      <ListItem>
        <Para>
          <Text>"moped" means a two or three wheel vehicle with a maximum design speed of not more than
45 km/h which-</Text>
          <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="alpha">
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>if a two wheel vehicle, is fitted with an engine which-</Text>
                <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="roman">
                  <ListItem>
                    <Para>
                      <Text>in the case of the internal combustion type, has a cylinder capacity not
exceeding 50 cm; and</Text>
                    </Para>
                  </ListItem>
                  <ListItem>
                    <Para>
                      <Text>in the case of an electric motor, has a maximum continuous rated power of not
more than 4 kW; and</Text>
                    </Para>
                  </ListItem>
                </OrderedList>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>if a three wheel vehicle, is fitted with an engine which-</Text>
                <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="roman">
                  <ListItem>
                    <Para>
                      <Text>in the case of the spark (positive) ignition type, has a cylinder capacity not
exceeding 50 cm; and</Text>
                    </Para>
                  </ListItem>
                  <ListItem>
                    <Para>
                      <Text>in the case of an internal combustion type other than of the spark (positive)
ignition type, has a maximum net power output not exceeding 4 kW; and</Text>
                    </Para>
                  </ListItem>
                  <ListItem>
                    <Para>
                      <Text>in the case of an electric motor, has a maximum continuous rated power of not
more than 4 kW; and</Text>
                    </Para>
                  </ListItem>
                </OrderedList>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
          </OrderedList>
        </Para>
      </UnorderedList>
    </Ppara>
  </BlockAmendment>

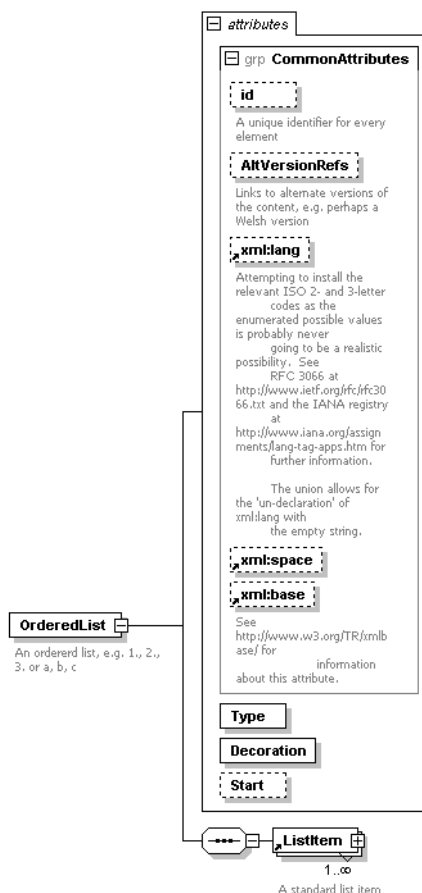
```

Ref: SI 2003 1099

## Example image

- (iii) for the definition of “moped” there shall be substituted—
- ““moped” means a two or three wheel vehicle with a maximum design speed of not more than 45 km/h which—
- (a) if a two wheel vehicle, is fitted with an engine which—
    - (i) in the case of the internal combustion type, has a cylinder capacity not exceeding 50 cm; and
    - (ii) in the case of an electric motor, has a maximum continuous rated power of not more than 4 kW; and
  - (b) if a three wheel vehicle, is fitted with an engine which—
    - (i) in the case of the spark (positive) ignition type, has a cylinder capacity not exceeding 50 cm;
    - (ii) in the case of an internal combustion type other than of the spark (positive) ignition type, has a maximum net power output not exceeding 4 kW; and
    - (iii) in the case of an electric motor, has a maximum continuous rated power of not more than 4 kW;”;
- (iv) in the definition of “quadricycle”, in paragraph (a), for “less than 350 kg” there shall be substituted “not more than 350 kg”;

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>  
 properties content complex

children	<b>ListItem</b>				
used by	groups	<b>BlockBasic BlockSection InlineModel ParaBasic</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	Type	derived by: <b>xsd:NMTOKEN</b>	required		
	Decoration	derived by: <b>xsd:NMTOKEN</b>	required		
	Start	<b>xsd:positiveInteger</b>			

```

source <xsd:element name="OrderedList">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>An ordered list, e.g. 1., 2., 3. or a, b, c</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>The numbering is defined by the type attribute:</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>arabic 1, 2, 3</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>roman i, ii, iii</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>romanupper I, II, III</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>alpha a, b, c</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>alphaupper A, B, C</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>The decoration of the number is defined by the decoration
attribute:</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>none 1, 2, 3</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>parens (1), (2), (3)</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>parenRight 1), 2), 3)</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>brackets [1], [2], [3]</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>bracketRight 1], 2], 3]</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>period 1., 2., 3.</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>colon 1:, 2:, 3:</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>The start attribute defines the number (or letter, etc) at which the list should start
being numbered</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="ListItem" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="Type" use="required">
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:NMTOKEN">
          <xsd:enumeration value="arabic"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="roman"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="romanUpper"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="alpha"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="alphaUpper"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
    <xsd:attribute name="Decoration" use="required">
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:NMTOKEN">
          <xsd:enumeration value="none"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="parens"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="parenRight"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="brackets"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="bracketRight"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="period"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="colon"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
    <xsd:attribute name="Start" type="xsd:positiveInteger"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## UnorderedList

An unordered list of items.

### Class

Can be used to define information about the list. The suggested use is for definition type lists to use the value 'Definition'.

### Decoration

This defines the punctuation to surround the number of the list item. The possible values are listed in the table below:

Attribute value	Format
bullet	•
dash	—
arrow	→
none	Also known as a tabbed list

### Example code

```
<BlockAmendment TargetClass="secondary" TargetSubClass="regulation" Context="main" Format="default">
  <Ppara>
    <UnorderedList Decoration="none">
      <ListItem>
        <Para>
          <Text>"moped" means a two or three wheel vehicle with a maximum design speed of not more than
45 km/h which</Text>
          <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="alpha">
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>if a two wheel vehicle, is fitted with an engine which</Text>
                <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="roman">
                  <ListItem>
                    <Para>
                      <Text>in the case of the internal combustion type, has a cylinder capacity not
exceeding 50 cm; and</Text>
                    </Para>
                  </ListItem>
                </OrderedList>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>in the case of an electric motor, has a maximum continuous rated power of not
more than 4 kW; and</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
          </OrderedList>
        </Para>
      </ListItem>
      <ListItem>
        <Para>
          <Text>if a three wheel vehicle, is fitted with an engine which</Text>
          <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="roman">
            <ListItem>
```

```

    <Para>
      <Text>in the case of the spark (positive) ignition type, has a cylinder capacity not
exceeding 50 cm;</Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</ListItem>
<Listitem>
  <Para>
    <Text>in the case of an internal combustion type other than of the spark (positive)
ignition type, has a maximum net power output not exceeding 4 kW; and</Text>
  </Para>
</Listitem>
<Listitem>
  <Para>
    <Text>in the case of an electric motor, has a maximum continuous rated power of not
more than 4 kW;</Text>
  </Para>
</Listitem>
</OrderedList>
</Para>
</Listitem>
</OrderedList>
</Para>
</Listitem>
</UnorderedList>
</Plpara>
</BlockAmendment>

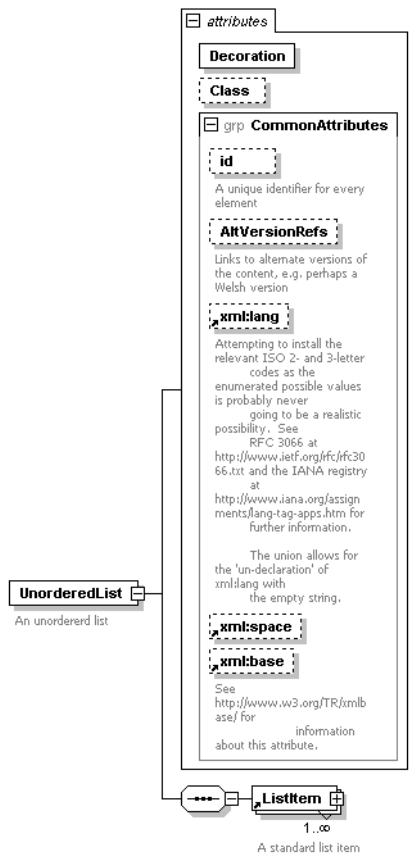
```

### Example image

- (iii) for the definition of “moped” there shall be substituted—
- ““moped” means a two or three wheel vehicle with a maximum design speed of not more than 45 km/h which—
- (a) if a two wheel vehicle, is fitted with an engine which—
    - (i) in the case of the internal combustion type, has a cylinder capacity not exceeding 50 cm; and
    - (ii) in the case of an electric motor, has a maximum continuous rated power of not more than 4 kW; and
  - (b) if a three wheel vehicle, is fitted with an engine which—
    - (i) in the case of the spark (positive) ignition type, has a cylinder capacity not exceeding 50 cm;
    - (ii) in the case of an internal combustion type other than of the spark (positive) ignition type, has a maximum net power output not exceeding 4 kW; and
    - (iii) in the case of an electric motor, has a maximum continuous rated power of not more than 4 kW;”;
- (iv) in the definition of “quadricycle”, in paragraph (a), for “less than 350 kg” there shall be substituted “not more than 350 kg”;



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content	complex				
children	ListItem					
used by	element	Where				
	groups	BlockBasic BlockSection InlineModel ParaBasic				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default		Fixed
	Decoration	derived by: xsd:NMTOKEN		required		
	Class	xsd:string				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					

```

source <xsd:element name="UnorderedList">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>An unordered list</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>The decoration of the list item is defined by the decoration
attribute:</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>bullet      •</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>dash        —</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>arrow       —></xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>none        No decoration</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="ListItem" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attribute name="Decoration" use="required">
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:NMTOKEN">
          <xsd:enumeration value="bullet"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="dash"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="arrow"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="none"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
    <xsd:attribute name="Class" type="xsd:string"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## Formula

Allows for a mathematical equation to be inserted. An optional equation number can be added. The mathematical content of the formula is described using MathML2. This allows for arbitrarily complex mathematical structures to be created. MathML is comprised of two subsets of markup, presentational and semantic. Implementations should support the presentational elements as a minimum.

A formula may also have additional text that serves as explanatory information for the formula. This should be described using the <Where> element.

## Align

Controls the horizontal alignment of the content of the element.

The permissible values are:

- inherit (the alignment is inherited from the parent element)
- left
- centre
- right
- justify (the entire paragraph is justified. Note that the last line is not force-justified. The decision on whether the last line should be is left to the implementation).

This attribute is optional. The default alignment will be decided by the implementation. The alignment should cascade down into child elements.

## id

A unique identifier for the formula. The format of this identifier should be *xzzzzz*, where *zzzzz* is a five digit padded number. For example, x00010, x01353.

### Example code

```

<Formula>
  <math style="font-weight: bold; text-align: center" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">
    <mrow>
      <mo fence="true">(</mo>
        <mrow>
          <mi>S</mi>
          <mo>+</mo>
          <mi>P</mi>
          <mo>+</mo>
          <mi>N</mi>
          <mo>+</mo>
          <mi>L</mi>
        </mrow>
      <mo fence="true">)</mo>
    </mrow>
    <mo>=</mo>
    <mrow>
      <mo fence="true">(</mo>
        <mrow>
          <mi>C</mi>
          <mo>+</mo>
          <mi>S</mi>
          <mi>P</mi>
          <mo>+</mo>
          <mi>CD</mi>
        </mrow>
      <mo fence="true">)</mo>
    </mrow>
  </math>
<Where>
  <Para>
    <Text>The expressions used in the formula have the following values.</Text>
    <UnorderedList Decoration="none">
      <ListItem>
        <Para>
          <Text>
            <Strong>S</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector
under regulation 8.</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      <ListItem>
        <Para>
          <Text>
            <Strong>P</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector
under regulation 40 of the Income Tax (Employments) Regulations 1993<FootnoteRef Ref="f00006"/> if
any adjustment to that amount under regulation 7(2) of the Working Tax Credit (Payments by Employers)
Regulations 2002<FootnoteRef Ref="f00007"/> (funding of payment of working tax credit) were
disregarded.</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </UnorderedList>
    </Para>
  </Where>

```

## Example code

```

<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Strong>N</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector
      under the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992<FootnoteRef Ref="f00008"/> or, in
      Northern Ireland, the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act
      1992<FootnoteRef Ref="f00009"/> and (in either case) under the Social Security (Contributions)
      Regulations 2001<FootnoteRef Ref="f00010"/> but disregarding—</Text>
      <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="alpha">
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>any amount of secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of which liability has been
            transferred to the employed earner by an election made jointly by the employed earner and the
            secondary contributor for the purpose of paragraph 3B(1) of Schedule 1 to either of those
            Acts<FootnoteRef Ref="f00011"/> (transfer of liability to be borne by the earner); and</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </OrderedList>
      <Text>any adjustment to the amount so payable to the collector under regulation 7(2) of
      the Working Tax Credit (Payments by Employers) Regulations 2002.</Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Strong>L</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector
      under regulation 39(1) of the Education (Student Loans) (Repayment) Regulations 2000<FootnoteRef
      Ref="f00012"/> or of the Education (Student Loans) (Repayment) Regulations (Northern Ireland)
      2000<FootnoteRef Ref="f00013"/> (payment of repayments deducted to the Inland Revenue) if the
      reduction referred to in paragraph (3) of the respective regulation and in regulation 7(2) of the
      Working Tax Credit (Payment by Employers) Regulations 2002 were disregarded.</Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Strong>C</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to his employees
      by way of tax credit under the Working Tax Credit (Payment by Employers) Regulations 2002.</Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Strong>SP</Strong> is the amount which would be recoverable from the Board by the
      contractor in respect of payments to his employees by way of statutory sick pay, statutory maternity
      pay, statutory paternity pay and statutory adoption pay.</Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>Here statutory sick say, statutory maternity pay, statutory paternity pay and statutory
    adoption have the same meanings as they do in the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992
    or the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992, as the case
    requires.</Text>
  </Para>
</ListGroup>

```

```
<Text>in the case of a company, the amount which others would deduct from payments to it
(in its capacity as a sub-contractor) under section 559 of the Taxes Act; and</Text>
</Para>
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>in any other case, nil.</Text>
  </Para>
</ListItem>
</OrderedList>
</Para>
</ListItem>
</UnorderedList>
</Para>
</Where>
</Formula>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0536

## Example image

The formula is—

$$(S+P+N+L) - (C+SP+CD)$$

- (a) 1988 c. 1. Section 559A was inserted by section 40 of the Finance Act 2002 (c. 2).  
 (b) S.I. 1993/744.  
 (c) S.I. 1993/743.  
 (d) Regulation 2(2) was amended by regulation 3(3) of S.I. 1998/2622 and regulation 3 of S.I. 1999/2159.  
 (e) Regulation 9(2) was amended by regulation 2 of S.I. 2000/1151 and regulation 2 of S.I. 2000/2742.

The expressions used in the formula have the following values.

**S** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under regulation 8.

**P** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under regulation 40 of the Income Tax (Employments) Regulations 1993(a) if any adjustment to that amount under regulation 7(2) of the Working Tax Credit (Payments by Employers) Regulations 2002(b) (funding of payment of working tax credit) were disregarded.

**N** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992(c) or, in Northern Ireland, the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992(d) and (in either case) under the Social Security (Contributions) Regulations 2001(e) but disregarding—

- (a) any amount of secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of which liability has been transferred to the employed earner by an election made jointly by the employed earner and the secondary contributor for the purpose of paragraph 3B(1) of Schedule 1 to either of those Acts(f) (transfer of liability to be borne by the earner); and
- (b) any adjustment to the amount so payable to the collector under regulation 7(2) of the Working Tax Credit (Payments by Employers) Regulations 2002.

**L** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under regulation 39(1) of the Education (Student Loans) (Repayment) Regulations 2000(g) or of the Education (Student Loans) (Repayment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2000(h) (payment of repayments deducted to the Inland Revenue) if the reduction referred to in paragraph (3) of the respective regulation and in regulation 7(2) of the Working Tax Credit (Payment by Employers) Regulations 2002 were disregarded.

**C** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to his employees by way of tax credit under the Working Tax Credit (Payment by Employers) Regulations 2002.

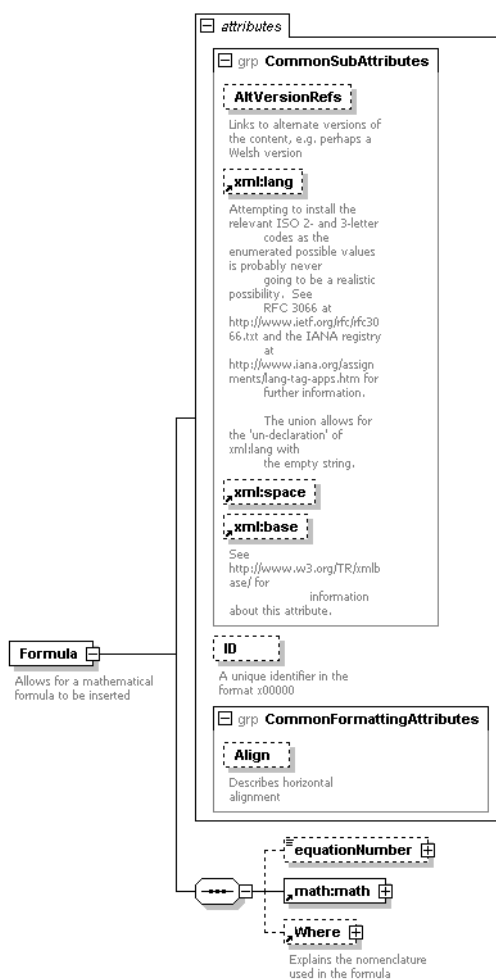
**SP** is the amount which would be recoverable from the Board by the contractor in respect of payments to his employees by way of statutory sick pay, statutory maternity pay, statutory paternity pay and statutory adoption pay.

Here statutory sick pay, statutory maternity pay, statutory paternity pay and statutory adoption have the same meanings as they do in the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 or the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992, as the case requires.

**CD** is—

- (a) in the case of a company, the amount which others would deduct from payments to it (in its capacity as a sub-contractor) under section 559 of the Taxes Act; and
- (b) in any other case, nil.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **equationNumber math Where**

used by groups **BlockBasic BlockSection InlineModel ParaBasic**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	ID	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	Align	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	optional		

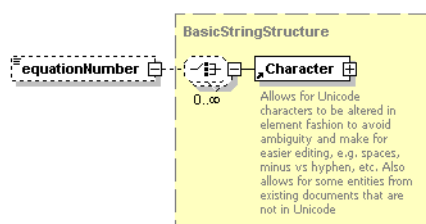


```
source <xsd:element name="Formula">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Allows for a mathematical formula to be inserted</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element name="equationNumber" type="BasicStringStructure" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="math:math"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Where" minOccurs="0"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="ID">
      <xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:documentation>A unique identifier in the format x00000</xsd:documentation>
      </xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID">
          <xsd:pattern value="x[0-9]{5}"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonFormattingAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## EquationNumber

A mathematical formula may, optionally, have an equation number.

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type **BasicStringStructure**

properties

isRef	0
minOcc	0
maxOcc	1
content	complex
mixed	true

children **Character**

source `<xsd:element name="equationNumber" type="BasicStringStructure" minOccurs="0"/>`

## Where

A mathematical formula may have explanatory text. This element provides a container for that text.

## Align

Controls the horizontal alignment of the content of the element.

The permissible values are:

- inherit (the alignment is inherited from the parent element)
- left
- centre
- right
- justify (the entire paragraph is justified. Note that the last line is not force-justified. The decision on whether the last line should be is left to the implementation).

This attribute is optional. The default alignment will be decided by the implementation. The alignment should cascade down into child elements.

## Example code

```
<Formula>
  <math style="font-weight: bold; text-align: center" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">
    <mrow>
      <mo fence="true">(</mo>
        <mrow>
          <mi>S</mi>
          <mo>+</mo>
          <mi>P</mi>
          <mo>+</mo>
          <mi>N</mi>
          <mo>+</mo>
          <mi>L</mi>
        </mrow>
      <mo fence="true">)</mo>
    </mrow>
    <mo>-</mo>
    <mrow>
      <mo fence="true">(</mo>
        <mrow>
          <mi>C</mi>
          <mo>+</mo>
          <mi>S</mi>
          <mi>P</mi>
          <mo>+</mo>
          <mi>CD</mi>
        </mrow>
      <mo fence="true">)</mo>
    </mrow>
  </math>
<Where>
  <Para>
    <Text>The expressions used in the formula have the following values.</Text>
    <UnorderedList Decoration="none">
      <ListItem>
        <Para>
          <Text>
            <Strong>S</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector
            under regulation 8.</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </UnorderedList>
    </Para>
  </Where>
```

```
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Strong>P</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector
under regulation 40 of the Income Tax (Employments) Regulations 1993<FootnoteRef Ref="f00006"/> if
any adjustment to that amount under regulation 7(2) of the Working Tax Credit (Payments by Employers)
Regulations 2002<FootnoteRef Ref="f00007"/> (funding of payment of working tax credit) were
disregarded.</Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</ListItem>
<ListDecorated>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Strong>N</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector
under the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992<FootnoteRef Ref="f00008"/> or, in
Northern Ireland, the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act
1992<FootnoteRef Ref="f00009"/> and (in either case) under the Social Security (Contributions)
Regulations 2001<FootnoteRef Ref="f00010"/> but disregarding</Text>
    <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="alpha">
      <ListDecorated>
        <Para>
          <Text>any amount of secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of which liability has been
transferred to the employed earner by an election made jointly by the employed earner and the
secondary contributor for the purpose of paragraph 3B(1) of Schedule 1 to either of those
Acts<FootnoteRef Ref="f00011"/> (transfer of liability to be borne by the earner); and</Text>
        </Para>
      </ListDecorated>
    </OrderedList>
  </Para>
</ListDecorated>
<ListDecorated>
  <Para>
    <Text>any adjustment to the amount so payable to the collector under regulation 7(2) of
the Working Tax Credit (Payments by Employers) Regulations 2002.</Text>
  </Para>
</ListDecorated>
<ListDecorated>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Strong>L</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector
under regulation 39(1) of the Education (Student Loans) (Repayment) Regulations 2000<FootnoteRef
Ref="f00012"/> or of the Education (Student Loans) (Repayment) Regulations (Northern Ireland)
2000<FootnoteRef Ref="f00013"/> (payment of repayments deducted to the Inland Revenue) if the
reduction referred to in paragraph (3) of the respective regulation and in regulation 7(2) of the
Working Tax Credit (Payment by Employers) Regulations 2002 were disregarded.</Text>
    </Para>
  </ListDecorated>
</ListDecorated>
<ListDecorated>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Strong>C</Strong> is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to his employees
by way of tax credit under the Working Tax Credit (Payment by Employers) Regulations 2002.</Text>
    </Para>
  </ListDecorated>
</ListDecorated>
<ListDecorated>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Strong>SP</Strong> is the amount which would be recoverable from the Board by the
contractor in respect of payments to his employees by way of statutory sick pay, statutory maternity
pay, statutory paternity pay and statutory adoption pay.</Text>
    </Para>
  </ListDecorated>
</ListDecorated>
<ListDecorated>
  <Para>
    <Text>Here statutory sick say, statutory maternity pay, statutory paternity pay and statutory
adoption have the same meanings as they do in the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992
or the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992, as the case
requires.</Text>
  </Para>
</ListDecorated>
```

```
</ListItem>
<ListItem>
  <Para>
    <Text>
      <Strong>CD</Strong> is- </Text>
      <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="alpha">
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>in the case of a company, the amount which others would deduct from payments to it
(in its capacity as a sub-contractor) under section 559 of the Taxes Act; and</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
        <ListItem>
          <Para>
            <Text>in any other case, nil.</Text>
          </Para>
        </ListItem>
      </OrderedList>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</UnorderedList>
</Para>
</Where>
</Formula>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0536

## Example image

The formula is—

$$(S+P+N+L) - (C+SP+CD)$$

- (a) 1988 c. 1. Section 559A was inserted by section 40 of the Finance Act 2002 (c. 2).  
 (b) S.I. 1993/744.  
 (c) S.I. 1993/743.  
 (d) Regulation 2(2) was amended by regulation 3(3) of S.I. 1998/2622 and regulation 3 of S.I. 1999/2159.  
 (e) Regulation 9(2) was amended by regulation 2 of S.I. 2000/1151 and regulation 2 of S.I. 2000/2742.

The expressions used in the formula have the following values.

**S** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under regulation 8.

**P** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under regulation 40 of the Income Tax (Employments) Regulations 1993(a) if any adjustment to that amount under regulation 7(2) of the Working Tax Credit (Payments by Employers) Regulations 2002(b) (funding of payment of working tax credit) were disregarded.

**N** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992(c) or, in Northern Ireland, the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992(d) and (in either case) under the Social Security (Contributions) Regulations 2001(e) but disregarding—

- (a) any amount of secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of which liability has been transferred to the employed earner by an election made jointly by the employed earner and the secondary contributor for the purpose of paragraph 3B(1) of Schedule 1 to either of those Acts(f) (transfer of liability to be borne by the earner); and
- (b) any adjustment to the amount so payable to the collector under regulation 7(2) of the Working Tax Credit (Payments by Employers) Regulations 2002.

**L** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to the collector under regulation 39(1) of the Education (Student Loans) (Repayment) Regulations 2000(g) or of the Education (Student Loans) (Repayment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2000(h) (payment of repayments deducted to the Inland Revenue) if the reduction referred to in paragraph (3) of the respective regulation and in regulation 7(2) of the Working Tax Credit (Payment by Employers) Regulations 2002 were disregarded.

**C** is the amount which would be payable by the contractor to his employees by way of tax credit under the Working Tax Credit (Payment by Employers) Regulations 2002.

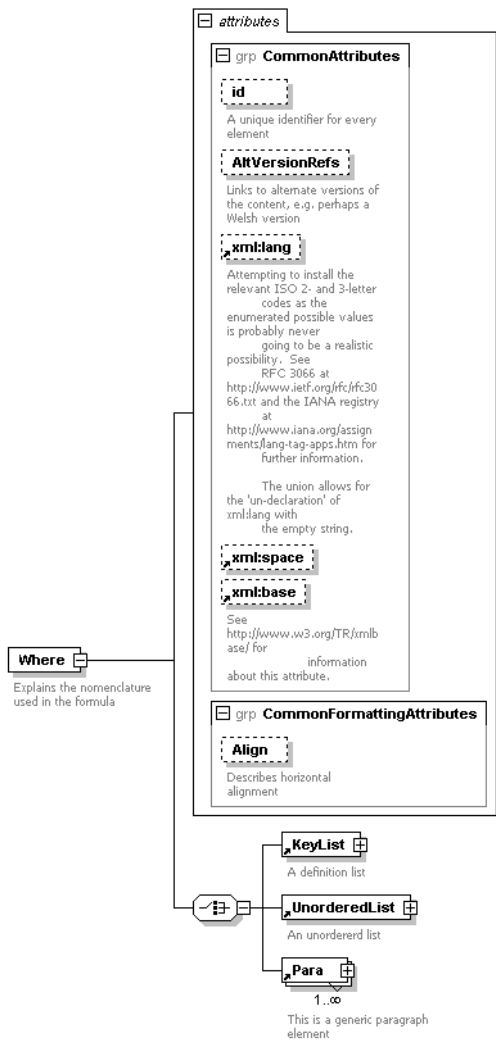
**SP** is the amount which would be recoverable from the Board by the contractor in respect of payments to his employees by way of statutory sick pay, statutory maternity pay, statutory paternity pay and statutory adoption pay.

Here statutory sick pay, statutory maternity pay, statutory paternity pay and statutory adoption have the same meanings as they do in the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 or the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992, as the case requires.

**CD** is—

- (a) in the case of a company, the amount which others would deduct from payments to it (in its capacity as a sub-contractor) under section 559 of the Taxes Act; and
- (b) in any other case, nil.

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content	complex				
children	KeyList UnorderedList Para					
used by	element	Formula				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	Align	derived by: xsd:string	optional			

```
source <xsd:element name="Where">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Explains the nomenclature used in the formula</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:choice>
      <xsd:element ref="KeyList"/>
      <xsd:element ref="UnorderedList"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Para" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:choice>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonFormattingAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```



## Figure

A display image. It may also be a collection of images – in more complex examples a figure may consist of more than one image.

The figure may, optionally, have a number, a title, explanatory paragraphs of text and notes (i.e. footnotes to the figure).

### Orientation

Indicates the rotation of the figure to the surrounding context. The possible values are:

- portrait
- landscape

### ImageLayout

Defines the layout of the images. This mainly applies when there is more than one image in a figure. They may be laid vertically (normal), horizontally, e.g. across the page, or when there are many images, in a matrix format up to 5 images wide.

There is the possibility that this option may cause a conflict on image widths and page size. It is left to individual implementations as to how this should be resolved.

The possible values are:

Attribute value	Explanation
vertical	Images will be laid below each other on the page
horizontal	Images will be placed beside each other on the page
matrix-2-wide	Images will be placed two to a line, using enough lines as needed to place all the images
matrix-3-wide	Images will be placed three to a line, using enough lines as needed to place all the images
matrix-4-wide	Images will be placed four to a line, using enough lines as needed to place all the images
matrix-5-wide	Images will be placed five to a line, using enough lines as needed to place all the images

### id

A unique identifier for the figure. The format of this identifier should be gxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, g00010, g01353.

### Example code

PLEASE NOTE THAT THIS IS A MADE-UP EXAMPLE

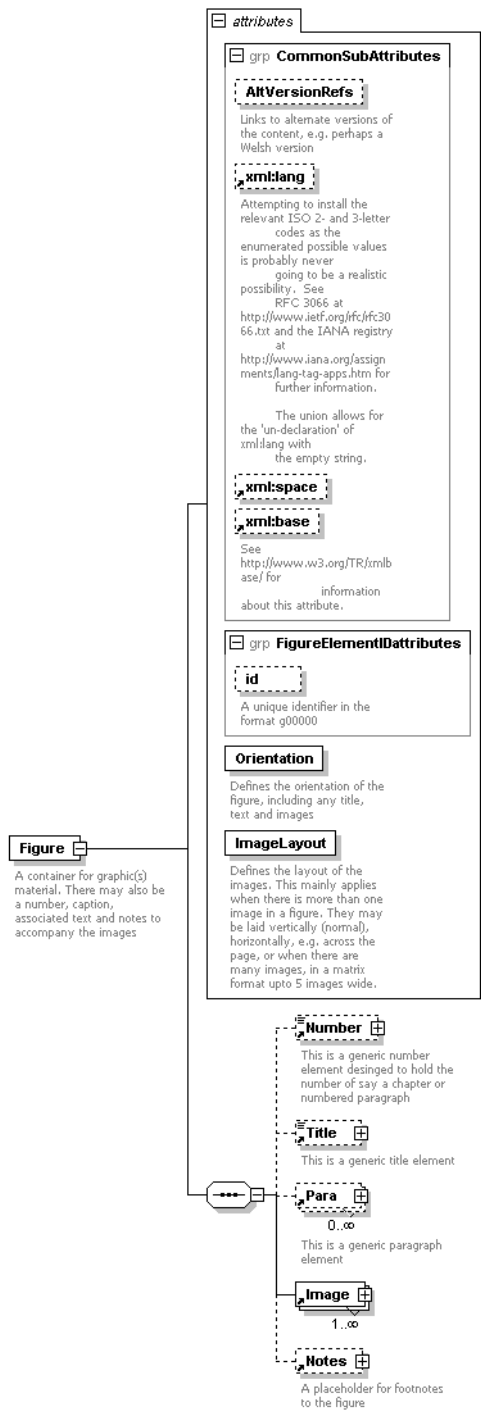
```
<Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
  <Number>Figure 1</Number>
  <Title>Form for Visa application for United States of America</Title>
  <Para>
    <Text>This form should be used by people applying for a visa to the United States of America</Text>
  </Para>
  <Image ResourceRef="r00000" Width="580pt" Height="auto"/>
  <Notes>
    <Footnote>
      <Number>*</Number>
      <FootnoteText>
        <Para>
          <Text>For application from 1 August 2005.</Text>
        </Para>
      </FootnoteText>
    </Footnote>
  </Notes>
</Figure>
```

### Example code

```
<Schedule>
  <Number>Schedule 1</Number>
  <TitleBlock>
    <Title>Form of Part 1 of an Outturn Statement</Title>
  </TitleBlock>
  <Reference>Regulation 4(1) (a)</Reference>
  <ScheduleBody>
    <P>
      <Text>Part 1 of an outturn statement shall be in the following form.</Text>
    </P>
    <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
      <Image ResourceRef="r00000" Width="580pt" Height="auto"/>
    </Figure>
    <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
      <Image ResourceRef="r00001" Width="scale-to-fit" Height="auto"/>
    </Figure>
    <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
      <Image ResourceRef="r00002" Width="scale-to-fit" Height="auto"/>
    </Figure>
    <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
      <Image ResourceRef="r00003" Width="scale-to-fit" Height="auto"/>
    </Figure>
  </ScheduleBody>
</Schedule>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1153

diagram



namespace	<a href="http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation">http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation</a>	
properties	content	complex
children	<b>Number Title Para Image Notes</b>	
used by	elements	<b>AbstractBody AppendixBody Body Chapter Group Part Pblock PsubBlock ScheduleBody</b>
	groups	<b>BlockBasic BlockSection InlineModel ParaBasic</b>

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	Orientation	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	required		
	ImageLayout	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	required		
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="Figure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A container for graphic(s) material. There may also be a number, caption, associated     text and notes to accompany the images&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Number" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Para" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Image" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Notes" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="FigureElementIDattributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Orientation" use="required"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines the orientation of the figure, including any title, text and         images&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;         &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="portrait"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="landscape"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;       &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="ImageLayout" use="required"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines the layout of the images. This mainly applies when there is more than one         image in a figure. They may be laid vertically (normal), horizontally, e.g. across the page, or when there are         many images, in a matrix format upto 5 images wide.&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;There is the possibility that this option may cause a conflict on image widths and         page size. It is left to individual implementations as to how this should be resolved.&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;         &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="vertical"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="horizontal"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="matrix-2-wide"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="matrix-3-wide"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="matrix-4-wide"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="matrix-5-wide"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;       &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## Image

A single image. An image may be inline or display when contained in a <Figure> element.

### id

A unique identifier for the image. The format of this identifier should be gxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example: g00010, g01353.

### Description

Allows for a description of the image to be added.

### ResourceRef

A cross-reference to a resource that is the references the image.

### Height

The height of the image.

The value held here is expected to reflect the size of the original image as printed (not necessarily the actual native size of the image) if absolute values are held (for example, 580pt). The values can be in points or em's. Em's are expected mainly to be used inline. Obviously for display images em's may not have a defined value, in which case it would be down to the implementation to define what an em is.

However, it is possible to use relative values. These have been created with authoring of legislation in mind and have the following meanings:

Attribute value	Explanation
auto	This indicates that the image should be scaled automatically for the output format. This is generally used in conjunction with scale-to-fit on the other attribute to maintain the aspect ratio of the image. If the image will not fit on the output then it should be cropped. If both attributes are auto then the image should be output at its native size.
scale-to-fit	This should enlarge the image for either the width or height (whichever attribute this is on) to fit the output format. For printed output this would generally be the page width or height. It would be down to implementations as to how to treat this value, for say, web output.
fit-page-to-image	This is designed for use with oversize images where it is desirable to enlarge the page size to fit the image. For other output formats it would be down to implementation as to how to treat this value
spread	This is also designed for use with oversize images but in this instance it indicates that for printed documents the output should be put on a page spread.
%	For values defined as percent this should be a percentage of the containing area. For printed output this will be the printable section of the page.

## Width

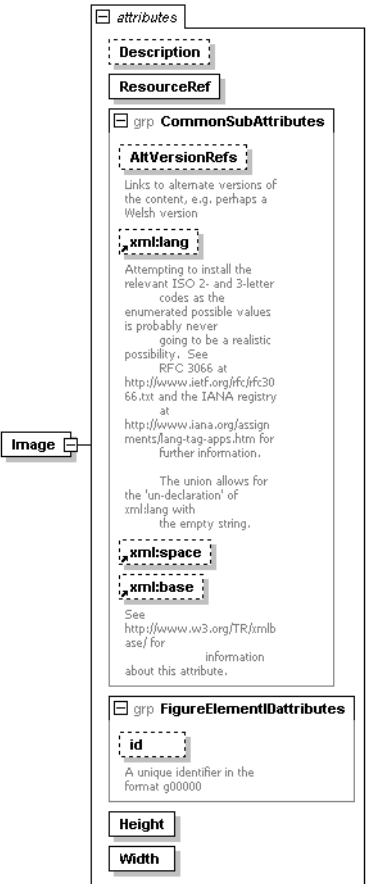
The width of the image. See the Height attribute for details.

### Example code

```
<Schedule>
  <Number>Schedule 1</Number>
  <TitleBlock>
    <Title>Form of Part 1 of an Outturn Statement</Title>
  </TitleBlock>
  <Reference>Regulation 4(1) (a)</Reference>
  <ScheduleBody>
    <P>
      <Text>Part 1 of an outturn statement shall be in the following form.</Text>
    </P>
    <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
      <Image ResourceRef="r00000" Width="580pt" Height="auto"/>
    </Figure>
    <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
      <Image ResourceRef="r00001" Width="scale-to-fit" Height="auto"/>
    </Figure>
    <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
      <Image ResourceRef="r00002" Width="scale-to-fit" Height="auto"/>
    </Figure>
    <Figure ImageLayout="vertical" Orientation="landscape">
      <Image ResourceRef="r00003" Width="scale-to-fit" Height="auto"/>
    </Figure>
  </ScheduleBody>
</Schedule>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1153

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content	complex				
used by	elements	Figure Signee				
	group	InlineBasic				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	Description	xsd:string	optional			
	ResourceRef	xsd:string	required			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	Height	FigureSizeType	required			
Width	FigureSizeType	required				

```
source <xsd:element name="Image">
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:attribute name="Description" type="xsd:string" use="optional"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="ResourceRef" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="FigureElementIDattributes"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="Height" type="FigureSizeType" use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="Width" type="FigureSizeType" use="required"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

---

382



## Tabular

A container for tabular material. It allows for a title to the table, some introductory text and then one or more actual tables. The second example below shows a tabular element containing two tables.

### Example code

```
<Tabular>
  <!-- Note here how the strong knocks out the default strong formatting -->
  <Title>
    <Strong>Table of Offences</Strong>
  </Title>
  <TableText>
    <Para>
      <Text Align="right">Paragraph 5</Text>
    </Para>
  </TableText>
  <table cols="3">
    <thead>
      <tr>
        <th>Offence</th>
        <th>Contrary to</th>
        <th>Year and chapter</th>
      </tr>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <tr>
        <th rowspan="1" colspan="3">
          <strong>Class A: Homicide and related grave offences</strong>
        </th>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Murder</td>
        <td>Common law</td>
        <td></td>
      </tr>
      ...
      <tr>
        <td>False statement tendered under section 102 of the Magistrates' Courts Act 1980</td>
        <td>Magistrates' Courts Act 1980 section 106</td>
        <td>
          <Citation id="c00144" Class="ukpga" Year="1980" Number="0043">1980 c. 43</citation>
        </td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Making false statement to authorised officer</td>
        <td>Trade Descriptions Act 1968 section 29(2)</td>
        <td>
          <Citation id="c00145" Class="ukpga" Year="1968" Number="0029">1968 c. 29</citation>
        </td>
      </tr>
    </tbody>
  </table>
</Tabular>
```

Ref: SI 1996 2655

## Example code

```
<Tabular Orientation="portrait">
  <Title>TABLE OF FEES AND UPLIFTS</Title>
  <table cols="6" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml" fo:border-bottom-style="solid">
    <caption>(a) Guilty plea—Queen’s Counsel</caption>
    <col align="left" width="20%"/>
    <col align="char" char="." width="16%"/>
    <col align="char" char="." width="16%"/>
    <col align="char" char="." width="16%"/>
    <col align="char" char="." width="16%"/>
    <col align="char" char="." width="16%"/>
    <thead fo:border-top-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid">
      <tr>
        <th align="left">Offence falling within</th>
        <th align="left">Basic fee</th>
        <th align="left">Evidence uplift per page (pages 11 to 50)</th>
        <th align="left">Evidence uplift per page (pages 51 to 100)</th>
        <th align="left">Evidence uplift per page (pages 101 to 400)</th>
      </tr>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <tr>
        <td>Class A</td>
        <td>£1619.50</td>
        <td>£6.14</td>
        <td>£3.06</td>
        <td>£2.04</td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Class B</td>
        <td>£715.50</td>
        <td>£6.03</td>
        <td>£4.02</td>
        <td>£2.68</td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Class C</td>
        <td>£595.00</td>
        <td>£6.03</td>
        <td>£4.02</td>
        <td>£2.68</td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Class D</td>
        <td>£998.00</td>
        <td>£6.03</td>
        <td>£4.02</td>
        <td>£2.68</td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Class E</td>
        <td>£446.00</td>
        <td>£4.02</td>
        <td>£2.68</td>
        <td>£1.79</td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Class F</td>
        <td>£438.50</td>
        <td>£3.22</td>
        <td>£2.14</td>
        <td>£1.43</td>
      </tr>
    </tbody>
  </table>
```

## Example code

```

<tr>
  <td>Class G</td>
  <td>£1242.00</td>
  <td>£8.04</td>
  <td>£5.36</td>
  <td>£3.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td>Class H</td>
  <td>£504.00</td>
  <td>£8.04</td>
  <td>£5.36</td>
  <td>£3.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td>Class I</td>
  <td>£403.50</td>
  <td>£8.04</td>
  <td>£5.36</td>
  <td>£3.57</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
<table cols="6" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml" fo:border-bottom-style="solid">
  <caption>(b) Guilty plea-other advocate</caption>
  <col align="left" width="20%"/>
  <col align="char" char="." width="16%"/>
  <col align="char" char="." width="16%"/>
  <col align="char" char="." width="16%"/>
  <col align="char" char="." width="16%"/>
  <thead fo:border-top-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid">
    <tr>
      <th align="left">Offence falling within</th>
      <th align="left">Basic fee</th>
      <th align="left">Evidence uplift per page (pages 11 to 50)</th>
      <th align="left">Evidence uplift per page (pages 51 to 100)</th>
      <th align="left">Evidence uplift per page (pages 101 to 400)</th>
    </tr>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
    <tr>
      <td>Class A</td>
      <td>£810.00</td>
      <td>£3.07</td>
      <td>£1.53</td>
      <td>£1.02</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td>Class B</td>
      <td>£204.50</td>
      <td>£1.72</td>
      <td>£1.15</td>
      <td>£0.77</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td>Class C</td>
      <td>£170.00</td>
      <td>£1.72</td>
      <td>£1.15</td>
      <td>£0.77</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td>Class D</td>
      <td>£285.00</td>
      <td>£1.72</td>
      <td>£1.15</td>
    </tr>
  </tbody>
</table>

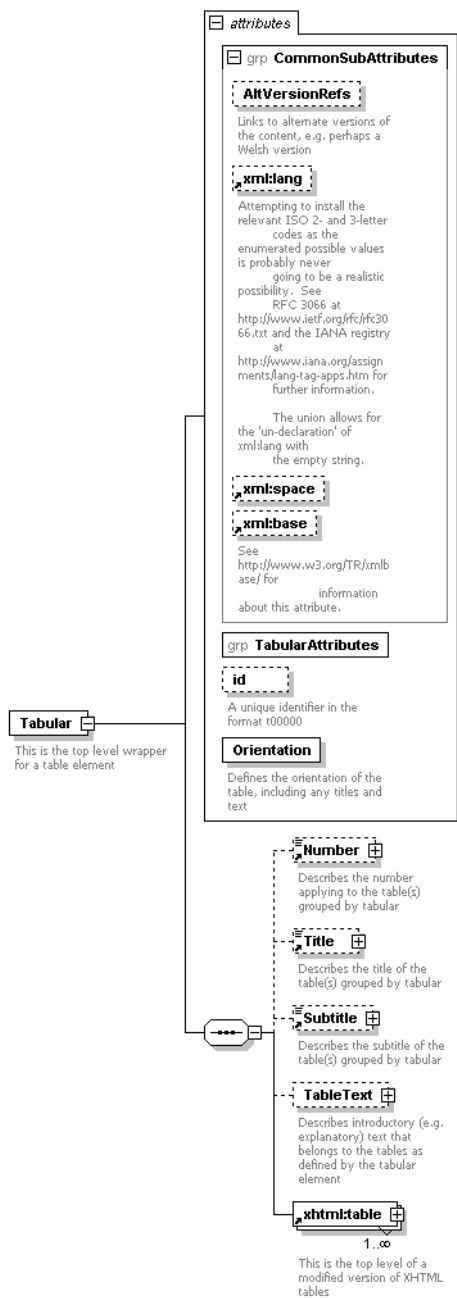
```

```
<td>£0.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class E</td>
<td>£127.50</td>
<td>£1.15</td>
<td>£0.77</td>
<td>£0.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class F</td>
<td>£125.50</td>
<td>£0.92</td>
<td>£0.61</td>
<td>£0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class G</td>
<td>£355.00</td>
<td>£2.30</td>
<td>£1.53</td>
<td>£1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class H</td>
<td>£144.00</td>
<td>£2.30</td>
<td>£1.53</td>
<td>£1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class I</td>
<td>£115.00</td>
<td>£2.30</td>
<td>£1.53</td>
<td>£1.02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Ref: SI 1996 2655

Example code

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content	complex			
children	Number Title Subtitle TableText table				
used by	elements	AbstractBody AppendixBody Body Chapter Group Part Pblock PsubBlock ScheduleBody			
	groups	BlockBasic BlockSection InlineModel ParaBasic			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	Orientation	derived by: xsd:string		required	

```
source <xsd:element name="Tabular">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>This is the top level wrapper for a table element</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="Number" minOccurs="0">
        <xsd:annotation>
          <xsd:documentation>Describes the number applying to the table(s) grouped by
tabular</xsd:documentation>
        </xsd:annotation>
      </xsd:element>
      <xsd:element ref="Title" minOccurs="0">
        <xsd:annotation>
          <xsd:documentation>Describes the title of the table(s) grouped by tabular</xsd:documentation>
        </xsd:annotation>
      </xsd:element>
      <xsd:element ref="Subtitle" minOccurs="0">
        <xsd:annotation>
          <xsd:documentation>Describes the subtitle of the table(s) grouped by tabular</xsd:documentation>
        </xsd:annotation>
      </xsd:element>
      <xsd:element name="TableText" minOccurs="0">
        <xsd:annotation>
          <xsd:documentation>Describes introductory (e.g. explanatory) text that belongs to the tables as
defined by the tabular element</xsd:documentation>
        </xsd:annotation>
      </xsd:element>
      <xsd:complexType>
        <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xsd:group ref="TableText"/>
        </xsd:choice>
      </xsd:complexType>
      <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
      <xsd:attribute name="id">
        <xsd:annotation>
          <xsd:documentation>A unique identifier in the format e00000</xsd:documentation>
        </xsd:annotation>
      </xsd:attribute>
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID">
          <xsd:pattern value="e[0-9]{5}/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:element ref="xhtml:table" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
<xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
<xsd:attributeGroup ref="TabularAttributes"/>
<xsd:attribute name="id">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A unique identifier in the format t00000</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
</xsd:attribute>
<xsd:simpleType>
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID">
    <xsd:pattern value="t[0-9]{5}/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
</xsd:attribute>
<xsd:attribute name="Orientation" use="required">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the orientation of the table, including any titles and
text</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
</xsd:attribute>
<xsd:simpleType>
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:enumeration value="portrait"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="landscape"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
</xsd:attribute>
</xsd:element>
```

</xsd:restriction>  
</xsd:simpleType>  
</xsd:attribute>  
</xsd:complexType>  
</xsd:element>

## TableText

Some tables have introductory paragraphs of text. This element is a container for that text. Note how in the example below the <TableText> actually contains a table as part of the text

### Example code

```
<Tabular Orientation="portrait">
  <Title>TABLE OF DERIVATIONS</Title>
  <TableText>
    <Para>
      <Text>
        <Emphasis>Notes:</Emphasis>
      </Text>
    </Para>
    <Pl>
      <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
      <Plpara>
        <Text>This Table shows the derivation of the provisions of the consolidation.</Text>
      </Plpara>
    </Pl>
    <Pl>
      <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
      <Plpara>
        <Text>The following abbreviations are used in the Table—</Text>
        <KeyList Separator="">
          <KeyListItem>
            <Key Align="left">V(E)A</Key>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text><Citation id="c00151" Class="ukpga" Year="1971" Number="0010"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">Vehicles (Excise) Act 1971 (c. 10)</Citation></Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
          </KeyListItem>
          <KeyListItem>
            <Key Align="left">1976 FA</Key>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text><Citation id="c00152" Class="ukpga" Year="1976" Number="0040"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">Finance Act 1976 (c. 40)</Citation></Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
          </KeyListItem>
          <KeyListItem>
            <Key Align="left">1979 CEMA</Key>
            <ListItem>
              <Para>
                <Text>Customs and Excise Management Act 1979 (c.2)</Text>
              </Para>
            </ListItem>
          </KeyListItem>
        </KeyList>
      </Plpara>
    </Pl>
  </TableText>
</Tabular>
```



```

<KeyListItem>
  <Key Align="left">1982 FA</Key>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text><Citation id="c00153" Class="ukpga" Year="1982" Number="0039"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">Finance Act 1982 (c. 39)</Citation></Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</KeyListItem>
<KeyListItem>
  <Key Align="left">1986 FA</Key>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text><Citation id="c00154" Class="ukpga" Year="1986" Number="0041"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">Finance Act 1986 (c. 41)</Citation></Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</KeyListItem>

```

### Example code

```

<KeyListItem>
  <Key Align="left">1987 FA</Key>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text><Citation id="c00155" Class="ukpga" Year="1987" Number="0016"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">Finance Act 1987 (c. 16)</Citation></Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</KeyListItem>
<KeyListItem>
  <Key Align="left">1988 FA</Key>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text><Citation id="c00156" Class="ukpga" Year="1988" Number="0039"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">Finance Act 1988 (c. 39)</Citation></Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</KeyListItem>
<KeyListItem>
  <Key Align="left">1989 FA</Key>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text><Citation id="c00157" Class="ukpga" Year="1989" Number="0026"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">Finance Act 1989 (c. 26)</Citation></Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</KeyListItem>
<KeyListItem>
  <Key Align="left">1990 FA</Key>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text><Citation id="c00158" Class="ukpga" Year="1990" Number="0029"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">Finance Act 1990 (c. 29)</Citation></Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</KeyListItem>
<KeyListItem>
  <Key Align="left">1991 FA</Key>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text><Citation id="c00159" Class="ukpga" Year="1991" Number="0031"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">Finance Act 1991 (c. 31)</Citation></Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</KeyListItem>

```

```

<KeyListItem>
  <Key Align="left">1992 (No.2) FA</Key>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text><Citation id="c00160" Class="ukpga" Year="1992" Number="0048"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">Finance (No.2) Act 1992 (c. 48)</Citation></Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</KeyListItem>
<KeyListItem>
  <Key Align="left">1993 FA</Key>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text><Citation id="c00161" Class="ukpga" Year="1993" Number="0034"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">Finance Act 1993 (c. 34)</Citation></Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</KeyListItem>

```

### Example code

```

<KeyListItem>
  <Key Align="left">1994 FA</Key>
  <ListItem>
    <Para>
      <Text><Citation id="c00162" Class="ukpga" Year="1994" Number="0009"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">Finance Act 1994 (c. 9)</Citation></Text>
    </Para>
  </ListItem>
</KeyListItem>
</KeyList>
</Plpara>
</Pl>
<Pl>
  <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
  <Plpara>
    <Text>Part I of Schedule 7 to the Vehicles (Excise) Act 1971 makes modifications of other
provisions of that Act which continue to have effect until an order under section 39(2) of that Act
provides that the modifications are to cease to operate. Paragraph 18 of Schedule 2 to the Finance
Act 1994 prevents the making of such an order in relation to certain of the modifications, thereby
causing the modified provisions permanently to have effect subject to the modifications. This Table
does not separately acknowledge paragraph 18 when showing the derivation of such a modified
provision.</Text>
  </Plpara>
</Pl>
<Pl>
  <Pnumber>4</Pnumber>
  <Plpara>
    <Text>The Table does not separately acknowledge the provisions (in particular the Criminal Law
Act 1977, the Criminal Justice Act 1982 and the Fines and Penalties (Northern Ireland) Order 1984)
which secure that, where the maximum fine or penalty that may be imposed on the commission of an
offence was originally expressed as a particular amount (or one particular amount on a person's first
conviction and another on subsequent convictions), the amount of the maximum fine or penalty is now
the statutory maximum (in the case of an either way offence tried summarily) or a particular level on
the standard scale (in the case of a summary offence).</Text>
  </Plpara>
</Pl>
</TableText>
<table cols="2" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
  <thead>
    <tr>
      <th>Provision</th>
      <th>Derivation</th>
    </tr>
  </thead>

```

## Example code

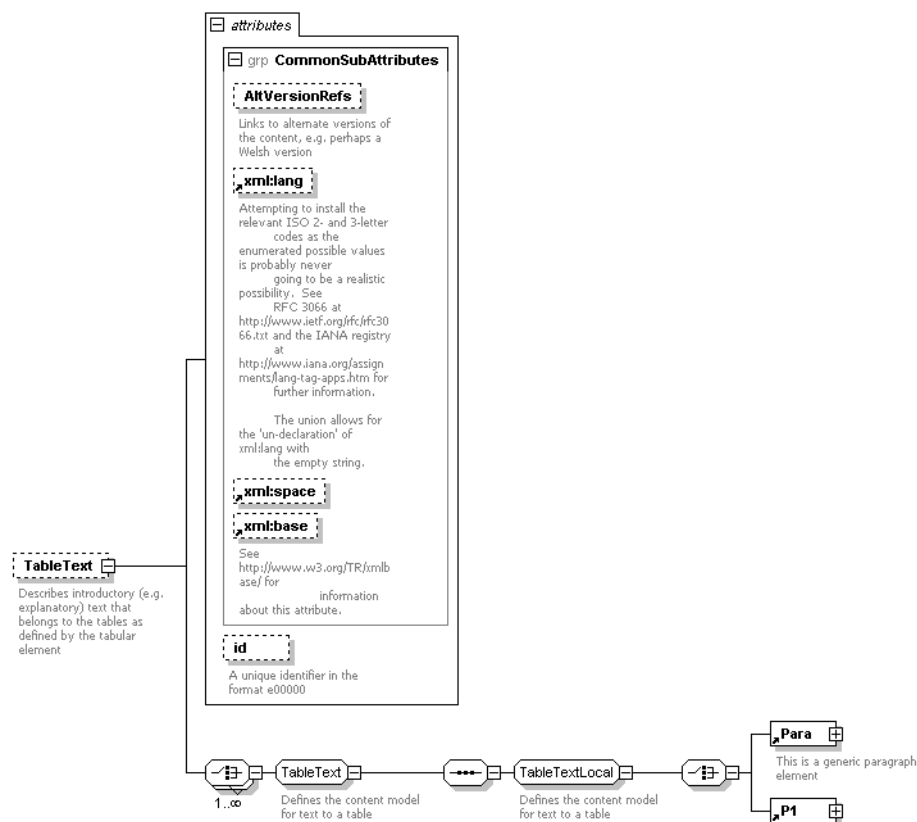
```

<tbody>
  <tr>
    <td>1 (1)</td>
    <td>V(E)A s.1(1); 1991 FA Sch.3 Pt.I para.2.</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>(2)</td>
    <td>V(E)A s.38(1).</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>2 (1)</td>
    <td>V(E)A s.1(2); 1988 FA Sch.2 Pt.II para.2.</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>(2) to (4)</td>
    <td>V(E)A s.1(3); 1994 FA Sch.2 para.1(2).</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>3 (1)</td>
    <td>V(E)A s.2(1), Sch.7 Pt.I para.1.</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>(2)</td>
    <td>V(E)A s.2(1), Sch.7 Pt.I para.1; Vehicle Licences (Duration and Rate of Duty) Order 1980
(S.I.<Citation id="c00163" Class="uksi" Year="1980" Number="1183"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">1980/1183</Citation>) Art.5(a); 1994 FA s.4(2).</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>(3)</td>
    <td>V(E)A s.2A(1), Sch.7 Pt.I para.5.</td>
  </tr>

```

Ref: UKPGA 1994 0022

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties

isRef	0
minOcc	0
maxOcc	1
content	complex

children **Para P1**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			

source

```

<xsd:element name="TableText" minOccurs="0">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Describes introductory (e.g. explanatory) text that belongs to the tables as defined
    by the tabular element</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <xsd:group ref="TableText"/>
    </xsd:choice>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="id">
      <xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:documentation>A unique identifier in the format e00000</xsd:documentation>
      </xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID">
          <xsd:pattern value="e[0-9]{5}"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## Version

Some documents have a requirement to contain fragments of the document in more than one format or language. This element provides a container to hold a different version. Note that the content of this element is not validated – it makes use of the schema skip function.

The most common example in legislation is for documents that contain both English and Welsh language fragments.

A combination of Class and Language attributes should be able to define precisely what the version is for, e.g. a combination of ‘braille’ and ‘Welsh’ would indicate it is a version in Welsh Braille.

### Class

This allows for versions to be grouped together by format. This could be useful for grouping language versions together, e.g. Welsh, which then could then be automatically output. The possible values for this attribute are:

Attribute value	Verion
audio	Audio
braille	Braille
graphic	Graphical, e.g. images
text	Textual
video	Video
other	Undefined

### Description

Allows for an explanatory description of what the version contains

### Language

This allows for versions to be grouped together by language. The possible values are:

- Arabic
- Bengali
- Chinese
- Danish
- Dutch
- English
- Finnish
- French
- Gaelic
- German
- Greek

- Hindi
- Hungarian
- Icelandic
- Italian
- Latin
- Latvian
- Lithuanian
- Norwegian
- Polish
- Russian
- Slovenian
- Spanish
- Urdu
- Welsh
- notApplicable
- other

The value notApplicable is expected to be used where for format is a graphic that has no text.

### **id**

A unique identifier for the version. The format of this identifier should be vxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. As examples, v00010, v01353.

### **RestrictOutput**

Defines whether this version should not be output. The default is that it *should* be output if it is sensible to do so. By sensible, for instance, means that perhaps three graphical versions of an image may be stored, EPS, TIFF and GIF. It would only make sense to output the appropriate file type for the output format, e.g. GIF for HTML.

## Example code

```
<Versions>
  <Version Class="text" Language="Welsh" id="v00001" Description="Welsh version">
    <ExplanatoryNotes xml:lang="cy">
      <Title>Nodyn Esboniadol</Title>
      <Comment>
        <Para>
          <Text>(Nid yw'r nodyn hwn yn rhan o'r Rheoliadau)</Text>
        </Para>
      </Comment>
      <P>
        <Text>Pennodd y Rent Act 1977 (Forms, etc) (Welsh Forms and Particulars) Regulations
        1993<FootnoteRef Ref="f00010"/> ("y Rheoliadau Cymraeg") fersiynau Cymraeg o Ffurflenni rhif 5, 6, 7,
        9A, 10, 11, 12 a 13 y Rent Act 1977 (Forms, etc) (Amendment) Regulations 1980<FootnoteRef
        Ref="f00011"/> fel y'u diwygiwyd gan y Rent Act 1977 (Forms, etc) (Amendment) Regulations
        1984<FootnoteRef Ref="f00012"/>, 1987<FootnoteRef Ref="f00013"/>, 1988<FootnoteRef Ref="f00014"/> a
        1993<FootnoteRef Ref="f00015"/> . Mae'r Rheoliadau hyn yn cael eu gwneud i gywiro diffygion yn y
        Rheoliadau Cymraeg. </Text>
      </P>
    </ExplanatoryNotes>
  </Version>
</Versions>
```

Ref: SI 1994 0725

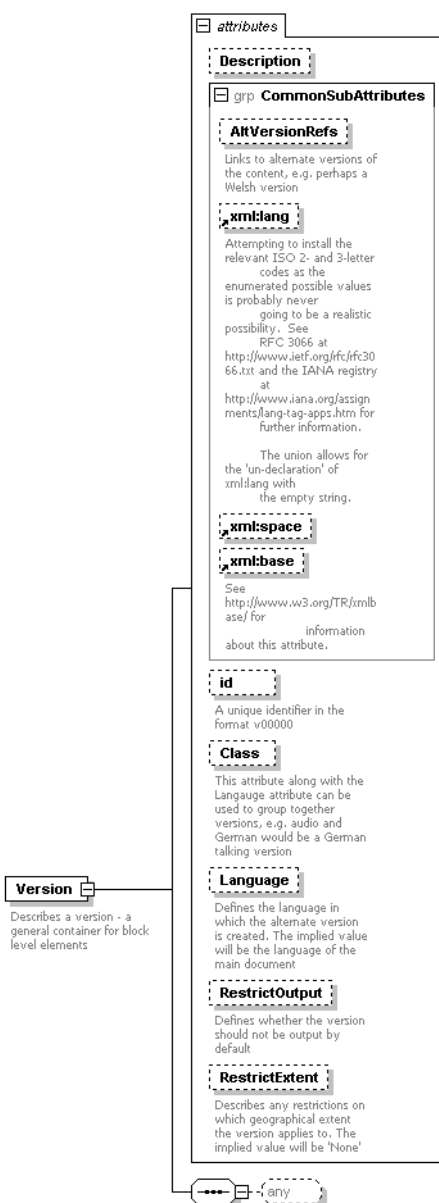
## Example image

**NODYN ESBONIADOL**

*(Nid yw'r nodyn hwn yn rhan o'r Rheoliadau)*

Pennodd y Rent Act 1977 (Forms, etc) (Welsh Forms and Particulars) Regulations 1993**(10)** ("y Rheoliadau Cymraeg") fersiynau Cymraeg o Ffurflenni rhif 5, 6, 7, 9A, 10, 11, 12 a 13 y Rent Act 1977 (Forms, etc) (Amendment) Regulations 1980**(11)** fel y'u diwygiwyd gan y Rent Act 1977 (Forms, etc) (Amendment) Regulations 1984**(12)**, 1987**(13)**, 1988**(14)** a 1993**(15)** . Mae'r Rheoliadau hyn yn cael eu gwneud i gywiro diffygion yn y Rheoliadau Cymraeg.

diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

used by element **Versions**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Description	xsd:string			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	Class	derived by: xsd:string			
	Language	derived by: xsd:string			
	RestrictOutput	xsd:boolean		false	
	RestrictExtent	derived by: xsd:string			

source `<xsd:element name="Version">`  
`<xsd:annotation>`  
`<xsd:documentation>`Describes a version - a general container for block level



```

elements</xsd:documentation>
</xsd:annotation>
<xsd:complexType>
  <xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:any processContents="skip" minOccurs="0"/>
  </xsd:sequence>
  <xsd:attribute name="Description" type="xsd:string"/>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
  <xsd:attribute name="id">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>A unique identifier in the format v00000</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID">
        <xsd:pattern value="v[0-9]{5}"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>
  <xsd:attribute name="Class">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>This attribute along with the Language attribute can be used to group together
versions, e.g. audio and German would be a German talking version</xsd:documentation>
      <xsd:documentation>The implied value would be 'text'</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="text"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="audio"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="braille"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="graphic"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="video"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="other"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>
  <xsd:attribute name="Language">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>Defines the language in which the alternate version is created. The implied value
will be the language of the main document</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="Arabic"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Bengali"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Chinese"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Danish"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Dutch"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="English"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Finnish"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="French"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Gaelic"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="German"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Greek"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Hindi"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Hungarian"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Icelandic"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Italian"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Latin"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Latvian"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Lithuanian"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Norwegian"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Polish"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Russian"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Slovenian"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Spanish"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Urdu"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="Welsh"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>

```

```

        <xsd:enumeration value="notApplicable"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="other"/>
    </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
</xsd:attribute>
<xsd:attribute name="RestrictOutput" type="xsd:boolean" default="false">
    <xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:documentation>Defines whether the version should not be output by default</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
</xsd:attribute>
<xsd:attribute name="RestrictExtent">
    <xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:documentation>Describes any restrictions on which geographical extent the version applies to.
The implied value will be 'None'</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
</xsd:simpleType>
<xsd:list>
    <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
            <xsd:enumeration value="UK"/>
            <xsd:enumeration value="England"/>
            <xsd:enumeration value="Ireland"/>
            <xsd:enumeration value="Scotland"/>
            <xsd:enumeration value="Wales"/>
            <xsd:enumeration value="Other"/>
            <xsd:enumeration value="None"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
</xsd:list>
</xsd:simpleType>
</xsd:attribute>
</xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## Versions

Some documents have a requirement to contain fragments of the document in more than one format or language. This element provides a container to hold different versions.

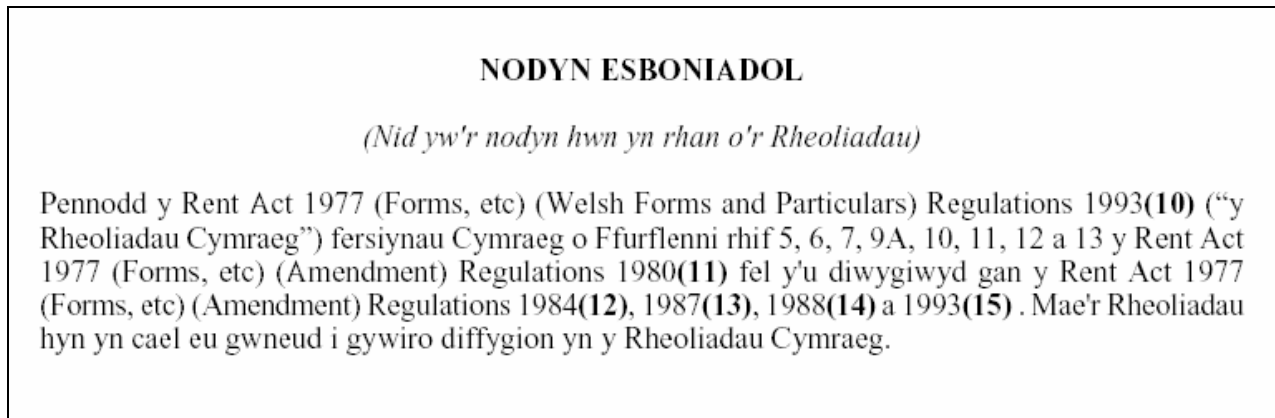
The most common example in legislation is for documents that contain both English and Welsh language fragments.

### Example code

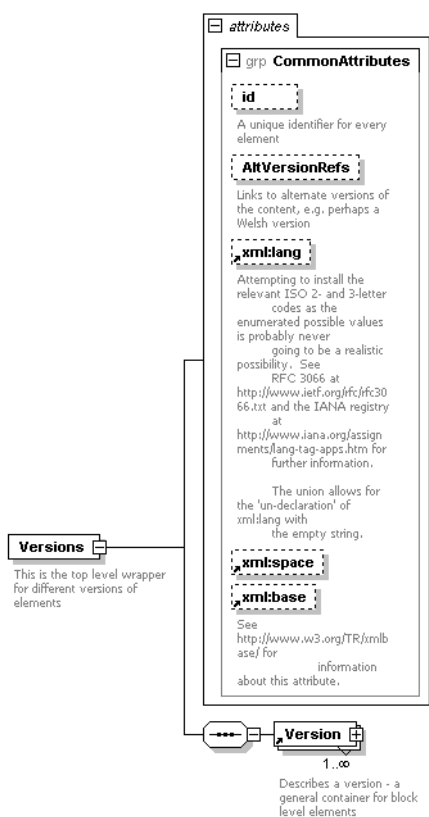
```
<Versions>
  <Version Class="text" Language="Welsh" id="v00001" Description="Welsh version">
    <ExplanatoryNotes xml:lang="cy">
      <Title>Nodyn Esboniadol</Title>
      <Comment>
        <Para>
          <Text>(Nid yw'r nodyn hwn yn rhan o'r Rheoliadau)</Text>
        </Para>
      </Comment>
      <P>
        <Text>Pennodd y Rent Act 1977 (Forms, etc) (Welsh Forms and Particulars) Regulations
1993<FootnoteRef Ref="f00010"/> ("y Rheoliadau Cymraeg") fersiynau Cymraeg o Ffurflenni rhif 5, 6, 7,
9A, 10, 11, 12 a 13 y Rent Act 1977 (Forms, etc) (Amendment) Regulations 1980<FootnoteRef
Ref="f00011"/> fel y'u diwygiwyd gan y Rent Act 1977 (Forms, etc) (Amendment) Regulations
1984<FootnoteRef Ref="f00012"/>, 1987<FootnoteRef Ref="f00013"/>, 1988<FootnoteRef Ref="f00014"/> a
1993<FootnoteRef Ref="f00015"/> . Mae'r Rheoliadau hyn yn cael eu gwneud i gywiro diffygion yn y
Rheoliadau Cymraeg. </Text>
      </P>
    </ExplanatoryNotes>
  </Version>
</Versions>
```

Ref: SI 1994 0725

### Example image



diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Version**used by element **Legislation**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

source `<xsd:element name="Versions">``<xsd:annotation>``<xsd:documentation>This is the top level wrapper for different versions of elements</xsd:documentation>``</xsd:annotation>``<xsd:complexType>``<xsd:sequence>``<xsd:element ref="Version" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>``</xsd:sequence>``<xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>``</xsd:complexType>``</xsd:element>`

## IncludedDocument

Included documents are documents not coded to the legislation schema. They are referenced via the <Resources> section.

Inline content gives the opportunity to provide some explanatory text as to the content of the included document. This could, potentially, become a hyperlink or link title in certain versions of the document.

### ResourceRef

A link to a resource. The format of this identifier should be rxxxxx, where rxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, r00010, r01353.

### Example code

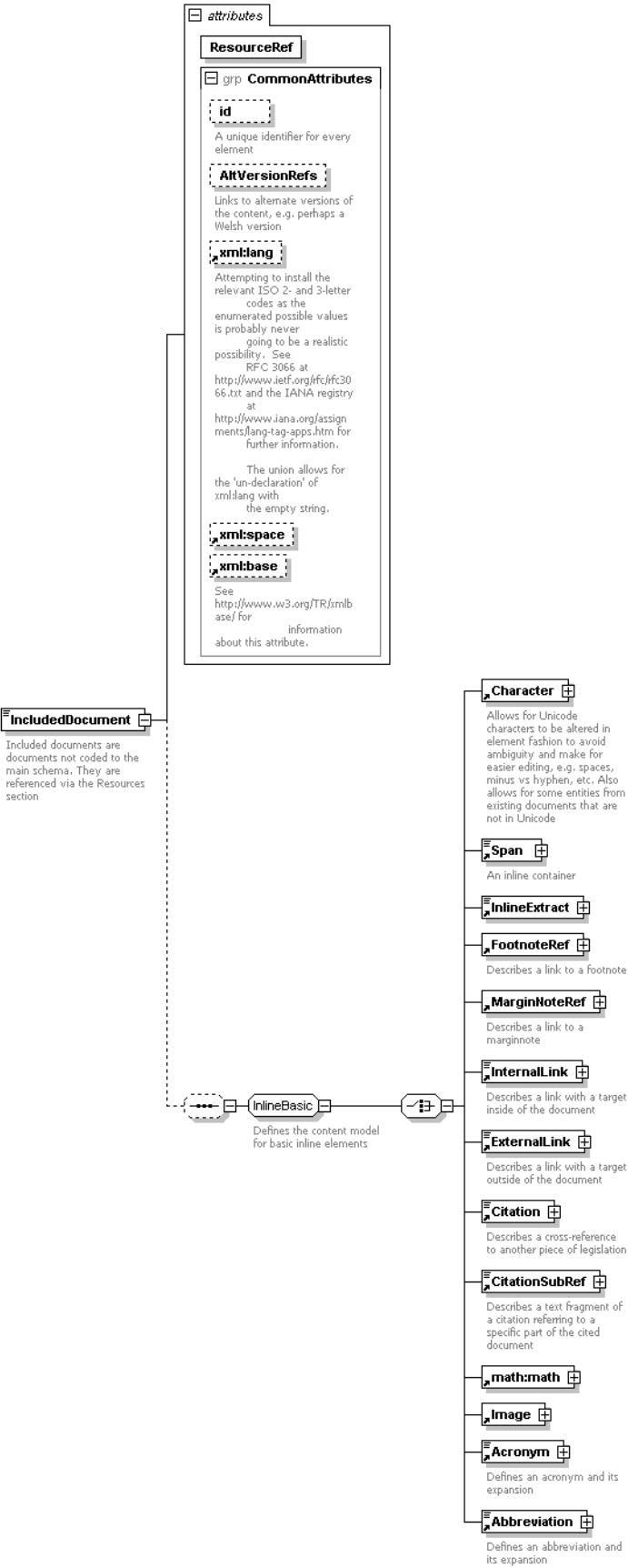
```
<Part>
  <Number>Part II</Number>
  <P>
    <Text>It is the responsibility of the seller and the buyer to ensure that the animal's passport ear
tag number and the animal's ear tag are the same</Text>
  </P>
  <Form>
    <IncludedDocument ResourceRef="r00001"/>
  </Form>
  <Form>
    <IncludedDocument ResourceRef="r00001"/>
  </Form>
  <Form>
    <IncludedDocument ResourceRef="r00001"/>
  </Form>
  <Form>
    <IncludedDocument ResourceRef="r00001"/>
  </Form>
</Part>
```

Ref: SI 1996 1686

## Example image

SCHEDULE				Article 2	
FORM OF CATTLE TRANSPORT					
Cattle Passport			Ear tag number		
Part I					
<b>A: Holding details</b> CPHH Number  Name and address			<b>B: Animal details</b> Breed Sex                      Date of birth Identity of dam		
PART II					
It is the responsibility of the seller and the buyer to ensure that the animal's passport ear tag number and the animal's ear tag are the same					
SELLER'S DETAILS		DETAILS OF MARKET		BUYER'S DETAILS	
Date of movement	Lot number	Name or official stamp	Date arrived on holding	Full postal address where the animal is kept	
Signature of seller	CC number		Received by (Signature)		
	Date animal traded		County Parish Holding Herd number		
	Signature of Market Official		Name of keeper		
SELLER'S DETAILS		DETAILS OF MARKET		BUYER'S DETAILS	
Date of movement	Lot number	Name or official stamp	Date arrived on holding	Full postal address where the animal is kept	
Signature of seller	CC number		Received by (Signature)		
	Date animal traded		County Parish Holding Herd number		
	Signature of Market Official		Name of keeper		

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content mixed complex true

children	Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation					
used by	elements	AbstractBody AppendixBody BlockAmendment Body Chapter Form Group Part Pblock PsubBlock ScheduleBody BlockExtractStructure				
attributes	complexType					
	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	ResourceRef	xsd:string	required			
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
base						
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="IncludedDocument"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Included documents are documents not coded to the main schema. They are referenced via the Resources section&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Inline content gives the opportunity to provide some explanatory text as to the content.&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence minOccurs="0"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasic"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="ResourceRef" type="xsd:string" use="required"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					



## BinaryContent

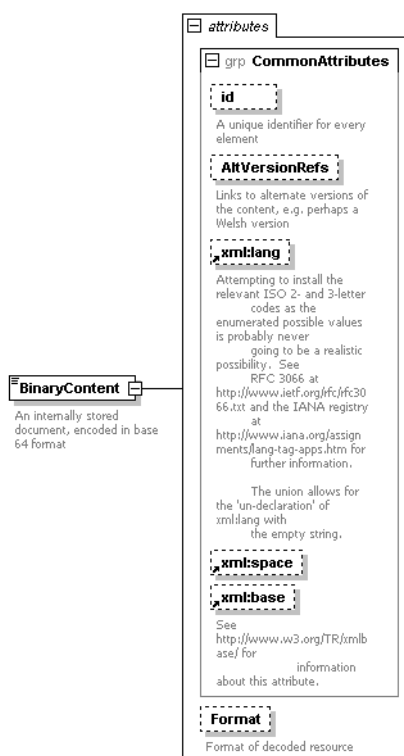
Where it is not possible (or desirable) to store data in an XML format this element allows for file formats to be stored directly in the document. The data must be stored in base64 format. This may involve an extra encoding stage before being able to embed or extract the documents.

### Format

Acts as a helper to indicate the file format of the binary content. The possible values are:

Attribute value	Format
doc	Word document
eps	EPS graphic
gif	GIF graphic
html	HTML document
jpeg	JPEG graphic
mpeg	MPEG video
png	PNG graphic
rtf	Rich Text Format document
svg	SVG graphic
xml	XML document
pdf	PDF document
tiff	TIFF graphic
other	A catch-all for other file formats

diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>type extension of **xsd:base64Binary**

properties content complex

used by element **InternalVersion**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	Format	<b>FileFormatsType</b>			

```

source <xsd:element name="BinaryContent">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>An internally stored document, encoded in base 64 format</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:simpleContent>
      <xsd:extension base="xsd:base64Binary">
        <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
        <xsd:attribute name="Format" type="FileFormatsType">
          <xsd:annotation>
            <xsd:documentation>Format of decoded resource</xsd:documentation>
          </xsd:annotation>
        </xsd:attribute>
      </xsd:extension>
    </xsd:simpleContent>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## ExternalVersion

A resource used by the document and located externally to it.

### URI

The URI of the resource. For DOIs use the format doi:10.1000/182

### Format

Acts as a helper to indicate the file format of the binary content. The possible values are:

Attribute value	Format
doc	Word document
eps	EPS graphic
gif	GIF graphic
html	HTML document
jpeg	JPEG graphic
mpeg	MPEG video
png	PNG graphic
rtf	Rich Text Format document
svg	SVG graphic
xml	XML document
pdf	PDF document
tiff	TIFF graphic
other	A catch-all for other file formats

## Height

The height of the object. The value held here is expected to reflect the default size of the object for use within the document (not necessarily the actual native size of the image). If this value is not defined then it will be down to the implementation to infer a size. This will vary depending upon the object being referenced. Additionally, the height attribute may not necessarily apply in all situations or may need to be treated differently for different object types. For instance, for a multi-page PDF it may make sense to define a width but the height would be as large as is required to flow in all the pages calculating the height of each page based on the width that is used whilst maintaining the aspect ratio. If a height is defined, then where the height is scale-to-fit the object should be scaled to fit within the height available, otherwise for applicable values the object should be cropped.

For details of the specific values see the <Image> element.

## Width

The width of the object. See the Height attribute for details.

## id

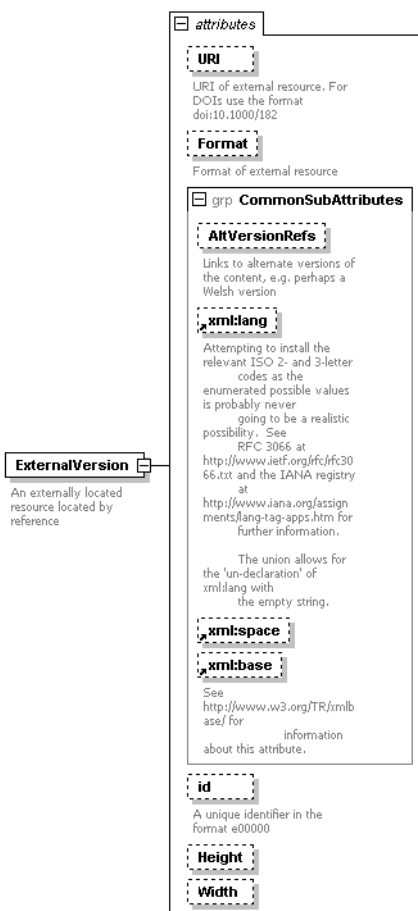
A unique identifier for the resource. The format of this identifier should be exxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, e00010, e01353.

## Example code

```
<Resources>
<Resource id="r00000">
  <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_001.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
</Resource>
<Resource id="r00001">
  <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_002.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
</Resource>
<Resource id="r00002">
  <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_003.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
</Resource>
<Resource id="r00003">
  <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_004.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
</Resource>
<Resource id="r00004">
  <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_005.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
</Resource>
</Resources>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1153

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties	content	complex				
used by	element	<b>Resource</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	URI	<b>xsd:anyURI</b>				
	Format	<b>FileFormatsType</b>				
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>				
	Height	<b>FigureSizeType</b>				
	Width	<b>FigureSizeType</b>				
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="ExternalVersion"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;An externally located resource located by reference&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="URI" type="xsd:anyURI"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;URI of external resource. For DOIs use the format doi:10.1000/182&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Format" type="FileFormatsType"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Format of external resource&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="id"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A unique identifier in the format e00000&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;         &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID"&gt;           &lt;xsd:pattern value="e[0-9]{5}"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;       &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Height" type="FigureSizeType"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Width" type="FigureSizeType"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>					

## InternalVersion

Resources may be stored either externally or internally. This element describes a resource that is to be embedded in the document.

### Height

The height of the object. The value held here is expected to reflect the default size of the object for use within the document (not necessarily the actual native size of the image). If this value is not defined then it will be down to the implementation to infer a size. This will vary depending upon the object being referenced. Additionally, the height attribute may not necessarily apply in all situations or may need to be treated differently for different object types. For instance, for a multi-page PDF it may make sense to define a width but the height would be as large as is required to flow in all the pages calculating the height of each page based on the width that is used whilst maintaining the aspect ratio. If a height is defined, then where the height is scale-to-fit the object should be scaled to fit within the height available, otherwise for applicable values the object should be cropped.

For details of the specific values see the <Image> element.

### Width

The width of the object. See the Height attribute for details.

### id

A unique identifier for the version. The format of this identifier should be ixxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, i00010, i01353.

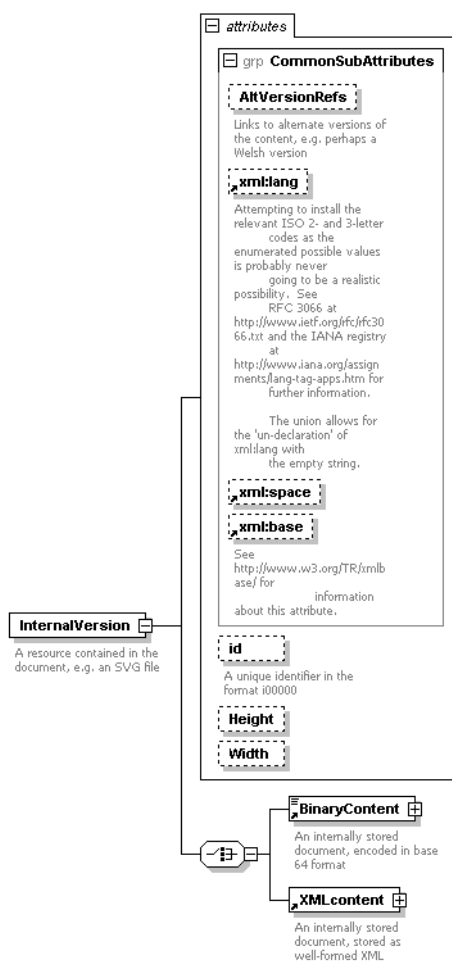
## Example code

```
<Resources>
  <Resource id="r00001">
    <InternalVersion>
      <XMLcontent>
        <svg xmlns:x="http://ns.adobe.com/Extensibility/1.0/"
xmlns:i="http://ns.adobe.com/AdobeIllustrator/10.0/" xmlns:graph="http://ns.adobe.com/Graphs/1.0/"
i:viewOrigin="80.1851 505.6704" i:rulerOrigin="0 9.765625e-04" i:pageBounds="0 841.8887 595.2754 -
9.765625e-04" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg" xmlns:xlink="http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink"
xmlns:a="http://ns.adobe.com/AdobeSVGViewerExtensions/3.0/" width="439.54" height="176.852"
viewBox="0 0 439.54 176.852" overflow="visible" enable-background="new 0 0 439.54 176.852"
xml:space="preserve">
          <metadata>
            <variableSets xmlns="http://ns.adobe.com/Variables/1.0/">
              <variableSet varSetName="binding1" locked="none">
                <variables/>
                <v:sampleDataSets xmlns="http://ns.adobe.com/GenericCustomNamespace/1.0/"
xmlns:v="http://ns.adobe.com/Variables/1.0/">
                  </variableSet>
                </variableSets>
              <sfw xmlns="http://ns.adobe.com/SaveForWeb/1.0/">
                <slices/>
                <sliceSourceBounds y="328.818" x="80.185" width="439.54" height="176.852"
bottomLeftOrigin="true"/>
                </sfw>
              </metadata>
              <g id="Layer_1" i:layer="yes" i:dimmedPercent="50" i:rgbTrio="#4F008000FFFF">
                <path i:knockout="Off" fill="none" stroke="#000000"
d="M439.04,176.352H0.5V0.5h438.54V176.352z"/>
                <path i:knockout="Off" fill="none" stroke="#000000" d="M0.063,27.554H439.04"/>
                <path i:knockout="Off" fill="none" stroke="#000000" d="M71.626,0.5v175.416"/>
                <path i:knockout="Off" fill="none" stroke="#000000" d="M213.006,0.937v174.979"/>
                <path i:knockout="Off" fill="none" stroke="#000000" d="M331.695,27.554v148.361"/>
                <path i:knockout="Off" fill="none" stroke="#000000" d="M71.626,147.116h259.633"/>
                <path i:knockout="Off" fill="none" stroke="#000000" d="M0.5,66.826h142.252"/>
                <path i:knockout="Off" fill="none" stroke="#000000" d="M142.752,27.118v119.126"/>
                <path i:knockout="Off" fill="none" stroke="#000000" d="M71.626,106.535h70.69"/>
                <path i:knockout="Off" fill="none" stroke="#000000" d="M213.006,68.135h118.253"/>
                <path i:knockout="Off" fill="none" stroke="#000000" d="M213.006,107.408h118.253"/>

```

Ref: SI 1996 1686

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **BinaryContent XMLcontent**

used by element **Resource**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	Height	<b>FigureSizeType</b>			
	Width	<b>FigureSizeType</b>			



```
source <xsd:element name="InternalVersion">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A resource contained in the document, e.g. an SVG file</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:choice>
      <xsd:element ref="BinaryContent"/>
      <xsd:element ref="XMLcontent"/>
    </xsd:choice>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="id">
      <xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:documentation>A unique identifier in the format i00000</xsd:documentation>
      </xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID">
          <xsd:pattern value="i[0-9]{5}"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
    <xsd:attribute name="Height" type="FigureSizeType"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="Width" type="FigureSizeType"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## Resource

A resource used by the document.

### id

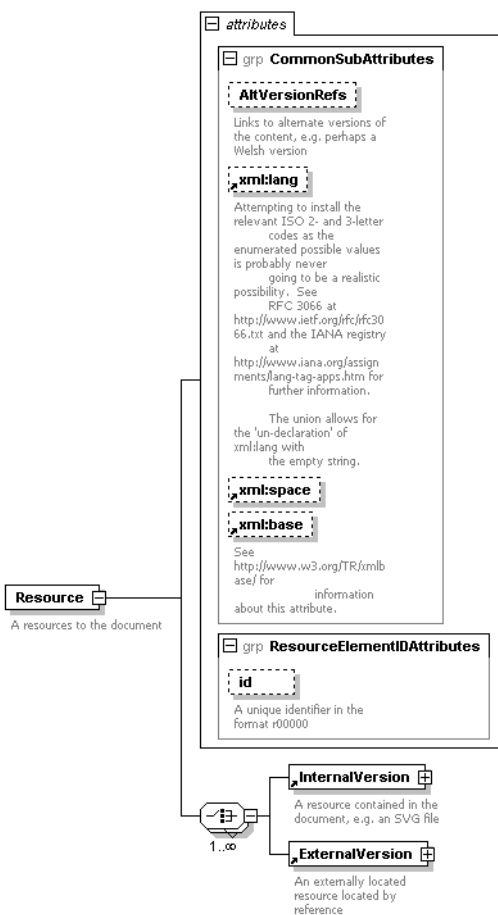
A unique identifier for the resource. The format of this identifier should be rxxxxx, where rxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, r00010, r01353.

### Example code

```
<Resources>
  <Resource id="r00000">
    <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_001.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
  </Resource>
  <Resource id="r00001">
    <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_002.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
  </Resource>
  <Resource id="r00002">
    <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_003.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
  </Resource>
  <Resource id="r00003">
    <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_004.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
  </Resource>
  <Resource id="r00004">
    <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_005.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
  </Resource>
</Resources>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1153

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties	content	complex				
children	<b>InternalVersion ExternalVersion</b>					
used by	elements	<b>ResourceGroup Resources</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Resource"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A resources to the document&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="InternalVersion"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ExternalVersion"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="ResourceElementIDAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

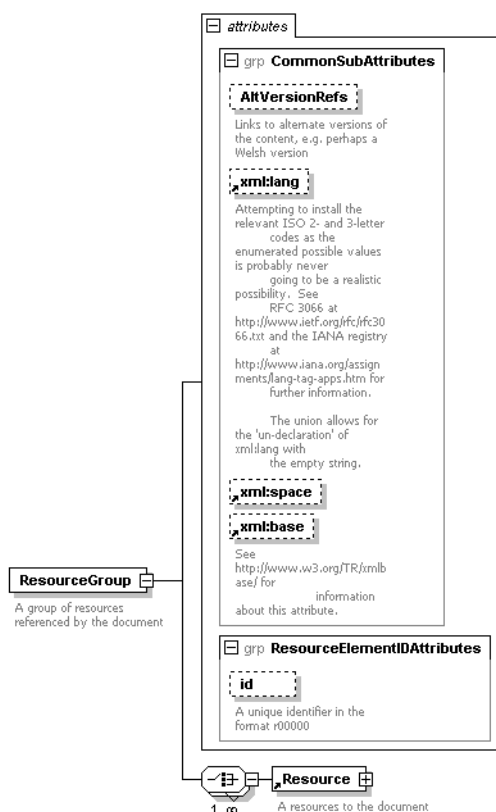
## ResourceGroup

A group of resources.

### id

A unique identifier for the resource group. The format of this identifier should be rxxxxx, where rxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, r00010, r01353.

diagram



namespace `http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation`

properties content complex

children **Resource**

used by element **Resources**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			

source

```

<xsd:element name="ResourceGroup">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A group of resources referenced by the document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <xsd:element ref="Resource"/>
    </xsd:choice>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="ResourceElementIDAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## Resources

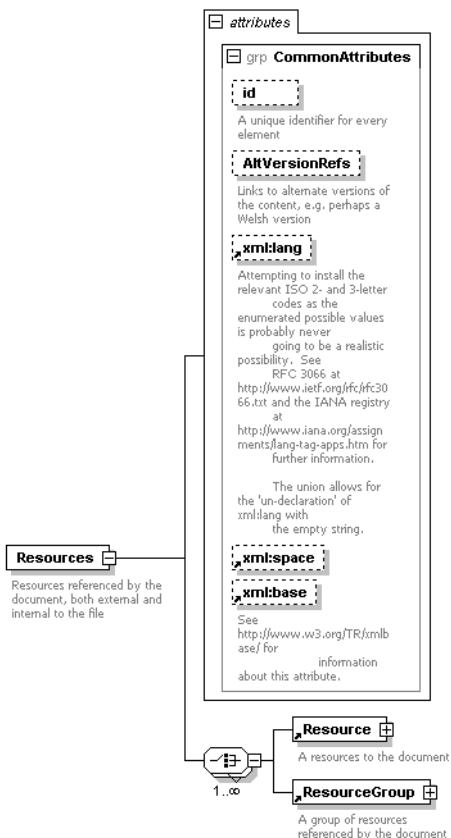
A container for resources used by the document.

### Example code

```
<Resources>
  <Resource id="r00000">
    <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_001.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
  </Resource>
  <Resource id="r00001">
    <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_002.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
  </Resource>
  <Resource id="r00002">
    <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_003.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
  </Resource>
  <Resource id="r00003">
    <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_004.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
  </Resource>
  <Resource id="r00004">
    <ExternalVersion URI="uksi_20031153_en_005.TIF" Format="tiff"/>
  </Resource>
</Resources>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1153

diagram



namespace	<a href="http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation">http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation</a>		
properties	content	complex	
children	<b>Resource ResourceGroup</b>		
used by	element	<b>Legislation</b>	

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="Resources"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Resources referenced by the document, both external and internal to the file&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Resource"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="ResourceGroup"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

XMLcontent

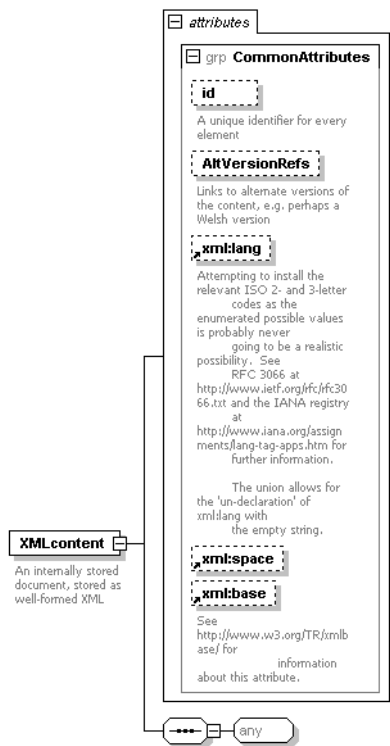
Allows for a resource stored internally within the document to be stored as XML. The contents of this element are **not** parsed (they use the schema *skip* functionality). Therefore, any well-formed XML fragment can be embedded.

It is expected that most resources stored using this approach *will* use a recognised namespace. The following is a list of suggested namespaces that would generally be accepted:

- MathML
- SVG
- XSL:FO
- XHTML

It is expected that implementations will provide functionality that will, as a minimum, provide a mechanism for handling these namespaces as standard.

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content	complex				
used by	element	InternalVersion				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					

```
source <xsd:element name="XMLcontent">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>An internally stored document, stored as well-formed XML</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:any processContents="skip"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```



## BlockAmendment

This defines an amendment to another document – normally another item of legislation. It describes those amendments that are display (or block) in nature. Note that inline amendments are not marked up.

Due to the variable nature of the formatting in legislation the context of the amendment is described using the attributes: TargetClass, TargetSubClass and Context.

The context forms a very important part of the markup within a <BlockAmendment>. It may sometimes be necessary to be very verbose for what appears to be a small amendment.

### Format

Indicates the type of quote to wrap around the structure. The possible values are

- default
- single
- double
- none

### NumberFormat

Defines whether paragraph/provision numbering (top level) should be formatted in a way other than the default. This is basically for legacy data where some documents deviate from the standard approach.

The permissible values are:

- default (numbering will be format as standard)
- emphasis (emphasis will be applied, generally italic)
- strong (strong will be applied, generally bold)

The default value is ‘default’.

### PartialRefs

This contains cross-references to contained elements that form partial amendments. These generally take the form of <Text> elements that append text onto sentences. It is common for this text to consist only of a punctuation character, e.g. a semi-colon may be added to a provision when another provision is inserted afterwards (see the first example). However, if a partial reference is to a <Text> element inside a larger structure then this will not run-on but indicates that the amendment is only amending part of a sentence (see the second example). Cross-referencing allows formatters to correctly display the amendment fragments.

### TargetClass

The class of the target document.

The possible values are:

- primary
- secondary
- unknown

### TargetSubClass

The subclass of the target document.

The possible values are:

- order
- regulation
- rule
- scheme
- resolution
- unknown

### Context

Defines the structural context, that is the high-level structure that applies.

The possible values are:

- contents
- main
- schedule
- unknown

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>Use of computers</Title>
  <Pl>
    <Pnumber>5</Pnumber>
    <Plpara>
      <Text>In section 2(2) (which defines "relevant enactment") at the end insert</Text>
      <BlockAmendment PartialRefs="p10001" TargetClass="primary" TargetSubClass="unknown"
Context="main" Format="default">
        <Text id="p10001">; or</Text>
        <P4>
          <Pnumber>i</Pnumber>
          <P4para>
            <Text>the State Pension Credit Act 2002</Text>
          </P4para>
        </P4>
      </BlockAmendment>
    <AppendText>.</AppendText>
  </Plpara>
</Pl>
</Plgroup>
```

### Example image

<i>Use of computers</i>	
5	In section 2(2) (which defines “relevant enactment”) at the end insert “; or (i) the State Pension Credit Act 2002”.

## Example code

```
<P3>
  <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
  <P3para>
    <Text>in sub-paragraph (1) for the words from "chargeable to tax under Schedule E by virtue of
section 135 of the Taxes Act" to the end substitute</Text>
    <BlockAmendment PartialRefs="p10000" TargetClass="primary" TargetSubClass="unknown"
Context="schedule" Format="default">
      <P2para>
        <Text id="p10000">chargeable to tax as employment income by virtue of section 476 or section 477
of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003<FootnoteRef Ref="f00006"/>.</Text>
      </P2para>
      <P2para>
        <Text>A payment is not disregarded by virtue of this paragraph if</Text>
      <P3>
        <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
        <P3para>
          <Text>each of the conditions in sub-paragraphs (2) to (5) is met; or</Text>
        </P3para>
      </P3>
      <P3>
        <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
        <P3para>
          <Text>paragraph 17 applies to it.</Text>
        </P3para>
      </P3>
    </P2para>
  </BlockAmendment>
  <AppendText>; and</AppendText>
</P3para>
</P3>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1059

## Example image

**4.—**(1) Amend Part 9 of Schedule 3 (share incentives to be disregarded in the computation of earnings)(b) as follows.

(2) In paragraph 16 (exercise, assignment or release of options acquired before 6th April 1999)—

(a) in sub-paragraph (1) for the words from “chargeable to tax under Schedule E by virtue of section 135 of the Taxes Act” to the end substitute—

“chargeable to tax as employment income by virtue of section 476 or section 477 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003(c).

A payment is not disregarded by virtue of this paragraph if—

- (a) each of the conditions in sub-paragraphs (2) to (5) is met; or
- (b) paragraph 17 applies to it.”; and

(b) in sub-paragraph (4) for “section 136(1) of the Taxes Act” substitute “section 485 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003”.

(3) At the end of Part 9 add—

## Example code

```
<P2>
  <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
  <P2para>
    <Text>In regulation 1(3) of the Decisions and Appeals Regulations (Citation, commencement and
interpretation) for the definition of "out of jurisdiction appeal" there shall be substituted</Text>
    <BlockAmendment TargetClass="secondary" TargetSubClass="regulation" Context="main"
Format="default">
      <P2para>
        <Text>"out of jurisdiction appeal" means an appeal brought against a decision which is specified
in</Text>
        <OrderedList Decoration="parens" Type="alpha">
          <ListItem>
            <Para>
              <Text>Schedule 2 to the Act or a decision prescribed in regulation 27 (decision against
which no appeal lies); or</Text>
            </Para>
          </ListItem>
          <ListItem>
            <Para>
              <Text>paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 7 to the Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act
2000 (appeal to appeal tribunal) or a decision prescribed in regulation 16 of the Housing Benefit and
Council Tax Benefit (Decisions and Appeals) Regulations 2001 (decision against which no appeal
lies);</Text>
            </Para>
          </ListItem>
        </OrderedList>
      </P2para>
    </BlockAmendment>
    <AppendText>.</AppendText>
  </P2para>
</P2>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1050

## Example image

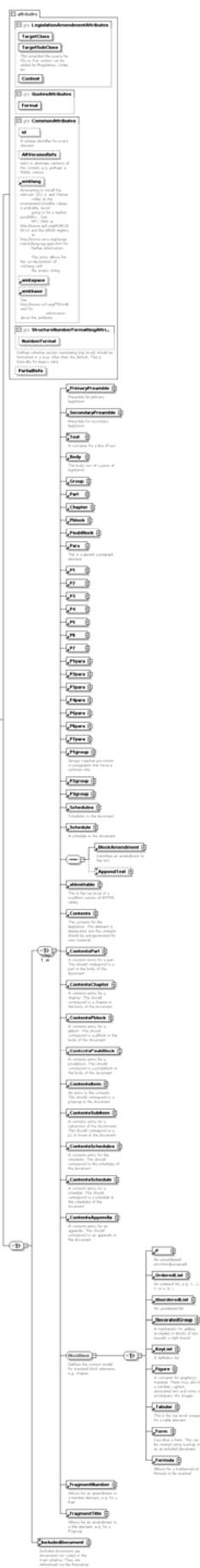
### Amendment of the Decisions and Appeals Regulations

**3.—**(1) In regulation 1(3) of the Decisions and Appeals Regulations (citation, commencement and interpretation) for the definition of “out of jurisdiction appeal” there shall be substituted—

““out of jurisdiction appeal” means an appeal brought against a decision which is specified in—

- (a) Schedule 2 to the Act or a decision prescribed in regulation 27 (decision against which no appeal lies); or
- (b) paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 7 to the Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (appeal to appeal tribunal) or a decision prescribed in regulation 16 of the Housing Benefit and Council Tax Benefit (Decisions and Appeals) Regulations 2001 (decision against which no appeal lies);”.

(2) In regulation 3(9)(a) of the Decisions and Appeals Regulations (revision of decisions)(g) for “was made” there shall be substituted “had effect”.

[illegible]

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **PrimaryPreamble SecondaryPreamble Text Body Group Part Chapter Pblock PsubBlock Para P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6 P7 P1para P2para P3para P4para P5para P6para P7para P1group P2group P3group Schedules Schedule BlockAmendment AppendText table Contents ContentsPart ContentsChapter ContentsPblock ContentsPsubBlock ContentsItem ContentsSubItem ContentsSchedules ContentsSchedule ContentsAppendix P OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula FragmentNumber FragmentTitle IncludedDocument**

used by elements **AppendixBody BlockAmendment Chapter Form Group Part Pblock PsubBlock ScheduleBody**  
 complexType **BlockExtractStructure**  
 group **InlineModel**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	TargetClass	<b>derived by:</b> <b>xsd:string</b>	required		
	TargetSubClass	<b>MinorType</b>	required		
	Context	<b>derived by:</b> <b>xsd:string</b>	required		
	Format	<b>derived by:</b> <b>xsd:string</b>	required		
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	NumberFormat	<b>derived by:</b> <b>xsd:string</b>		default	
	PartialRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			

```

source <xsd:element name="BlockAmendment">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Describes an amendment to the text</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:choice>
      <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:element ref="PrimaryPreamble"/>
        <xsd:element ref="SecondaryPreamble"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Text"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Body"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Group"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Part"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Chapter"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Pblock"/>
        <xsd:element ref="PsubBlock"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Para"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P1"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P2"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P3"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P4"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P5"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P6"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P7"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P1para"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P2para"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P3para"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P4para"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P5para"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P6para"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P7para"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P1group"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P2group"/>
        <xsd:element ref="P3group"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Schedules"/>
        <xsd:element ref="Schedule"/>
      </xsd:choice>
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="BlockAmendment"/>
        <xsd:element ref="AppendText" minOccurs="0"/>
      </xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="xhtml:table"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Contents"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsPart"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsChapter"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsPblock"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsPsubBlock"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsItem"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsSubItem"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsSchedules"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsSchedule"/>
      <xsd:element ref="ContentsAppendix"/>
      <xsd:group ref="BlockBasic"/>
      <xsd:element ref="FragmentNumber"/>
      <xsd:element ref="FragmentTitle"/>
    </xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element ref="IncludedDocument"/>
  </xsd:choice>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="LegislationAmendmentAttributes"/>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="QuotesAttributes"/>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="StructureNumberFormattingAttributes"/>
  <xsd:attribute name="PartialRefs" type="xsd:IDREFS"/>
</xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## FragmentNumber

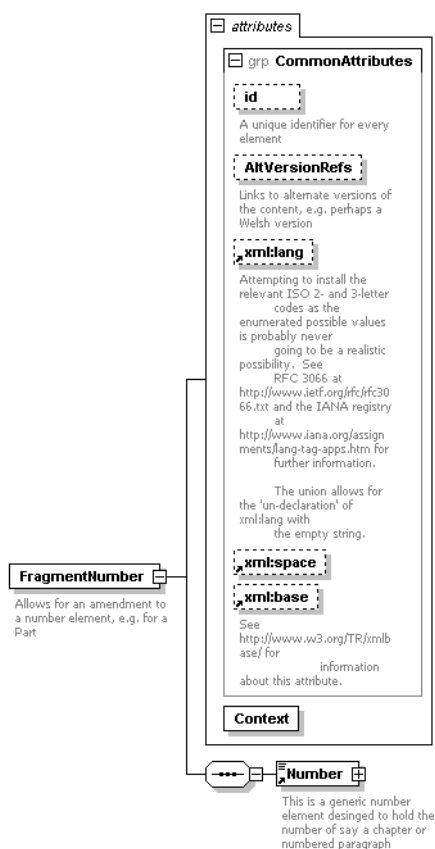
Allows for just a number to be part of a <BlockAmendment>. The Context attribute describes the context to a lower level of granularity than that described on the <BlockAmendment> element. This allows for accurate control and rendering of the content.

### Context

The possible values for this attribute are:

- Part
- Chapter
- Pblock
- PsubBlock
- Schedule
- Footnote

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Number**

used by element **BlockAmendment**



attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	Context	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	required		
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="FragmentNumber"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Allows for an amendment to a number element, e.g. for a Part&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Number"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Context" use="required"&gt;       &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;         &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="Group"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="Part"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="Chapter"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="Pblock"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="PsubBlock"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="Schedule"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="Footnote"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;       &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## FragmentTitle

Allows for just a title to be part of a <BlockAmendment>. The Context attribute describes the context to a lower level of granularity than that described on the <BlockAmendment> element. This allows for accurate control and rendering of the content.

### Context

The possible values for this attribute are:

- P1group
- P2group
- P3group
- Part
- Chapter
- Pblock
- PsubBlock
- Schedule
- Figure
- Tabular

### Example code

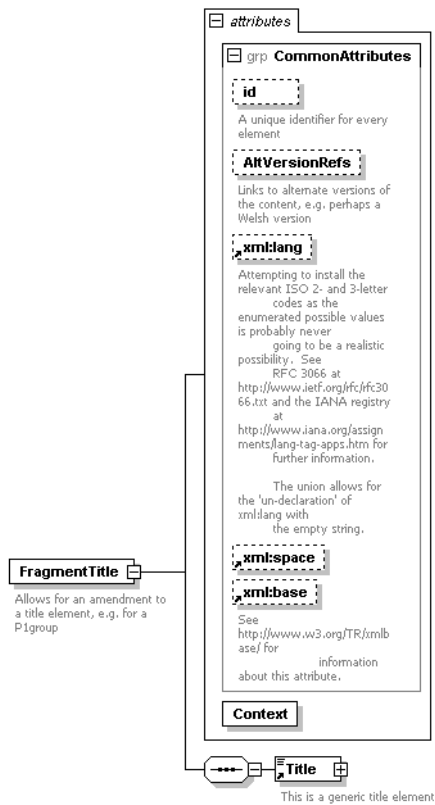
```
<P3>
  <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
  <P3para>
    <Text>for the heading to Part 1 of the Schedule, substitute the following heading—</Text>
    <BlockAmendment Context="unknown" TargetSubClass="unknown" Format="double" TargetClass="unknown">
      <FragmentTitle Context="Part">
        <Title>Pupils in the fourth key stage</Title>
      </FragmentTitle>
    </BlockAmendment>
    <AppendText>;</AppendText>
  </P3para>
</P3>
```

### Example image

(b) for the heading to Part 1 of the Schedule, substitute the following heading—

“Pupils in the fourth key stage”;

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content	complex				
children	Title					
used by	element	BlockAmendment				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	Context	derived by: xsd:string		required		

```
source <xsd:element name="FragmentTitle">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Allows for an amendment to a title element, e.g. for a P1group</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="Title"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="Context" use="required">
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
          <xsd:enumeration value="P1group"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="P2group"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="P3group"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="Group"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="Part"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="Chapter"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="Pblock"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="PsubBlock"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="Schedule"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="Figure"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="Tabular"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## BlockExtract

Describes a block of material quoted (extracted) from another document.

The extracted content can be either from another legislation document or from other non-legislation documents. The legislation content should be marked up, where possible, using the schema. The non-legislation content should be treated as an included document and use the <IncludedDocument> element.

### Format

Indicates the type of quote to wrap around the structure. The possible values are

- default
- single
- double
- none

### NumberFormat

Defines whether paragraph/provision numbering (top level) should be formatted in a way other than the default. This is basically for legacy data where some documents deviate from the standard approach.

The permissible values are:

- default (numbering will be format as standard)
- emphasis (emphasis will be applied, generally italic)
- strong (strong will be applied, generally bold)

The default value is 'default'.

### SourceClass

Defines the class of document that the extract has been taken from. The possible values are:

- primary (for items being described as primary legislation)
- secondary (for items being described as secondary legislation)
- unknown (for all other items)

### SourceSubClass

Defines the subclass of document that the extract has been taken from. This attribute is only applicable for legislation extracts. For all other document types the value should be 'unknown'. The possible values are:

- order
- regulation
- rule
- scheme
- resolution

- unknown

### Context

Defines the section of the document from which the extract has been taken. This attribute is only applicable for legislation extracts. For all other document types the value should be 'unknown'. The possible values are:

- main
- schedule
- unknown

## Example code

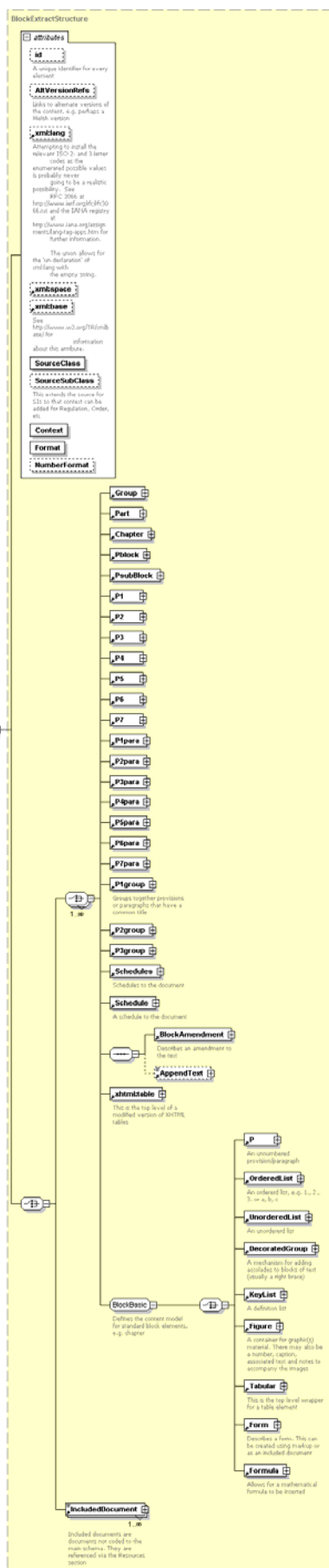
```

<ExplanatoryNotes>
  <Title>Explanatory Note</Title>
  <Comment>
    <Para>
      <Text>(This note is not part of the Regulations)</Text>
    </Para>
  </Comment>
  <P>
    <Text>These Regulations amend the Education (Teachers) Regulations 1993 ("the principal
Regulations").</Text>
  </P>
  <P>
    <Text>They require local education authorities, the governing bodies of schools and further
education institutions and the proprietors of independent schools to take such steps as are
reasonably practicable to prevent a person from providing services falling within section 218(6B) of
the Education Reform Act 1988 in certain circumstances. Those circumstances are where the person
providing the services, although not employed by those bodies or persons in relevant employment, is,
on medical grounds or on grounds of misconduct, the subject of a direction given by the Secretary of
State under regulation 10 of the principal Regulations and the effect of the direction would be to
prevent the person from being so employed. <Emphasis>(regulation 3(4)).</Emphasis>
  </Text>
  </P>
  <P>
    <Text>The services referred to in section 218(6B) of the Education Reform Act 1988 are</Text>
    <BlockExtract SourceClass="primary" Context="main" Format="default">
      <P2para>
        <Text>services provided in relation to the school or institution or persons attending it which-
</Text>
      <P3>
        <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
        <P3para>
          <Text>are provided by whatever means and whether under contract or otherwise, and</Text>
        </P3para>
      </P3>
      <P3>
        <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
        <P3para>
          <Text>bring the persons providing them regularly into contact with persons who have not
attained the age of nineteen years</Text>
        </P3para>
      </P3>
    </P2para>
  </BlockExtract>
  <AppendText></AppendText>
</P>
<P>
  <Text>These Regulations also extend the definition of employment for the purposes of Parts III and
IV of the principal Regulations to cover employment as teachers otherwise than under contracts of
employment <Emphasis>(regulations 3(1) to (3) and 4)</Emphasis>. They also extend the requirements
for reporting misconduct accordingly <Emphasis>(regulation 3(5)).</Emphasis>
  </Text>
</P>
<P>
  <Text>These changes take account of amendments made to section 218 of the Education Reform Act 1988
by section 49 of the Education Act 1997.</Text>
</P>
</ExplanatoryNotes>

```

Ref: UKSI 1998 1584

BlockExtract





namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	<b>BlockExtractStructure</b>				
properties	content complex				
children	<b>Group Part Chapter Pblock PsubBlock P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6 P7 P1para P2para P3para P4para P5para P6para P7para P1group P2group P3group Schedules Schedule BlockAmendment AppendText table P OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula IncludedDocument</b>				
used by	group <b>InlineModel</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	SourceClass	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	required		
	SourceSubClass	<b>MinorType</b>	optional		
	Context	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	required		
	Format	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	required		
source	NumberFormat	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>		default	
	<b>&lt;xsd:element name="BlockExtract" type="BlockExtractStructure"/&gt;</b>				

### InlineExtract

Inline extract describes material quoted (extracted) from another document.

The extracted content can be either from another legislation document or from other non-legislation documents. The legislation content should be marked up, where possible, using the schema. The non-legislation content should be treated as an included document and use the <IncludedDocument> element.

### SourceClass

Defines the class of document that the extract has been taken from. The possible values are:

- primary (for items being described as primary legislation)
- secondary (for items being described as secondary legislation)
- unknown (for all other items)

### SourceSubClass

Defines the subclass of document that the extract has been taken from. This attribute is only applicable for legislation extracts. For all other document types the value should be 'unknown'. The possible values are:

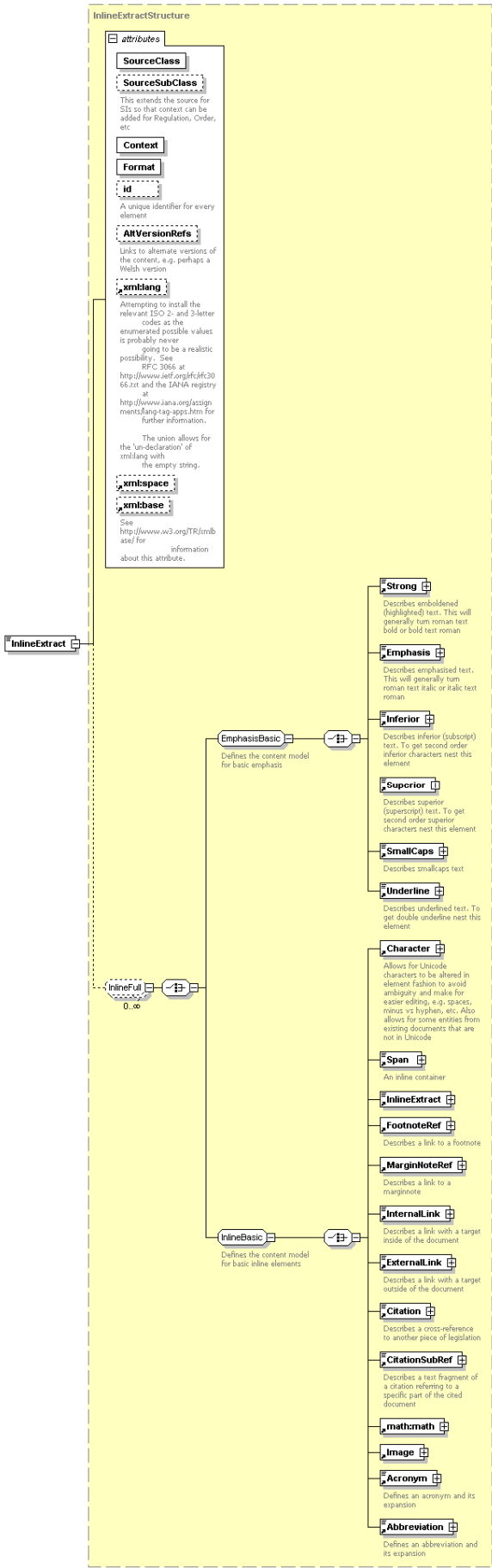
- order
- regulation
- rule
- scheme
- resolution
- unknown

### Context

Defines the section of the document from which the extract has been taken. This attribute is only applicable for legislation extracts. For all other document types the value should be 'unknown'. The possible values are:

- main
- schedule
- unknown

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineExtractStructure				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	group	InlineBasic			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	SourceClass	derived by: xsd:string	required		
	SourceSubClass	MinorType	optional		
	Context	derived by: xsd:string	required		
	Format	derived by: xsd:string	required		
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<xsd:element name="InlineExtract" type="InlineExtractStructure"/>				

## Form

Mark up of forms uses one of two approaches: schema mark-up, or an included document. If created as an included document it could be XHTML, if the forms are simple, or PDF, SVG or any other image format.

It is suggested that optimally included documents should be held using `<XMLcontent>`. This will allow the document to be manipulated using standard XML methods. It also gives access to the text of the document and can allow for the entire document to be described without reference to external objects.

For instances where a form has a title (and possibly subtitles) these can be held as mark-up whether using mark-up or included documents for the body of the form. This has advantages in the situation where each page of a form is stored as an image – it means that the title to the entire form does not need to be included on the image of the first page of the form.

Additionally, where an included document is used for a form there may be instances where footnotes to the form are needed. These can be done using the `<FootnoteRef>` element, which provides a mechanism to do so.

## Orientation

Indicates the rotation of the figure to the surrounding context. The possible values are:

- portrait
- landscape

### Example code

```

<Form>
  <Tabular Orientation="portrait">
    <table cols="3" fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-left-style="solid" fo:border-right-
style="solid" fo:border-top-style="solid" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
      <col width="55%"/>
      <col width="15%"/>
      <col width="30%"/>
      <tbody>
        <tr>
          <td height="2em">Cattle Passport</td>
          <td height="2em" colspan="3" fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-left-style="solid"
fo:border-right-style="solid">Ear tag number</td>
        </tr>
        <tr>
          <td height="2em" align="center" valign="bottom" rowspan="1" colspan="3" fo:border-bottom-
style="solid">Part I</td>
        </tr>
        <tr>
          <th>
            <ukl:Strong>A: Holding details</ukl:Strong>
          </th>
          <th colspan="2">
            <ukl:Strong>B: Animal details</ukl:Strong>
          </th>
        </tr>
        <tr>
          <td>CPHH Number</td>
          <td colspan="2">Breed</td>
        </tr>
        <tr>
          <td/>
          <td>Sex</td>
          <td>Date of birth</td>
        </tr>
        <tr>
          <td height="5em">Name and address</td>
          <td height="5em" colspan="2">Identity of dam</td>
        </tr>
      </tbody>
    </table>
  </Tabular>
</Form>
<Part>
  <Number>Part II</Number>
  <P>
    <Text>It is the responsibility of the seller and the buyer to ensure that the animal's passport ear
tag number and the animal's ear tag are the same</Text>
  </P>
  <Form>
    <IncludedDocument ResourceRef="r00001"/>
  </Form>
  <Form>
    <IncludedDocument ResourceRef="r00001"/>
  </Form>
  <Form>
    <IncludedDocument ResourceRef="r00001"/>
  </Form>
  <Form>
    <IncludedDocument ResourceRef="r00001"/>
  </Form>
</Part>

```

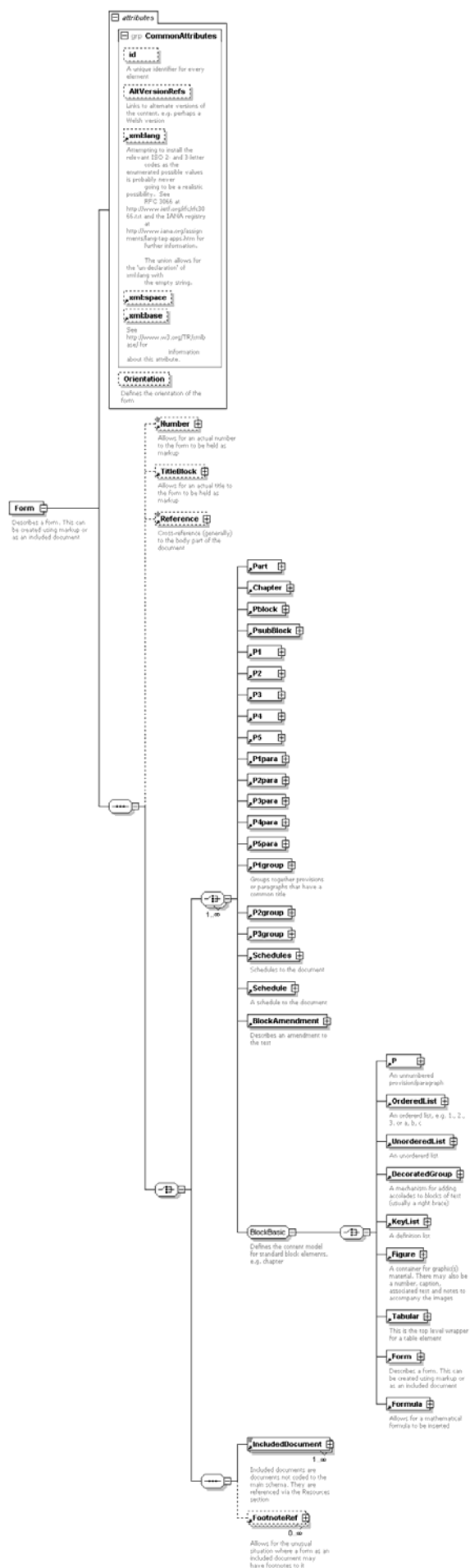
Ref: SI 1996 1686

## Example image

SCHEDULE				Article 2	
FORM OF CATTLE TRANSPORT					
Cattle Passport			Ear tag number		
Part I					
<b>A: Holding details</b> CPHH Number  Name and address			<b>B: Animal details</b> Breed Sex                      Date of birth Identity of dam		
PART II					
It is the responsibility of the seller and the buyer to ensure that the animal's passport ear tag number and the animal's ear tag are the same					
SELLER'S DETAILS		DETAILS OF MARKET		BUYER'S DETAILS	
Date of movement	Lot number	Name or official stamp	Date arrived on holding	Full postal address where the animal is kept	
Signature of seller	CC number		Received by (Signature)		
	Date animal traded		County Parish Holding Herd number		
	Signature of Market Official		Name of keeper		
SELLER'S DETAILS		DETAILS OF MARKET		BUYER'S DETAILS	
Date of movement	Lot number	Name or official stamp	Date arrived on holding	Full postal address where the animal is kept	
Signature of seller	CC number		Received by (Signature)		
	Date animal traded		County Parish Holding Herd number		
	Signature of Market Official		Name of keeper		

## Example code

diagram





namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation									
properties	content	complex								
children	Number TitleBlock Reference Part Chapter Pblock PsubBlock P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P1para P2para P3para P4para P5para P1group P2group P3group Schedules Schedule BlockAmendment P OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula IncludedDocument FootnoteRef									
used by	elements	AbstractBody AppendixBody Chapter Group Part Pblock PsubBlock ScheduleBody								
	groups	BlockBasic BlockSection InlineModel ParaBasic								
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default			Fixed			
	id	derived by: xsd:ID								
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS								
	lang									
	space									
	base									
	Orientation	derived by: xsd:string								

```
source <xsd:element name="Form">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Describes a form. This can be created using markup or as an included
document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="Number" minOccurs="0">
        <xsd:annotation>
          <xsd:documentation>Allows for an actual number to the form to be held as
markup</xsd:documentation>
        </xsd:annotation>
      </xsd:element>
      <xsd:element ref="TitleBlock" minOccurs="0">
        <xsd:annotation>
          <xsd:documentation>Allows for an actual title to the form to be held as markup</xsd:documentation>
        </xsd:annotation>
      </xsd:element>
      <xsd:element ref="Reference" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:choice>
        <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xsd:element ref="Part"/>
          <xsd:element ref="Chapter"/>
          <xsd:element ref="Pblock"/>
          <xsd:element ref="PsubBlock"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P1"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P2"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P3"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P4"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P5"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P1para"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P2para"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P3para"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P4para"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P5para"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P1group"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P2group"/>
          <xsd:element ref="P3group"/>
          <xsd:element ref="Schedules"/>
          <xsd:element ref="Schedule"/>
          <xsd:element ref="BlockAmendment"/>
          <xsd:group ref="BlockBasic"/>
        </xsd:choice>
      </xsd:choice>
      <xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="IncludedDocument" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="FootnoteRef" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xsd:annotation>
            <xsd:documentation>Allows for the unusual situation where a form as an included document may
have footnotes to it</xsd:documentation>
          </xsd:annotation>
        </xsd:element>
      </xsd:sequence>
    </xsd:choice>
  </xsd:sequence>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  <xsd:attribute name="Orientation">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>Defines the orientation of the form</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="portrait"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="landscape"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>
</xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## Citation

Citations allow for other documents that are cited from within the document to be marked-up. This is usually to other UK legislation but it can be to other documents, such as European legislation/documents.

Sometimes an abbreviated reference for the citation is produced as a footnote or side note in the printed publication, e.g. SI 2002/0001.

### id

This is a unique identifier for the citation. The format of this identifier should be cxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. As examples: c00010, c01353.

### Class

This is the class of document being cited. The suggested values for this attribute are:

Attribute value	Explanation
ukpga	UK Public General Act
ukla	UK Local Act
ukcm	UK Church Measure
sa	Scottish Act
nia	Northern Ireland Act
uksi	UK Statutory Instrument
ukdsi	UK Draft Statutory Instrument
ssi	Scottish Statutory Instrument
sdsi	Scottish Draft Statutory Instrument
wsdi	Welsh Statutory Instrument
wdsi	Welsh Draft Statutory Instrument
nistr	Northern Ireland Statutory Rule
nidsr	Northern Ireland Draft Statutory Rule
ec	EC Regulation
eec	EEC Regulation

## Locator

For those documents that exist at a known location, i.e. URI this attribute may be used to give the address.

### DOI

This is the DOI (Digital Object Identifier) of the target document.

### Year

The calendar year associated with the target document

### Number

The number associated with the target document.

### AlternativeNumber

The target may have an alternative number. This attribute allows for a reference to that. For example an Order that applies to Northern Ireland would have an alternative number of the format 'NI 11'. It is suggested that the values used correspond to the <ukm:AlternativeNumber> values.

Alternatively for early primary legislation (pre-1963) this may hold the regnal year of the legislation as calendar year and number may not explicitly identify an exact document as it is possible for two documents in the same year to have the same number.

### Example code

```
<Footnote id="f00002">
  <FootnoteText>
    <Para>
      <Text>
        <Citation id="c00002" Class="ukpga" Year="1965" Number="0025">1965 c. 25</Citation>. The
        functions of the Minister of Transport were transferred to the Scottish Ministers by virtue of
        section 53 of the Scotland Act 1998</Text>
      </Para>
    </FootnoteText>
  </Footnote>
```

Ref: SI 1999 3320

### Example code

```
<Plgroup>
  <Title>
    <Citation id="c00002" Class="ukpga" Year="1832" Number="0068">Game (Scotland) Act 1832 (c.
    68)</Citation>
  </Title>
  <Pl>
    <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
    <Plpara>
      <Text>Section 4 of the Game (Scotland) Act 1832 (provisions about trespassers not to apply to
      persons hunting) is repealed.</Text>
    </Plpara>
  </Pl>
</Plgroup>
```

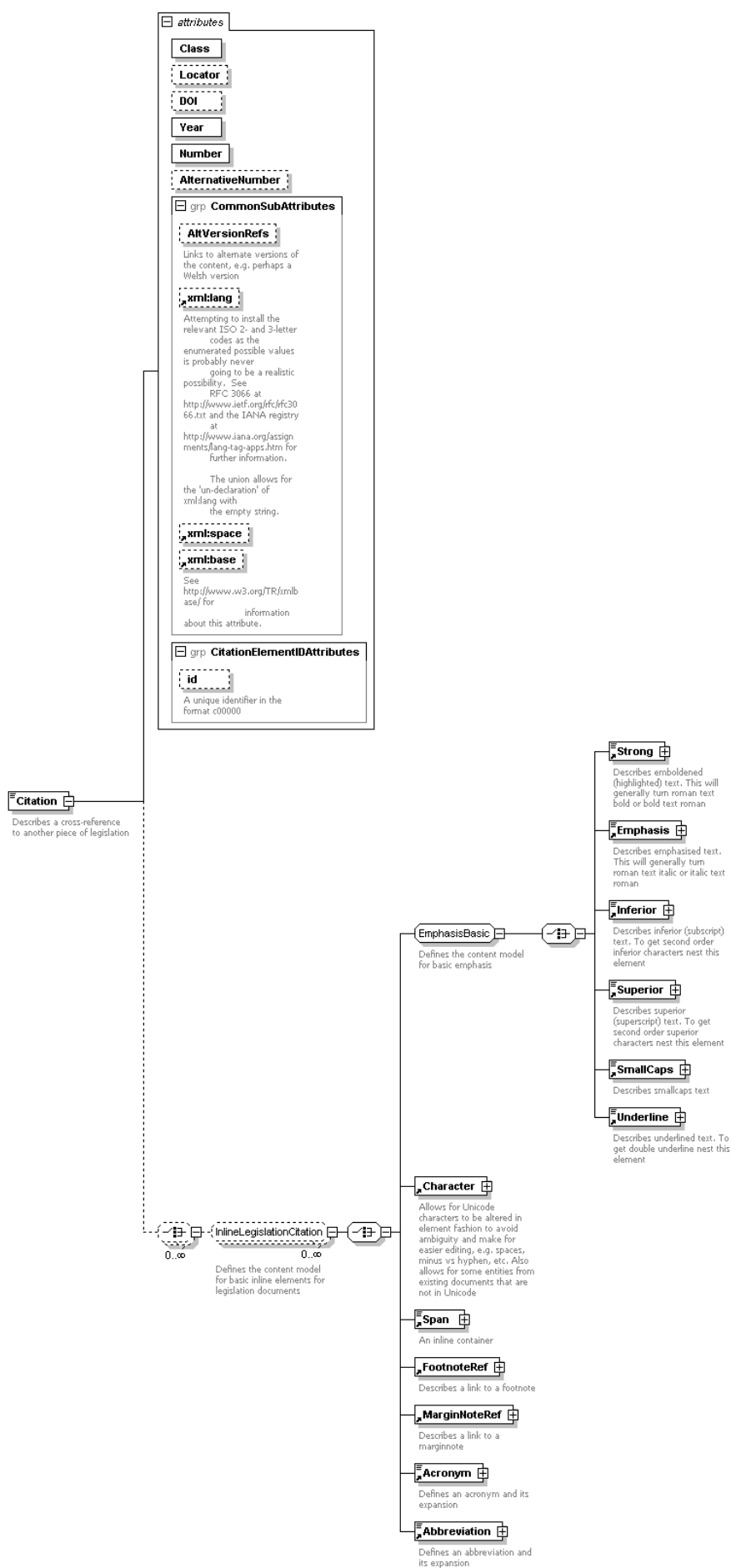
Ref: ASP 2002 0006

**Example code**

```
<P4>
  <Pnumber>ii</Pnumber>
  <P4para>
    <Text>
      <CitationSubRef id="c00136" CitationRef="c00007">Article 26(1) (b)</CitationSubRef> of the
    <Citation id="c00007" Class="uksi" Year="1999" Number="3147" AlternativeNumber="NI 11">Welfare Reform
    and Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 1999 (S.I. 1999/3147 (N.I. 11))</Citation> (corresponding
    provision for Northern Ireland).</Text>
  </P4para>
</P4>
```

Ref: UKPGA 2002 0016

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation</b>				
used by	group	<b>InlineBasic</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Class	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	required		
	Locator	<b>xsd:string</b>			
	DOI	<b>xsd:string</b>			
	Year	<b>xsd:gYear</b>	required		
	Number	<b>xsd:nonNegativeInteger</b>	required		
	AlternativeNumber	<b>xsd:string</b>	optional		
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			

```
source <xsd:element name="Citation">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Describes a cross-reference to another piece of legislation</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>For local secondary cross-references there may not be enough information to
indicate that the target is local. In these cases the non-local version is to be
synonymous.</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType mixed="true">
    <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <xsd:group ref="InlineLegislationCitation" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:choice>
    <xsd:attribute name="Class" use="required">
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
          <xsd:enumeration value="EnglandAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="GreatBritainAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="IrelandAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandAssemblyMeasure"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandParliamentAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandOrderInCouncil"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandStatutoryRule"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="NorthernIrelandStatutoryRuleLocal"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="ScottishAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="ScottishStatutoryInstrument"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="ScottishStatutoryInstrumentLocal"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomChurchMeasure"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomPrivateAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomPublicGeneralAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomLocalAct"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrumentLocal"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="WelshAssemblyMeasure"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="WelshStatutoryInstrument"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="WelshStatutoryInstrumentLocal"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="EuropeanCommission"/>
          <xsd:enumeration value="EuropeanEconomicCommunity"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
    <xsd:attribute name="Locator" type="xsd:string"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="DOI" type="xsd:string"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="Year" type="xsd:gYear" use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="Number" type="xsd:nonNegativeInteger" use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="AlternativeNumber" type="xsd:string" use="optional"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CitationElementIDAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```



## CitationSubRef

Allows for a chain to be created to provide low-level hyperlinking. A <CitationSubRef> contains a reference to a fragment of a document such as a subparagraph. This element in turn links either to another <CitationSubRef> at a higher level in the document (perhaps a paragraph) or to a <Citation> element which will point to an entire document.

### id

A unique identifier for the citation. The format of this identifier should be cxxxxx, where xxxxx is a five digit padded number. For example, c00010, c01353.

## CitationRef

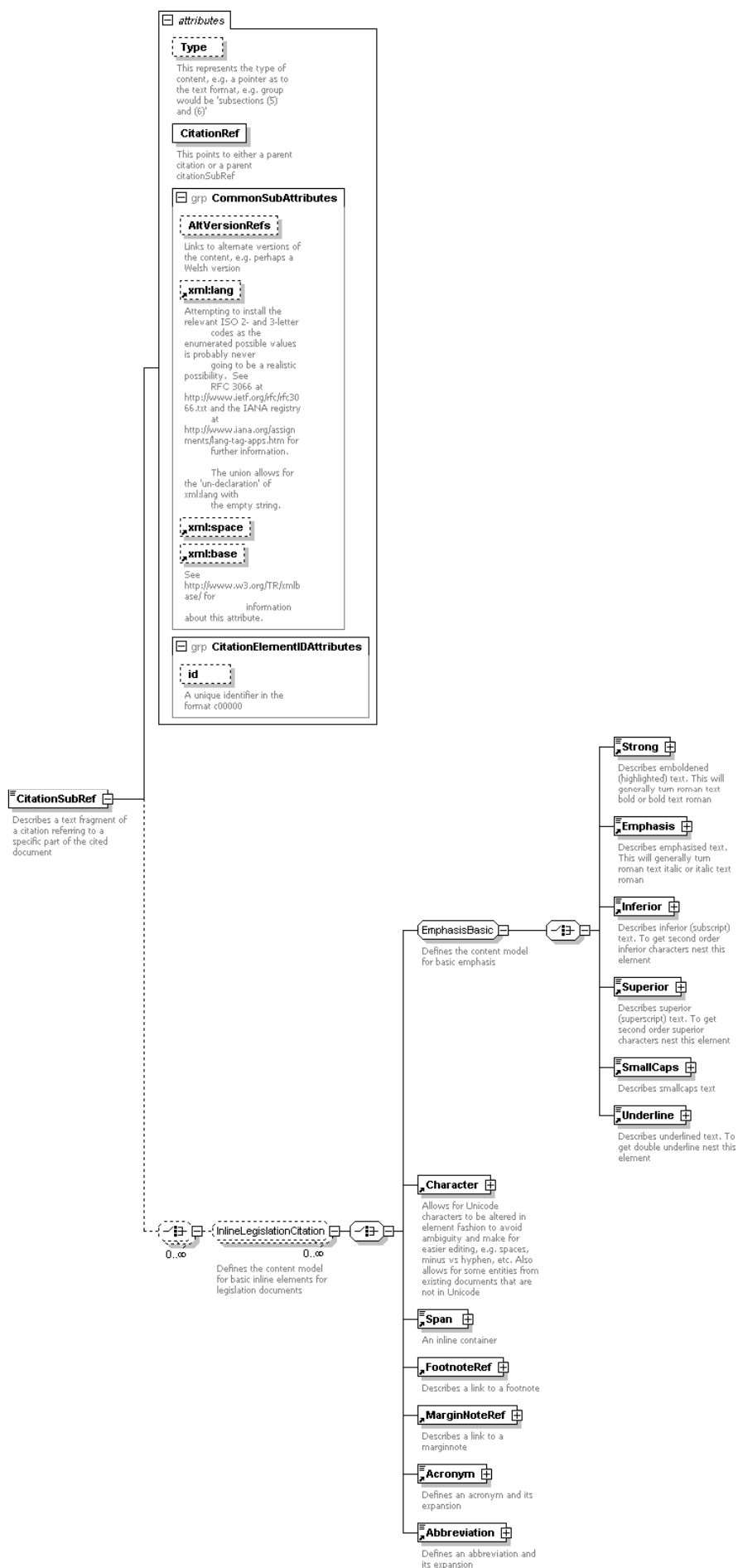
A link to either another <CitationSubRef> element or a <Citation> element.

### Example code

```
<Resolution>
  <Para>
    <Text>Resolution of the House of Commons, dated 4th March 1994, passed in pursuance of the
    <Citation id="c00101" Class="ukpga" Year="1948" Number="36">House of Commons Members' Fund Act
    1948</Citation>, <CitationSubRef id="c00102" CitationRef="c00101">s.3</CitationSubRef> (11 and 12
    Geo.6 c.36) and the <Citation id="c00103" Class="ukpga" Year="1981" Number="0007">House of Commons
    Members' Fund and Parliamentary Pensions Act 1981</Citation>, <CitationSubRef id="c00104"
    CitationRef="c00103">s.2</CitationSubRef> (<Citation id="c00002" Class="ukpga" Year="1981"
    Number="0007">1981 c. 7</Citation>).</Text>
  </Para>
</Resolution>
```

Ref: SI 1994 0631

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content mixed	complex true				
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation</b>					
used by	group	<b>InlineBasic</b>				
attributes	Name Type	Type <b>derived by:</b> <b>xsd:string</b>	Use optional	Default	Fixed	
	CitationRef	<b>xsd:string</b>	required			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="CitationSubRef"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Describes a text fragment of a citation referring to a specific part of the cited document&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineLegislationCitation" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Type" use="optional"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;This represents the type of content, e.g. a pointer as to the text format, e.g. group would be 'subsections (5) and (6)'&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Its purpose is to give a processor some clue as to how to process the content&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;         &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="standard"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="group"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;       &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="CitationRef" type="xsd:string" use="required"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;This points to either a parent citation or a parent citationSubRef&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CitationElementIDAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;!-- Note that ideally this type should be xsd:IDREFS but due to a bug in MSXML4 need to use xsd:string for now --&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## Comment

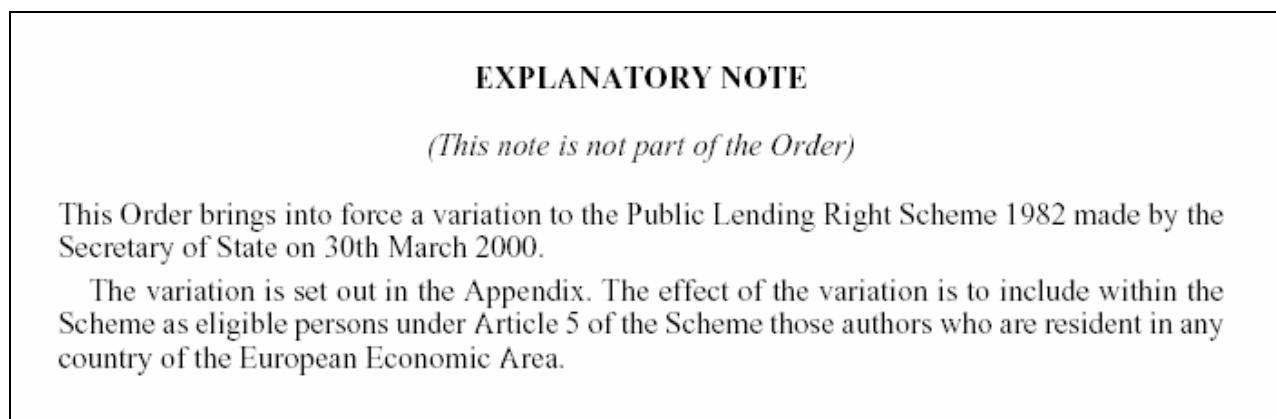
A comment is text that provides information about the document or part of a document.

### Example code

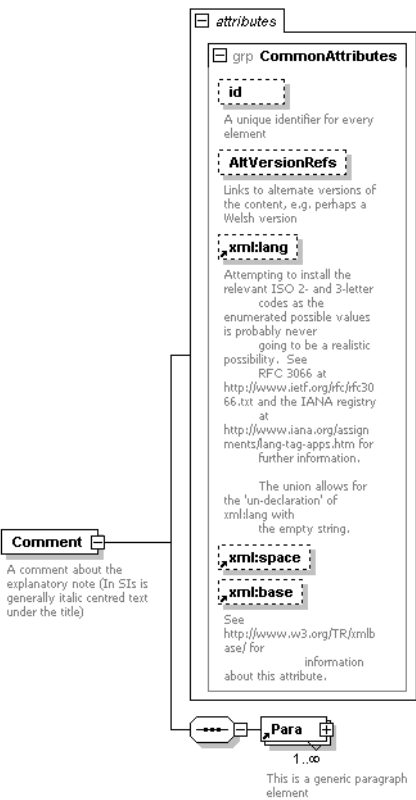
```
<ExplanatoryNotes>
  <Title>Explanatory Note</Title>
  <Comment>
    <Para>
      <Text>(This note is not part of the Order)</Text>
    </Para>
  </Comment>
  <P>
    <Text>This Order brings into force a variation to the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 made by the
Secretary of State on 30th March 2000.</Text>
  </P>
  <P>
    <Text>The variation is set out in the Appendix. The effect of the variation is to include within
the Scheme as eligible persons under Article 5 of the Scheme those authors who are resident in any
country of the European Economic Area.</Text>
  </P>
</ExplanatoryNotes>
```

Ref: SI 2000 0933

### Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content	complex				
children	Para					
used by	elements	EarlierOrders ExplanatoryNotes				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Comment"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A comment about the explanatory note (In SIs is generally italic centred text under the title)&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Para" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## EarlierOrders

A list of commencement orders that apply to this document. This element only applies to secondary legislation.

For a definitive definition of the use of explanatory notes in secondary legislation please see *Statutory Instrument Practice*, 3rd edition (June 2003), section 2.13 (Explanatory Notes)

### Example code

```
<EarlierOrders>
  <Title>Note as to Earlier Commencement Orders</Title>
  <Comment>
    <Para>
      <Text>(This note is not part of the Order)</Text>
    </Para>
  </Comment>
  <P>
    <Text Hanging="indented">The following provisions of the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act
    2002 have been brought into force on the dates shown by commencement orders before the date of this
    Order.</Text>
    <Tabular Orientation="portrait">
      <table cols="3" fo:border-left-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-
      style="solid" fo:border-top-style="solid" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
        <col width="50%"/>
        <col width="25%"/>
        <col width="25%"/>
        <thead fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-top-style="solid">
          <tr>
            <th fo:border-right-style="solid">Provision</th>
            <th fo:border-right-style="solid">Date of Commencement</th>
            <th>S.I. No. </th>
          </tr>
        </thead>
        <tbody>
          <tr>
            <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 54 and paragraphs 2,
            8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 15 and 16 of Schedule 3 (withholding and withdrawal of support) (for the purpose of
            enabling the Secretary of State to exercise the power to make subordinate legislation)</td>
            <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th December 2002</td>
            <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
          </tr>
          <tr>
            <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 54 and Schedule 3
            (withholding and withdrawal of support) (so far as not already in force)</td>
            <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th January 2003</td>
            <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
          </tr>
          <tr>
            <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 55 (late claim for
            asylum: refusal of support)</td>
            <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th January 2003</td>
            <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
          </tr>
          <tr>
            <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 57 (application for
            support: false or incomplete information)</td>
            <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th December 2002</td>
            <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
          </tr>
        </tbody>
      </table>
    </P>
  </EarlierOrders>
```

## Example code

```

<tr>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 80 (removal of
asylum-seeker to third country)</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th December 2002</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 119 (deemed leave on
cancellation of notice)</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th January 2003</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 125 and paragraphs 1,
2, 7, 11 and 13 of Schedule 8 (carriers' liability) (for the purpose of enabling the Secretary of
State to exercise the power to make subordinate legislation under section 32 (2A), 35 (5), (7), (9),
(12) and (13), 37 (5B) and (7) and 40A (4) and (6) of the 1999 Act)</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">14th November 2002</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 125 and paragraph 3
of Schedule 8 (carriers' liability) (for the purpose of enabling the Secretary of State to exercise
the power under section 32A (1), (3) and (4) of the 1999 Act to lay a draft code of practice before
Parliament and bring the code of practice into force)</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">14th November 2002</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 125 and paragraphs 1
to 12 and 16 and 17 of Schedule 8 (carriers' liability) (for the purposes of clandestine entrants
(within the meaning of section 32 (1) of the 1999 Act) who arrive in the United Kingdom concealed in
a vehicle or a rail freight wagon)</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th December 2002</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 125 and paragraphs 13
to 15 of Schedule 8 (carriers' liability)</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th December 2002</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 140 (Immigration
Services Commissioner)</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th January 2003</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 141 (EEA ports:
juxtaposed controls)</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th January 2003</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Sections 152 (arrest by
immigration officer), 153 (power of entry), 154 (power to search for evidence) and 155 (sections 153
and 154:supplemental)</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th January 2003</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 157 (consequential
and incidental provision)</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th January 2003</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
</tr>

```

```

<tr>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">Section 161 and Schedule 9
(repeals), the entries relating to sections 33 (2) (b), 34 (3) (c) and (5), 36 (1), 37 (3) (c), 39,
42 and 43 of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-style="solid">8th December 2002</td>
  <td fo:border-bottom-style="solid">2002/2811</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
</Tabular>
</P>
</EarlierOrders>

```

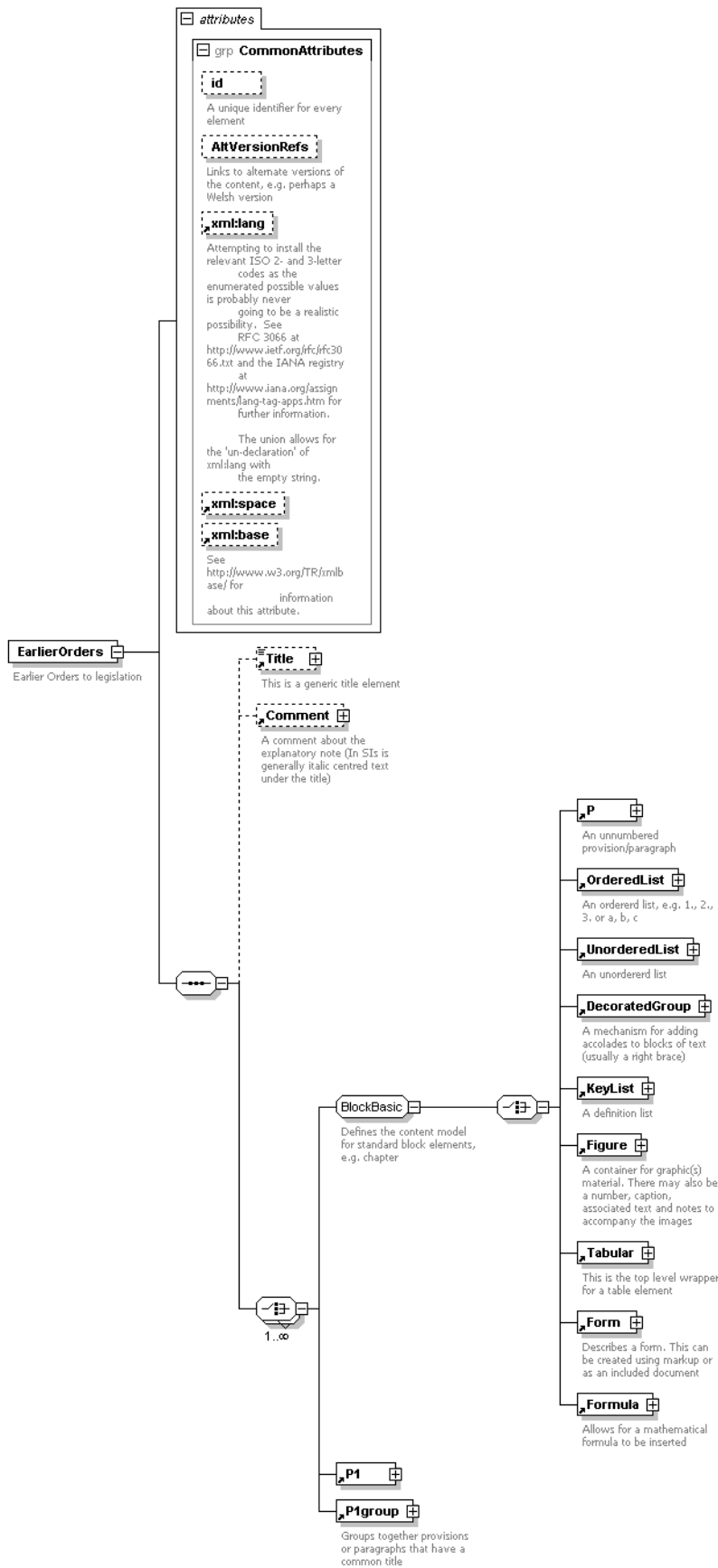
Ref: SI 2003 0001

## Example image

NOTE AS TO EARLIER COMMENCEMENT ORDERS		
<i>(This note is not part of the Order)</i>		
The following provisions of the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 have been brought into force on the dates shown by commencement orders before the date of this Order.		
<i>Provision</i>	<i>Date of Commencement</i>	<i>S.I. No.</i>
Section 54 and paragraphs 2, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 15 and 16 of Schedule 3 (withholding and withdrawal of support) (for the purpose of enabling the Secretary of State to exercise the power to make subordinate legislation)	8th December 2002	2002/2811
Section 54 and Schedule 3 (withholding and withdrawal of support) (so far as not already in force)	8th January 2003	2002/2811
Section 55 (late claim for asylum: refusal of support)	8th January 2003	2002/2811
Section 57 (application for support: false or incomplete information)	8th December 2002	2002/2811
Section 80 (removal of asylum-seeker to third country)	8th December 2002	2002/2811
Section 119 (deemed leave on cancellation of notice)	8th January 2003	2002/2811
Section 125 and paragraphs 1, 2, 7, 11 and 13 of Schedule 8 (carriers' liability) (for the purpose of enabling the Secretary of State to exercise the power to make subordinate legislation under section 32 (2A), 35 (5), (7), (9), (12) and (13), 37 (5B) and (7) and 40A (4) and (6) of the 1999 Act)	14th November 2002	2002/2811
Section 125 and paragraph 3 of Schedule 8 (carriers' liability) (for the purpose of enabling the Secretary of State to exercise the power under section 32A (1), (3) and (4) of the 1999 Act to lay a draft code of practice before Parliament and bring the code of practice into force)	14th November 2002	2002/2811
Section 125 and paragraphs 1 to 12 and 16 and 17 of Schedule 8 (carriers' liability) (for the purposes of clandestine entrants (within the meaning of section 32 (1) of the 1999 Act) who arrive in the United Kingdom concealed in a vehicle or a rail freight wagon)	8th December 2002	2002/2811
Section 125 and paragraphs 13 to 15 of Schedule 8 (carriers' liability)	8th December 2002	2002/2811
Section 140 (Immigration Services Commissioner)	8th January 2003	2002/2811



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>  
properties content complex

children	Title Comment P OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula P1 P1group					
used by	element	Secondary				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="EarlierOrders"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Earlier Orders to legislation&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Comment" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;xsd:group ref="BlockBasic"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P1"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="P1group"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## ExplanatoryNotes

Primary and Secondary legislation can have explanatory notes to help interpret the documents. These notes may or may not be part of the main document. Generally, in the case of Secondary legislation they do form part of the document whilst for Primary legislation they are typically external to the document.

For a definitive definition of the use of explanatory notes in secondary legislation please see *Statutory Instrument Practice*, 3rd edition (June 2003), section 2.13 (Explanatory Notes)

### Example code

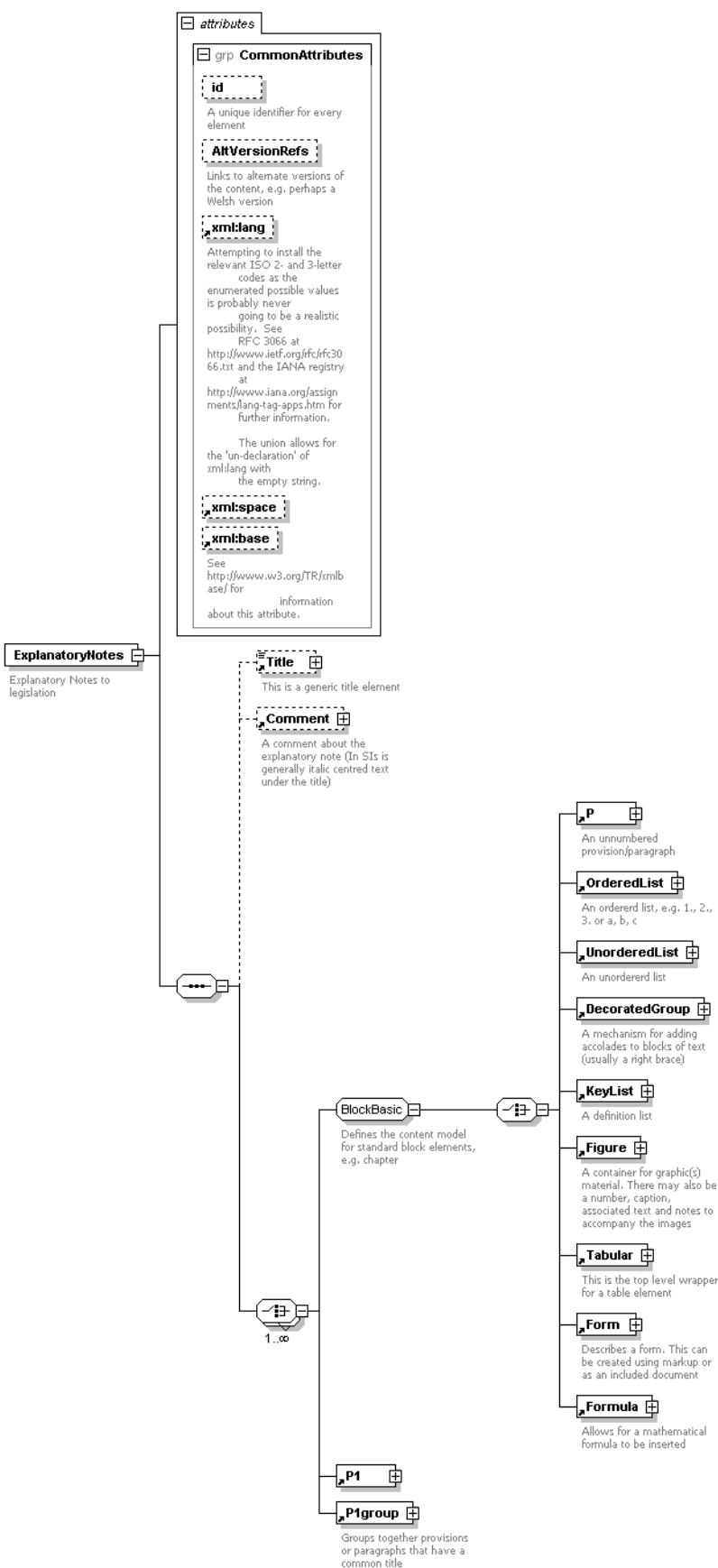
```
<ExplanatoryNotes>
  <Title>Explanatory Note</Title>
  <Comment>
    <Para>
      <Text>(This note is not part of the Order)</Text>
    </Para>
  </Comment>
  <P>
    <Text>This Order brings into force a variation to the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 made by the
Secretary of State on 30th March 2000.</Text>
  </P>
  <P>
    <Text>The variation is set out in the Appendix. The effect of the variation is to include within
the Scheme as eligible persons under Article 5 of the Scheme those authors who are resident in any
country of the European Economic Area.</Text>
  </P>
</ExplanatoryNotes>
```

Ref: SI 2000 0933

### Example image

<p style="text-align: center;"><b>EXPLANATORY NOTE</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>(This note is not part of the Order)</i></p> <p>This Order brings into force a variation to the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 made by the Secretary of State on 30th March 2000.</p> <p>The variation is set out in the Appendix. The effect of the variation is to include within the Scheme as eligible persons under Article 5 of the Scheme those authors who are resident in any country of the European Economic Area.</p>
--

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>  
 properties content complex

children    **Title Comment P**    **OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula P1 P1group**

used by    elements    **Primary Secondary**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

source    <xsd:element name="ExplanatoryNotes">  
          <xsd:annotation>  
            <xsd:documentation>Explanatory Notes to legislation</xsd:documentation>  
          </xsd:annotation>  
          <xsd:complexType>  
            <xsd:sequence>  
              <xsd:element ref="Title" minOccurs="0"/>  
              <xsd:element ref="Comment" minOccurs="0"/>  
              <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">  
                <xsd:group ref="BlockBasic"/>  
                <xsd:element ref="P1"/>  
                <xsd:element ref="P1group"/>  
              </xsd:choice>  
            </xsd:sequence>  
            <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>  
          </xsd:complexType>  
          </xsd:element>

## DecoratedGroup

Accolades are the often very long vertical or horizontal braces that typically occur within tables and are used to 'group' content together by visual presentation.

The element <DecoratedGroup> exists so that the 'grouping' concept is held structurally within the XML markup and the decoration (normally a brace) can then be auto-generated for output.

Usually a decorated group will be made up of two <GroupItem> elements, the first containing the text of the first half of the content and the second one containing the second half of the content.

Sometimes the second half of the content is in an adjacent table cell so grouping of the content is not possible across the cell boundaries. The solution is to use a <GroupItemRef> element instead of <GroupItem>. This uses a Ref attribute to reference an ID on the associated cell.

### Orientation

The Orientation attribute is used to specify the orientation of the accolade. The following table gives the possible values

Attribute value	Explanation
leftToRight	Group item 1 on the left, group item 2 on the right, accolade should be output as normal
topToBottom	Group item 1 on the top, group item 2 on the bottom, accolade should be rotated 90 degrees right
bottomToTop	Group item 1 on the bottom, group item 2 on the top, accolade should be rotated 90 degrees left
rightToLeft	group item 1 on the right, group item 2 on the left, accolade should be flipped from right to left

---

## Example code

```

<Part>
  <Number>Part II</Number>
  <Tabular Orientation="portrait">
    <table cols="2" fo:border-top-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid"
xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
      <col width="80%"/>
      <col width="20%"/>
      <thead fo:border-bottom-style="solid">
        <tr>
          <th rowspan="1" colspan="1">Office</th>
          <th rowspan="1" colspan="1">Salary £</th>
        </tr>
      </thead>
      <tbody>
        <tr>
          <td rowspan="1" colspan="1">
            <DecoratedGroup Decoration="}" Orientation="leftToRight"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">
              <GroupItem>
                <P1>
                  <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
                  <Plpara>
                    <Text>Any of the offices listed at (a) to (g) in Part I above for so long as the holder
is not a member of the Cabinet<Character Name="DotPadding"/>
                    </Text>
                  </Plpara>
                </P1>
                <P1>
                  <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
                  <Plpara>
                    <Text>Minister in charge of a public department of Her Majesty's Government in the United
Kingdom who is not a member of the Cabinet, and whose office is not specified elsewhere in this
Schedule<Character Name="DotPadding"/>
                    </Text>
                  </Plpara>
                </P1>
                <P1>
                  <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
                  <Plpara>
                    <Text>Financial Secretary to the Treasury<Character Name="DotPadding"/>
                    </Text>
                  </Plpara>
                </P1>
              </GroupItem>
              <GroupItemRef Ref="t01001"/>
            </DecoratedGroup>
          </td>
          <td id="t01001" rowspan="1" colspan="1" align="right" valign="middle">24,209-37,047</td>
        </tr>
      </tbody>
    </table>
  </Tabular>
</Part>

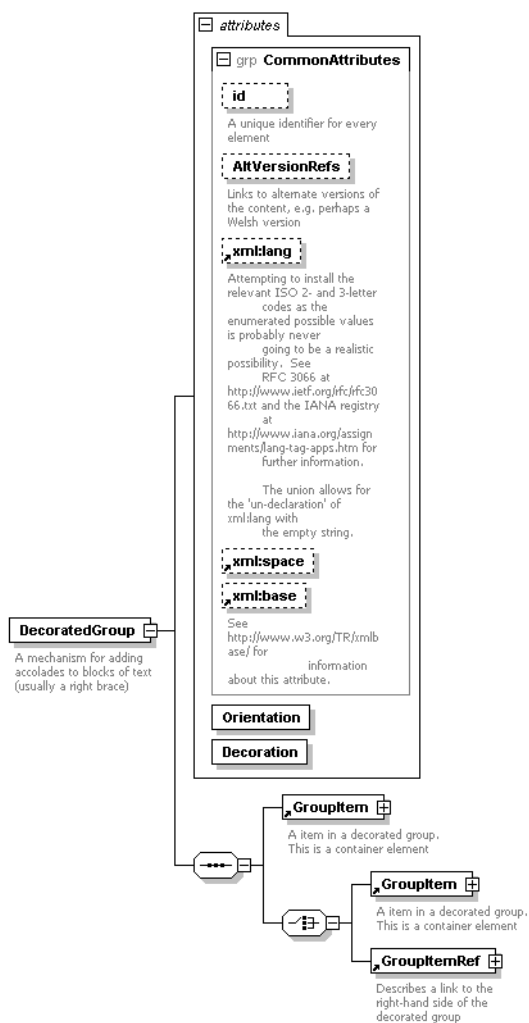
```

Ref: SI 1988 2253

## Example image

Office	Salary £
Prime Minister and First Lord of the Treasury ... ..	46,109
Chancellor of the Exchequer ... ..	
Secretary of State ... ..	
Minister of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food ... ..	41,997
Any of the following offices for so long as the holder is a member of the Cabinet— ... ..	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Lord President of the Council;</li> <li>(b) Lord Privy Seal;</li> <li>(c) Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster;</li> <li>(d) Paymaster General;</li> <li>(e) Chief Secretary to the Treasury;</li> <li>(f) Parliamentary Secretary to the Treasury;</li> <li>(g) Minister of State.</li> </ul>	

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **GroupItem** **GroupItemRef**

used by groups **BlockBasic** **BlockSection** **ParaBasic**



attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	Orientation	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	required		
	Decoration	<b>xsd:string</b>	required		
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="DecoratedGroup"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A mechanism for adding accolades to blocks of text (usually a right brace)&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="GroupItem"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:choice&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="GroupItem"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:element ref="GroupItemRef"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Orientation" use="required"&gt;       &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;         &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="leftToRight"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="topToBottom"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="bottomToTop"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="rightToLeft"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;       &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Decoration" type="xsd:string" use="required"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## Groupltem

An item within a <DecoratedGroup>.

### Example code

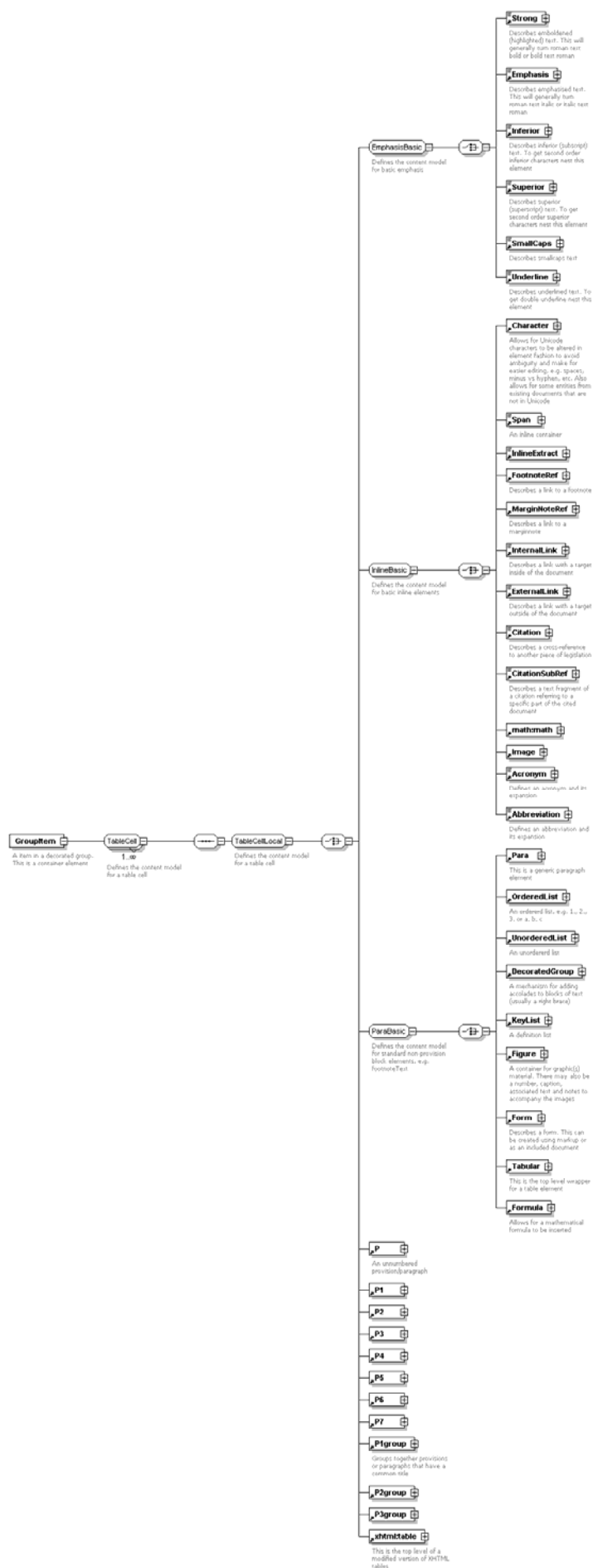
```
<Part>
  <Number>PART II</Number>
  <Tabular Orientation="portrait">
    <table cols="2" fo:border-top-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid"
xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
      <col width="85%"/>
      <col width="15%"/>
      <thead fo:border-bottom-style="solid">
        <tr>
          <th rowspan="1" colspan="1">Office</th>
          <th rowspan="1" colspan="1">Salary £</th>
        </tr>
      </thead>
      <tbody>
        <tr>
          <td rowspan="1" colspan="1">
            <DecoratedGroup Decoration="}" Orientation="leftToRight"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">
              <GroupItem>
                <Pl>
                  <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
                  <Plpara>
                    <Text>Any of the offices listed at (a) to (g) in Part I above for so long as the holder
is not a member of the Cabinet<Character Name="DotPadding"/>
                    </Text>
                  </Plpara>
                </Pl>
                <Pl>
                  <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
                  <Plpara>
                    <Text>Minister in charge of a public department of Her Majesty's Government in the United
Kingdom who is not a member of the Cabinet, and whose office is not specified elsewhere in this
Schedule<Character Name="DotPadding"/>
                    </Text>
                  </Plpara>
                </Pl>
                <Pl>
                  <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
                  <Plpara>
                    <Text>Financial Secretary to the Treasury<Character Name="DotPadding"/>
                    </Text>
                  </Plpara>
                </Pl>
              </GroupItem>
              <GroupItemRef Ref="t01001"/>
            </DecoratedGroup>
          </td>
          <td id="t01001" rowspan="1" colspan="1" align="right" valign="middle">24,209–37,047</td>
        </tr>
      </tbody>
    </table>
  </Tabular>
</Part>
```

Ref: SI 1988 2253

## Example image

<i>Office</i>	<i>Salary £</i>
Prime Minister and First Lord of the Treasury ... ..	46,109
Chancellor of the Exchequer ... ..	
Secretary of State ... ..	
Minister of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food ... ..	41,997
Any of the following offices for so long as the holder is a member of the Cabinet— ... ..	
(a) Lord President of the Council;	
(b) Lord Privy Seal;	
(c) Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster;	
(d) Paymaster General;	
(e) Chief Secretary to the Treasury;	
(f) Parliamentary Secretary to the Treasury;	
(g) Minister of State.	

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation
properties	content complex
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula P P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6 P7 P1group P2group P3group table</b>
used by	elements <b>DecoratedGroup DecoratedGroup</b>
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="GroupItem"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A item in a decorated group. This is a container element&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="TableCell" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>

## GroupItemRef

In those instances where it is not possible to group item together directly this element allows for a reference to the target group to be inserted.

### Ref

An id pointing to the target element.

### Example code

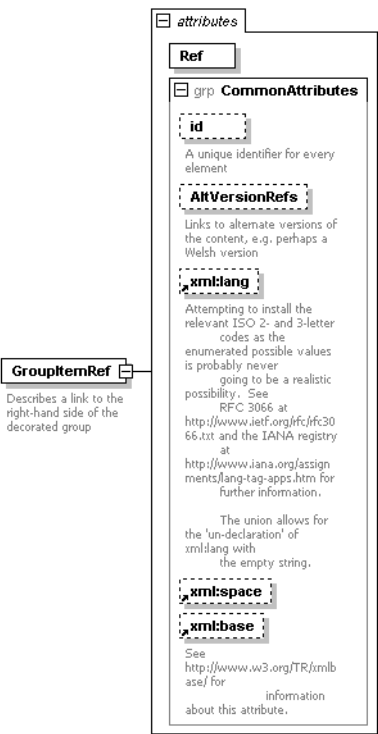
```
<Part>
  <Number>PART II</Number>
  <Tabular Orientation="portrait">
    <table cols="2" fo:border-top-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid"
xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
      <col width="85%"/>
      <col width="15%"/>
      <thead fo:border-bottom-style="solid">
        <tr>
          <th rowspan="1" colspan="1">Office</th>
          <th rowspan="1" colspan="1">Salary £</th>
        </tr>
      </thead>
      <tbody>
        <tr>
          <td rowspan="1" colspan="1">
            <DecoratedGroup Decoration="}" Orientation="leftToRight"
xmlns="http://www.hmso.gov.uk/legislation">
              <GroupItem>
                <Pl>
                  <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
                  <Plpara>
                    <Text>Any of the offices listed at (a) to (g) in Part I above for so long as the holder
is not a member of the Cabinet<Character Name="DotPadding"/>
                    </Text>
                  </Plpara>
                </Pl>
                <Pl>
                  <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
                  <Plpara>
                    <Text>Minister in charge of a public department of Her Majesty's Government in the United
Kingdom who is not a member of the Cabinet, and whose office is not specified elsewhere in this
Schedule<Character Name="DotPadding"/>
                    </Text>
                  </Plpara>
                </Pl>
                <Pl>
                  <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
                  <Plpara>
                    <Text>Financial Secretary to the Treasury<Character Name="DotPadding"/>
                    </Text>
                  </Plpara>
                </Pl>
              </GroupItem>
              <GroupItemRef Ref="t01001"/>
            </DecoratedGroup>
          </td>
          <td id="t01001" rowspan="1" colspan="1" align="right" valign="middle">24,209–37,047</td>
        </tr>
      </tbody>
    </table>
  </Tabular>
</Part>
```

Ref: SI 1988 2253

Example image

Office	Salary £
Prime Minister and First Lord of the Treasury ... ..	46,109
Chancellor of the Exchequer ... ..	
Secretary of State ... ..	
Minister of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food ... ..	41,997
Any of the following offices for so long as the holder is a member of the Cabinet— ... ..	
(a) Lord President of the Council; (b) Lord Privy Seal; (c) Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster; (d) Paymaster General; (e) Chief Secretary to the Treasury; (f) Parliamentary Secretary to the Treasury; (g) Minister of State.	

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content	complex			
used by	element	<b>DecoratedGroup</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Ref	<b>xsd:IDREF</b>	required		
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

```
source <xsd:element name="GroupItemRef">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Describes a link to the right-hand side of the decorated group</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:attribute name="Ref" type="xsd:IDREF" use="required"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```



# Approved

A statement of approval, generally by one or both of the Houses of Parliament. This forms part of the preliminary material of a secondary legislation document.

## Example code

```

<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>2003 No. 562</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Agriculture, England</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Farm Waste Grant (Nitrate Vulnerable Zones) (England) Scheme 2003</Title>
  <Approved>Approved by both Houses of Parliament</Approved>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>6th March 2003</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <LaidDate>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament</Text>
    <DateText>10th March 2003</DateText>
  </LaidDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force</Text>
    <DateText>7th March 2003</DateText>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>The Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred upon her by section 29 of the
        Agriculture Act 1970<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/>, with the approval of the Treasury, hereby makes the
        following Scheme—</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>

```

Ref: SI 2003 0562

## Example image

2003 No. 562

AGRICULTURE, ENGLAND

The Farm Waste Grant (Nitrate Vulnerable Zones)  
(England) Scheme 2003

Approved by both Houses of Parliament

Made - - - - -

6th March 2003

Coming into force - -

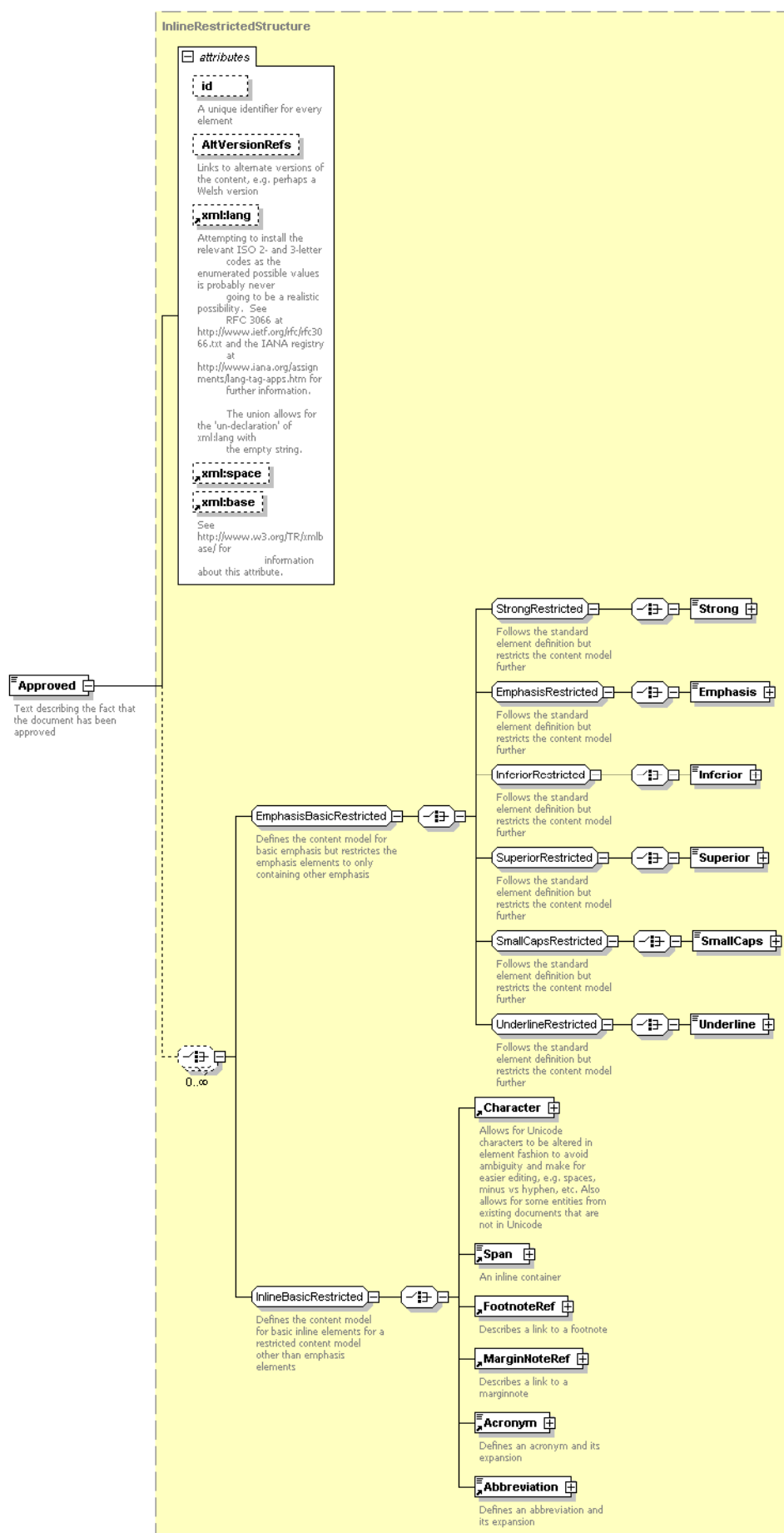
7th March 2003

Laid before Parliament

10th March 2003

The Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred upon her by section 29 of the  
Agriculture Act 1970(a), with the approval of the Treasury, hereby makes the following  
Scheme—

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineRestrictedStructure				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	element	SecondaryPrelims			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Approved" type="InlineRestrictedStructure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Text describing the fact that the document has been approved&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## ComingIntoForce

Describes when the document ‘Comes into Force’ – i.e. becomes law. The entire document may come into force at the same time, in which case this element contains <Text> and <DateText> elements (see the first example below). If, however, different parts of the document come into force at different times then this element will generally consist of a <Text> element followed by several <ComingIntoForceClauses> element. These describe the detail for the various parts of the document (see the second example below).

### Example code

```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>2003 No. 562</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Agriculture, England</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Farm Waste Grant (Nitrate Vulnerable Zones) (England) Scheme 2003</Title>
  <Approved>Approved by both Houses of Parliament</Approved>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>6th March 2003</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <LaidDate>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament</Text>
    <DateText>10th March 2003</DateText>
  </LaidDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force</Text>
    <DateText>7th March 2003</DateText>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>The Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred upon her by section 29 of the
        Agriculture Act 1970<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/>, with the approval of the Treasury, hereby makes the
        following Scheme—</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0562



## Example code

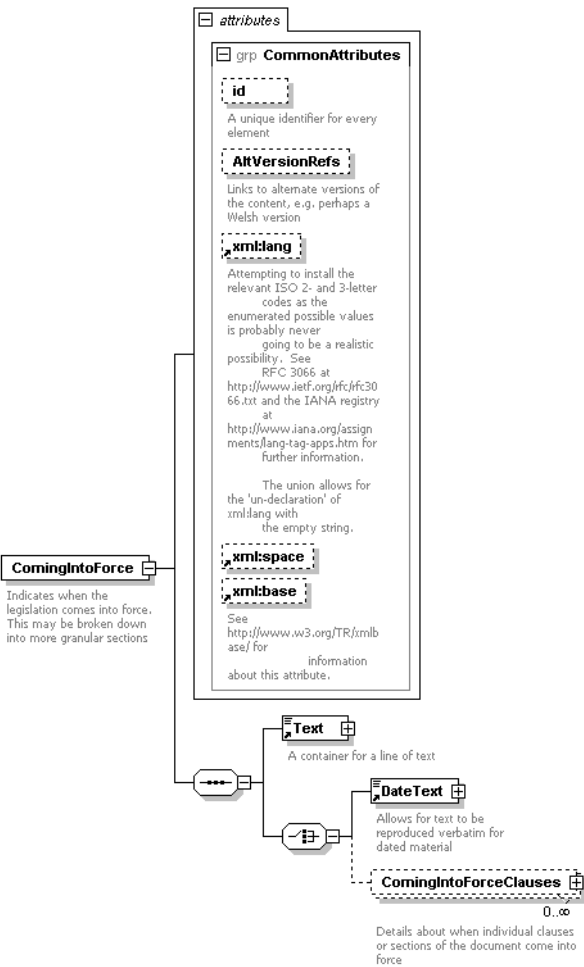
```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>2003 No. 1099</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Road Traffic</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Motor Cycles Etc. (EC Type Approval) (Amendment) Regulations 2003</Title>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>14th April 2003</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <LaidDate>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament</Text>
    <DateText>15th April 2003</DateText>
  </LaidDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force</Text>
    <ComingIntoForceClauses>
      <Text>Regulations 1 and 2(f)</Text>
      <DateText>7th May 2003</DateText>
    </ComingIntoForceClauses>
    <ComingIntoForceClauses>
      <Text>Remainder</Text>
      <DateText>9th November 2003</DateText>
    </ComingIntoForceClauses>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>The Secretary of State for Transport, being a Minister designated<FootnoteRef
Ref="f00001"/> for the purposes of section 2(2) of the European Communities Act 1972<FootnoteRef
Ref="f00002"/> in relation to the regulation of the type, description, construction or equipment of
vehicles and of components of vehicles, and in particular any vehicle type approval scheme, in
exercise of the powers conferred by that section and of all other powers enabling him in that behalf,
hereby makes the following Regulations:</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1099

## Example image

<b>2003 No. 1099</b>	
<b>ROAD TRAFFIC</b>	
<b>The Motor Cycles Etc. (EC Type Approval) (Amendment) Regulations 2003</b>	
<i>Made - - - -</i>	<i>14th April 2003</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>	<i>15th April 2003</i>
<i>Coming into force</i>	
<i>Regulations 1 and 2(f)</i>	<i>7th May 2003</i>
<i>Remainder</i>	<i>9th November 2003</i>

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	content complex				
children	Text DateText ComingIntoForceClauses				
used by	elements	SecondaryPrelims SecondaryPrelims SecondaryPrelims SecondaryPrelims			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

```
source <xsd:element name="ComingIntoForce">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Indicates when the legislation comes into force. This may be broken down into more
granular sections</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="Text"/>
      <xsd:choice>
        <xsd:element ref="DateText"/>
        <xsd:element name="ComingIntoForceClauses" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xsd:annotation>
            <xsd:documentation>Details about when individual clauses or sections of the document come into
force</xsd:documentation>
          </xsd:annotation>
          <xsd:complexType>
            <xsd:sequence>
              <xsd:element ref="Text"/>
              <xsd:element ref="DateText"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
          </xsd:complexType>
        </xsd:element>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```



## ComingIntoForceClauses

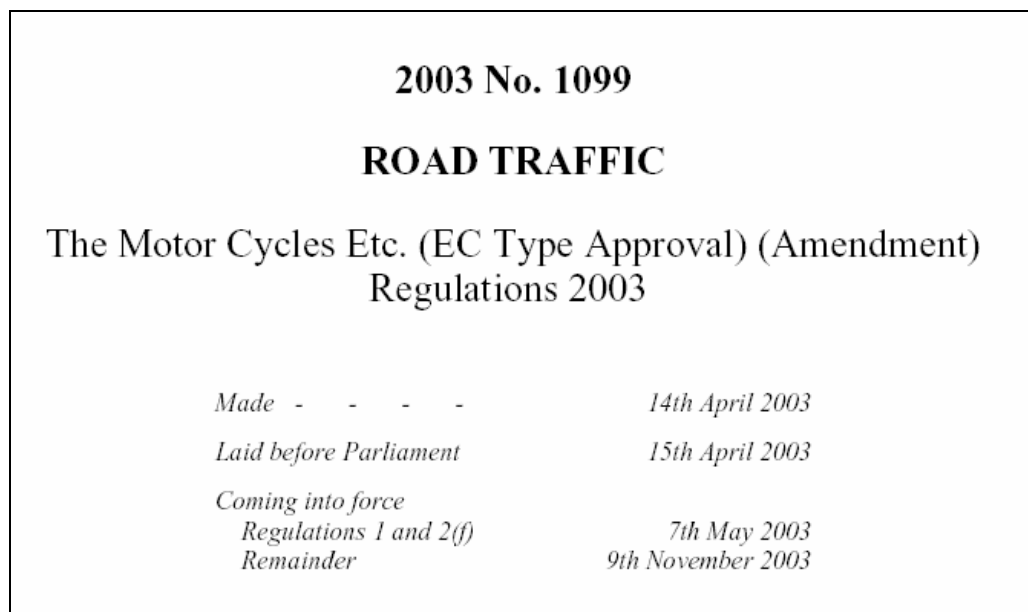
The <ComingIntoForce> statement may be broken down into specific dates for various parts of the document. This element allows for this information to be described.

### Example code

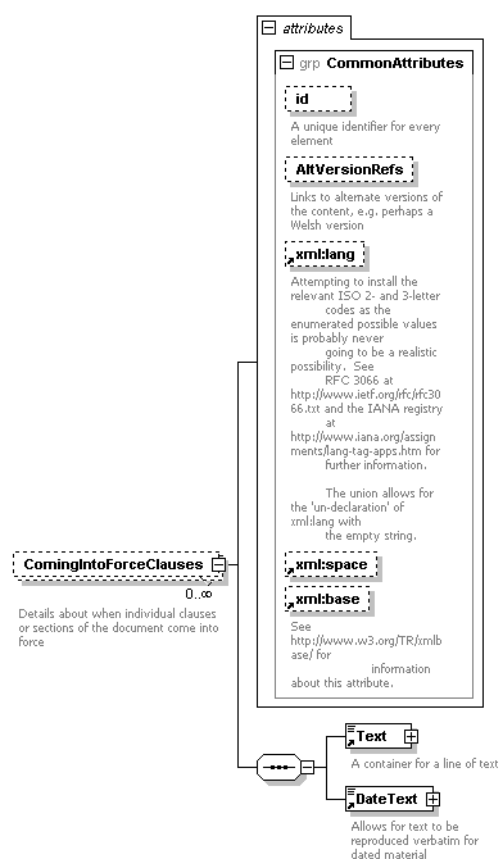
```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>2003 No. 1099</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Road Traffic</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Motor Cycles Etc. (EC Type Approval) (Amendment) Regulations 2003</Title>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>14th April 2003</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <LaidDate>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament</Text>
    <DateText>15th April 2003</DateText>
  </LaidDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force</Text>
    <ComingIntoForceClauses>
      <Text>Regulations 1 and 2 (f)</Text>
      <DateText>7th May 2003</DateText>
    </ComingIntoForceClauses>
    <ComingIntoForceClauses>
      <Text>Remainder</Text>
      <DateText>9th November 2003</DateText>
    </ComingIntoForceClauses>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>The Secretary of State for Transport, being a Minister designated<FootnoteRef
Ref="f00001"/> for the purposes of section 2(2) of the European Communities Act 1972<FootnoteRef
Ref="f00002"/> in relation to the regulation of the type, description, construction or equipment of
vehicles and of components of vehicles, and in particular any vehicle type approval scheme, in
exercise of the powers conferred by that section and of all other powers enabling him in that behalf,
hereby makes the following Regulations:</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1099

## Example image



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties

isRef	0
minOcc	0
maxOcc	unbounded
content	complex

children **Text DateText**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="ComingIntoForceClauses" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Details about when individual clauses or sections of the document come into force&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Text"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="DateText"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

### Correction

Occasionally some legislation items are issued to correct another item. In this instance some text is placed at the top of the document informing the reader. This only applies to secondary legislation.

Note that this element should be used in conjunction with ukm:Correction to record details about the affected document.

#### Example code

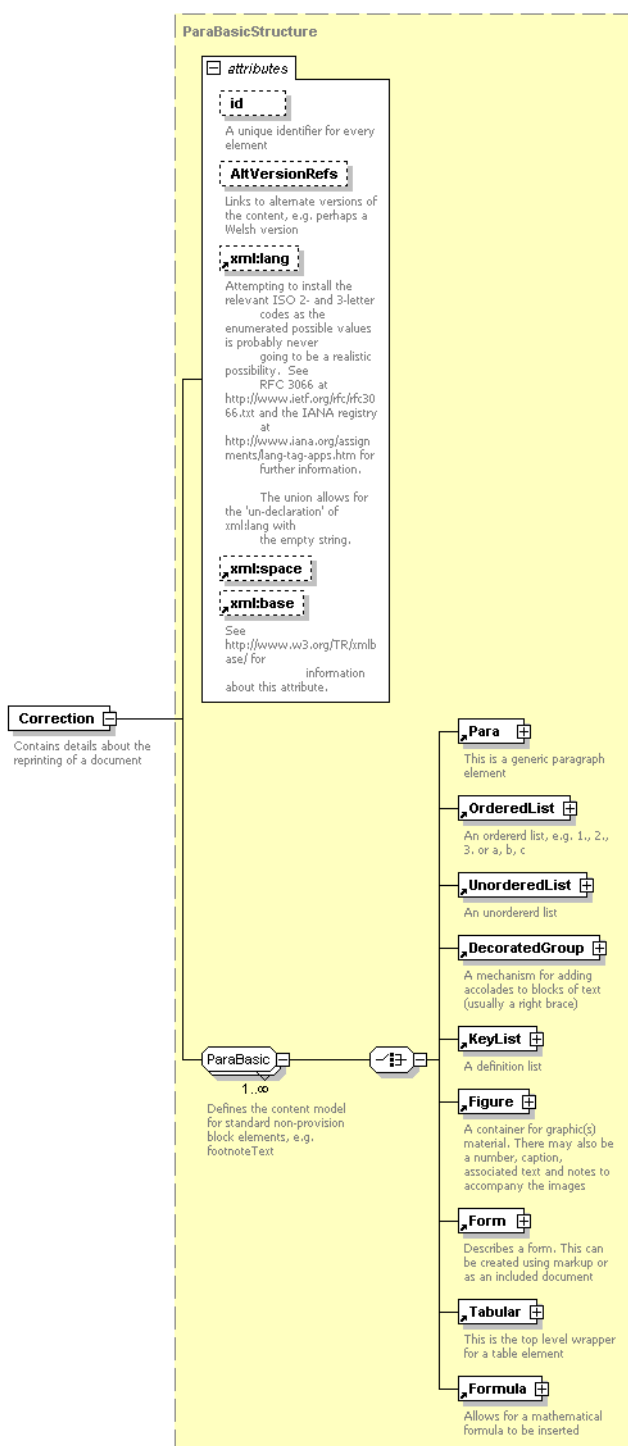
```
<Secondary>
  <SecondaryPrelims>
    <Correction>
      <Para>
        <Text>This Statutory Instrument has been printed to correct an error in <Citation id="c00001"
Class="UnitedKingdomStatutoryInstrument" Year="2006" Number="3315">SI 2006/3315</Citation> and is
being issued free of charge to all known recipients of that Statutory Instrument.</Text>
      </Para>
    </Correction>
    <Number>2007 No. 1085</Number>
    <SubjectInformation>
      <Subject>
        <Title>environmental protection, england and wales</Title>
      </Subject>
    </SubjectInformation>
    <Title>The Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (Waste Management Licensing) (England and
Wales) (Amendment) Regulations 2007</Title>
    <MadeDate>
      <Text>Made</Text>
      <DateText>28th March 2007</DateText>
    </MadeDate>
    <LaidDate>
      <Text>Laid before Parliament</Text>
      <DateText>3rd April 2007</DateText>
    </LaidDate>
    <ComingIntoForce>
      <Text>Coming into force</Text>
      <DateText>25th April 2007</DateText>
    </ComingIntoForce>
```

Ref: SI 20071085

Example image

<i>This Statutory Instrument has been printed to correct an error in SI 2006/3315 and is being issued free of charge to all known recipients of that Statutory Instrument.</i>	
STATUTORY INSTRUMENTS	
2007 No. 1085	
ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION, ENGLAND AND WALES	
The Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (Waste Management Licensing) (England and Wales) (Amendment) Regulations 2007	
Made - - - -	28th March 2007
Laid before Parliament	3rd April 2007
Coming into force - -	25th April 2007

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type **ParaBasicStructure**

properties content complex

children **Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula**

used by element **SecondaryPrelims**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Correction" type="ParaBasicStructure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Contains details about the reprinting of a document&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## DateOfEnactment

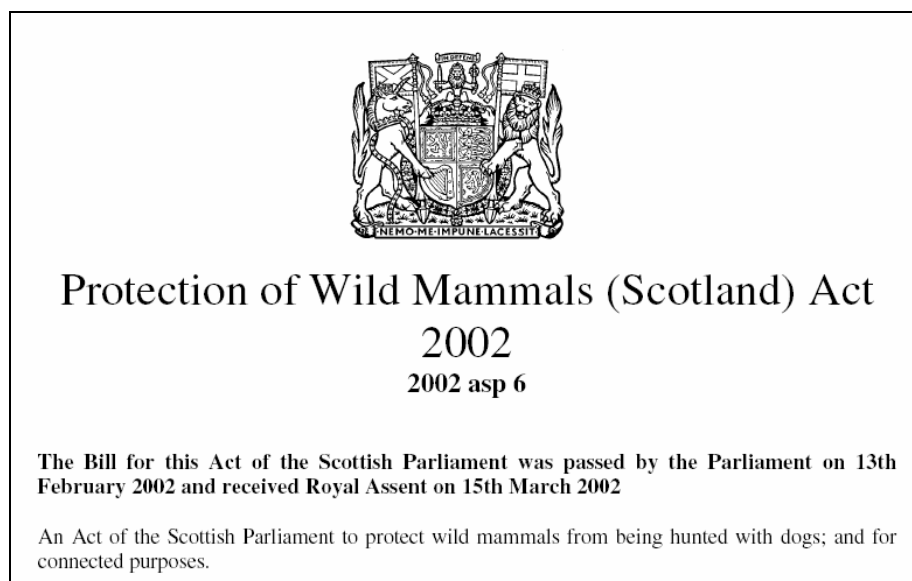
The date of enactment of the document. The content of this element can take one of two formats, as Scottish and UK legislation are worded differently. The first example below shows a Scottish version – this tends to be the more verbose. The second shows a UK example. This date is also held as metadata in a schema date type format.

### Example code

```
<PrimaryPrelims>
  <Title>Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act 2002</Title>
  <Number>2002 asp 6</Number>
  <LongTitle>An Act of the Scottish Parliament to protect wild mammals from being hunted with dogs;
and for connected purposes.</LongTitle>
  <DateOfEnactment>
    <DateText>The Bill for this Act of the Scottish Parliament was passed by the Parliament on 13th
February 2002 and received Royal Assent on 15th March 2002</DateText>
  </DateOfEnactment>
  <PrimaryPreamble>
    <EnactingTextOmitted/>
  </PrimaryPreamble>
</PrimaryPrelims>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

### Example image



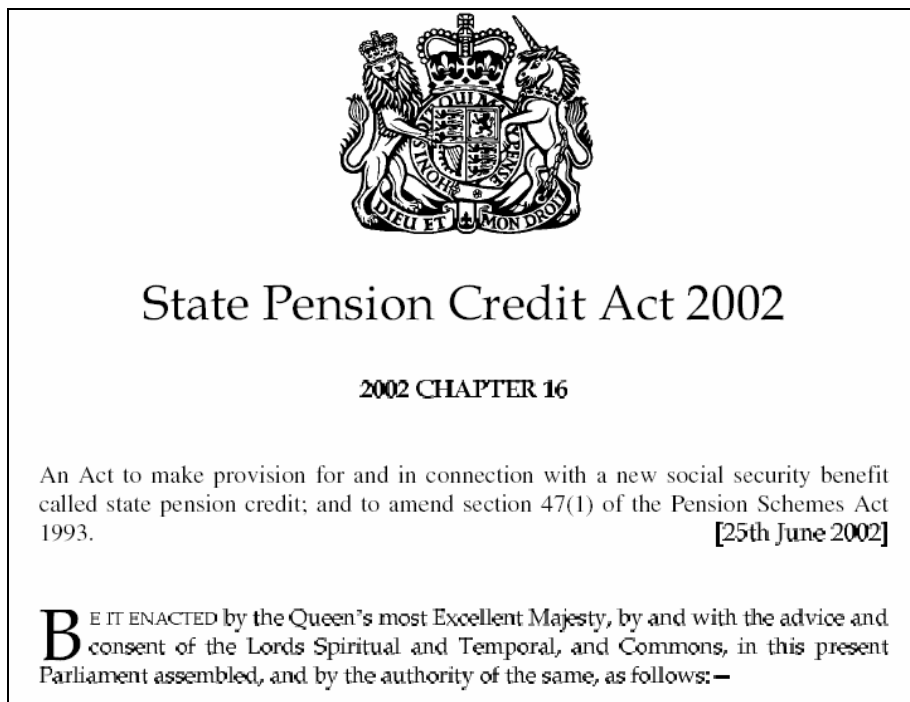


## Example code

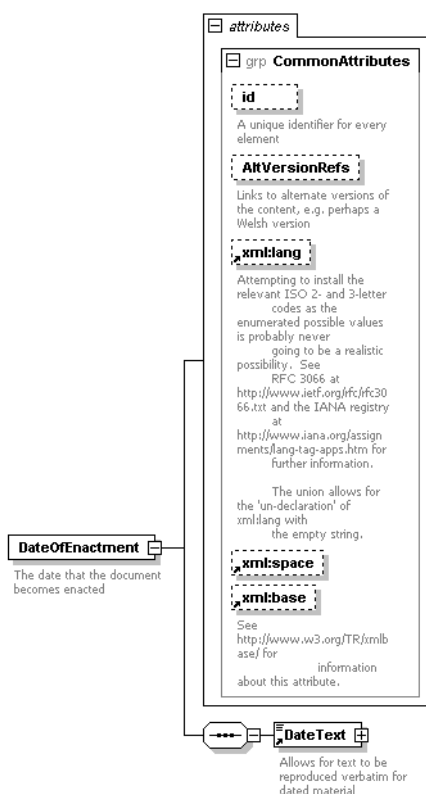
```
<PrimaryPrelims>
  <Title>State Pension Credit Act 2002</Title>
  <Number>2002 c. 16</Number>
  <LongTitle>An Act to make provision for and in connection with a new social security benefit called
state pension credit; and to amend <CitationSubRef id="c01000" CitationRef="c00100">section
47(1)</CitationSubRef> of the <Citation id="c00100" Class="ukpga" Year="1993" Number="48">Pension
Schemes Act 1993</Citation>.</LongTitle>
  <DateOfEnactment>
    <DateText>[25th June 2002]</DateText>
  </DateOfEnactment>
  <PrimaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>
          <SmallCaps>Be it enacted</SmallCaps> by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the
advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament
assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—</Text>
        </Para>
      </EnactingText>
    </PrimaryPreamble>
  </PrimaryPrelims>
```

Ref: UKPGA 2002 0016

## Example image



diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **DateText**used by element **PrimaryPrelims**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

```

source <xsd:element name="DateOfEnactment">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>The date that the document becomes enacted</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="DateText"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## DateText

A general element for holding the textual form of a date. This form is held so as to be able to reproduce exactly the form of words in legacy documents. As a rule the equivalent information will be held as metadata in a schema date type format for easy processing.

### Example code

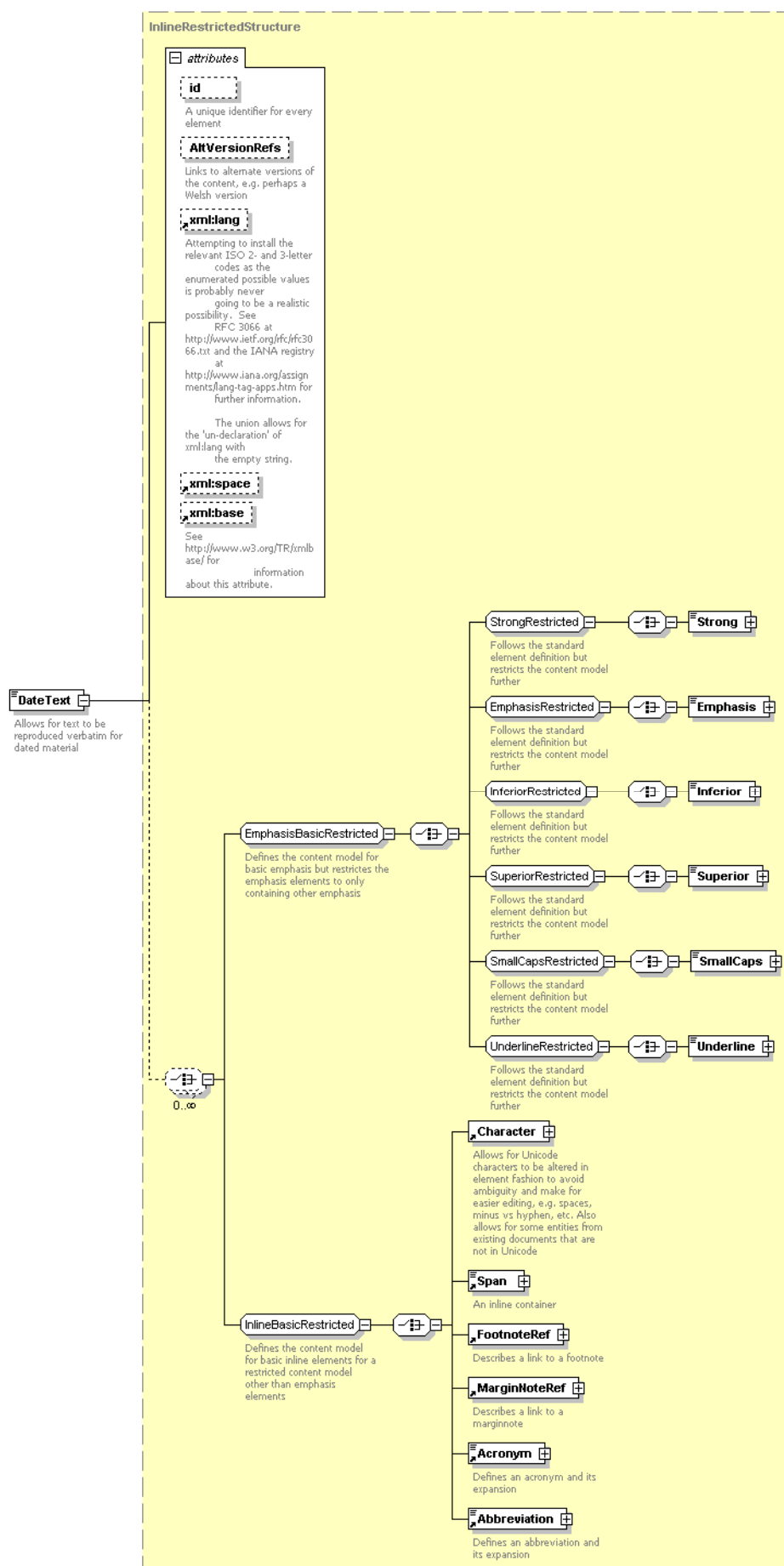
```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>2003 No. 562</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Agriculture, England</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Farm Waste Grant (Nitrate Vulnerable Zones) (England) Scheme 2003</Title>
  <Approved>Approved by both Houses of Parliament</Approved>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>6th March 2003</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <LaidDate>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament</Text>
    <DateText>10th March 2003</DateText>
  </LaidDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force</Text>
    <DateText>7th March 2003</DateText>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>The Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred upon her by section 29 of the
        Agriculture Act 1970<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/>, with the approval of the Treasury, hereby makes the
        following Scheme—</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0562

### Example image

<b>2003 No. 562</b>	
<b>AGRICULTURE, ENGLAND</b>	
<b>The Farm Waste Grant (Nitrate Vulnerable Zones) (England) Scheme 2003</b>	
<i>Approved by both Houses of Parliament</i>	
<i>Made - - - -</i>	<i>6th March 2003</i>
<i>Coming into force - -</i>	<i>7th March 2003</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>	<i>10th March 2003</i>
<p>The Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred upon her by section 29 of the Agriculture Act 1970(a), with the approval of the Treasury, hereby makes the following Scheme—</p>	

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineRestrictedStructure				
properties	content	complex			
	mixed	true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	elements	ComingIntoForce ComingIntoForce/ComingIntoForceClauses DateOfEnactment DateSigned LaidDate LaidDraft MadeDate			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<xsd:element name="DateText" type="InlineRestrictedStructure"> <xsd:annotation> <xsd:documentation>Allows for text to be reproduced verbatim for dated material</xsd:documentation> </xsd:annotation> </xsd:element>				

### Draft

Occasionally some documents have preliminary text preceding the main document. In general this is text about the draft status of the document. This only applies to secondary legislation.

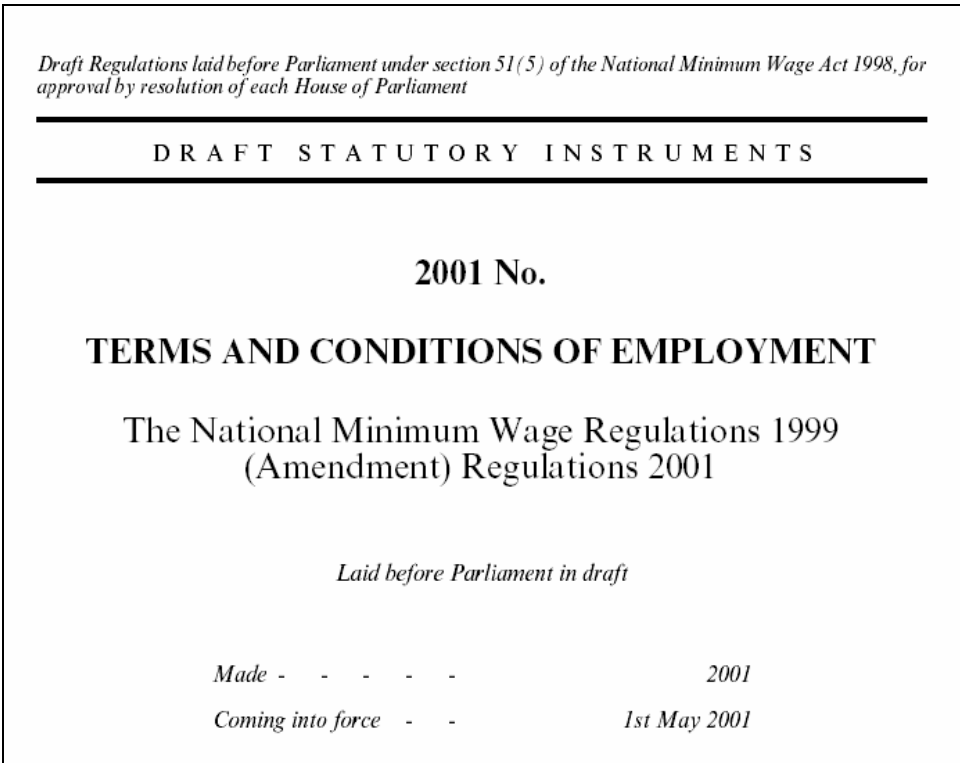
For a definitive definition of the use of this element please see *Statutory Instrument Practice*, 3rd edition (June 2003), section 2.2 (Headnotes)

### Example code

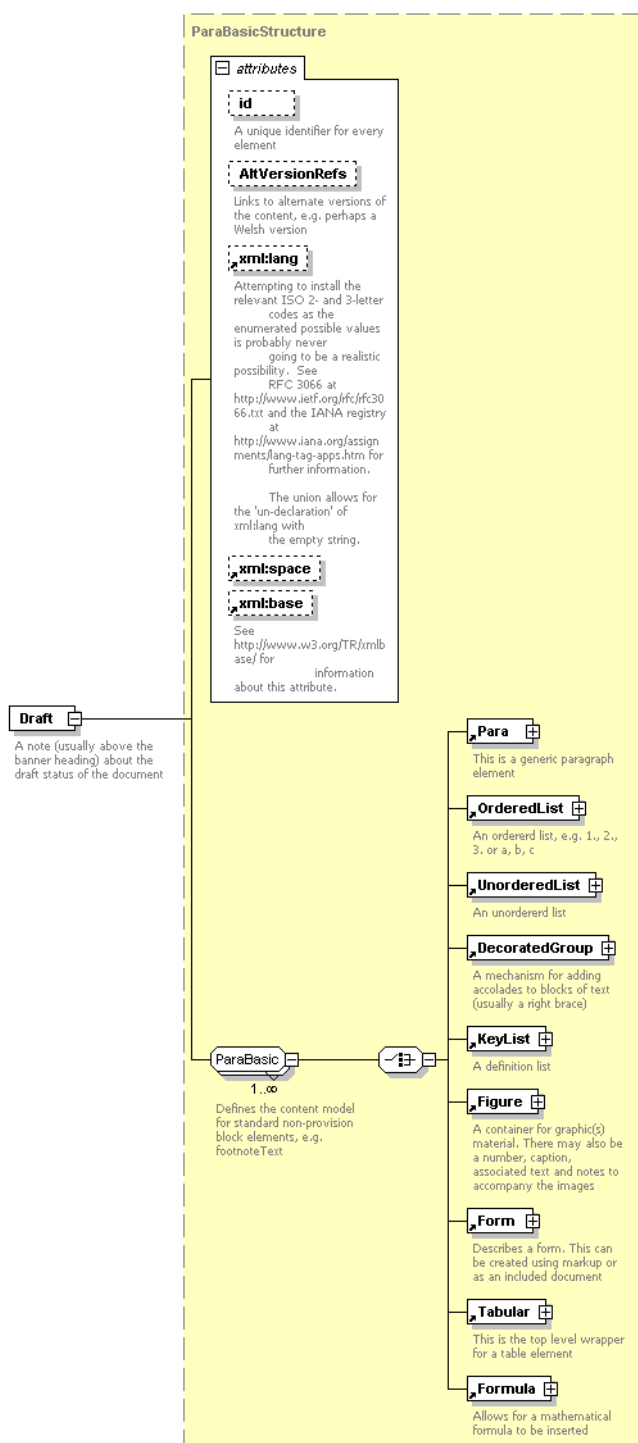
```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Draft>
    <Para>
      <Text>Draft Regulations laid before Parliament under section 51(5) of the National Minimum Wage
Act 1998, for approval by resolution of each House of Parliament</Text>
    </Para>
  </Draft>
  <Number>2001 No.</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Terms and Conditions of Employment</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The National Minimum Wage Regulations 1999 (Amendment) Regulations 2001</Title>
  <LaidDraft>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament in draft</Text>
  </LaidDraft>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>2001</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force</Text>
    <DateText>1st May 2001</DateText>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>Whereas a draft of the following Regulations was laid before Parliament in accordance with
section 51(5) of the National Minimum Wage Act 1998<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/> and approved by
resolution of each House of Parliament:</Text>
      </Para>
      <Para>
        <Text>Now, therefore, the Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred on him by
sections 3 and 51 of the National Minimum Wage Act 1998, hereby makes the following Regulations:-
</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: UKDSI 0110289390

Example image



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type **ParaBasicStructure**

properties content complex

children **Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula**

used by element **SecondaryPrelims**



attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<div>&lt;xsd:element name="Draft" type="ParaBasicStructure"&gt; &lt;xsd:annotation&gt; &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A note (usually above the banner heading) about the draft status of the document&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt; &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</div>				

## EnactingText

Words describing the official enactment of the document.

### Example code

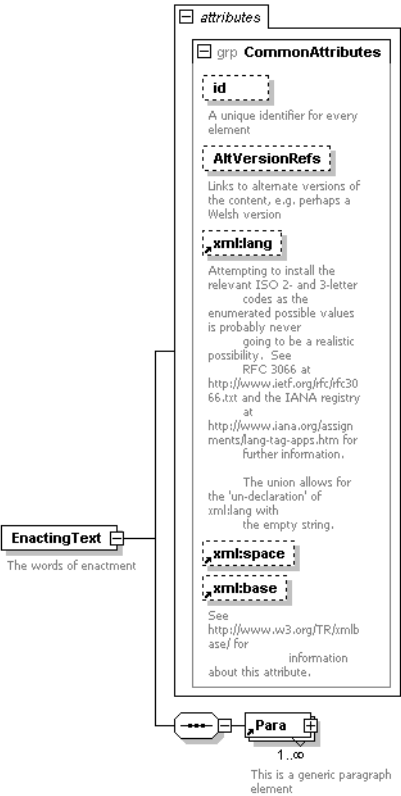
```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>2003 No. 562</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Agriculture, England</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Farm Waste Grant (Nitrate Vulnerable Zones) (England) Scheme 2003</Title>
  <Approved>Approved by both Houses of Parliament</Approved>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>6th March 2003</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <LaidDate>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament</Text>
    <DateText>10th March 2003</DateText>
  </LaidDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force</Text>
    <DateText>7th March 2003</DateText>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>The Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred upon her by section 29 of the
        Agriculture Act 1970<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/>, with the approval of the Treasury, hereby makes the
        following Scheme—</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0562

### Example image

<b>2003 No. 562</b>	
<b>AGRICULTURE, ENGLAND</b>	
<b>The Farm Waste Grant (Nitrate Vulnerable Zones) (England) Scheme 2003</b>	
<i>Approved by both Houses of Parliament</i>	
<i>Made - - - -</i>	<i>6th March 2003</i>
<i>Coming into force - -</i>	<i>7th March 2003</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>	<i>10th March 2003</i>
The Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred upon her by section 29 of the Agriculture Act 1970(a), with the approval of the Treasury, hereby makes the following Scheme—	

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content	complex				
children	Para					
used by	elements	PrimaryPreamble SecondaryPreamble SecondaryPreamble				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<xsd:element name="EnactingText"> <xsd:annotation> <xsd:documentation>The words of enactment</xsd:documentation> </xsd:annotation> <xsd:complexType> <xsd:sequence> <xsd:element ref="Para" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </xsd:sequence> <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/> </xsd:complexType> </xsd:element>					

## EnactingTextOmitted

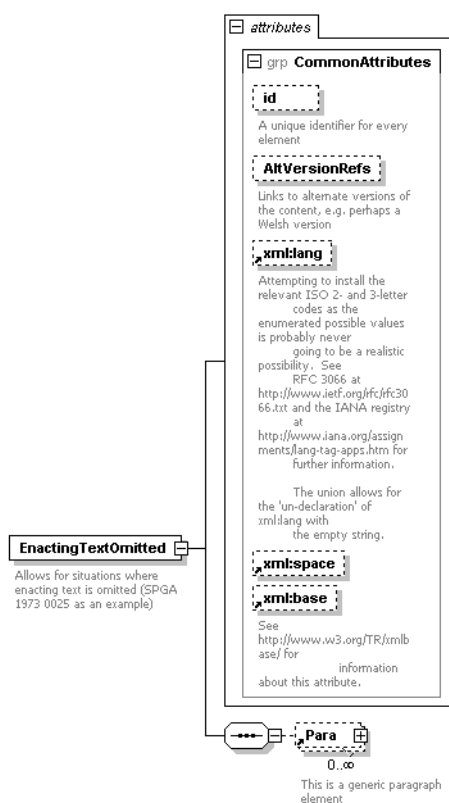
Generally a document will have text enacting the document. Occasionally, however, this text can be omitted (or replaced by text explaining the omission).

### Example code

```
<PrimaryPrelims>
  <Title>Protection of Wild Mammals (Scotland) Act 2002</Title>
  <Number>2002 asp 6</Number>
  <LongTitle>An Act of the Scottish Parliament to protect wild mammals from being hunted with dogs;
and for connected purposes.</LongTitle>
  <DateOfEnactment>
    <DateText>The Bill for this Act of the Scottish Parliament was passed by the Parliament on 13th
February 2002 and received Royal Assent on 15th March 2002</DateText>
  </DateOfEnactment>
  <PrimaryPreamble>
    <EnactingTextOmitted/>
  </PrimaryPreamble>
</PrimaryPrelims>
```

Ref: ASP 2002 0006

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Para**

used by element **PrimaryPreamble**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

```
source <xsd:element name="EnactingTextOmitted">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Allows for situations where enacting text is omitted (SPGA 1973 0025 as an
example)</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="Para" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## IntroductoryText

Preamble text that precedes the enacting text.

### Example code

```
<SecondaryPreamble>
  <IntroductoryText>
    <P>
      <Text>Whereas:</Text>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>1</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>it appears to the Secretary of State for Health ("the Secretary of State") that-</Text>
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>a</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <Text>such of the operations of the Department of Health as are described in Schedule 1 to
this Order (being operations for which he is responsible) are suitable to be financed by means of a
fund established under the Government Trading Funds Act 1973<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/> (referred to
in this Order as "the 1973 Act") and, in particular, to be so managed that the revenue of the fund
would consist principally of receipts in respect of goods or services provided in the course of the
operations in question, and</Text>
              </P3para>
            </P3>
          <P3>
            <Pnumber>b</Pnumber>
            <P3para>
              <Text>the financing of the operations in question by means of such a fund would be in the
interests of the improved efficiency and effectiveness of the management of those operations;</Text>
              </P3para>
            </P3>
          </P2para>
        </P2>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>2</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>in accordance with sections 1(3) and 6(4) of the 1973 Act, the Secretary of State has
taken such steps as appear to him to be appropriate to give an opportunity to such persons as appear
to him to be appropriate to make representations to him and has laid before Parliament a report about
the representations received and his conclusions;</Text>
          </P2para>
        </P2>
      <P2>
        <Pnumber>3</Pnumber>
        <P2para>
          <Text>in accordance with section 2 of the 1973 Act, the Secretary of State has determined with
the concurrence of the Treasury what Crown assets and liabilities are properly attributable to the
operations for which a fund is to be established and are suitable to be appropriated to that
fund;</Text>
          </P2para>
        </P2>
      </P>
    </IntroductoryText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
```

```

<P2>
  <Pnumber>4</Pnumber>
  <P2para>
    <Text>in accordance with section 6(2) of the 1973 Act, a draft of this Order has been laid
before the House of Commons and has been approved by a resolution of that House;</Text>
  </P2para>
</P2>
</P>
</IntroductoryText>
<EnactingText>
  <Para>
    <Text>Now, therefore, the Secretary of State in exercise of powers conferred by sections 1, 2,
2A(1), 2AA, 2C(1) and 6(1) of the 1973 Act, and of all other powers enabling him in that behalf, with
the concurrence of the Treasury, hereby makes the following Order:—</Text>
  </Para>
</EnactingText>
</SecondaryPreamble>

```

## Example code

Ref: SI 2003 1076

## Example image

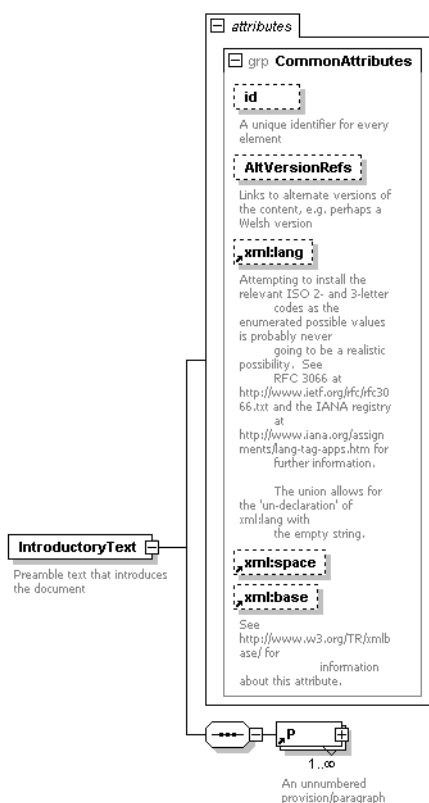
### Whereas:

- (1) it appears to the Secretary of State for Health ("the Secretary of State") that—
  - (a) such of the operations of the Department of Health as are described in Schedule 1 to this Order (being operations for which he is responsible) are suitable to be financed by means of a fund established under the Government Trading Funds Act 1973(a) (referred to in this Order as "the 1973 Act") and, in particular, to be so managed that the revenue of the fund would consist principally of receipts in respect of goods or services provided in the course of the operations in question, and
  - (b) the financing of the operations in question by means of such a fund would be in the interests of the improved efficiency and effectiveness of the management of those operations;
- (2) in accordance with sections 1(3) and 6(4) of the 1973 Act, the Secretary of State has taken such steps as appear to him to be appropriate to give an opportunity to such persons as appear to him to be appropriate to make representations to him and has laid before Parliament a report about the representations received and his conclusions;
- (3) in accordance with section 2 of the 1973 Act, the Secretary of State has determined with the concurrence of the Treasury what Crown assets and liabilities are properly attributable to the operations for which a fund is to be established and are suitable to be appropriated to that fund;
- (4) in accordance with section 6(2) of the 1973 Act, a draft of this Order has been laid before the House of Commons and has been approved by a resolution of that House;

Now, therefore, the Secretary of State in exercise of powers conferred by sections 1, 2, 2A(1), 2AA, 2C(1) and 6(1) of the 1973 Act, and of all other powers enabling him in that behalf, with the concurrence of the Treasury, hereby makes the following Order:—

(a) 1973 c. 63, as amended by the Government Trading Act 1990 (c. 30), section 119 of the Finance Act 1991 (c. 31), Schedule 22 to the Finance Act 1993 (c. 34) and section 29(1) of the Government Resources and Accounts Act 2000 (c. 20).

diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children

**P**

used by

elements **PrimaryPreamble Schedule SecondaryPreamble SecondaryPreamble**

attributes

Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
lang				
space				
base				

source

```

<xsd:element name="IntroductoryText">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Preamble text that introduces the document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="P" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```



## LaidDate

The laid date of the document – that is the date when the document was laid before Parliament, the House of Commons, or the relevant body. This element is the textual description of the laid date as on the printed copy.

This element only applies to secondary legislation.

The laid date and coming into force date are also held as a standard data type in the metadata section. Note that these can be used to determine which of the laid and coming into force dates come first. In the instance where the legislation comes into force before being laid the laid and coming into force dates are transposed on output in the printed copy.

For a definitive definition of the use of laid dates please see *Statutory Instrument Practice*, 3rd edition (June 2003), section 2.3.15 (Date of making, laying and coming into force)

### Example code

```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>2003 No. 562</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Agriculture, England</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Farm Waste Grant (Nitrate Vulnerable Zones) (England) Scheme 2003</Title>
  <Approved>Approved by both Houses of Parliament</Approved>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>6th March 2003</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <LaidDate>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament</Text>
    <DateText>10th March 2003</DateText>
  </LaidDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force</Text>
    <DateText>7th March 2003</DateText>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>The Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred upon her by section 29 of the
        Agriculture Act 1970<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/>, with the approval of the Treasury, hereby makes the
        following Scheme—</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0562

## Example image

**2003 No. 562**

**AGRICULTURE, ENGLAND**

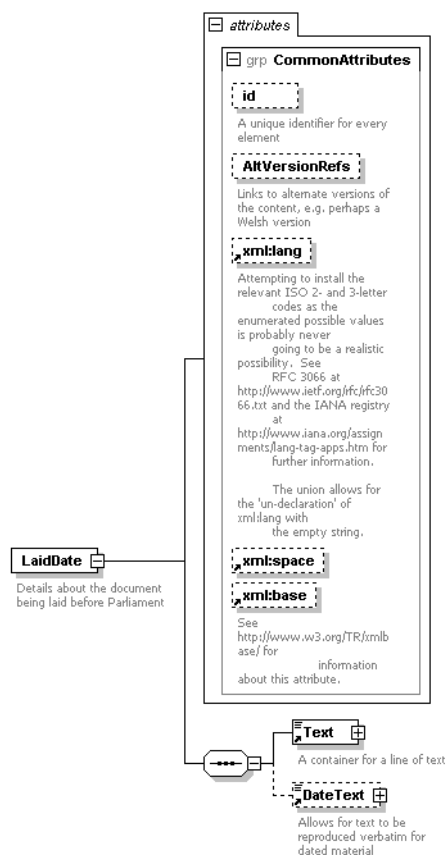
**The Farm Waste Grant (Nitrate Vulnerable Zones)  
(England) Scheme 2003**

*Approved by both Houses of Parliament*

<i>Made</i>	- - - - -	<i>6th March 2003</i>
<i>Coming into force</i>	- -	<i>7th March 2003</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>		<i>10th March 2003</i>

The Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred upon her by section 29 of the Agriculture Act 1970(a), with the approval of the Treasury, hereby makes the following Scheme—

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>  
 properties content complex

children	Text DateText				
used by	elements	SecondaryPrelims SecondaryPrelims SecondaryPrelims SecondaryPrelims			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="LaidDate"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Details about the document being laid before Parliament&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Text"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="DateText" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

### LaidDraft

Text telling that the document has been laid in draft. The document will, in this case, generally have <Draft> element as well. Please see the documentation on this element for further details.

#### Example code

```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Draft>
    <Para>
      <Text>Draft Regulations laid before Parliament under section 51(5) of the National Minimum Wage
Act 1998, for approval by resolution of each House of Parliament</Text>
    </Para>
  </Draft>
  <Number>2001 No.</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Terms and Conditions of Employment</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The National Minimum Wage Regulations 1999 (Amendment) Regulations 2001</Title>
  <LaidDraft>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament in draft</Text>
  </LaidDraft>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>2001</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force</Text>
    <DateText>1st May 2001</DateText>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>Whereas a draft of the following Regulations was laid before Parliament in accordance with
section 51(5) of the National Minimum Wage Act 1998<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/> and approved by
resolution of each House of Parliament:</Text>
      </Para>
      <Para>
        <Text>Now, therefore, the Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred on him by
sections 3 and 51 of the National Minimum Wage Act 1998, hereby makes the following Regulations:-
</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: UKDSI 0110289390

## Example image

*Draft Regulations laid before Parliament under section 51(5) of the National Minimum Wage Act 1998, for approval by resolution of each House of Parliament*

---

DRAFT STATUTORY INSTRUMENTS

---

**2001 No.**

**TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF EMPLOYMENT**

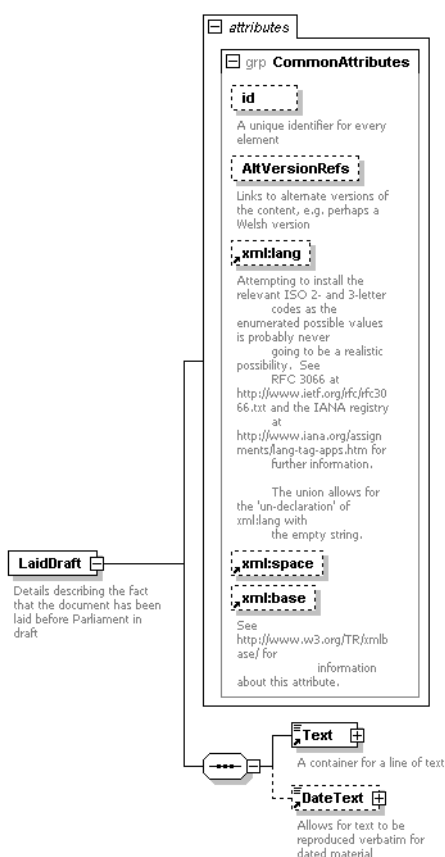
The National Minimum Wage Regulations 1999  
(Amendment) Regulations 2001

*Laid before Parliament in draft*

Made - - - - - 2001

Coming into force - - - 1st May 2001

diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties	content	complex				
children	<b>Text DateText</b>					
used by	element	<b>SecondaryPrelims</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>				
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="LaidDraft"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Details describing the fact that the document has been laid before Parliament in draft&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Text"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="DateText" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>					

## LongTitle

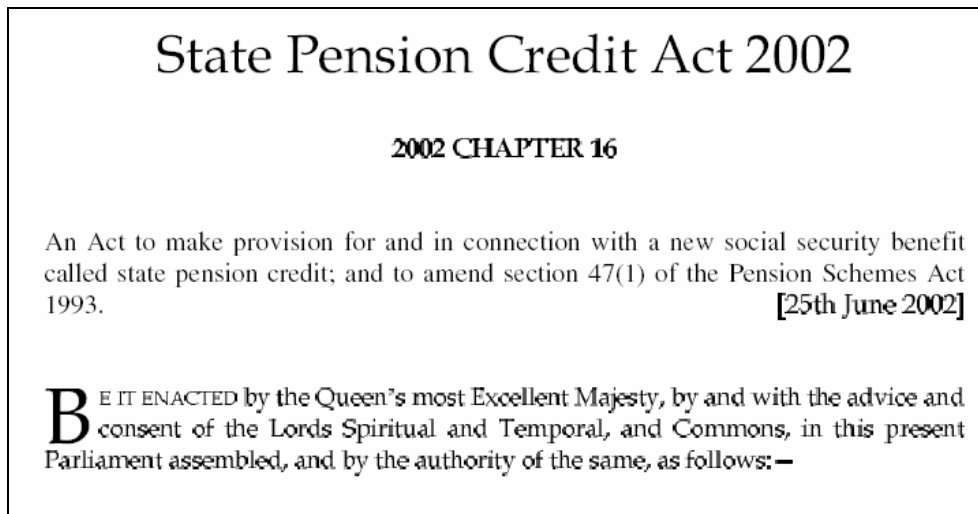
The full title of an Act – historically known as the long title.

### Example code

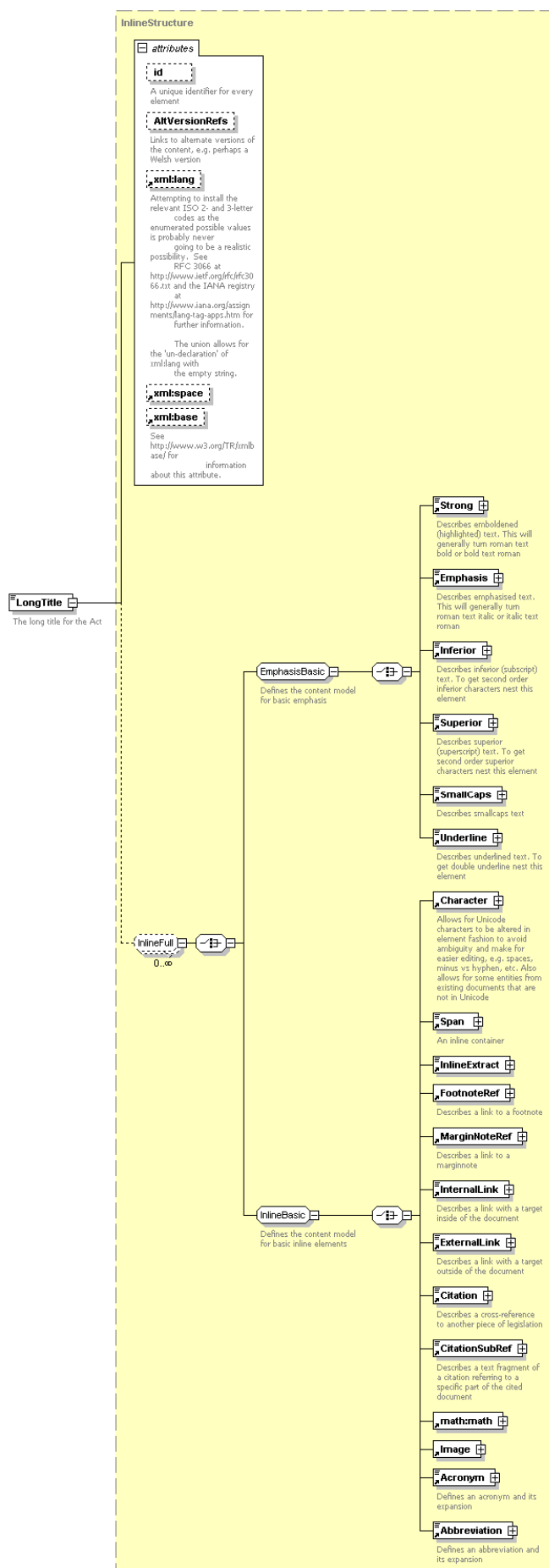
```
<PrimaryPrelims>
  <Title>State Pension Credit Act 2002</Title>
  <Number>2002 c. 16</Number>
  <LongTitle>An Act to make provision for and in connection with a new social security benefit called
state pension credit; and to amend <CitationSubRef id="c01000" CitationRef="c00100">section
47(1)</CitationSubRef> of the <Citation id="c00100" Class="ukpga" Year="1993" Number="48">Pension
Schemes Act 1993</Citation>.</LongTitle>
  <DateOfEnactment>
    <DateText>[25th June 2002]</DateText>
  </DateOfEnactment>
  <PrimaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>
          <SmallCaps>Be it enacted</SmallCaps> by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the
advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament
assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:–</Text>
        </Para>
      </EnactingText>
    </PrimaryPreamble>
  </PrimaryPrelims>
```

Ref: UKPGA 2002 0016

### Example image



diagram





namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineStructure				
properties	content	complex			
	mixed	true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	element	PrimaryPrelims			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<xsd:element name="LongTitle" type="InlineStructure"> <xsd:annotation> <xsd:documentation>The long title for the Act</xsd:documentation> </xsd:annotation> </xsd:element>				

### MadeDate

Secondary legislation is ‘made’ when signed by a minister (or person with authority under the Act); in other words the instrument is not in draft. This element is the textual description of the made date as on the printed copy. It only applies to secondary legislation. The made date is also held as a standard data type in the metadata section.

For a definitive definition of the use of made dates please see *Statutory Instrument Practice*, 3rd edition (June 2003), section 2.3.15 (Date of making, laying and coming into force)

### Example code

```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>2003 No. 562</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Agriculture, England</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Farm Waste Grant (Nitrate Vulnerable Zones) (England) Scheme 2003</Title>
  <Approved>Approved by both Houses of Parliament</Approved>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>6th March 2003</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <LaidDate>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament</Text>
    <DateText>10th March 2003</DateText>
  </LaidDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force</Text>
    <DateText>7th March 2003</DateText>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>The Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred upon her by section 29 of the
        Agriculture Act 1970<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/>, with the approval of the Treasury, hereby makes the
        following Scheme—</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: SI 2003 0562

## Example image

**2003 No. 562**

**AGRICULTURE, ENGLAND**

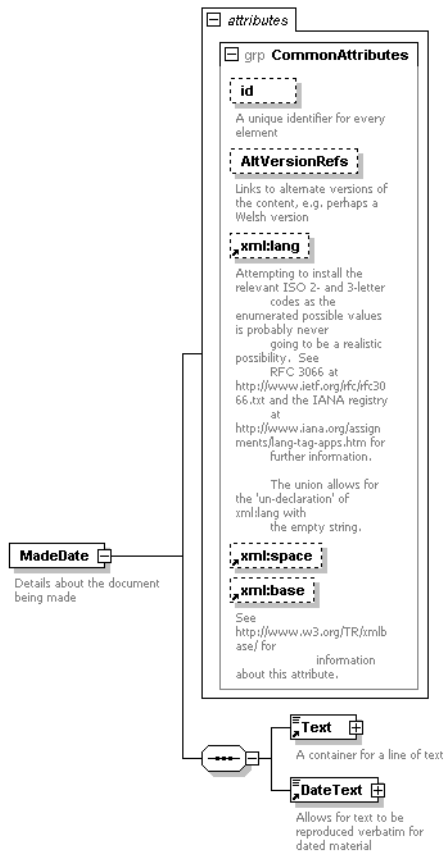
**The Farm Waste Grant (Nitrate Vulnerable Zones)  
(England) Scheme 2003**

*Approved by both Houses of Parliament*

<i>Made</i>	- - - - -	<i>6th March 2003</i>
<i>Coming into force</i>	- -	<i>7th March 2003</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>		<i>10th March 2003</i>

The Secretary of State, in exercise of the powers conferred upon her by section 29 of the Agriculture Act 1970(a), with the approval of the Treasury, hereby makes the following Scheme—

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>  
 properties content complex

children	Text DateText					
used by	elements	SecondaryPrelims SecondaryPrelims				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="MadeDate"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Details about the document being made&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Text"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="DateText"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## PrimaryPreamble

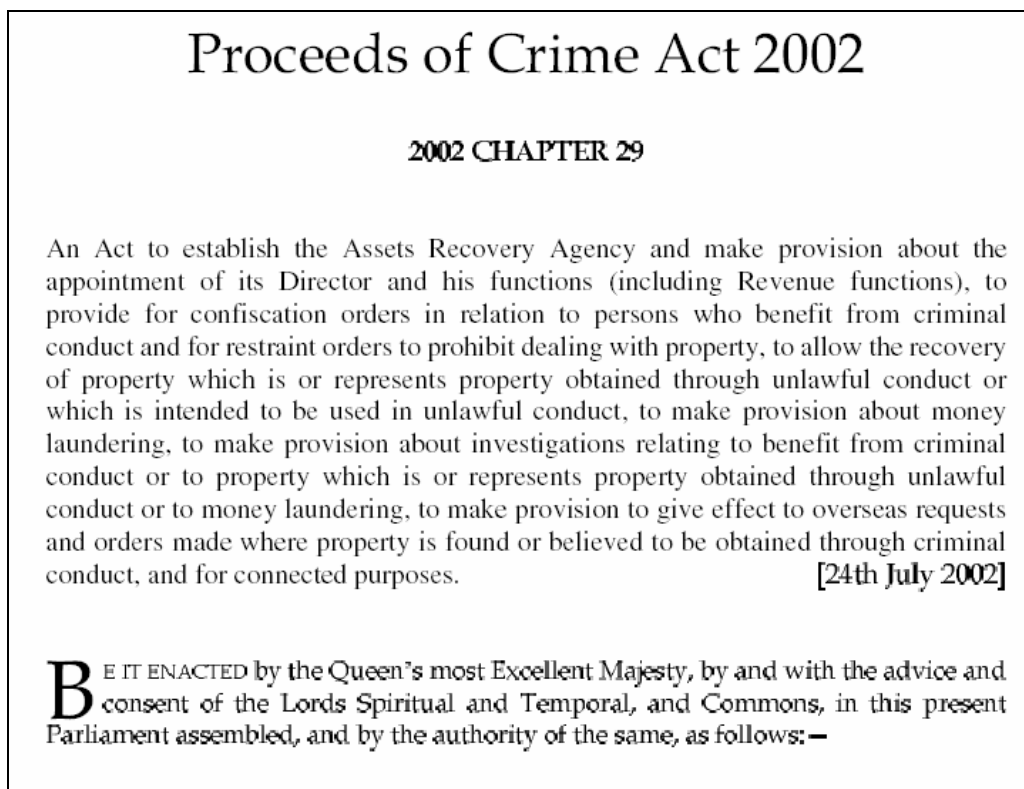
Contains the preliminary text before the body of the primary legislation document.

### Example code

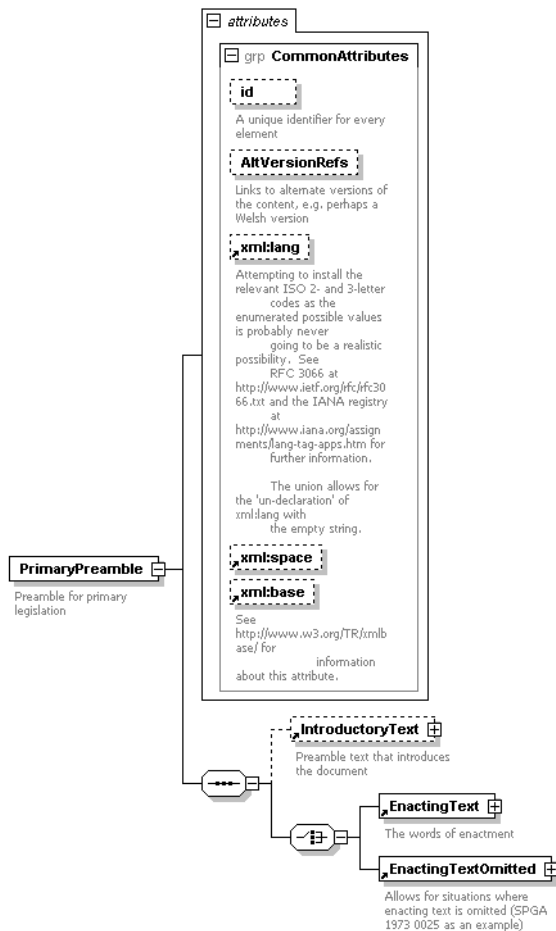
```
<PrimaryPrelims>
  <Title>Proceeds of Crime Act 2002</Title>
  <Number>2002 c. 29</Number>
  <LongTitle>An Act to establish the Assets Recovery Agency and make provision about the appointment
of its Director and his functions (including Revenue functions), to provide for confiscation orders
in relation to persons who benefit from criminal conduct and for restraint orders to prohibit dealing
with property, to allow the recovery of property which is or represents property obtained through
unlawful conduct or which is intended to be used in unlawful conduct, to make provision about money
laundering, to make provision about investigations relating to benefit from criminal conduct or to
property which is or represents property obtained through unlawful conduct or to money laundering, to
make provision to give effect to overseas requests and orders made where property is found or
believed to be obtained through criminal conduct, and for connected purposes.</LongTitle>
  <DateOfEnactment>
    <DateText>[24th July 2002]</DateText>
  </dateOfEnactment>
  <PrimaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>B<SmallCaps>e it enacted</SmallCaps> by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with
the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament
assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </PrimaryPreamble>
</PrimaryPrelims>
```

Ref: UKPGA 2002 0029

### Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content complex					
children	IntroductoryText EnactingText EnactingTextOmitted					
used by	elements	BlockAmendment PrimaryPrelims				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					

source

```
<xsd:element name="PrimaryPreamble">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Preamble for primary legislation</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="IntroductoryText" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:choice>
        <xsd:element ref="EnactingText"/>
        <xsd:element ref="EnactingTextOmitted"/>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## PrimaryPrelims

A container for the preliminary matter in the primary legislation document.

### Example code

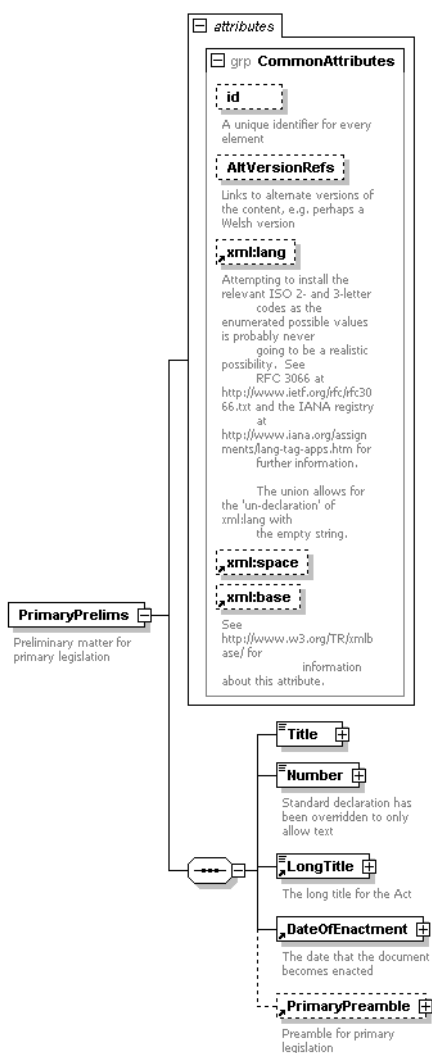
```
<PrimaryPrelims>
  <Title>Land Registration Act 2002</Title>
  <Number>2002 c. 9</Number>
  <LongTitle>An Act to make provision about land registration; and for connected purposes.</LongTitle>
  <DateOfEnactment>
    <DateText>[26th February 2002]</DateText>
  </DateOfEnactment>
  <PrimaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>Be it enacted by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of
the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the
authority of the same, as follows:--</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </PrimaryPreamble>
</PrimaryPrelims>
```

Ref: PGA 2002 0009

### Example image



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Title Number LongTitle DateOfEnactment PrimaryPreamble**

used by element **Primary**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				



```
source <xsd:element name="PrimaryPrelims">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Preliminary matter for primary legislation</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element name="Title" type="InlineRestrictedStructure"/>
      <xsd:element name="Number" type="BasicStringStructure">
        <xsd:annotation>
          <xsd:documentation>Standard declaration has been overridden to only allow
text</xsd:documentation>
        </xsd:annotation>
      </xsd:element>
      <xsd:element ref="LongTitle"/>
      <xsd:element ref="DateOfEnactment"/>
      <xsd:element ref="PrimaryPreamble" minOccurs="0"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## PrimaryPrelims/Title

This is the short title of the document.

### Example code

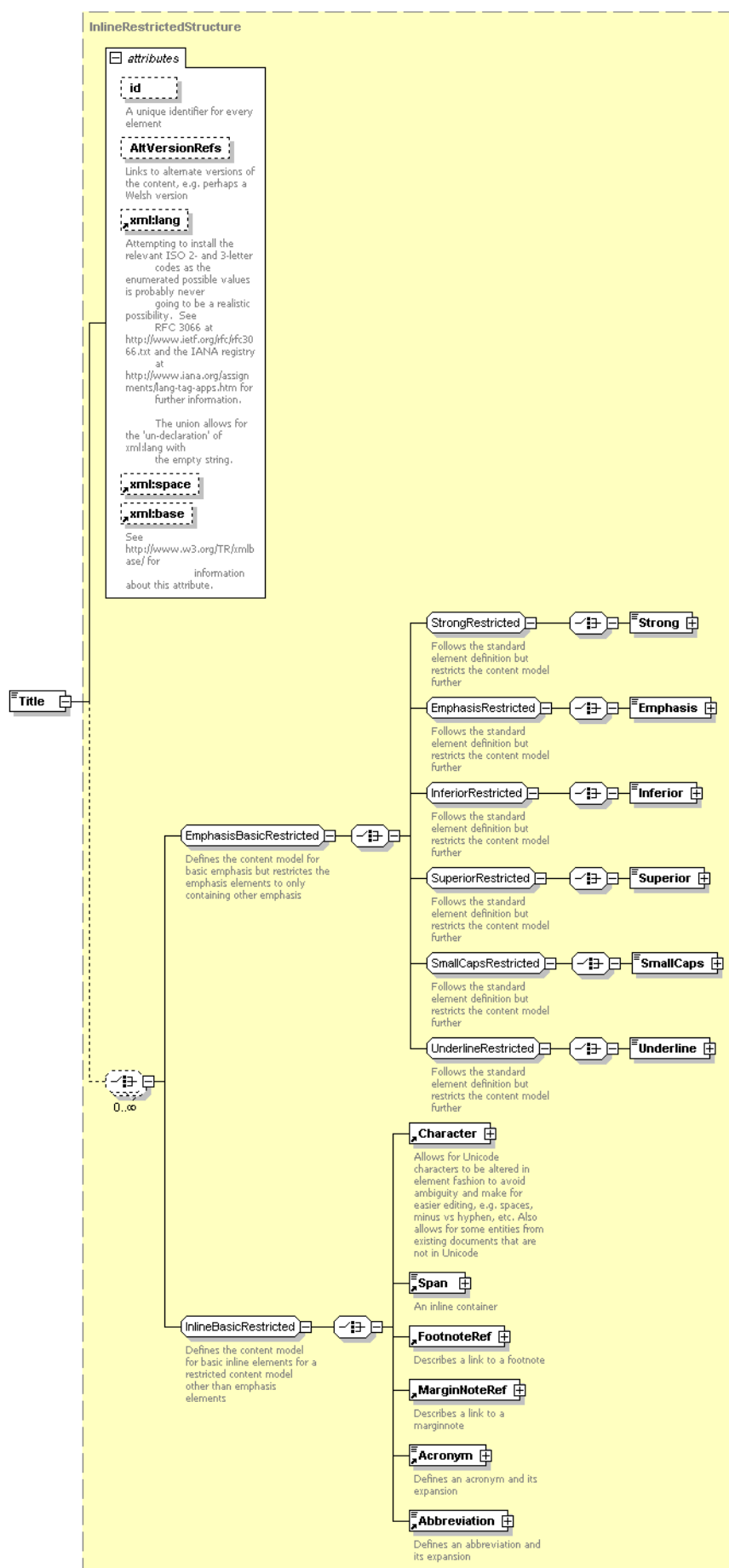
```
<PrimaryPrelims>
  <Title>Land Registration Act 2002</Title>
  <Number>2002 c. 9</Number>
  <LongTitle>An Act to make provision about land registration; and for connected purposes.</LongTitle>
  <DateOfEnactment>
    <DateText>[26th February 2002]</DateText>
  </DateOfEnactment>
  <PrimaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>Be it enacted by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of
the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the
authority of the same, as follows:--</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </PrimaryPreamble>
</PrimaryPrelims>
```

Ref: PGA 2002 0009

### Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineRestrictedStructure				
properties	isRef	0			
	content	complex			
	mixed	true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	elements	Chapter Chapter EarlierOrders ExplanatoryNotes Figure FragmentTitle Group Group Notes P1group P2group P3group Part Part Pblock Pblock PsubBlock PsubBlock Schedules SubjectInformation/Subject Tabular TitleBlock			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<xsd:element name="Title" type="InlineRestrictedStructure"/>				

## PrimaryPrelims/Number

The number of the legislation document. This is the full year/number combination as printed in the original hardcopy.

### Example code

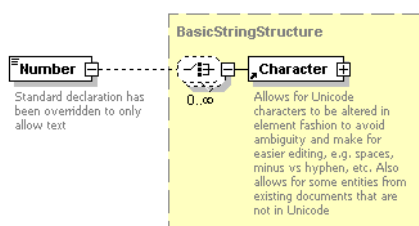
```
<PrimaryPrelims>
  <Title>Land Registration Act 2002</Title>
  <Number>2002 c. 9</Number>
  <LongTitle>An Act to make provision about land registration; and for connected purposes.</LongTitle>
  <DateOfEnactment>
    <DateText>[26th February 2002]</DateText>
  </DateOfEnactment>
  <PrimaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>Be it enacted by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of
the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the
authority of the same, as follows:--</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </PrimaryPreamble>
</PrimaryPrelims>
```

Ref: PGA 2002 0009

### Example image



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type **BasicStringStructure**

properties

isRef	0
content	complex
mixed	true

children **Character**

used by elements **Appendix Chapter Figure Form FragmentNumber Group Part Pblock PsubBlock Schedule Tabular**

source

```
<xsd:element name="Number" type="BasicStringStructure">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Standard declaration has been overridden to only allow text</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
</xsd:element>
```

## Resolution

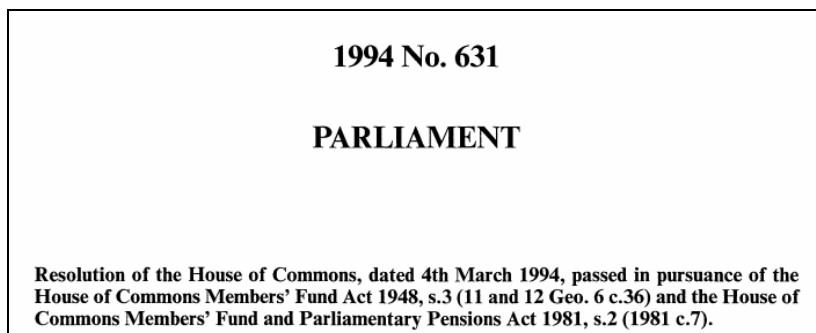
A resolution. A document that is not enacted may alternatively be created in this manner.

### Example code

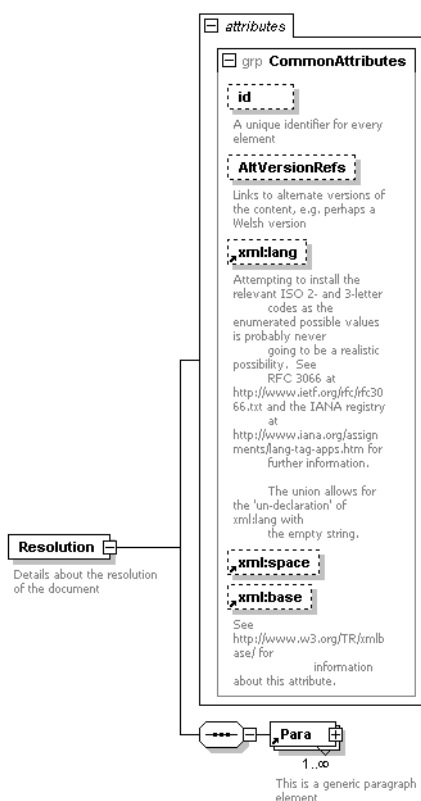
```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>1994 No. 631</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Parliament</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title/>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <Resolution>
      <Para>
        <Text>Resolution of the House of Commons, dated 4th March 1994, passed in pursuance of the
        <Citation id="c00101" Class="ukpga" Year="1948" Number="36">House of Commons Members' Fund Act
        1948</Citation>, <CitationSubRef id="c00102" CitationRef="c00101">s.3</CitationSubRef> (11 and 12
        Geo.6 c.36) and the <Citation id="c00103" Class="ukpga" Year="1981" Number="0007">House of Commons
        Members' Fund and Parliamentary Pensions Act 1981</Citation>, <CitationSubRef id="c00104"
        CitationRef="c00103">s.2</CitationSubRef> (<Citation id="c00002" Class="ukpga" Year="1981"
        Number="0007">1981 c. 7</Citation>).</Text>
      </Para>
    </Resolution>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: SI 1996 0631

### Example image



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Para**

used by element **SecondaryPreamble**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

source

```

<xsd:element name="Resolution">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Details about the resolution of the document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="Para" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```



## RoyalPresence

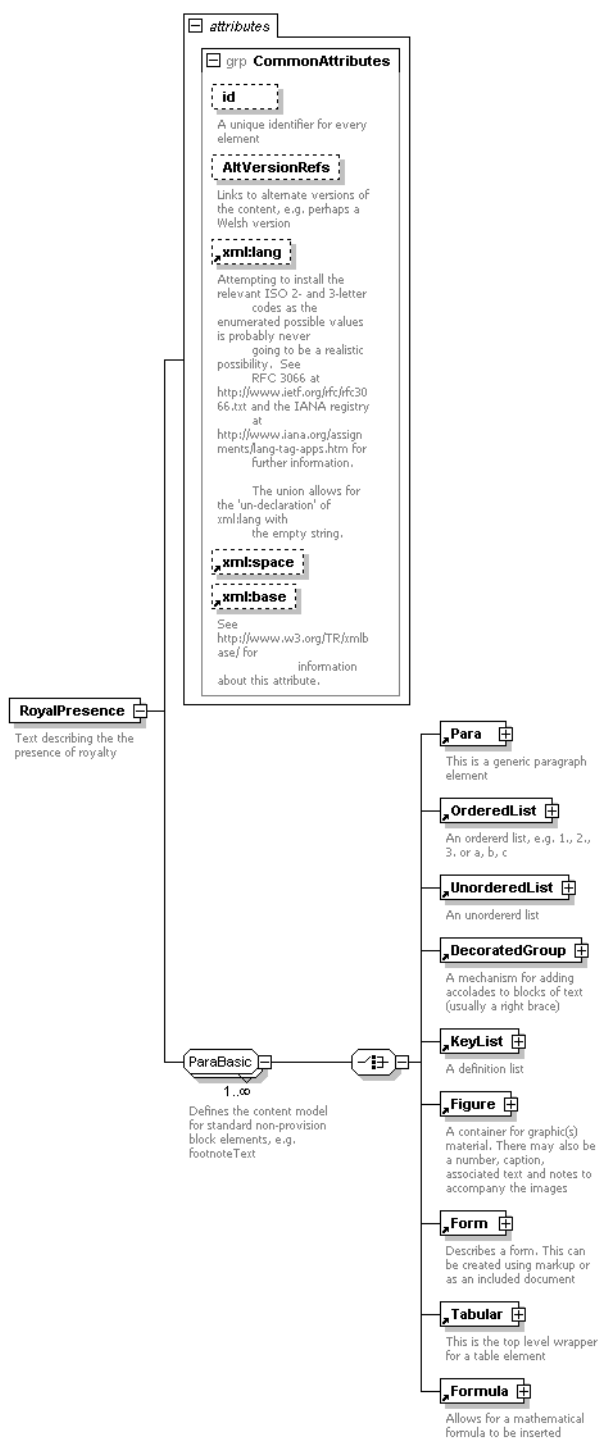
This contains text indicating the presence of royalty or a representative of royalty.

### Example code

```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>1988 No. 2253</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Parliament</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Ministerial and other Salaries Order 1988</Title>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>21st December 1988</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force</Text>
    <DateText>1st January 1989</DateText>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <RoyalPresence>
      <Para>
        <Text>At the Court at Buckingham Palace, the 21st day of December 1988</Text>
        <Text>Present,</Text>
        <Text>The Queen's Most Excellent Majesty in Council</Text>
      </Para>
    </RoyalPresence>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>Whereas a draft of this Order has been approved by resolution of each House of
Parliament:</Text>
      </Para>
      <Para>
        <Text>Now, therefore, Her Majesty, in pursuance of section 1(4) of the Ministerial and other
Salaries Act 1975<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/>, is pleased, by and with the advice of Her Privy
Council, to order, and it is hereby ordered, as follows:</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: SI 1988 2253

diagram

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula**used by element **SecondaryPreamble**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

```
source <xsd:element name="RoyalPresence">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Text describing the the presence of royalty</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:group ref="ParaBasic" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## SecondaryPrelims

A container for the preliminary matter in the secondary legislation document.

### Example code

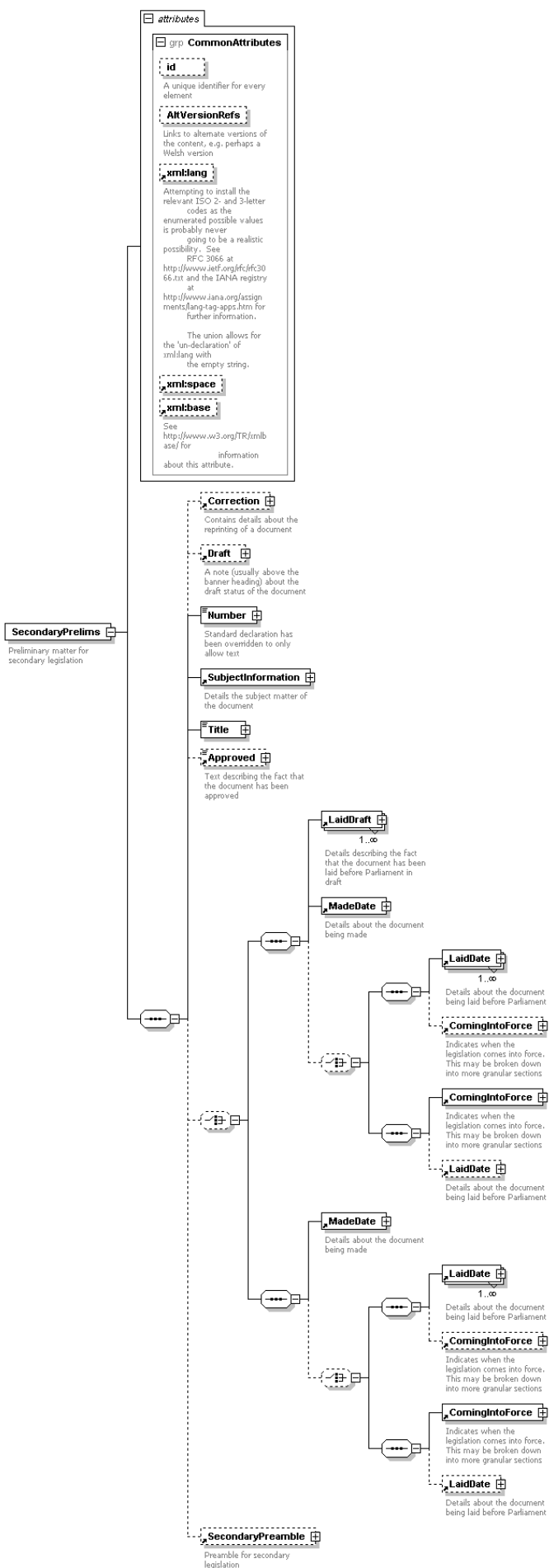
```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>1999 No. 3320</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Constitutional Law</Title>
    </Subject>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Devolution, Scotland</Title>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Scotland Act 1998 (Agency Arrangements) (Specification) (No. 2) Order 1999</Title>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>14th December 1999</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <LaidDate>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament</Text>
    <DateText>22nd December 1999</DateText>
  </LaidDate>
  <LaidDate>
    <Text>Laid before the Scottish Parliament</Text>
    <DateText>22nd December 1999</DateText>
  </LaidDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force</Text>
    <DateText>1st February 2000</DateText>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <RoyalPresence>
      <Para>
        <Text>At the Court at Buckingham Palace, the 14th day of December 1999</Text>
        <Text>Present,</Text>
        <Text>The Queen's Most Excellent Majesty in Council</Text>
      </Para>
    </RoyalPresence>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>Her Majesty, in exercise of the powers conferred upon Her by sections 93(3) and 113 of the
        Scotland Act 1998<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/>, and of all other powers enabling Her in that behalf, is
        pleased, by and with the advice of Her Privy Council to order, and it is hereby ordered, as
        follows:</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: SI 1999 3320

## Example image

S T A T U T O R Y   I N S T R U M E N T S	
<b>1999 No. 3320</b>	
<b>CONSTITUTIONAL LAW</b>	
<b>DEVOLUTION, SCOTLAND</b>	
The Scotland Act 1998 (Agency Arrangements) (Specification) (No. 2) Order 1999	
<i>Made</i>	<i>14th December 1999</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>	<i>22nd December 1999</i>
<i>Laid before the Scottish Parliament</i>	<i>22nd December 1999</i>
<i>Coming into force</i>	<i>1st February 2000</i>
At the Court at Buckingham Palace, the 14th day of December 1999	
Present,	
The Queen's Most Excellent Majesty in Council	

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Correction Draft Number SubjectInformation Title Approved LaidDraft MadeDate LaidDate ComingIntoForce  
SecondaryPreamble**

used by element **Secondary**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

```

source <xsd:element name="SecondaryPrelims">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Preliminary matter for secondary legislation</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="Correction" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Draft" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element name="Number" type="BasicStringStructure">
        <xsd:annotation>
          <xsd:documentation>Standard declaration has been overridden to only allow
text</xsd:documentation>
        </xsd:annotation>
      </xsd:element>
      <xsd:element ref="SubjectInformation"/>
      <xsd:element name="Title" type="InlineRestrictedStructure"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Approved" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:choice minOccurs="0">
        <xsd:sequence>
          <xsd:element ref="LaidDraft" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
          <xsd:element ref="MadeDate"/>
          <xsd:choice minOccurs="0">
            <xsd:sequence>
              <xsd:element ref="LaidDate" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
              <xsd:element ref="ComingIntoForce" minOccurs="0"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:sequence>
              <xsd:element ref="ComingIntoForce"/>
              <xsd:element ref="LaidDate" minOccurs="0"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
          </xsd:choice>
        </xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:sequence>
          <xsd:element ref="MadeDate"/>
          <xsd:choice minOccurs="0">
            <xsd:sequence>
              <xsd:element ref="LaidDate" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
              <xsd:element ref="ComingIntoForce" minOccurs="0"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:sequence>
              <xsd:element ref="ComingIntoForce"/>
              <xsd:element ref="LaidDate" minOccurs="0"/>
            </xsd:sequence>
          </xsd:choice>
        </xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:choice>
          <xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:element ref="SecondaryPreamble" minOccurs="0"/>
          </xsd:sequence>
          <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
        </xsd:choice>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:sequence>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## SecondaryPrelims/Number

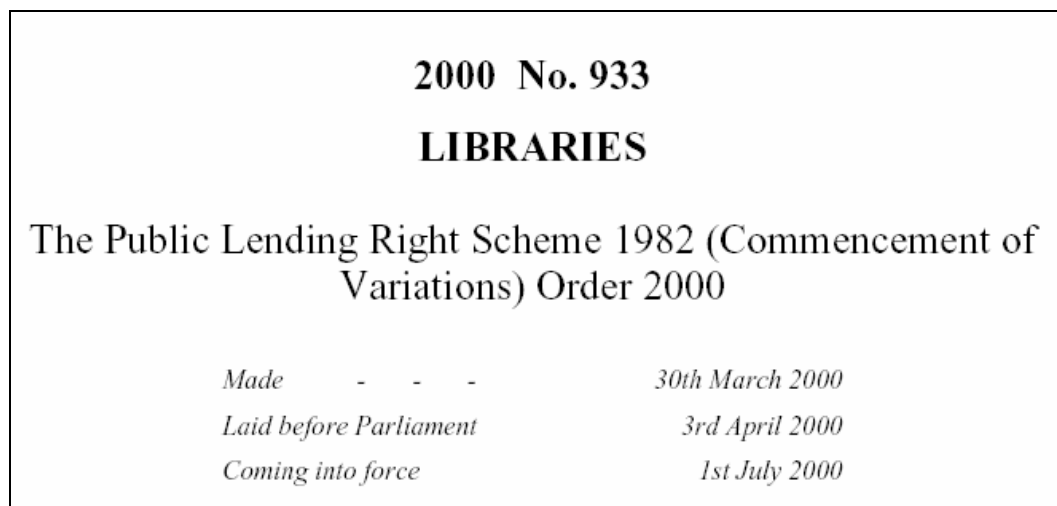
The number of the legislation document. This is the full year/number combination as printed in the original hardcopy.

### Example code

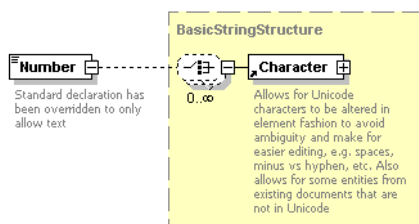
```
<Secondary>
  <SecondaryPrelims>
    <Number>2000 No. 933</Number>
    <SubjectInformation>
      <Subject>
        <Title>Libraries</Title>
      </Subject>
    </SubjectInformation>
    <Title>The Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 (Commencement of Variations) Order 2000</Title>
    <MadeDate>
      <Text>Made</Text>
      <DateText>30th March 2000</DateText>
    </MadeDate>
```

Ref: SI 2000 0933

### Example image



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type **BasicStringStructure**

properties  
 isRef 0  
 content complex  
 mixed true

children **Character**

used by elements **Appendix Chapter Figure Form FragmentNumber Group Part Pblock PsubBlock Schedule Tabular**



```
source <xsd:element name="Number" type="BasicStringStructure">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Standard declaration has been overridden to only allow text</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
</xsd:element>
```

## SecondaryPrelims/Title

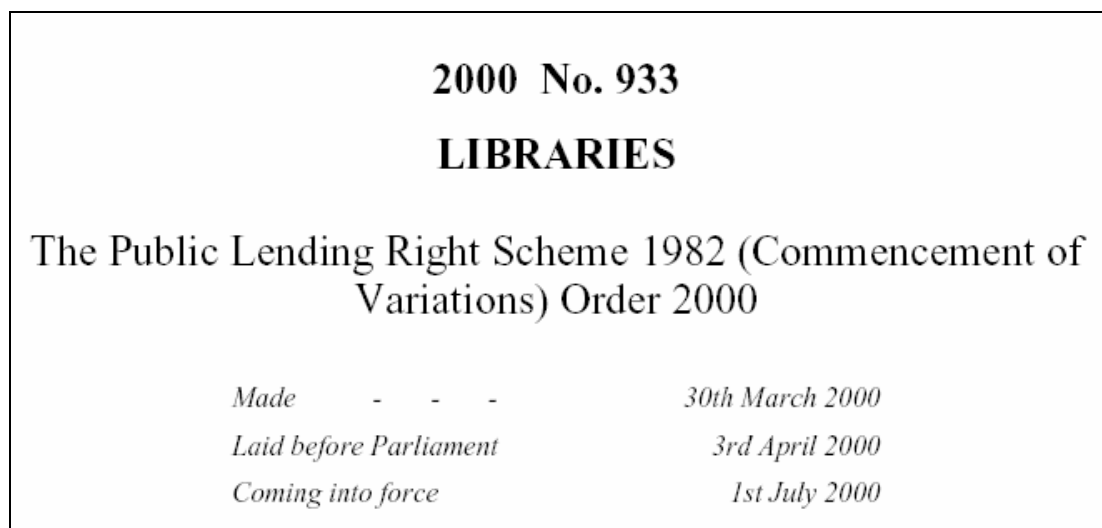
The title of the document.

### Example code

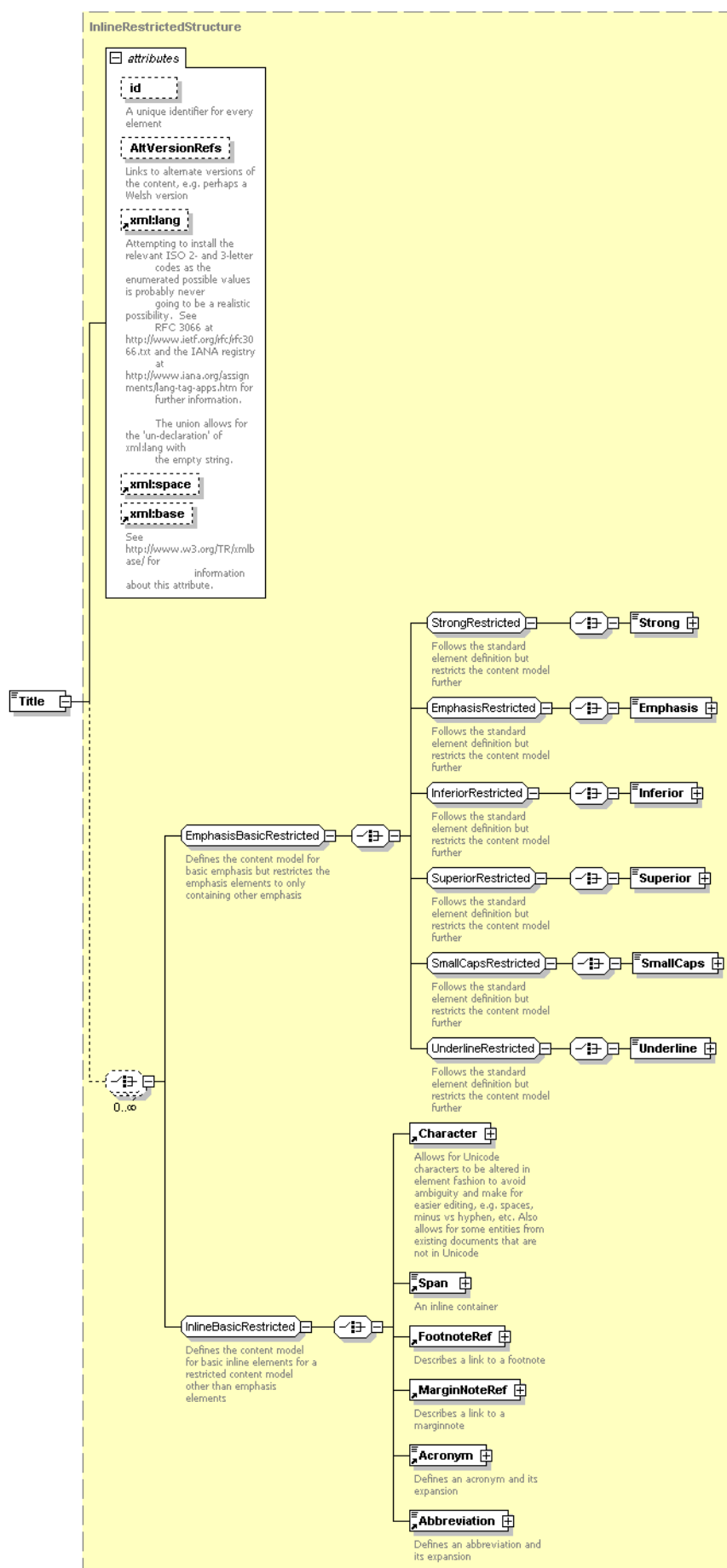
```
<Secondary>
  <SecondaryPrelims>
    <Number>2000 No. 933</Number>
    <SubjectInformation>
      <Subject>
        <Title>Libraries</Title>
      </Subject>
    </SubjectInformation>
    <Title>The Public Lending Right Scheme 1982 (Commencement of Variations) Order 2000</Title>
    <MadeDate>
      <Text>Made</Text>
      <DateText>30th March 2000</DateText>
    </MadeDate>
```

Ref: SI 2000 0933

### Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
type	InlineRestrictedStructure				
properties	isRef	0			
	content	complex			
	mixed	true			
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	elements	Chapter Chapter EarlierOrders ExplanatoryNotes Figure FragmentTitle Group Group Notes P1group P2group P3group Part Part Pblock Pblock PsubBlock PsubBlock Schedules SubjectInformation/Subject Tabular TitleBlock			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<xsd:element name="Title" type="InlineRestrictedStructure"/>				

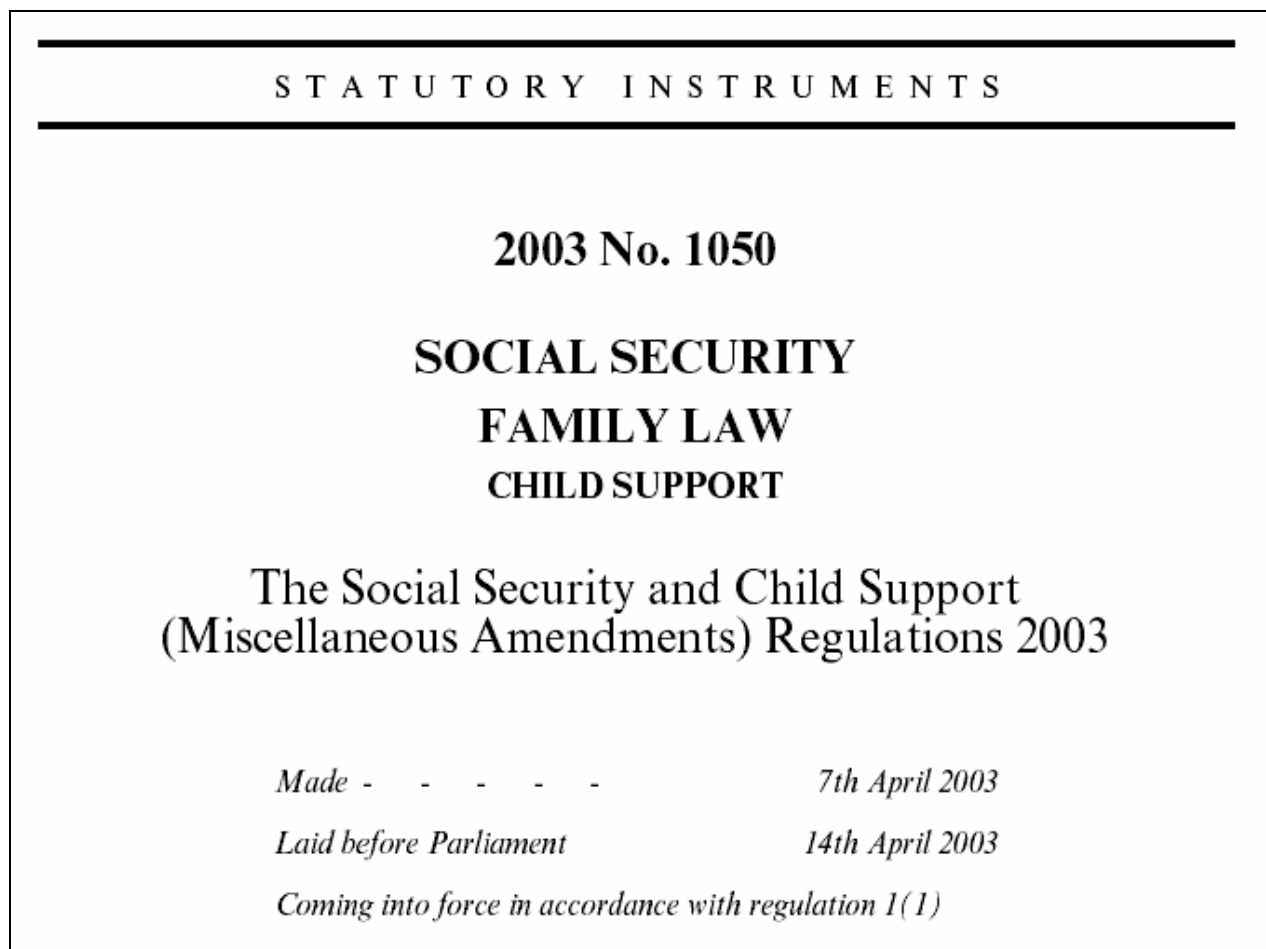
## SubjectInformation

A container for a list of subjects indicating the areas of law or administration to which it belongs. This element is only used in secondary legislation.

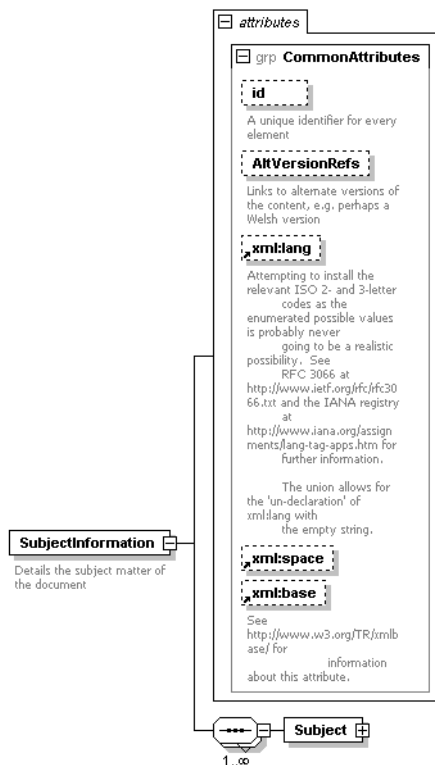
### Example code

```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>2003 No. 1050</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Social Security</Title>
    </Subject>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Family Law</Title>
      <Subtitle>Child Support</Subtitle>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Social Security and Child Support (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003</Title>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>7th April 2003</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <LaidDate>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament</Text>
    <DateText>14th April 2003</DateText>
  </LaidDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force in accordance with regulation 1(1)</Text>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>The Secretary of State for Work and Pensions, in exercise of the powers conferred upon him
        by sections 17(3) and (5) and 54 of the Child Support Act 1991<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/> sections
        5(1)(hh), (i) and (j), 189(1) and (4) and 191 of the Social Security Administration Act
        1992<FootnoteRef Ref="f00002"/> sections 9(1), 10(3) and (6) and 84 of the Social Security Act
        1998<FootnoteRef Ref="f00003"/> and paragraphs 4(4) and (6), 10(1) and 23(1) of Schedule 7 to the
        Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000<FootnoteRef Ref="f00004"/>, and of all other
        powers enabling him in that behalf, after agreement by the Social Security Advisory Committee that
        proposals to make these Regulations should not be referred to it<FootnoteRef Ref="f00005"/> and so
        far as they concern housing benefit and council tax benefit after consultation with organisations
        appearing to the Secretary of State to be representative of the authorities concerned<FootnoteRef
        Ref="f00006"/>, hereby makes the following Regulations:</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1050



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties content complex

children **Subject**

used by element **SecondaryPrelims**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

source

```

<xsd:element name="SubjectInformation">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Details the subject matter of the document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <xsd:element name="Subject">
        <xsd:complexType>
          <xsd:sequence>
            <xsd:element ref="Title" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            <xsd:element ref="Subtitle" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
          </xsd:sequence>
          <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
        </xsd:complexType>
      </xsd:element>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

## SubjectInformation/Subject

An area of law or administration to which the document belongs. This element is only used in secondary legislation.

The title must be the same as the main title under which the enabling power is described in the *Index to Government Orders*. Where the enabling power appears in the Index under more than one main heading all relevant headings must be included. Where the legislation is of limited extent a suffix indicating thus should be added. e.g. Housing, England and Wales.

Where there are subtitles in the Index it may be appropriate to include these.

Note that this element is designed to recreate the printed copy. Subject information is also held as metadata.

For a definitive definition of the use of subject headings please see *Statutory Instrument Practice*, 3rd edition (June 2003), section 2.3.6 (Subject headings)

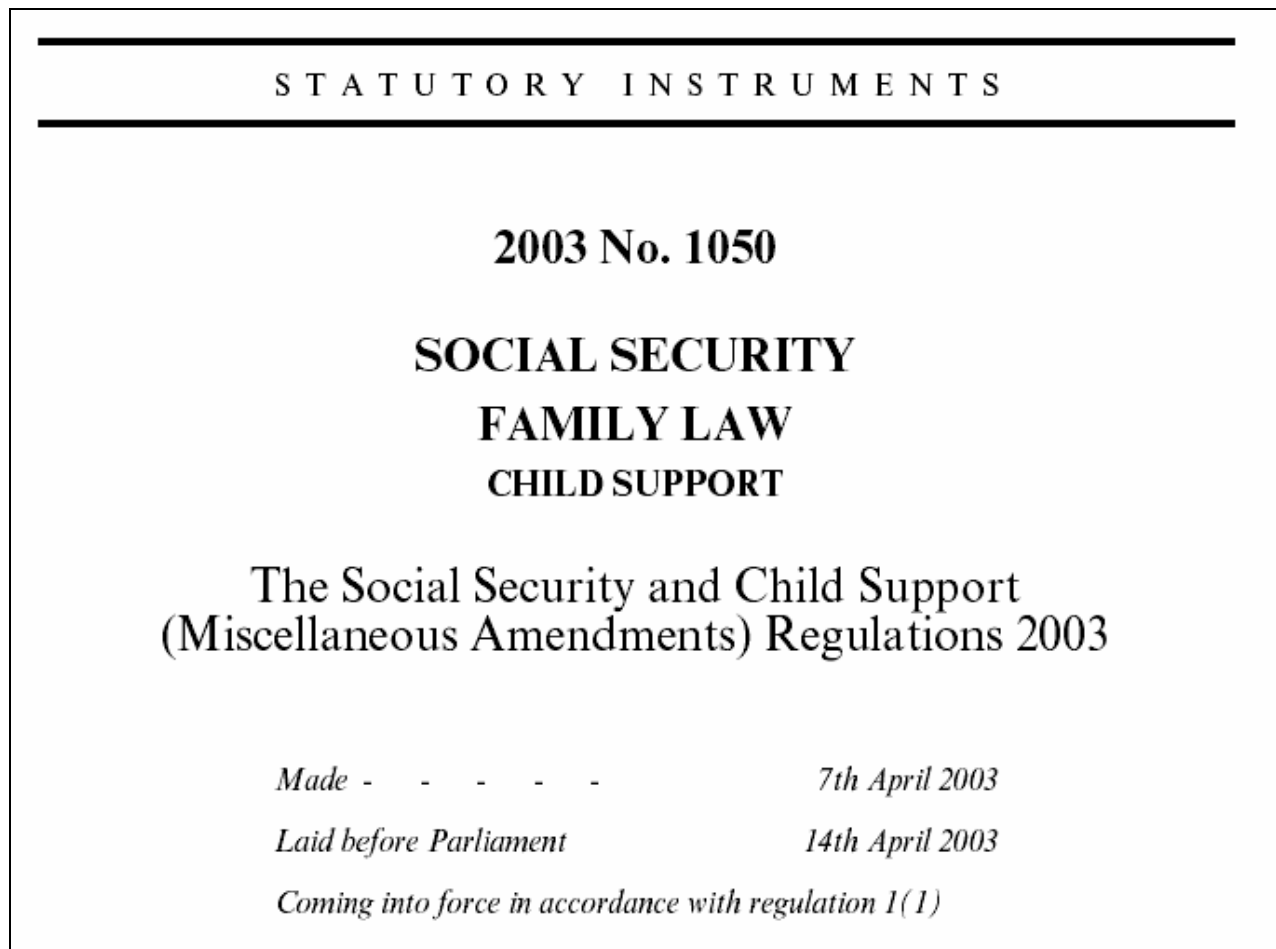
### Example code

```
<SecondaryPrelims>
  <Number>2003 No. 1050</Number>
  <SubjectInformation>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Social Security</Title>
    </Subject>
    <Subject>
      <Title>Family Law</Title>
      <Subtitle>Child Support</Subtitle>
    </Subject>
  </SubjectInformation>
  <Title>The Social Security and Child Support (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2003</Title>
  <MadeDate>
    <Text>Made</Text>
    <DateText>7th April 2003</DateText>
  </MadeDate>
  <LaidDate>
    <Text>Laid before Parliament</Text>
    <DateText>14th April 2003</DateText>
  </LaidDate>
  <ComingIntoForce>
    <Text>Coming into force in accordance with regulation 1(1)</Text>
  </ComingIntoForce>
  <SecondaryPreamble>
    <EnactingText>
      <Para>
        <Text>The Secretary of State for Work and Pensions, in exercise of the powers conferred upon him
        by sections 17(3) and (5) and 54 of the Child Support Act 1991<FootnoteRef Ref="f00001"/> sections
        5(1)(hh), (i) and (j), 189(1) and (4) and 191 of the Social Security Administration Act
        1992<FootnoteRef Ref="f00002"/> sections 9(1), 10(3) and (6) and 84 of the Social Security Act
        1998<FootnoteRef Ref="f00003"/> and paragraphs 4(4) and (6), 10(1) and 23(1) of Schedule 7 to the
        Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000<FootnoteRef Ref="f00004"/>, and of all other
        powers enabling him in that behalf, after agreement by the Social Security Advisory Committee that
        proposals to make these Regulations should not be referred to it<FootnoteRef Ref="f00005"/> and so
        far as they concern housing benefit and council tax benefit after consultation with organisations
        appearing to the Secretary of State to be representative of the authorities concerned<FootnoteRef
        Ref="f00006"/>, hereby makes the following Regulations:</Text>
      </Para>
    </EnactingText>
  </SecondaryPreamble>
</SecondaryPrelims>
```

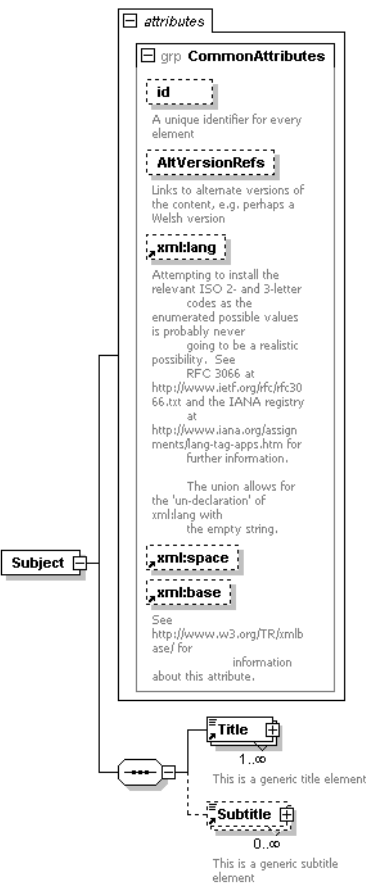
Ref: SI 2003 1050



Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	isRef	0				
	content	complex				
children	Title Subtitle					
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Subject"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Title" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Subtitle" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## DateSigned

A container for holding the signatures to a document or part of a document. The <DateText> element holds the information in literal form as this may vary from document to document.

### Date

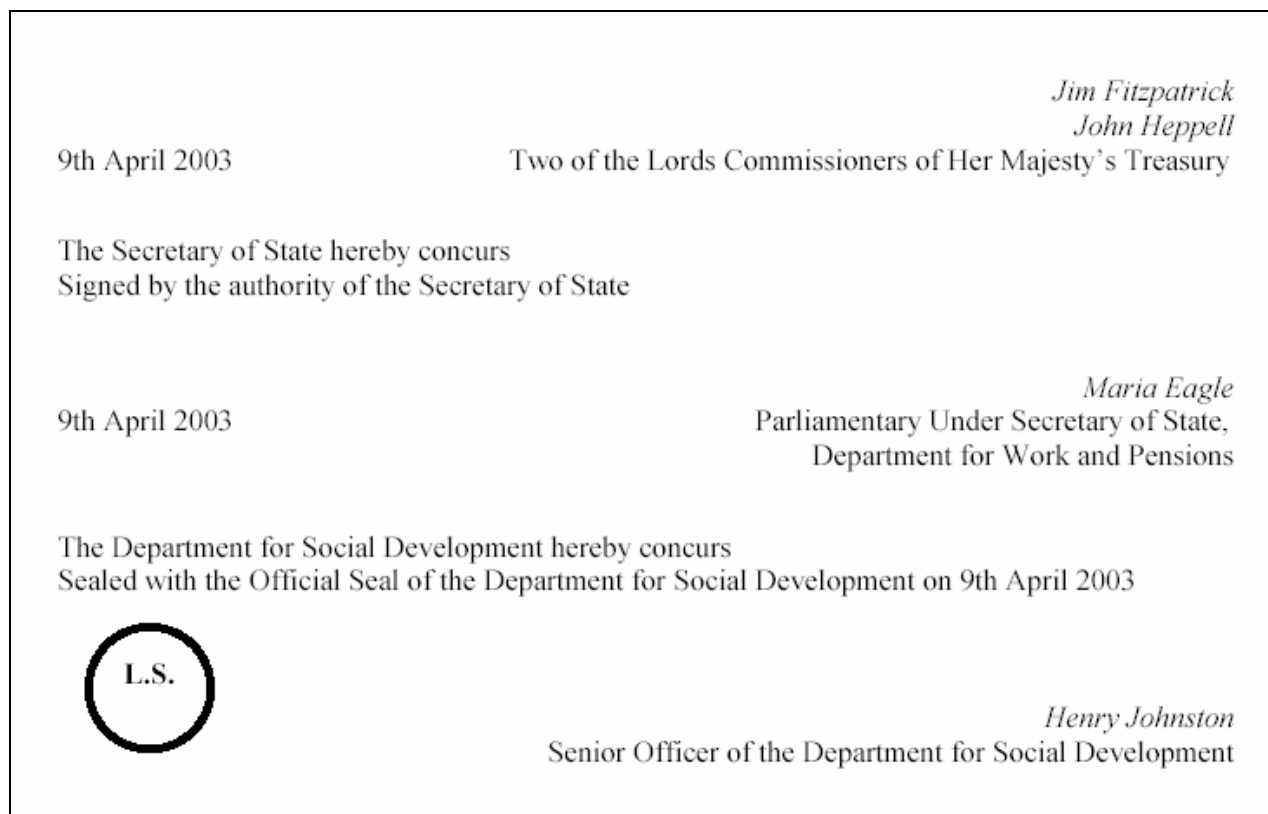
The date in schema date type format.

### Example code

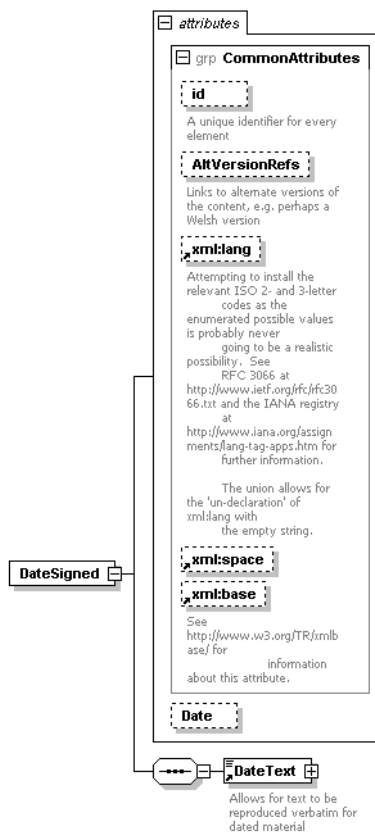
```
<SignedSection>
  <Signatory>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>Jim Fitzpatrick</PersonName>
      <PersonName>John Heppell</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Two of the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury</JobTitle>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-09">
        <DateText>9th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
  <Signatory>
    <Para>
      <Text>The Secretary of State hereby concurs</Text>
    </Para>
    <Para>
      <Text>Signed by the authority of the Secretary of State</Text>
    </Para>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>Maria Eagle</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Parliamentary Under Secretary of State</JobTitle>
      <Department>Department for Work and Pensions</Department>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-09">
        <DateText>9th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
  <Signatory>
    <Para>
      <Text>The Department for Social Development hereby concurs</Text>
    </Para>
    <Para>
      <Text>Sealed with the Official Seal of the Department for Social Development on 9th April
2003</Text>
    </Para>
    <Signee>
      <LSseal Date="2003-04-09"/>
      <PersonName>Henry Johnston</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Senior Officer of the Department for Social Development</JobTitle>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
</SignedSection>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1059

## Example image



diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content	complex				
children	<b>DateText</b>					
used by	element	<b>Signee</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>				
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	Date	<b>xsd:date</b>				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="DateSigned"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="DateText"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Date" type="xsd:date"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

### LSseal

Some signatories use a seal as a mark of signature. This element allows for an image to be inserted as a representation of the seal.

### ResourceRef

A cross-reference to a resource. This allows for a seal image to be referenced if the default image is not to be used.

### Date


The date when the seal was applied to the document. This attribute is in schema date type format. It is a substitute for the <DateSigned> element.

### Example code

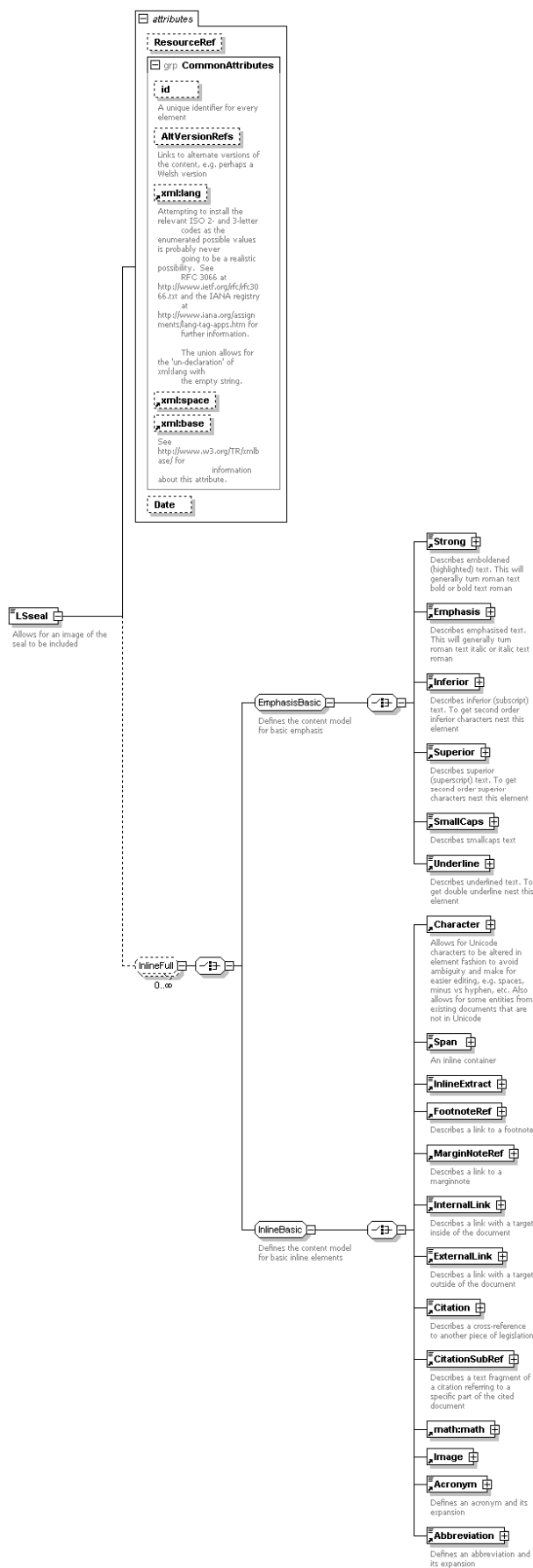
```
<SignedSection>
  <Signatory>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>Jim Fitzpatrick</PersonName>
      <PersonName>John Heppell</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Two of the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury</JobTitle>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-09">
        <DateText>9th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
  <Signatory>
    <Para>
      <Text>The Secretary of State hereby concurs</Text>
    </Para>
    <Para>
      <Text>Signed by the authority of the Secretary of State</Text>
    </Para>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>Maria Eagle</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Parliamentary Under Secretary of State</JobTitle>
      <Department>Department for Work and Pensions</Department>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-09">
        <DateText>9th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
  <Signatory>
    <Para>
      <Text>The Department for Social Development hereby concurs</Text>
    </Para>
    <Para>
      <Text>Sealed with the Official Seal of the Department for Social Development on 9th April
2003</Text>
    </Para>
    <Signee>
      <LSseal Date="2003-04-09"/>
      <PersonName>Henry Johnston</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Senior Officer of the Department for Social Development</JobTitle>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
</SignedSection>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1059

Example image

9th April 2003	<i>Jim Fitzpatrick</i> <i>John Heppell</i> Two of the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury
The Secretary of State hereby concurs Signed by the authority of the Secretary of State	
9th April 2003	<i>Maria Eagle</i> Parliamentary Under Secretary of State, Department for Work and Pensions
The Department for Social Development hereby concurs Sealed with the Official Seal of the Department for Social Development on 9th April 2003	
	<i>Henry Johnston</i> Senior Officer of the Department for Social Development

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>



properties	content mixed	complex true					
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation</b>						
used by	element	<b>Signee</b>					
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed		
	ResourceRef	<b>xsd:string</b>					
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>					
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>					
	lang						
	space						
	base						
	Date	<b>xsd:date</b>					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="LSseal"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Allows for an image of the seal to be included&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineFull" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="ResourceRef" type="xsd:string"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Date" type="xsd:date"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>						

### Signatory

A signatory to the document. There may be some lead-in text to the people signing. The actual signatures may consist of names, job titles or seals: or a combination of the three.

### Date

Allows for a date within the signatory text to be held. This attribute is in W3 schema date type format and should be in the form yyyy-mm-dd, where yyyy is the year, mm is the month padded to two digits and dd is the day padded to two digits.

### Example code

```
<SignedSection>
  <Signatory>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>Jim Fitzpatrick</PersonName>
      <PersonName>John Heppell</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Two of the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury</JobTitle>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-09">
        <DateText>9th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
  <Signatory>
    <Para>
      <Text>The Secretary of State hereby concurs</Text>
    </Para>
    <Para>
      <Text>Signed by the authority of the Secretary of State</Text>
    </Para>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>Maria Eagle</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Parliamentary Under Secretary of State</JobTitle>
      <Department>Department for Work and Pensions</Department>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-09">
        <DateText>9th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
  <Signatory>
    <Para>
      <Text>The Department for Social Development hereby concurs</Text>
    </Para>
    <Para>
      <Text>Sealed with the Official Seal of the Department for Social Development on 9th April
2003</Text>
    </Para>
    <Signee>
      <LSseal Date="2003-04-09"/>
      <PersonName>Henry Johnston</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Senior Officer of the Department for Social Development</JobTitle>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
</SignedSection>
```

Ref: SI 2003 1059



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
properties	content complex					
children	Para Signee					
used by	element	SignedSection				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	Date	xsd:date	optional			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="Signatory"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The person(s) signing-off the document. A group of signees may have lead-in text&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Para" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Signee" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="Date" type="xsd:date" use="optional"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## SignedSection

A container for holding the signatures to a document or part of a document. This element only applies to secondary legislation.

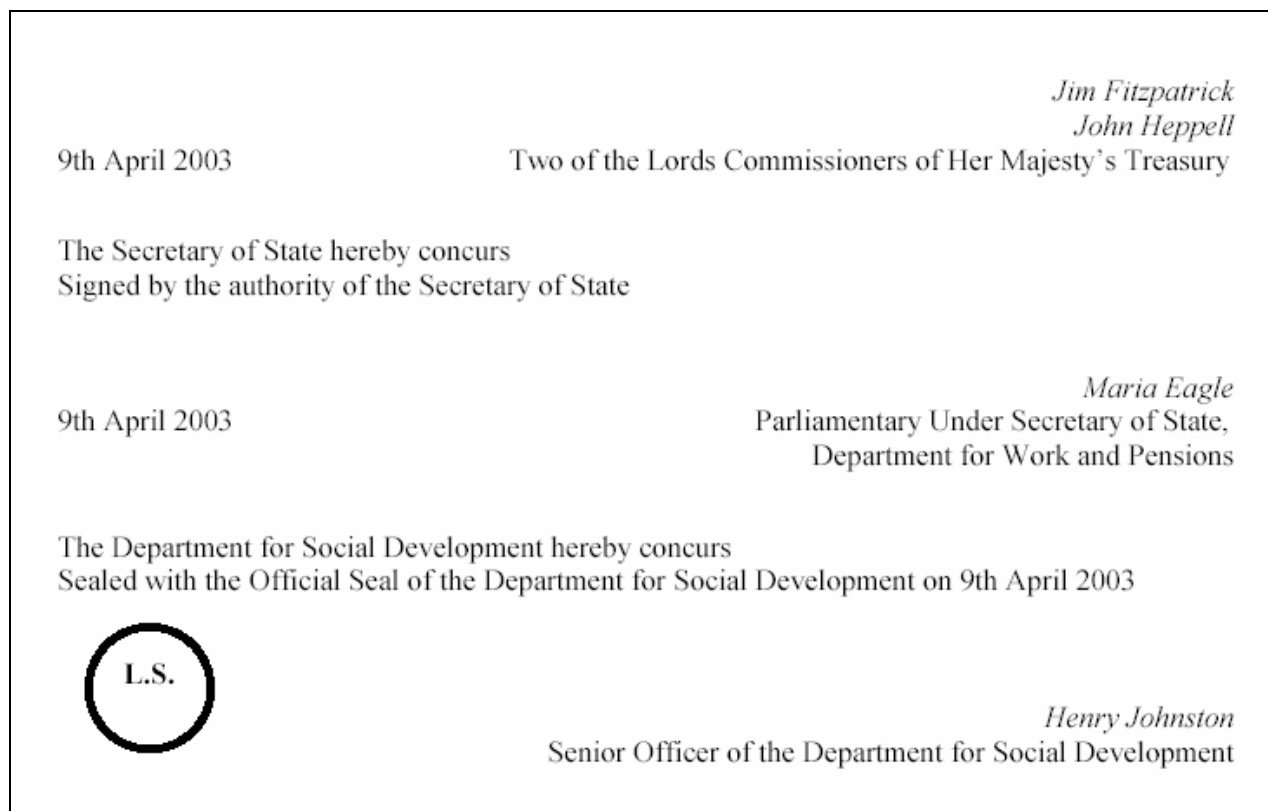
For a definitive definition of the use of signatures please see *Statutory Instrument Practice*, 3rd edition (June 2003), section 2.10 (Multiple signatures and date of making)

### Example code

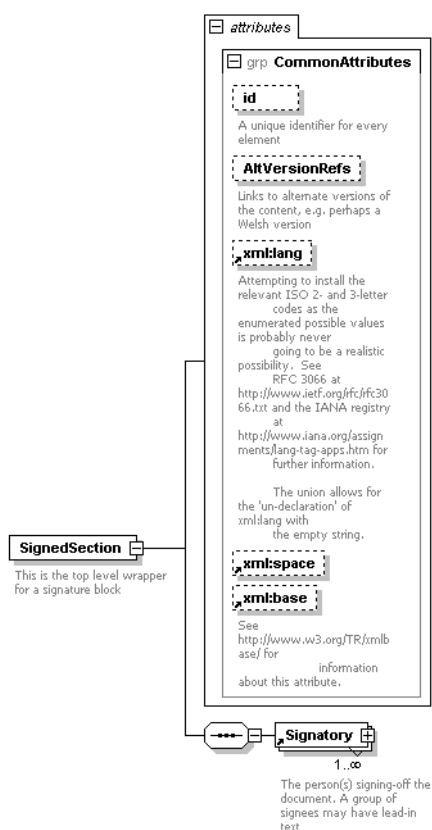
```
<SignedSection>
  <Signatory>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>Jim Fitzpatrick</PersonName>
      <PersonName>John Heppell</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Two of the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury</JobTitle>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-09">
        <DateText>9th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
  <Signatory>
    <Para>
      <Text>The Secretary of State hereby concurs</Text>
    </Para>
    <Para>
      <Text>Signed by the authority of the Secretary of State</Text>
    </Para>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>Maria Eagle</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Parliamentary Under Secretary of State</JobTitle>
      <Department>Department for Work and Pensions</Department>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-09">
        <DateText>9th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
  <Signatory>
    <Para>
      <Text>The Department for Social Development hereby concurs</Text>
    </Para>
    <Para>
      <Text>Sealed with the Official Seal of the Department for Social Development on 9th April
2003</Text>
    </Para>
    <Signee>
      <LSseal Date="2003-04-09"/>
      <PersonName>Henry Johnston</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Senior Officer of the Department for Social Development</JobTitle>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
</SignedSection>
```

Ref: UKSI 2003 1059

## Example image



diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>  
properties content complex

children	Signatory					
used by	elements	Body Schedules				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="SignedSection"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;This is the top level wrapper for a signature block&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;       &lt;xsd:element ref="Signatory" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## Signee

A signatory to the document. There may actually be more than one person's name in some situations. See the first signee element of the example below.


### Example code

```
<SignedSection>
  <Signatory>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>Jim Fitzpatrick</PersonName>
      <PersonName>John Heppell</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Two of the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury</JobTitle>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-09">
        <DateText>9th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
  <Signatory>
    <Para>
      <Text>The Secretary of State hereby concurs</Text>
    </Para>
    <Para>
      <Text>Signed by the authority of the Secretary of State</Text>
    </Para>
    <Signee>
      <PersonName>Maria Eagle</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Parliamentary Under Secretary of State</JobTitle>
      <Department>Department for Work and Pensions</Department>
      <DateSigned Date="2003-04-09">
        <DateText>9th April 2003</DateText>
      </DateSigned>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
  <Signatory Date="2003-04-09">
    <Para>
      <Text>The Department for Social Development hereby concurs</Text>
    </Para>
    <Para>
      <Text>Sealed with the Official Seal of the Department for Social Development on 9th April
2003</Text>
    </Para>
    <Signee>
      <LSseal Date="2003-04-09"/>
      <PersonName>Henry Johnston</PersonName>
      <JobTitle>Senior Officer of the</JobTitle>
      <Department>Department for Social Development</Department>
    </Signee>
  </Signatory>
</SignedSection>
```

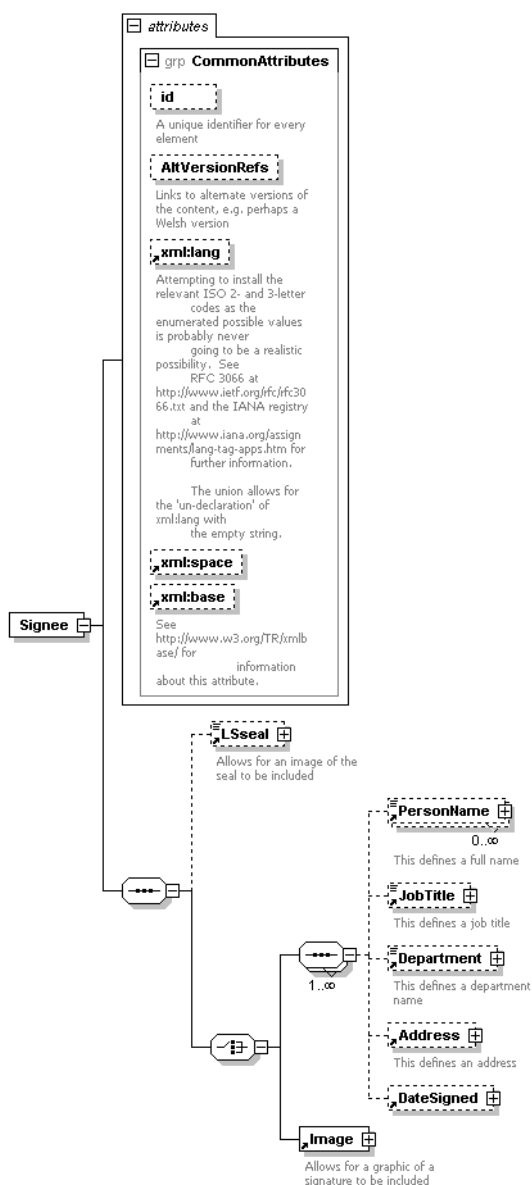
Ref: SI 2003 1059



**Example image**

9th April 2003	<i>Jim Fitzpatrick</i> <i>John Heppell</i> Two of the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury
The Secretary of State hereby concurs Signed by the authority of the Secretary of State	
9th April 2003	<i>Maria Eagle</i> Parliamentary Under Secretary of State, Department for Work and Pensions
The Department for Social Development hereby concurs Sealed with the Official Seal of the Department for Social Development on 9th April 2003	
	<i>Henry Johnston</i> Senior Officer of the Department for Social Development

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties      content      complex

children **LSseal** **PersonName** **JobTitle** **Department** **Address** **DateSigned** **Image**

used by	element	Signatory
---------	---------	-----------

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

```
source <xsd:element name="Signee">
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="LSseal" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:choice>
        <xsd:sequence maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xsd:element ref="PersonName" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
          <xsd:element ref="JobTitle" minOccurs="0"/>
          <xsd:element ref="Department" minOccurs="0"/>
          <xsd:element ref="Address" minOccurs="0"/>
          <xsd:element ref="DateSigned" minOccurs="0"/>
        </xsd:sequence>
        <xsd:element ref="Image">
          <xsd:annotation>
            <xsd:documentation>Allows for a graphic of a signature to be included</xsd:documentation>
          </xsd:annotation>
        </xsd:element>
      </xsd:choice>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

## caption

A caption to a table. This should not be confused with the <title> element in <Tabular>. The caption applies to a table – not a group of tables that the <Tabular> element encapsulates. The example below explains this.

### Example code

```
<Tabular Orientation="portrait">
  <Title>Table of Fees and Uplifts</Title>
  <table cols="6" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
    <caption>(a) Trials – Queen’s Counsel</caption>
    <thead>
      <tr>
        <th>Offence falling within</th>
        <th>Basic fee</th>
        <th>Refresher</th>
        <th>Length of trial uplift: per day</th>
        <th>Evidence uplift: per page</th>
        <th>Witnesses uplift: per witness</th>
      </tr>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <tr>
        <td>Class A</td>
        <td>£1616.50</td>
        <td>£413.50</td>
        <td>£835.50</td>
        <td>£1.44</td>
        <td>£6.12</td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Class B</td>
        <td>£1091.00</td>
        <td>£510.00</td>
        <td>£636.50</td>
        <td>£4.93</td>
        <td>£46.47</td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Class C</td>
        <td>£839.50</td>
        <td>£431.50</td>
        <td>£581.00</td>
        <td>£8.47</td>
        <td>£55.12</td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Class D</td>
        <td>£1550.50</td>
        <td>£413.50</td>
        <td>£574.50</td>
        <td>£2.75</td>
        <td>£18.13</td>
      </tr>
      <tr>
        <td>Class E</td>
        <td>£875.00</td>
        <td>£431.50</td>
        <td>£345.50</td>
        <td>£3.55</td>
        <td>£23.45</td>
      </tr>
    </tbody>
  </table>
</Tabular>
```

```

<tr>
  <td>Class F</td>
  <td>£847.50</td>
  <td>£431.50</td>
  <td>£467.00</td>
  <td>£5.00</td>
  <td>£17.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td>Class G</td>
  <td>£1561.50</td>
  <td>£510.00</td>
  <td>£929.00</td>
  <td>£7.71</td>
  <td>£63.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td>Class H</td>
  <td>£1000.50</td>
  <td>£431.50</td>
  <td>£637.00</td>
  <td>£6.91</td>
  <td>£60.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td>Class I</td>
  <td>£1032.00</td>
  <td>£510.00</td>
  <td>£462.00</td>
  <td>£10.83</td>
  <td>£71.45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
<table cols="6" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
  <caption>(b) Trials – other advocate</caption>
  <thead>
    <tr>
      <th>Offence falling within</th>
      <th>Basic fee</th>
      <th>Refresher</th>
      <th>Length of trial uplift</th>
      <th>Evidence uplift</th>
      <th>Witnesses uplift</th>
    </tr>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
    <tr>
      <td>Class A</td>
      <td>£808.50</td>
      <td>£207.00</td>
      <td>£418.00</td>
      <td>£0.72</td>
      <td>£3.06</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td>Class B</td>
      <td>£311.50</td>
      <td>£145.50</td>
      <td>£182.00</td>
      <td>£1.41</td>
      <td>£13.28</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td>Class C</td>
      <td>£240.00</td>
      <td>£123.50</td>
      <td>£166.00</td>
      <td>£2.42</td>

```

```

        <td>£15.75</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td>Class D</td>
        <td>£446.00</td>
        <td>£145.50</td>
        <td>£282.00</td>
        <td>£1.08</td>
        <td>£7.14</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td>Class E</td>
        <td>£250.00</td>
        <td>£123.50</td>
        <td>£98.50</td>
        <td>£1.02</td>
        <td>£6.70</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td>Class F</td>
        <td>£242.00</td>
        <td>£123.50</td>
        <td>£133.50</td>
        <td>£1.43</td>
        <td>£4.89</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td>Class G</td>
        <td>£446.00</td>
        <td>£145.50</td>
        <td>£265.50</td>
        <td>£2.20</td>
        <td>£18.09</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td>Class H</td>
        <td>£286.00</td>
        <td>£123.50</td>
        <td>£182.00</td>
        <td>£1.97</td>
        <td>£17.19</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td>Class I</td>
        <td>£295.00</td>
        <td>£145.50</td>
        <td>£132.00</td>
        <td>£3.09</td>
        <td>£20.41</td>
    </tr>
</tbody>
</table>
</Tabular>

```

Ref: SI 1996 2655

## Example image

20. For Table C in Part II of Schedule 3 and the notes attached to it, there shall be substituted the following provisions—

“TABLE C

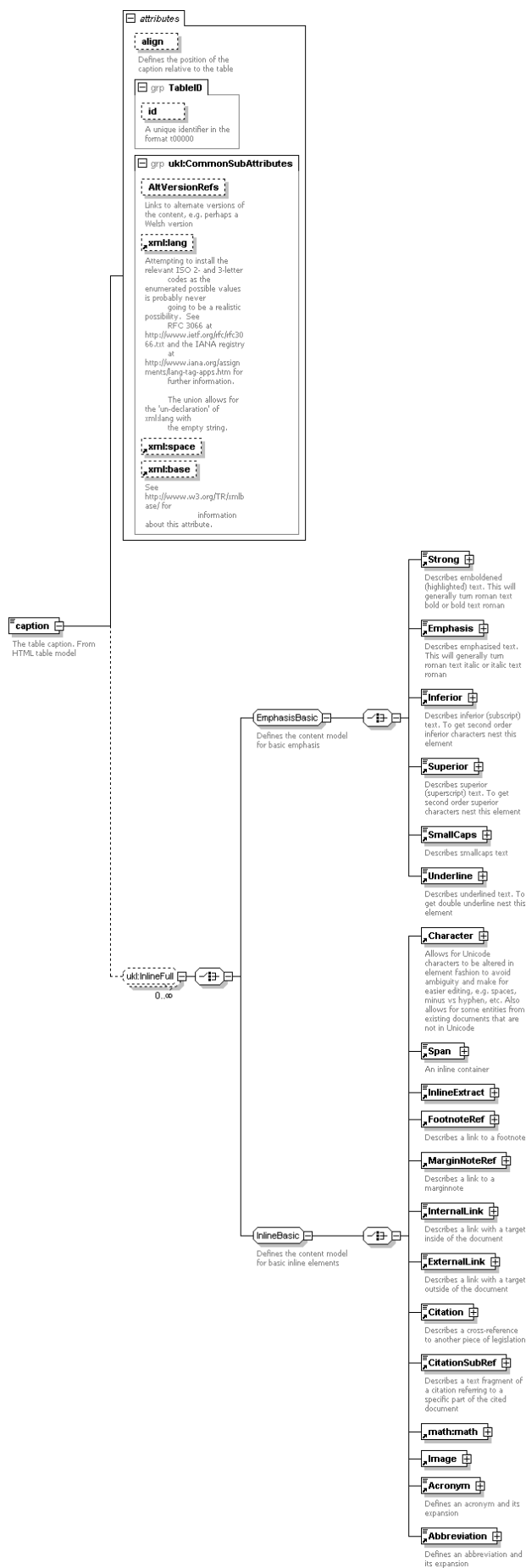
Column 1 <i>Item</i>	Column 2 <i>Parameters</i>	Column 3 <i>Units of Measurement</i>	Column 4 <i>Maximum Concentration</i>
1.	<i>Escherichia coli</i> ( <i>E.coli</i> )	number/250 ml	0/250 ml
2.	Enterococci	number/250 ml	0/250 ml
3.	Colony count 22°C	number/ml	100/ml (notes 1 and 2)
4.	Colony count 37°C	number/ml	20/ml (notes 1 and 3)
5.	<i>Pseudomonas</i> <i>aeruginosa</i>	number/250 ml	0/250 ml

Note 1: The total viable colony count should be measured within 12 hours of bottling, with the sample water being kept at a constant temperature during that 12 hour period. Any increase in the total viable colony count of the water between 12 hours after bottling and the time of sale should not be greater than that normally expected.

Note 2: In 72 hours on agar-agar or an agar-gelatine mixture.

Note 3: In 24 hours on agar-agar.”.

diagram





namespace	http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml					
properties	content mixed	complex true				
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation</b>					
used by	element	<b>table</b>				
attributes	Name align	Type <b>derived by:</b> <b>xsd:string</b> <b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>	Use	Default top	Fixed	
	id	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>				
	AltVersionRefs					
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="caption"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The table caption. From HTML table model&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="ukl:InlineFull" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="align" default="top"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines the position of the caption relative to the table&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;         &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="left"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="right"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="top"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:enumeration value="bottom"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;       &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableID"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="ukl:CommonSubAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>					

## **col**

Derived from the XHTML table model. This element defines information that applies to an entire column of a table.

### **align**

Defines the horizontal alignment of the column. The possible values are:

- inherit
- left
- center
- right
- justify
- char

The default value is 'inherit'. The char value can be used for aligning the contents on a specific character.

### **char**

Defines a character for horizontal alignment of text in the column. This can be very useful for aligning currency amounts, for example.

### **span**

Defines the number of columns this information should apply to.

### **width**

Defines the width of the column(s). This value may be in pixels (px), pt (points), em (Ems of set) or a percentage of the table width.

**Example code**

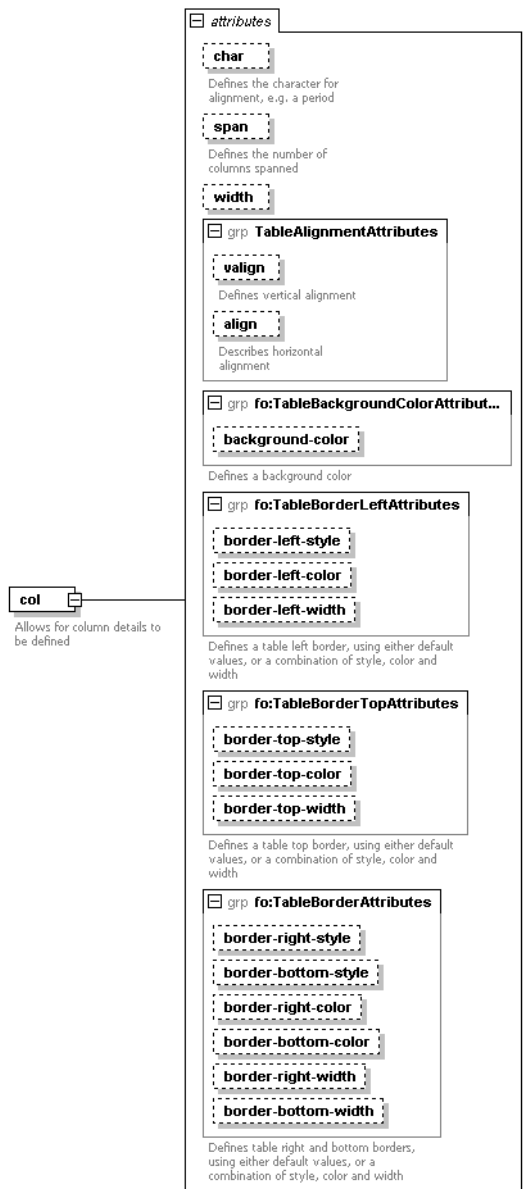
```

<Schedule>
  <Number>Schedule</Number>
  <Reference>Article 2</Reference>
  <ScheduleBody>
    <Tabular Orientation="portrait">
      <table cols="3" fo:border-left-style="solid" fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-right-
style="solid" fo:border-top-style="solid" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
        <col width="50%"/>
        <col width="25%"/>
        <col width="25%"/>
        <thead fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-top-style="solid">
          <tr>
            <th align="left" fo:border-right-style="solid">Column 1</th>
            <th align="left" fo:border-right-style="solid">Column 2</th>
            <th align="left">Column 3</th>
          </tr>
        </thead>
        <tbody>
          <tr>
            <td>Section 18 (asylum-seeker: definition)</td>
            <td>8th January 2003</td>
            <td>For the purpose of sections 55(9) and 70(3) and paragraph 17(1)(b) of Schedule
3<ukl:FootnoteRef Ref="f00004"/>
            </td>
          </tr>
          <tr>
            <td>Section 18 (asylum-seeker: definition)</td>
            <td>10th February 2003</td>
            <td>For the purpose of section 26A(2) of the 1971 Act and section 71(5) of the 2002
Act<ukl:FootnoteRef Ref="f00005"/>
            </td>
          </tr>
        </tbody>
      </table>
    </Tabular>
  </ScheduleBody>

```

Ref: SI 2003 0001

diagram



namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml>  
properties content complex  
used by elements **colgroup table**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	char	derived by: xsd:string			
	span	xsd:positiveInteger		1	
	width	TableWidthType			
	valign	derived by: xsd:string			
	align	derived by: xsd:string		inherit	
	background-color	TableColorType			
	border-left-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-left-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-left-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-top-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-top-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-top-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-right-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-bottom-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-right-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-bottom-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-right-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-bottom-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="col"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Allows for column details to be defined&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Note: HTML charoff attribute is not implemented&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="char"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines the character for alignment, e.g. a period&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;         &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;           &lt;xsd:length value="1"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;       &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="span" type="xsd:positiveInteger" default="1"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines the number of columns spanned&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="width" type="TableWidthType"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableAlignmentAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>				

## **colgroup**

Allows for columns groups that are logically or structurally related to be defined.

## **align**

Defines the horizontal alignment of the column. The possible values are:

- inherit
- left
- center
- right
- justify
- char

The default value is 'inherit'. The char value can be used for aligning the contents on a specific character.

## **char**

Defines a character for horizontal alignment of text in the column. This can be very useful for aligning currency amounts, for example.

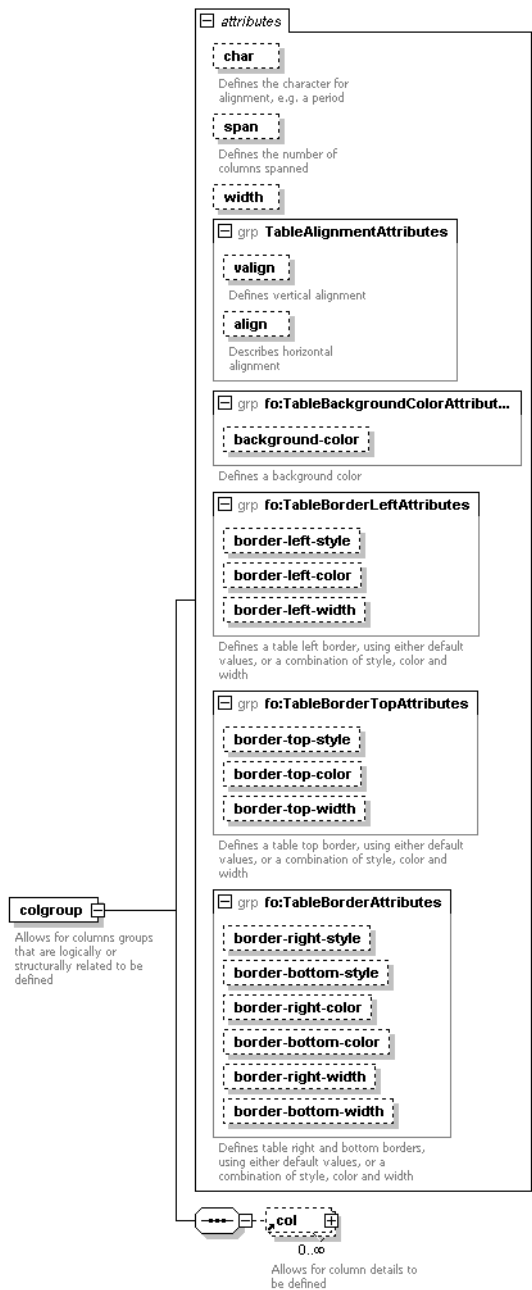
## **span**

Defines the number of columns this information should apply to.

## **width**

Defines the width of the column(s). This value may be in pixels (px), pt (points), em (Ems of set) or a percentage of the table width.

diagram



namespace	http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml
properties	content complex
children	col
used by	element table

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	char	derived by: xsd:string			
	span	xsd:positiveInteger		1	
	width	TableWidthType			
	valign	derived by: xsd:string			
	align	derived by: xsd:string		inherit	
	background-color	TableColorType			
	border-left-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-left-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-left-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-top-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-top-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-top-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-right-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-bottom-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-right-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-bottom-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-right-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-bottom-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	

```

source <xsd:element name="colgroup">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Allows for columns groups that are logically or structurally related to be
defined</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="col" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attribute name="char">
      <xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:documentation>Defines the character for alignment, e.g. a period</xsd:documentation>
      </xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:simpleType>
        <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
          <xsd:length value="1"/>
        </xsd:restriction>
      </xsd:simpleType>
    </xsd:attribute>
    <xsd:attribute name="span" type="xsd:positiveInteger" default="1">
      <xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:documentation>Defines the number of columns spanned</xsd:documentation>
      </xsd:annotation>
    </xsd:attribute>
    <xsd:attribute name="width" type="TableWidthType"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableAlignmentAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```



## table

A table. The basis for the table model is the XHTML table model. There is no equivalent of the style attribute. This has been replaced by attributes that mirror CSS properties as required – these have been taken from the XSL:FO standard where possible.

Please see Appendix B for a list of attributes on table elements.

### Example code

```
<P1>
  <Pnumber>20</Pnumber>
  <Pipara>
    <Text>For Table C in Part II of Schedule 3 and the notes attached to it, there shall be substituted
the following provisions-</Text>
    <BlockAmendment TargetClass="secondary" TargetSubClass="regulation" Context="schedule"
Format="default">
      <Tabular Orientation="portrait">
        <Number>Table C</Number>
        <table cols="4" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
          <col width="15%"/>
          <col width="35%"/>
          <col width="25%"/>
          <col width="25%"/>
          <thead fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-left-style="solid" fo:border-right-
style="solid" fo:border-top-style="solid">
            <tr>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid">Column 1</th>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid">Column 2</th>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid">Column 3</th>
              <th>Column 4</th>
            </tr>
            <tr>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid">Item</th>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid">Parameters</th>
              <th fo:border-right-style="solid">Units of Measurement</th>
              <th>Maximum Concentration</th>
            </tr>
          </thead>
          <tfoot>
            <tr>
              <td colspan="4">Note 1: The total viable colony count should be measured within 12 hours of
bottling, with the sample water being kept at a constant temperature during that 12 hour period. Any
increase in the total viable colony count of the water between 12 hours after bottling and the time
of sale should not be greater than that normally expected.</td>
            </tr>
            <tr>
              <td colspan="4">Note 2: In 72 hours on agar-agar or an agar-gelatine mixture.</td>
            </tr>
            <tr>
              <td colspan="4">Note 3: In 24 hours on agar-agar.</td>
            </tr>
          </tfoot>
        <tbody fo:border-bottom-style="solid" fo:border-left-style="solid" fo:border-right-
style="solid" fo:border-top-style="solid">
          <tr>
            <td fo:border-right-style="solid">1.</td>
            <td fo:border-right-style="solid">
              <ukl:Emphasis>Escherichia coli (E.coli)</ukl:Emphasis>
            </td>
            <td fo:border-right-style="solid">number/250 ml</td>
            <td align="center">0/250 ml</td>
          </tr>
```

```
|  |
| --- |
| 2.  Enterococci  number/250 ml  0/250 ml |
| 3.  Colony count 22°C  number/ml  100/ml (notes 1 and 2) |
| 4.  Colony count 37°C  number/ml  20/ml (notes 1 and 3) |
| 5.  Pseudomonas aeruginosa  number/250 ml  0/250 ml |

```

Ref: SI 2003 0666

## Example image

20. For Table C in Part II of Schedule 3 and the notes attached to it, there shall be substituted the following provisions—

“TABLE C

Column 1 <i>Item</i>	Column 2 <i>Parameters</i>	Column 3 <i>Units of Measurement</i>	Column 4 <i>Maximum Concentration</i>
1.	<i>Escherichia coli</i> ( <i>E.coli</i> )	number/250 ml	0/250 ml
2.	Enterococci	number/250 ml	0/250 ml
3.	Colony count 22°C	number/ml	100/ml (notes 1 and 2)
4.	Colony count 37°C	number/ml	20/ml (notes 1 and 3)
5.	<i>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</i>	number/250 ml	0/250 ml

Note 1: The total viable colony count should be measured within 12 hours of bottling, with the sample water being kept at a constant temperature during that 12 hour period. Any increase in the total viable colony count of the water between 12 hours after bottling and the time of sale should not be greater than that normally expected.

Note 2: In 72 hours on agar-agar or an agar-gelatine mixture.

Note 3: In 24 hours on agar-agar.”.

diagram



namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml>

properties	content	complex				
children	caption colgroup col thead tfoot tbody					
used by	elements	BlockAmendment Tabular				
	complexType	BlockExtractStructure				
	group	TableCellLocal				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	cols	xsd:positiveInteger				
	summary	xsd:string				
	width	TableWidthType				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	background-color	TableColorType				
	border-left-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit		
	border-left-color	TableColorType		inherit		
	border-left-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit		
	border-top-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit		
	border-top-color	TableColorType		inherit		
	border-top-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit		
	border-right-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit		
	border-bottom-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit		
	border-right-color	TableColorType		inherit		
	border-bottom-color	TableColorType		inherit		
	border-right-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit		
	border-bottom-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit		
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				

```

source <xsd:element name="table">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>This is the top level of a modified version of XHTML tables</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Note: A restriction from the HTML table model is that tbody is
obligatory</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Note: HTML cellpadding and cellspacing attributes are not
implemented</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Note: It is assumed that the collapsed border model is being implemented, which
allows for column and row borders to be used</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="caption" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:choice minOccurs="0">
        <xsd:element ref="colgroup" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xsd:element ref="col" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xsd:choice>
      <xsd:element ref="thead" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="tfoot" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xsd:element ref="tbody" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attribute name="cols" type="xsd:positiveInteger">
      <xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:documentation>Defines the number of columns in the table. Mainly to ease formatting for
applications</xsd:documentation>
      </xsd:annotation>
    </xsd:attribute>
    <xsd:attribute name="summary" type="xsd:string">
      <xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:documentation>Table summary for accessibility. Conforms with HTML table
model</xsd:documentation>
      </xsd:annotation>
    </xsd:attribute>
    <xsd:attribute name="width" type="TableWidthType"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableXMLAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableID"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

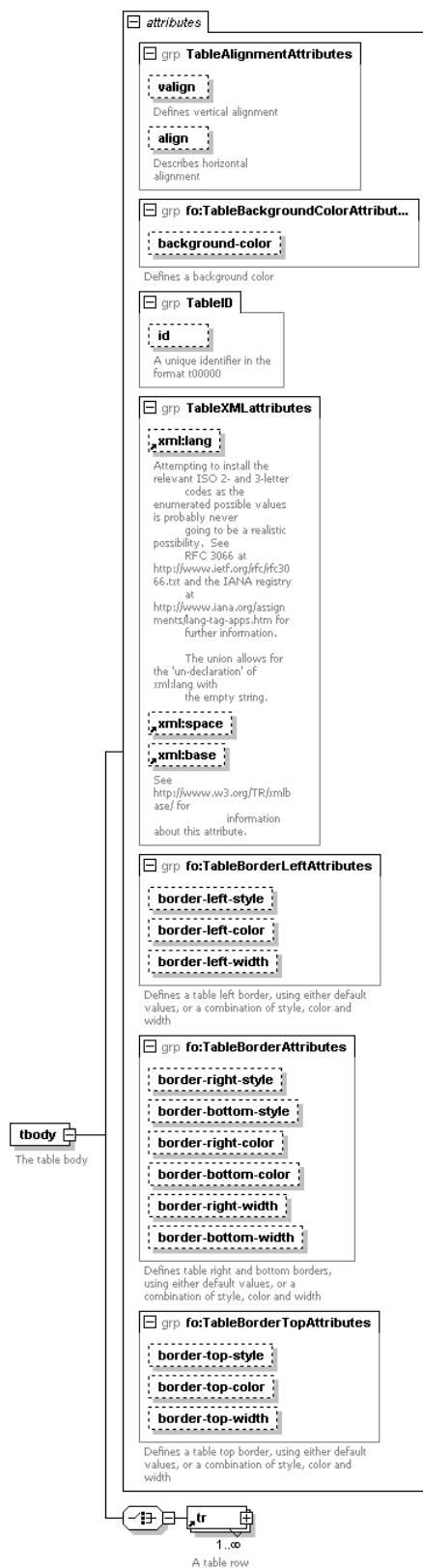
```

## tbody

The body of a table.

Please see Appendix B for a list of attributes on table elements.

diagram



namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml>

properties content complex

children **tr**

used by element **table**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	valign	derived by: xsd:string			
	align	derived by: xsd:string		inherit	
	background-color	TableColorType			
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	border-left-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-left-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-left-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-right-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-bottom-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-right-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-bottom-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-right-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-bottom-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-top-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-top-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-top-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	

```

source <xsd:element name="tbody">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>The table body</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Note: HTML char and charoff attributes are not implemented</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:choice>
      <xsd:element ref="tr" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:choice>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableAlignmentAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableID"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableXMLAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

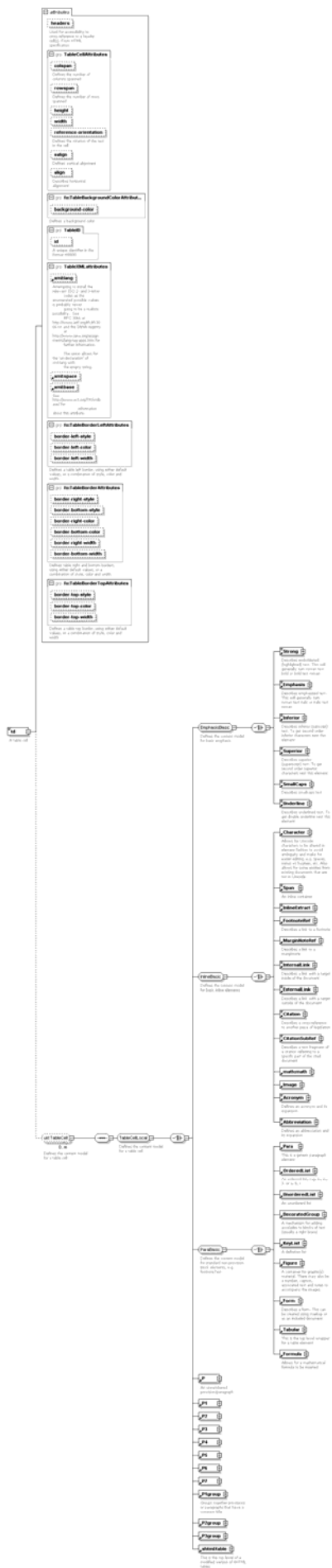
```

## **td**

A table cell.

Please see Appendix B for a list of attributes on table elements.



[illegible]

namespace	http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula P P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6 P7 P1group P2group P3group table</b>				
used by	element	tr			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	headers	xsd:IDREFS			
	colspan	xsd:positiveInteger		1	
	rowspan	xsd:positiveInteger		1	
	height	TableSimpleLengthType			
	width	TableSimpleLengthType			
	reference-orientation	derived by: xsd:string			
	valign	derived by: xsd:string			
	align	derived by: xsd:string		inherit	
	background-color	TableColorType			
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	border-left-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-left-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-left-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-right-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-bottom-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-right-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-bottom-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-right-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-bottom-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-top-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-top-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-top-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="td"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A table cell&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Note: HTML char, charoff and nowrap attributes are not implemented&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="ukl:TableCell" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attribute name="headers" type="xsd:IDREFS"&gt;       &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;         &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Used for accessibility to cross-reference to a header cell(s). From HTML specification&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;       &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableCellAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableID"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableXMLAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

**tfoot**

A container for footnotes or notes in a table.

diagram



namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml>

properties content complex

children **tr**

used by element **table**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	<b>valign</b>	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>			
	<b>align</b>	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>		inherit	
	<b>id</b>	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	<b>lang</b>				
	<b>space</b>				
	<b>base</b>				
	<b>background-color</b>	<b>TableColorType</b>			
	<b>border-left-style</b>	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	<b>border-left-color</b>	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	<b>border-left-width</b>	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	
	<b>border-right-style</b>	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	<b>border-bottom-style</b>	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	<b>border-right-color</b>	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	<b>border-bottom-color</b>	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	<b>border-right-width</b>	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	
	<b>border-bottom-width</b>	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	
	<b>border-top-style</b>	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	<b>border-top-color</b>	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	<b>border-top-width</b>	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	

```

source <xsd:element name="tfoot">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Table footer</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Note: HTML char and charoff attributes are not implemented</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:choice>
      <xsd:element name="tr" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:annotation>
          <xsd:documentation>A table row in tfoot. This has been locally declared to allow
footnotes</xsd:documentation>
        </xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:complexType>
          <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
            <xsd:element name="td">
              <xsd:complexType mixed="true">
                <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
                  <xsd:group ref="ukl:TableFootnoteCell"/>
                </xsd:choice>
                <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableCellAttributes"/>
                <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/>
                <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableID"/>
                <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableXMLAttributes"/>
                <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/>
                <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/>
                <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/>
              </xsd:complexType>
            </xsd:element>
          </xsd:choice>
          <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableID"/>
          <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableXMLAttributes"/>
          <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/>
          <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/>
          <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/>
          <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/>
        </xsd:complexType>
      </xsd:element>
    </xsd:choice>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableAlignmentAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableID"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableXMLAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

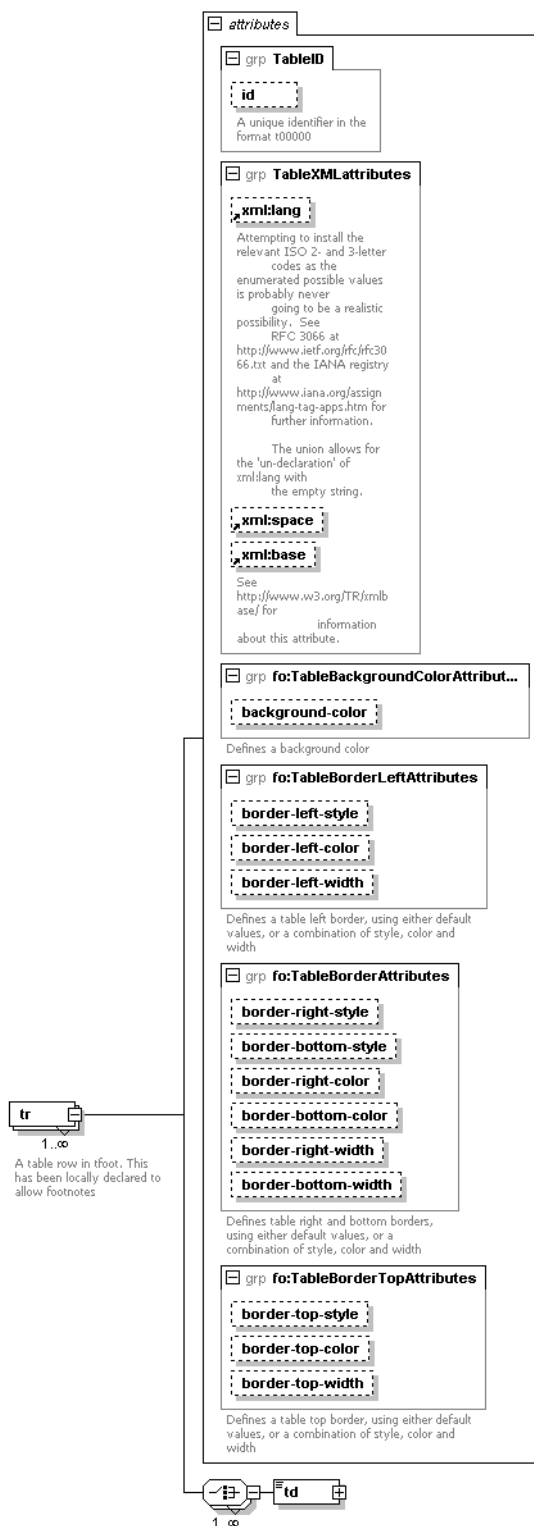
```

## tfoot/tr

A row of table within a table footnote.

Please see Appendix B for a list of attributes on table elements.

diagram



namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml>

properties	isRef	0				
	minOcc	1				
	maxOcc	unbounded				
	content	complex				
children	td					
used by	elements	tbody thead				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	derived by: xsd:ID				
	lang					
	space					
	base					
	background-color	TableColorType				
	border-left-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit		
	border-left-color	TableColorType		inherit		
	border-left-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit		
	border-right-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit		
	border-bottom-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit		
	border-right-color	TableColorType		inherit		
	border-bottom-color	TableColorType		inherit		
	border-right-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit		
	border-bottom-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit		
	border-top-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit		
	border-top-color	TableColorType		inherit		
	border-top-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit		
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:element name="tr" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A table row in tfoot. This has been locally declared to allow     footnotes&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:element name="td"&gt;         &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;           &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;             &lt;xsd:group ref="ukl:TableFootnoteCell"/&gt;           &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;           &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableCellAttributes"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableID"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableXMLAttributes"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/&gt;           &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/&gt;         &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt;       &lt;/xsd:element&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableID"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableXMLAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt; </pre>					

## **tfoot/tr/td**

A table cell in a row in a table footnote.

Please see Appendix B for a list of attributes on table elements.



[illegible]

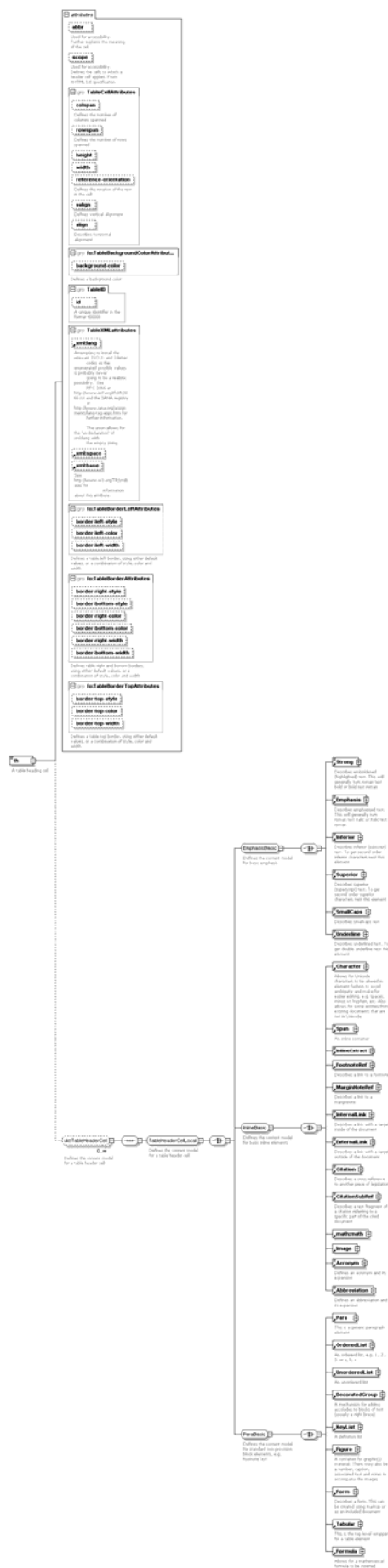
namespace	http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml				
properties	isRef	0			
	content	complex			
	mixed	true			
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula Footnote</b>				
used by	element	tr			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	colspan	xsd:positiveInteger		1	
	rowspan	xsd:positiveInteger		1	
	height	TableSimpleLengthType			
	width	TableSimpleLengthType			
	reference-orientation	derived by: xsd:string			
	valign	derived by: xsd:string			
	align	derived by: xsd:string		inherit	
	background-color	TableColorType			
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	border-left-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-left-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-left-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-right-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-bottom-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-right-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-bottom-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-right-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-bottom-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
	border-top-style	TableBorderStyleType		inherit	
	border-top-color	TableColorType		inherit	
	border-top-width	TableSimpleLengthType		inherit	
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:element name="td"&gt;   &lt;xsd:complexType mixed="true"&gt;     &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;xsd:group ref="ukl:TableFootnoteCell"/&gt;     &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableCellAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableID"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableXMLAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; &lt;/xsd:element&gt;</pre>				

## **th**

A table header cell.

Please see Appendix B for a list of attributes on table elements.

diagram



namespace	http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml				
properties	content mixed	complex true			
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula</b>				
used by	element	<b>tr</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	abbr	<b>xsd:string</b>			
	scope	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>			
	colspan	<b>xsd:positiveInteger</b>		1	
	rowspan	<b>xsd:positiveInteger</b>		1	
	height	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>			
	width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>			
	reference-orientation	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>			
	valign	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>			
	align	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>		inherit	
	background-color	<b>TableColorType</b>			
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	border-left-style	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	border-left-color	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	border-left-width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	
	border-right-style	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	border-bottom-style	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	border-right-color	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	border-bottom-color	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	border-right-width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	
	border-bottom-width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	
	border-top-style	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	border-top-color	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
border-top-width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit		

```

source <xsd:element name="th">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A table heading cell</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Note: HTML axis attribute is not implemented</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Note: HTML char, charoff and nowrap attributes are not
implemented</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType mixed="true">
    <xsd:group ref="ukl:TableHeaderCell" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="abbr" type="xsd:string">
      <xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:documentation>Used for accessibility. Further explains the meaning of the
cell</xsd:documentation>
      </xsd:annotation>
    </xsd:attribute>
    <xsd:attribute name="scope">
      <xsd:annotation>
        <xsd:documentation>Used for accessibility. Defines the cells to which a header cell applies. From
XHTML 1.0 specification</xsd:documentation>
      </xsd:annotation>
    </xsd:attribute>
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="row"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="col"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="rowgroup"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="colgroup"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:complexType>
  </xsd:element>

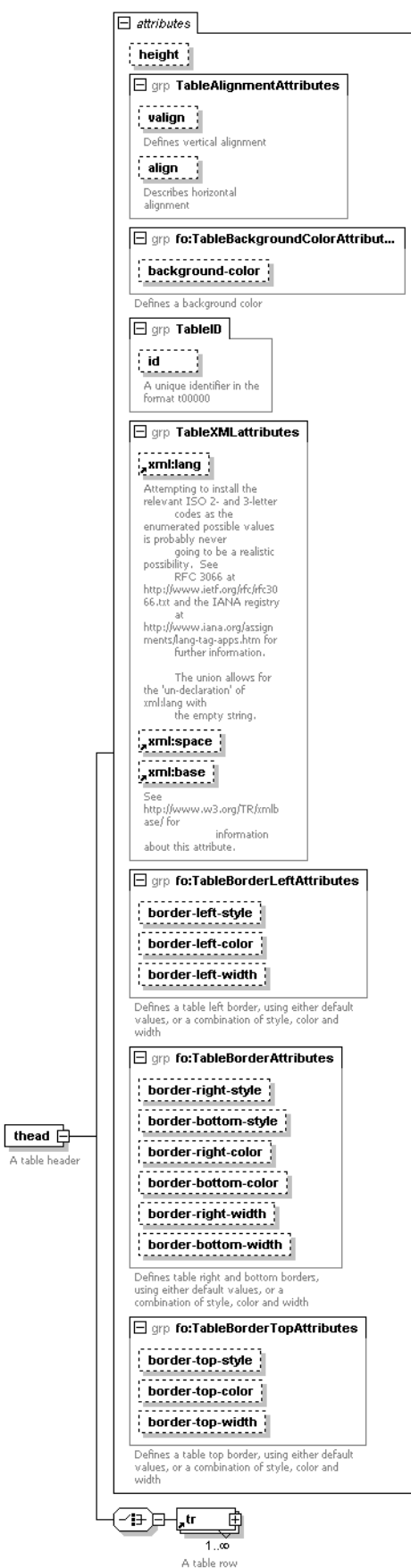
```

**thead**

The table header. It is important to use this section where applicable as this will repeat where tables break over pages.

Please see Appendix B for a list of attributes on table elements.

diagram



namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml>



properties content complex

children

**tr**

used by

element

**table**

attributes

Name

Type

Use

Default

Fixed

height

**TableSimpleLengthType**

valign

derived by: xsd:string

align

derived by: xsd:string

inherit

background-color

**TableColorType**

id

derived by: xsd:ID

lang

space

base

border-left-style

**TableBorderStyleType**

inherit

border-left-color

**TableColorType**

inherit

border-left-width

**TableSimpleLengthType**

inherit

border-right-style

**TableBorderStyleType**

inherit

border-bottom-style

**TableBorderStyleType**

inherit

border-right-color

**TableColorType**

inherit

border-bottom-color

**TableColorType**

inherit

border-right-width

**TableSimpleLengthType**

inherit

border-bottom-width

**TableSimpleLengthType**

inherit

border-top-style

**TableBorderStyleType**

inherit

border-top-color

**TableColorType**

inherit

border-top-width

**TableSimpleLengthType**

inherit

source

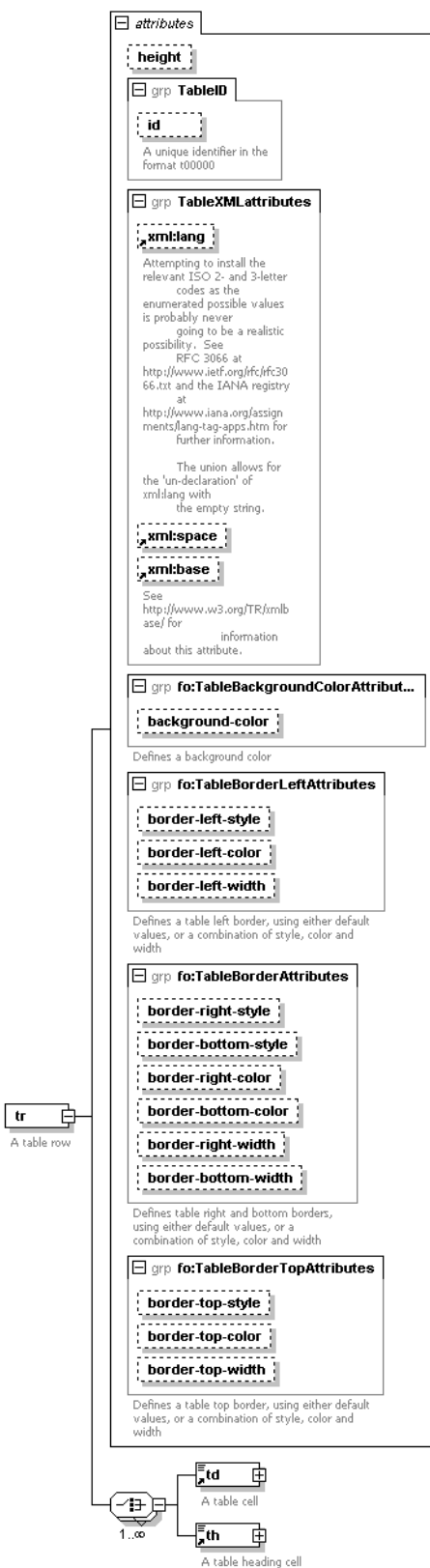
```
<xsd:element name="thead">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A table header</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Note: HTML char and charoff attributes are not implemented</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:choice>
      <xsd:element ref="tr" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:choice>
    <xsd:attribute name="height" type="TableSimpleLengthType"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableAlignmentAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableID"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableXMLAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>
```

**tr**

A row of a table.

Please see Appendix B for a list of attributes on table elements.

diagram



namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml>

properties content complex

children **td th**

used by elements **tbody thead**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	height	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>			
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	background-color	<b>TableColorType</b>			
	border-left-style	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	border-left-color	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	border-left-width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	
	border-right-style	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	border-bottom-style	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	border-right-color	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	border-bottom-color	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	border-right-width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	
	border-bottom-width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	
	border-top-style	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	border-top-color	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	border-top-width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	

```

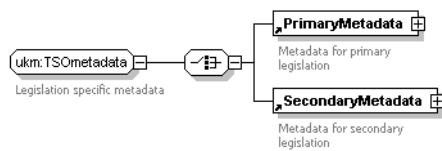
source <xsd:element name="tr">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A table row</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Note: HTML char and charoff attributes are not implemented</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:complexType>
    <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <xsd:element ref="td"/>
      <xsd:element ref="th"/>
    </xsd:choice>
    <xsd:attribute name="height" type="TableSimpleLengthType"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableID"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableXMLAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBackgroundColorAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderLeftAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderAttributes"/>
    <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:TableBorderTopAttributes"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
</xsd:element>

```

# Group Definitions

## group ukm:TSOmetadata

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/metadata>

children **ukm:PrimaryMetadata** **ukm:SecondaryMetadata**

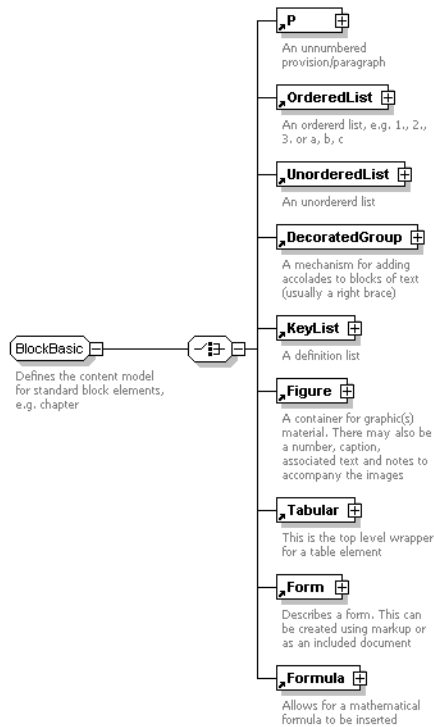
used by element **ukm:Metadata**

source

```
<xsd:group name="TSOmetadata">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Legislation specific metadata</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element ref="PrimaryMetadata"/>
    <xsd:element ref="SecondaryMetadata"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

## group BlockBasic

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

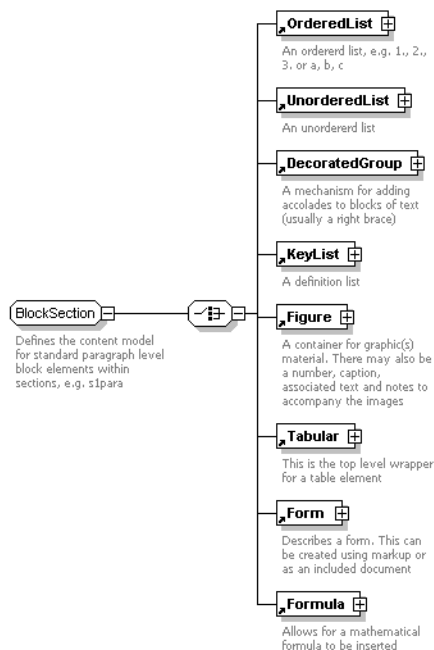
children **P OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula**

used by elements **BlockAmendment EarlierOrders ExplanatoryNotes Form**  
 complexTypes **BlockBasicStructure BlockExtractStructure**

```
source <xsd:group name="BlockBasic">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for standard block elements, e.g.
chapter</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element ref="P"/>
    <xsd:element ref="OrderedList"/>
    <xsd:element ref="UnorderedList"/>
    <xsd:element ref="DecoratedGroup"/>
    <xsd:element ref="KeyList"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Figure"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Tabular"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Form"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Formula"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

## group **BlockSection**

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula**

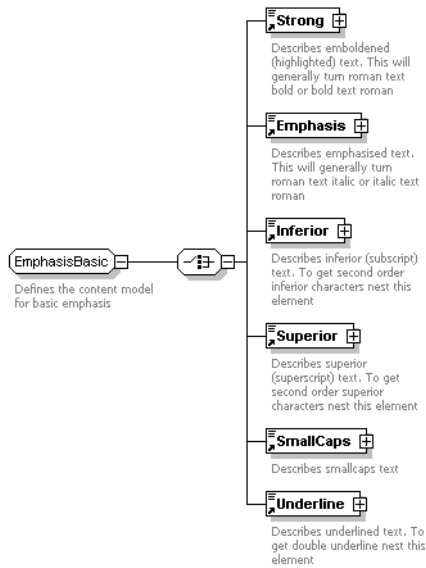
used by  
elements **P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6 P7**  
complexType **BlockSectionStructure**

```

source
<xsd:group name="BlockSection">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for standard paragraph level block elements within
sections, e.g. s1para</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element ref="OrderedList"/>
    <xsd:element ref="UnorderedList"/>
    <xsd:element ref="DecoratedGroup"/>
    <xsd:element ref="KeyList"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Figure"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Tabular"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Form"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Formula"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
  
```

## group EmphasisBasic

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline**

used by  
elements **Abbreviation Acronym ExternalLink InternalLink**  
groups **InlineFull InlineLegislationCitation TableCellLocal TableFootnoteCellLocal TableHeaderCellLocal**

source

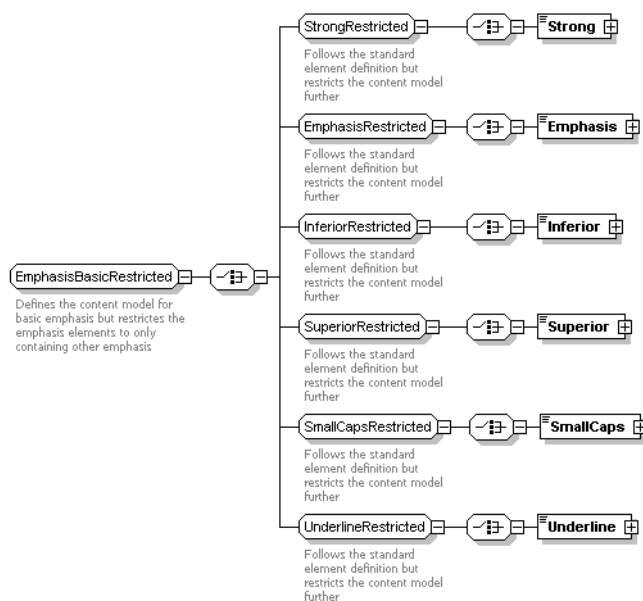
```

<xsd:group name="EmphasisBasic">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for basic emphasis</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element ref="Strong"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Emphasis"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Inferior"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Superior"/>
    <xsd:element ref="SmallCaps"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Underline"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>

```

## group EmphasisBasicRestricted

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline**

used by complexType **InlineRestrictedStructure**

source `<xsd:group name="EmphasisBasicRestricted">`

```

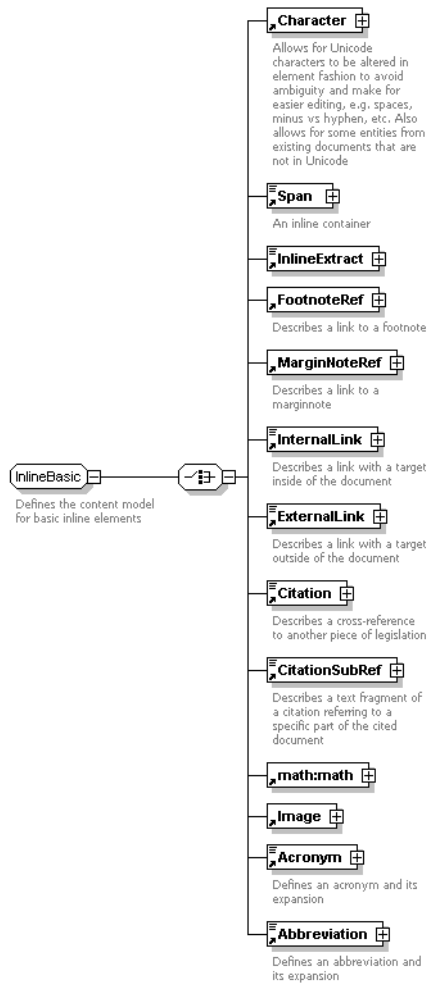
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for basic emphasis but restricts the emphasis elements
    to only containing other emphasis</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:group ref="StrongRestricted"/>
    <xsd:group ref="EmphasisRestricted"/>
    <xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/>
    <xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/>
    <xsd:group ref="SmallCapsRestricted"/>
    <xsd:group ref="UnderlineRestricted"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>

```



## group InlineBasic

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation**

used by elements **Emphasis IncludedDocument SmallCaps Strong**  
groups **InlineFull TableCellLocal TableFootnoteCellLocal TableHeaderCellLocal**

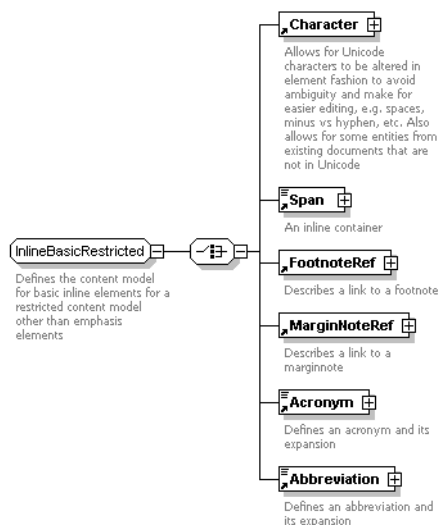
```

source <xsd:group name="InlineBasic">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for basic inline elements</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element ref="Character"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Span"/>
    <xsd:element ref="InlineExtract"/>
    <xsd:element ref="FootnoteRef"/>
    <xsd:element ref="MarginNoteRef"/>
    <xsd:element ref="InternalLink"/>
    <xsd:element ref="ExternalLink"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Citation"/>
    <xsd:element ref="CitationSubRef"/>
    <xsd:element ref="math:math"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Image"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Acronym"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Abbreviation"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>

```

## group InlineBasicRestricted

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation**

used by elements **EmphasisRestricted/Emphasis InferiorRestricted/Inferior SmallCapsRestricted/SmallCaps StrongRestricted/Strong SuperiorRestricted/Superior UnderlineRestricted/Underline**  
complexType **InlineRestrictedStructure**

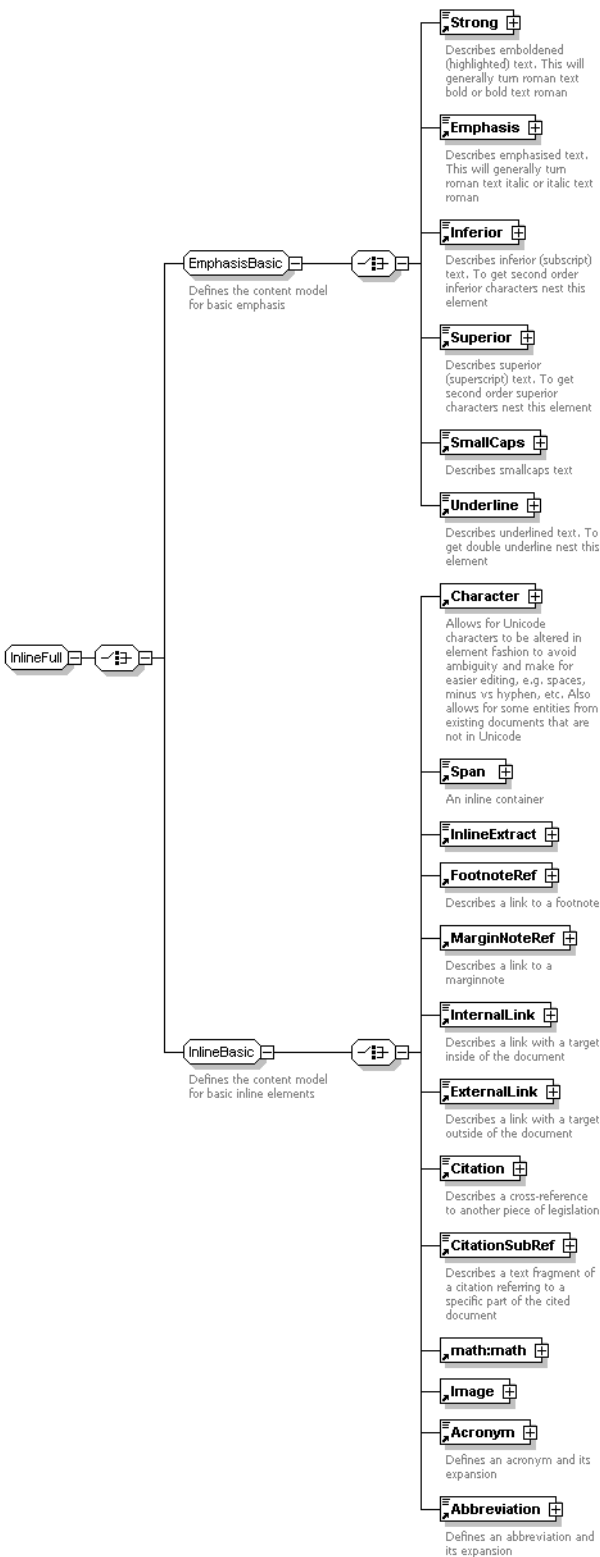
source

```

<xsd:group name="InlineBasicRestricted">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for basic inline elements for a restricted content model
    other than emphasis elements</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element ref="Character"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Span"/>
    <xsd:element ref="FootnoteRef"/>
    <xsd:element ref="MarginNoteRef"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Acronym"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Abbreviation"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
  
```

# group InlineFull

diagram

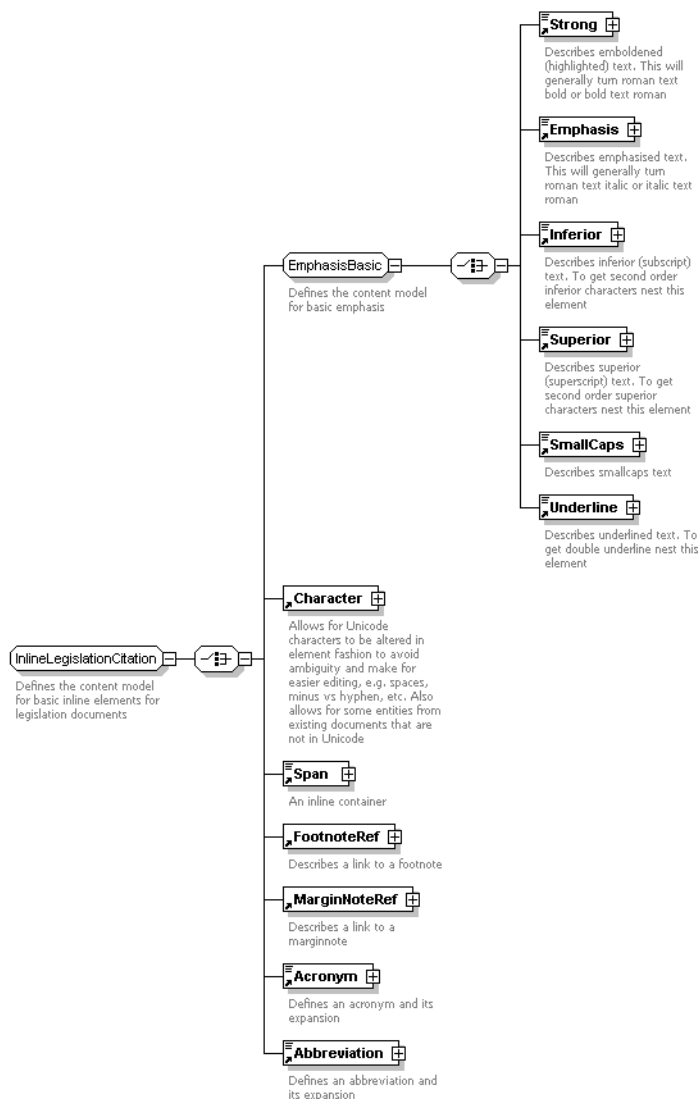


namespace	<a href="http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation">http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation</a>		
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation</b>		
used by	elements	<b>AppendText caption LSseal Text</b>	
	complexType	<b>InlineExtractStructure InlineFullStructure InlineStructure</b>	

```
source <xsd:group name="InlineFull">
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:group ref="EmphasisBasic"/>
    <xsd:group ref="InlineBasic"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

## group InlineLegislationCitation

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation**

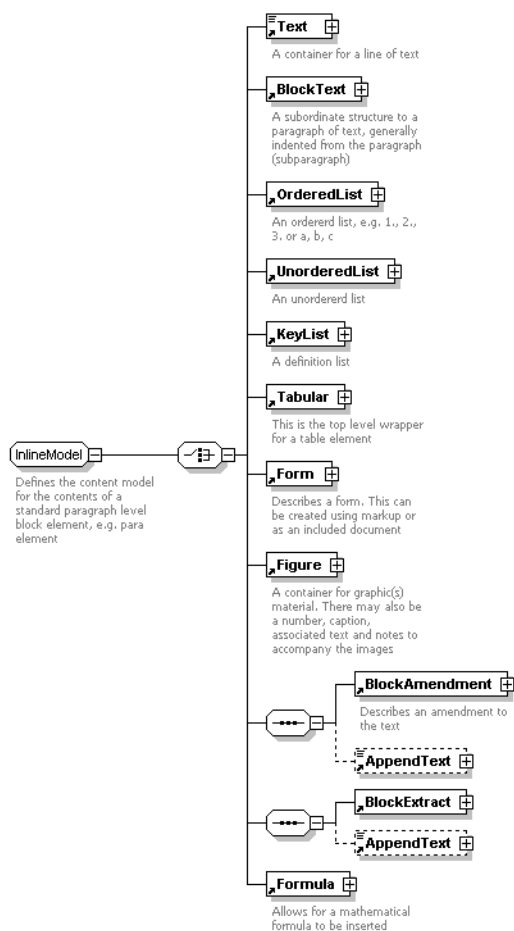
used by elements **Citation CitationSubRef**

```

source
<xsd:group name="InlineLegislationCitation">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for basic inline elements for legislation
documents</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:group ref="EmphasisBasic"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Character"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Span"/>
    <xsd:element ref="FootnoteRef"/>
    <xsd:element ref="MarginNoteRef"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Acronym"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Abbreviation"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
  
```

## group InlineModel

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

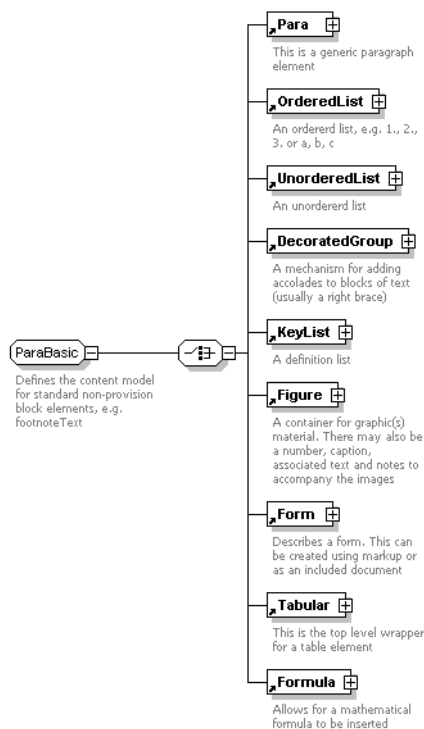
children **Text BlockText OrderedList UnorderedList KeyList Tabular Form Figure BlockAmendment AppendText BlockExtract Formula**

used by  
 elements **P P P1para P2para P3para P4para P5para P6para P7para**  
 complexType **InlineModelStructure**

```
source <xsd:group name="InlineModel">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for the contents of a standard paragraph level block
    element, e.g. para element</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element ref="Text"/>
    <xsd:element ref="BlockText"/>
    <xsd:element ref="OrderedList"/>
    <xsd:element ref="UnorderedList"/>
    <xsd:element ref="KeyList"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Tabular"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Form"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Figure"/>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="BlockAmendment"/>
      <xsd:element ref="AppendText" minOccurs="0"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="BlockExtract"/>
      <xsd:element ref="AppendText" minOccurs="0"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:element ref="Formula"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

## group ParaBasic

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula**

used by  
 element **RoyalPresence**  
 complexType **ParaBasicStructure**  
 groups **TableCellLocal TableFootnoteCellLocal TableHeaderCellLocal**

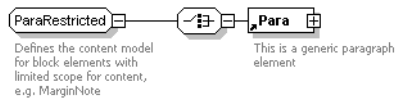
```

source <xsd:group name="ParaBasic">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for standard non-provision block elements, e.g.
    footnoteText</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element ref="Para"/>
    <xsd:element ref="OrderedList"/>
    <xsd:element ref="UnorderedList"/>
    <xsd:element ref="DecoratedGroup"/>
    <xsd:element ref="KeyList"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Figure"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Form"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Tabular"/>
    <xsd:element ref="Formula"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
  
```



## group ParaRestricted

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Para**

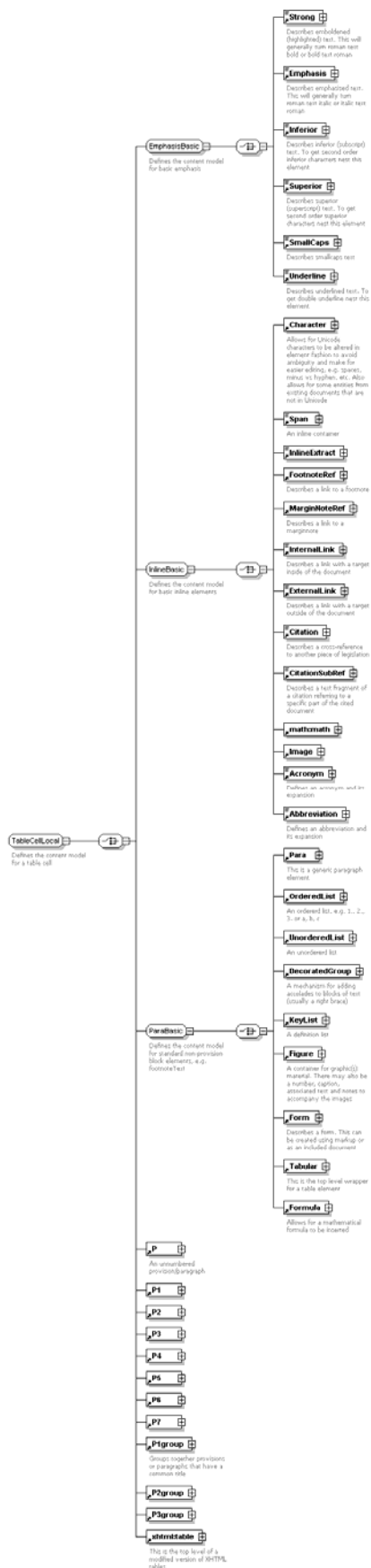
used by element **MarginNote**

source

```
<xsd:group name="ParaRestricted">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for block elements with limited scope for content, e.g.
MarginNote</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element ref="Para"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

## group TableCellLocal

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

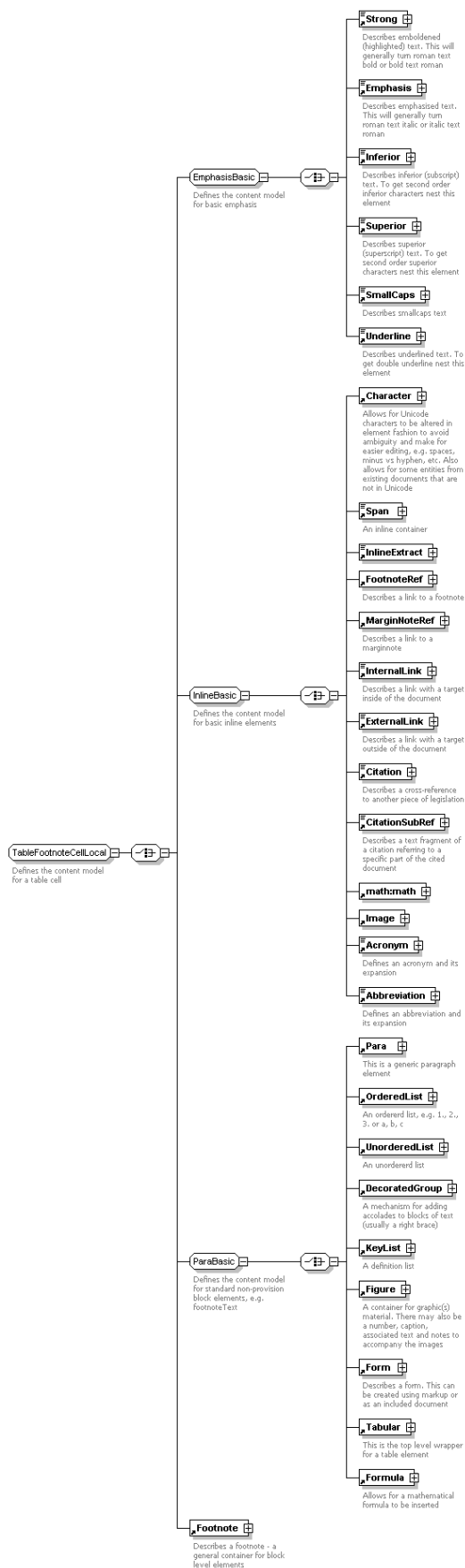
children **Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula P P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6 P7 P1group P2group P3group table**

used by group **TableCell**

```
source <xsd:group name="TableCellLocal">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for a table cell</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:group ref="EmphasisBasic"/>
    <xsd:group ref="InlineBasic"/>
    <xsd:group ref="ParaBasic"/>
    <xsd:element ref="P"/>
    <xsd:element ref="P1"/>
    <xsd:element ref="P2"/>
    <xsd:element ref="P3"/>
    <xsd:element ref="P4"/>
    <xsd:element ref="P5"/>
    <xsd:element ref="P6"/>
    <xsd:element ref="P7"/>
    <xsd:element ref="P1group"/>
    <xsd:element ref="P2group"/>
    <xsd:element ref="P3group"/>
    <xsd:element ref="html:table"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

## group TableFootnoteCellLocal

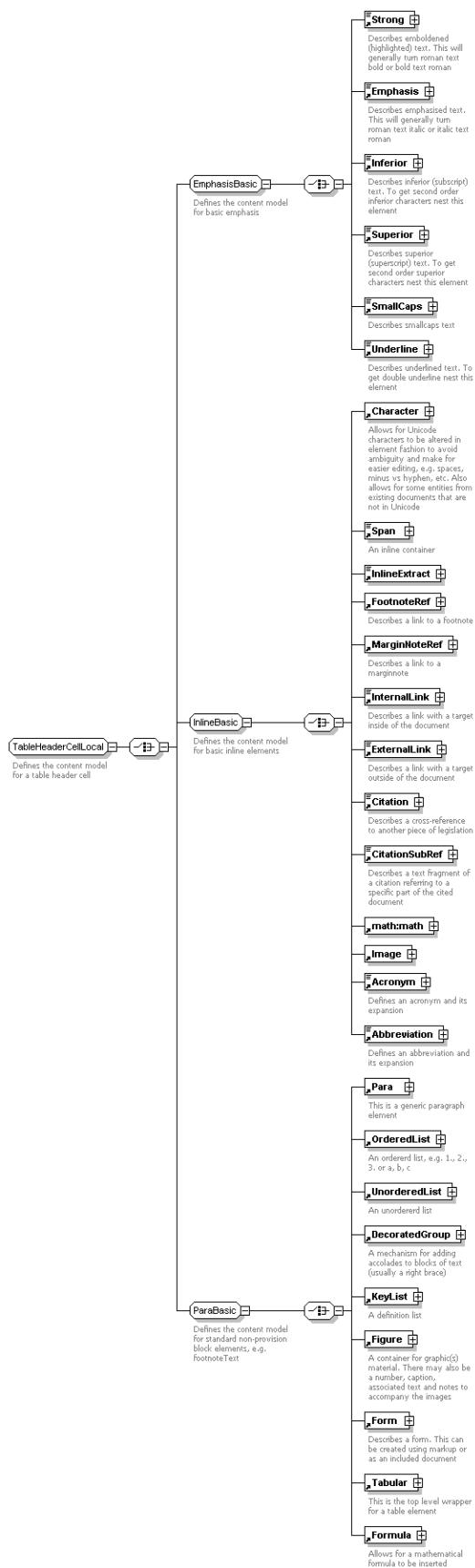
diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula Footnote</b>
used by	group <b>TableFootnoteCell</b>
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:group name="TableFootnoteCellLocal"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines the content model for a table cell&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="EmphasisBasic"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasic"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="ParaBasic"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:element ref="Footnote"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:choice&gt; &lt;/xsd:group&gt;</pre>

## group TableHeaderCellLocal

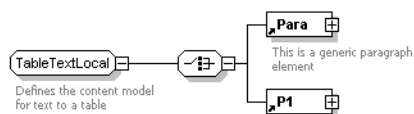
diagram



namespace	<code>http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation</code>
children	<b>Strong</b> <b>Emphasis</b> <b>Inferior</b> <b>Superior</b> <b>SmallCaps</b> <b>Underline</b> <b>Character</b> <b>Span</b> <b>InlineExtract</b> <b>FootnoteRef</b> <b>MarginNoteRef</b> <b>InternalLink</b> <b>ExternalLink</b> <b>Citation</b> <b>CitationSubRef</b> <b>math</b> <b>Image</b> <b>Acronym</b> <b>Abbreviation</b> <b>Para</b> <b>OrderedList</b> <b>UnorderedList</b> <b>DecoratedGroup</b> <b>KeyList</b> <b>Figure</b> <b>Form</b> <b>Tabular</b> <b>Formula</b>
used by	group <b>TableHeaderCell</b>
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:group name="TableHeaderCellLocal"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines the content model for a table header cell&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:choice&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="EmphasisBasic"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasic"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="ParaBasic"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:choice&gt; &lt;/xsd:group&gt;</pre>

## group TableTextLocal

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Para P1**

used by group **TableText**

source

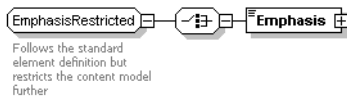
```

<xsd:group name="TableTextLocal">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for text to a table</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element ref="Para"/>
    <xsd:element ref="P1"/>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
  
```



## group EmphasisRestricted

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Emphasis**

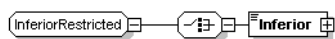
used by elements **InferiorRestricted/Inferior SmallCapsRestricted/SmallCaps StrongRestricted/Strong SuperiorRestricted/Superior UnderlineRestricted/Underline**  
group **EmphasisBasicRestricted**

source

```
<xsd:group name="EmphasisRestricted">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Follows the standard element definition but restricts the content model further</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element name="Emphasis">
      <xsd:complexType mixed="true">
        <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xsd:group ref="StrongRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="SmallCapsRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="UnderlineRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/>
        </xsd:choice>
        <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
      </xsd:complexType>
    </xsd:element>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

## group InferiorRestricted

diagram



Follows the standard  
element definition but  
restricts the content model  
further

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Inferior**

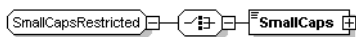
used by elements **EmphasisRestricted/Emphasis InferiorRestricted/Inferior SmallCapsRestricted/SmallCaps  
StrongRestricted/Strong SuperiorRestricted/Superior UnderlineRestricted/Underline  
group EmphasisBasicRestricted**

source `<xsd:group name="InferiorRestricted">`

```
<xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:documentation>Follows the standard element definition but restricts the content model
  further</xsd:documentation>
</xsd:annotation>
<xsd:choice>
  <xsd:element name="Inferior">
    <xsd:complexType mixed="true">
      <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:group ref="EmphasisRestricted"/>
        <xsd:group ref="StrongRestricted"/>
        <xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/>
        <xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/>
        <xsd:group ref="SmallCapsRestricted"/>
        <xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/>
      </xsd:choice>
      <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    </xsd:complexType>
  </xsd:element>
</xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

## group SmallCapsRestricted

diagram



Follows the standard  
element definition but  
restricts the content model  
further

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **SmallCaps**

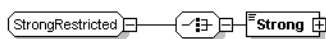
used by elements **EmphasisRestricted/Emphasis InferiorRestricted/Inferior StrongRestricted/Strong SuperiorRestricted/Superior UnderlineRestricted/Underline**  
group **EmphasisBasicRestricted**

source

```
<xsd:group name="SmallCapsRestricted">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Follows the standard element definition but restricts the content model
    further</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element name="SmallCaps">
      <xsd:complexType mixed="true">
        <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xsd:group ref="EmphasisRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="StrongRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="UnderlineRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/>
        </xsd:choice>
        <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
      </xsd:complexType>
    </xsd:element>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

## group StrongRestricted

diagram



Follows the standard  
element definition but  
restricts the content model  
further

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Strong**

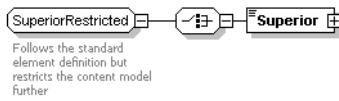
used by elements **EmphasisRestricted/Emphasis InferiorRestricted/Inferior SmallCapsRestricted/SmallCaps  
SuperiorRestricted/Superior UnderlineRestricted/Underline**  
group **EmphasisBasicRestricted**

source 

```
<xsd:group name="StrongRestricted">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Follows the standard element definition but restricts the content model
  further</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element name="Strong">
      <xsd:complexType mixed="true">
        <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xsd:group ref="EmphasisRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="SmallCapsRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="UnderlineRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/>
        </xsd:choice>
        <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
      </xsd:complexType>
    </xsd:element>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

## group SuperiorRestricted

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Superior**

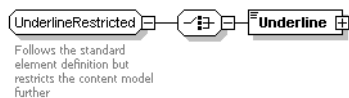
used by elements **EmphasisRestricted/Emphasis InferiorRestricted/Inferior SmallCapsRestricted/SmallCaps StrongRestricted/Strong SuperiorRestricted/Superior UnderlineRestricted/Underline**  
group **EmphasisBasicRestricted**

source

```
<xsd:group name="SuperiorRestricted">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Follows the standard element definition but restricts the content model further</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:element name="Superior">
      <xsd:complexType mixed="true">
        <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xsd:group ref="EmphasisRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="StrongRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="SmallCapsRestricted"/>
          <xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/>
        </xsd:choice>
        <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
      </xsd:complexType>
    </xsd:element>
  </xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

## group UnderlineRestricted

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Underline**

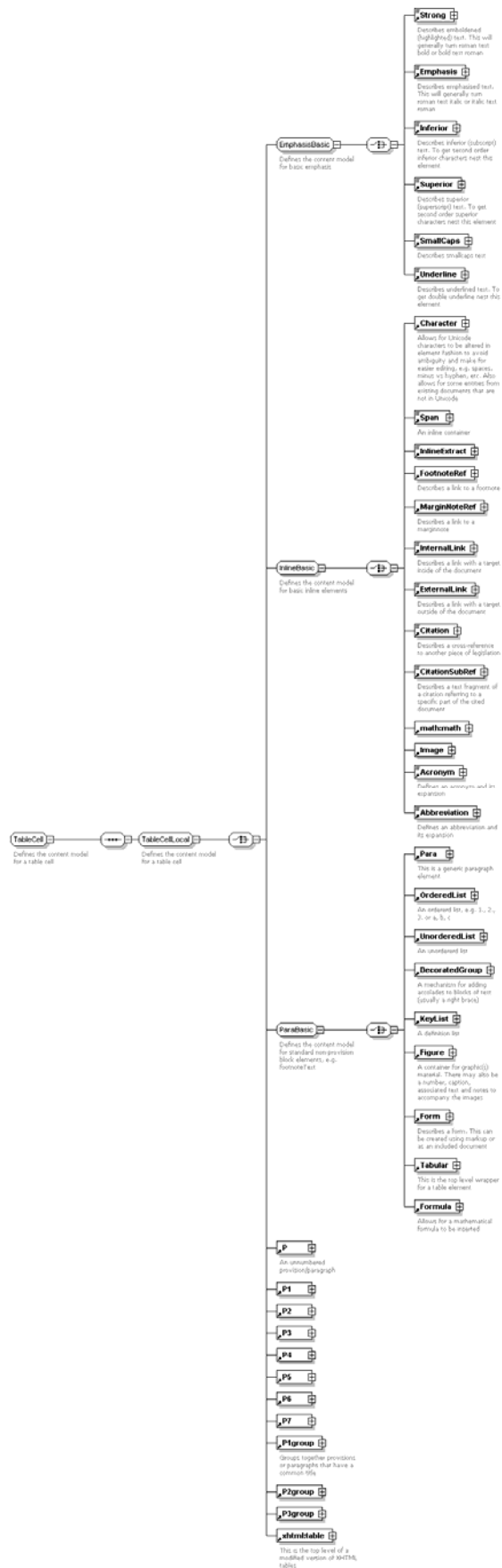
used by elements **EmphasisRestricted/Emphasis SmallCapsRestricted/SmallCaps StrongRestricted/Strong**  
group **EmphasisBasicRestricted**

source `<xsd:group name="UnderlineRestricted">`

```
<xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:documentation>Follows the standard element definition but restricts the content model
  further</xsd:documentation>
</xsd:annotation>
<xsd:choice>
  <xsd:element name="Underline">
    <xsd:complexType mixed="true">
      <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xsd:group ref="EmphasisRestricted"/>
        <xsd:group ref="StrongRestricted"/>
        <xsd:group ref="InferiorRestricted"/>
        <xsd:group ref="SuperiorRestricted"/>
        <xsd:group ref="SmallCapsRestricted"/>
        <xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/>
      </xsd:choice>
      <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
    </xsd:complexType>
  </xsd:element>
</xsd:choice>
</xsd:group>
```

## group TableCell

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation
children	<b>Strong</b> <b>Emphasis</b> <b>Inferior</b> <b>Superior</b> <b>SmallCaps</b> <b>Underline</b> <b>Character</b> <b>Span</b> <b>InlineExtract</b> <b>FootnoteRef</b> <b>MarginNoteRef</b> <b>InternalLink</b> <b>ExternalLink</b> <b>Citation</b> <b>CitationSubRef</b> <b>math</b> <b>Image</b> <b>Acronym</b> <b>Abbreviation</b> <b>Para</b> <b>OrderedList</b> <b>UnorderedList</b> <b>DecoratedGroup</b> <b>KeyList</b> <b>Figure</b> <b>Form</b> <b>Tabular</b> <b>Formula</b> <b>P</b> <b>P1</b> <b>P2</b> <b>P3</b> <b>P4</b> <b>P5</b> <b>P6</b> <b>P7</b> <b>P1group</b> <b>P2group</b> <b>P3group</b> <b>table</b>
used by	elements <b>GroupItem</b> <b>td</b>
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:group name="TableCell"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines the content model for a table cell&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="TableCellLocal"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt; &lt;/xsd:group&gt;</pre>



group TableFootnoteCell

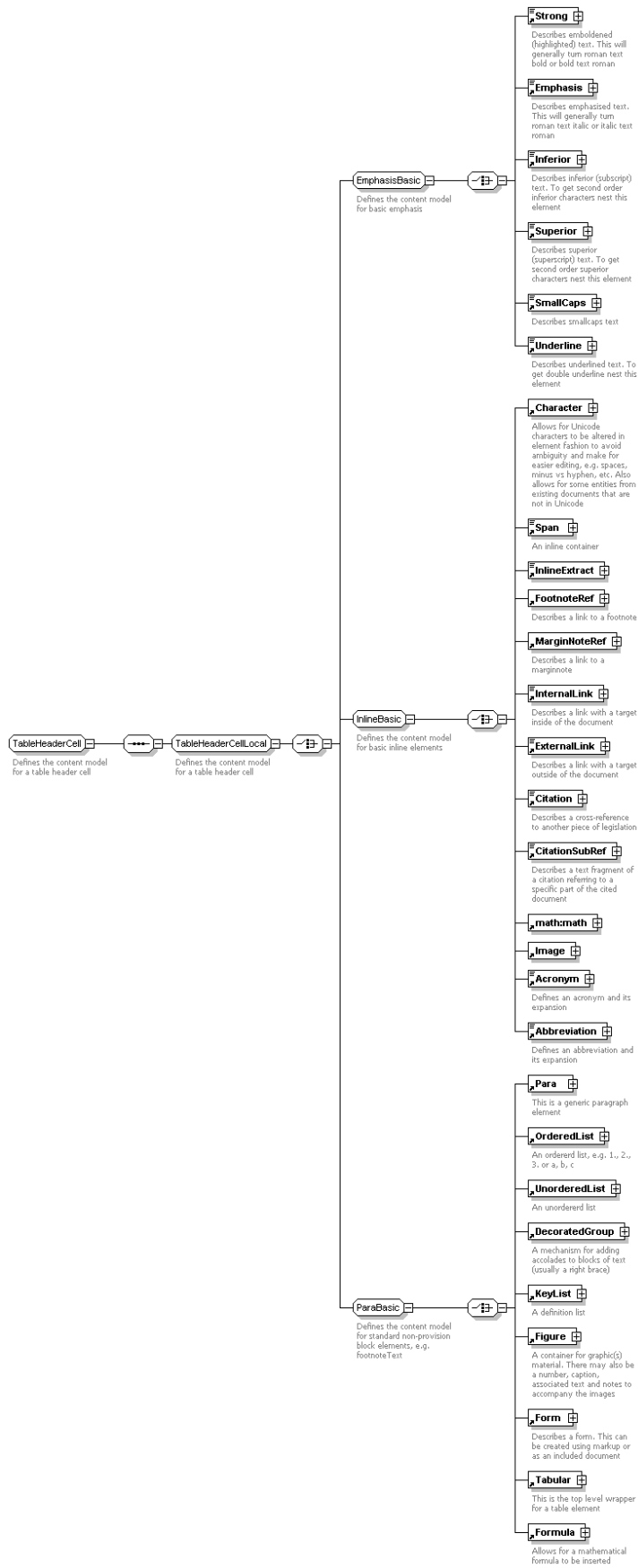
diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula Footnote</b>
used by	element <b>tfoot/tr/td</b>
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:group name="TableFootnoteCell"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines the content model for a table cell&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="TableFootnoteCellLocal"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt; &lt;/xsd:group&gt;</pre>

group TableHeaderCell

diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation	
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula</b>	
used by	element	<b>th</b>
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:group name="TableHeaderCell"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines the content model for a table header cell&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:sequence&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="TableHeaderCellLocal"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:sequence&gt; &lt;/xsd:group&gt;</pre>	

## group TableText

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Para P1**

used by element **Tabular/TableText**

source

```
<xsd:group name="TableText">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the content model for text to a table</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:group ref="TableTextLocal"/>
  </xsd:sequence>
</xsd:group>
```

# AttributeGroup Definitions

## attributeGroup LayoutAttributes

namespace `http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation`

used by element **P1group**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Layout	<b>derived by:</b> <b>xsd:string</b>			

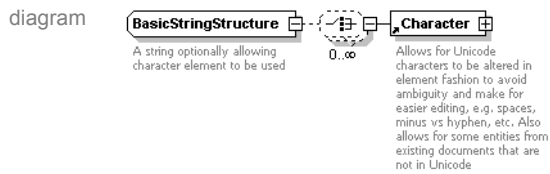
source

```
<xsd:attributeGroup name="LayoutAttributes">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines the layout for some headings for legacy data that does not conform to the
standard layouts</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:attribute name="Layout">
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="default"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="side"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="below"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>
</xsd:attributeGroup>
```

## attributeGroup TabularAttributes

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>  
 used by element **Tabular**  
 source `<xsd:attributeGroup name="TabularAttributes"/>`

## complexType BasicStringStructure



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>  
 properties mixed true  
 children **Character**  
 used by elements **Formula/equationNumber Footnote/Number PrimaryPrelims/Number SecondaryPrelims/Number**  
 source `<xsd:complexType name="BasicStringStructure" mixed="true">  
 <xsd:annotation>  
 <xsd:documentation>A string optionally allowing character element to be used</xsd:documentation>  
 </xsd:annotation>  
 <xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">  
 <xsd:element ref="Character"/>  
 </xsd:choice>  
 </xsd:complexType>`

## attributeGroup CommonAttributes

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

used by elements **Abbreviation Acronym Address AppendText BinaryContent BlockAmendment ComingIntoForce ComingIntoForce/ComingIntoForceClauses Comment Contents ContentsAppendix ContentsChapter ContentsGroup ContentsItem ContentsPart ContentsPblock ContentsPsubBlock ContentsSchedule ContentsSchedules ContentsSubItem DateOfEnactment DateSigned DecoratedGroup EarlierOrders Emphasis EmphasisRestricted/Emphasis EnactingText EnactingTextOmitted ExplanatoryNotes ExternalLink FootnoteRef Footnotes Form FragmentNumber FragmentTitle GroupItemRef IncludedDocument InferiorRestricted/Inferior InternalLink IntroductoryText KeyList KeyListItem LaidDate LaidDraft Legislation LSseal MadeDate MarginNoteRef MarginNotes Notes OrderedList P1para P2para P3para P4para P5para P6para P7para Pnumber Primary PrimaryPreamble PrimaryPrelims Resolution Resources RoyalPresence Secondary SecondaryPreamble SecondaryPrelims Signatory SignedSection Signee SmallCaps SmallCapsRestricted/SmallCaps Strong StrongRestricted/Strong SubjectInformation/Subject SubjectInformation SuperiorRestricted/Superior Text TitleBlock UnderlineRestricted/Underline UnorderedList Versions Where XMLcontent**

complexTypes **BlockBasicStructure BlockExtractStructure BlockSectionStructure InlineExtractStructure InlineFullStructure InlineModelStructure InlineRestrictedStructure InlineStructure ParaBasicStructure**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

```
source <xsd:attributeGroup name="CommonAttributes">
  <xsd:attribute name="id">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>A unique identifier for every element</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID">
        <xsd:pattern value="[a-z][0-9]{5}"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonSubAttributes"/>
</xsd:attributeGroup>
```



attributeGroup CommonSubAttributes

namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
used by	elements	Abstract AbstractBody Appendix AppendixBody Body caption Chapter Citation CitationSubRef ExternalVersion Figure Footnote Formula Group Image InternalVersion MarginNote P P1 P1group P2 P2group P3 P3group P4 P5 P6 P7 Part Pblock PsubBlock Resource ResourceGroup Schedule ScheduleBody Schedules Tabular/TableText Tabular Version			
attributes	attributeGroup	CommonAttributes			
	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<xsd:attributeGroup name="CommonSubAttributes"> <xsd:attributeGroup ref="VersionRefAttributes"/> <xsd:attributeGroup ref="XMLAttributes"/> </xsd:attributeGroup>				

## attributeGroup QuotesAttributes

namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
used by	element	BlockAmendment				
	complexType	BlockExtractStructure InlineExtractStructure				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	Format	derived by: xsd:string	required			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="QuotesAttributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="Format" use="required"&gt;     &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;       &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="default"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="double"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="single"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="none"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;     &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;   &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>					

# attributeGroup StructureNumberFormattingAttributes

namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
used by	elements	Appendix BlockAmendment Body Schedule				
	complexType	BlockExtractStructure				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	NumberFormat	derived by: xsd:string		default		
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="StructureNumberFormattingAttributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines whether section numbering (top level) should be formatted in a way other then the default. This is basically for legacy data&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;The use of a default attribute has been considered and kept due to the fact the the attribute is only to be used for legacy data and it would be a hinderance to have to consider its use going forward. It is expected that this attribute could be changed to a fixed value of default if required&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="NumberFormat" default="default"&gt;     &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;       &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="default"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="emphasis"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="strong"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;     &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;   &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>					

## attributeGroup VersionRefAttributes

namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
used by	attributeGroup	CommonSubAttributes				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="VersionRefAttributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="AltVersionRefs" type="xsd:IDREFS"&gt;     &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Links to alternate versions of the content, e.g. perhaps a Welsh version&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>					

# attributeGroup XMLattributes

namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
used by	attributeGroup	CommonSubAttributes				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	lang					
	space					
	base					
source	<xsd:attributeGroup name="XMLattributes"> <xsd:attribute ref="xml:lang"/> <xsd:attribute ref="xml:space"/> <xsd:attribute ref="xml:base"/> </xsd:attributeGroup>					

## attributeGroup LegislationAmendmentAttributes

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

used by element **BlockAmendment**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	TargetClass	derived by: <b>xsd:string</b>	required		
	TargetSubClass	<b>MinorType</b>	required		
	Context	derived by: <b>xsd:string</b>	required		

source

```
<xsd:attributeGroup name="LegislationAmendmentAttributes">
  <xsd:attribute name="TargetClass" use="required">
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="primary"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="secondary"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="unknown"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>
  <xsd:attribute name="TargetSubClass" type="MinorType" use="required">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>This extended the source for SIs so that context can be added for Regulation,
Order, etc</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
  </xsd:attribute>
  <xsd:attribute name="Context" use="required">
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="contents"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="main"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="schedule"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="unknown"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>
</xsd:attributeGroup>
```

## attributeGroup LegislationExtractAttributes

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

used by complexTypes **BlockExtractStructure** **InlineExtractStructure**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	SourceClass	<b>derived by:</b> <b>xsd:string</b>	required		
	SourceSubClass	<b>MinorType</b>	optional		
	Context	<b>derived by:</b> <b>xsd:string</b>	required		

```

source <xsd:attributeGroup name="LegislationExtractAttributes">
  <xsd:attribute name="SourceClass" use="required">
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="primary"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="secondary"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="unknown"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>
  <xsd:attribute name="SourceSubClass" type="MinorType" use="optional">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>This extends the source for SIs so that context can be added for Regulation, Order,
etc</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
  </xsd:attribute>
  <xsd:attribute name="Context" use="required">
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="main"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="schedule"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="unknown"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>
</xsd:attributeGroup>

```

## attributeGroup PelementIDattributes

namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
used by	elements	<b>Abstract AbstractBody Appendix AppendixBody Body Chapter Group P P1 P1group P2 P2group P3 P3group P4 P5 P6 P7 Part Pblock PsubBlock Schedule ScheduleBody Schedules</b>			
attributes	Name id	Type 	Use 	Default 	Fixed 
source	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b> <pre> &lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="PelementIDattributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="id"&gt;     &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A unique identifier in the format p00000&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;       &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID"&gt;         &lt;xsd:pattern value="p[0-9]{5}" /&gt;       &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;     &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;   &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt; </pre>				



attributeGroup CommonFormattingAttributes

namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
used by	elements	Formula Text TitleBlock Where				
	complexType	InlineFullStructure InlineModelStructure				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	Align	derived by: xsd:string	optional			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="CommonFormattingAttributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="Align" use="optional"&gt;     &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Describes horizontal alignment&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;       &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="inherit"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="left"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="centre"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="right"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="justify"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;     &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;   &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>					

## attributeGroup CommonHangingAttributes

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

used by element **Text**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	Hanging	derived by: xsd:string	optional		

source

```
<xsd:attributeGroup name="CommonHangingAttributes">
  <xsd:attribute name="Hanging" use="optional">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>Describes if text has a hanging indent or if the first line is
indented</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="hanging"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="indented"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>
</xsd:attributeGroup>
```

# attributeGroup ContentsAttributes

namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
used by	elements	<b>ContentsAppendix ContentsChapter ContentsGroup ContentsItem ContentsPart ContentsPblock ContentsPsubBlock ContentsSchedule ContentsSchedules ContentsSubitem</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	ContentRef	xsd:IDREF			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="ContentsAttributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="ContentRef" type="xsd:IDREF"&gt;     &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Hyperlinks from contents should be autogenerated for contents. However, for legacy data there are some entries that can not be automatically linked. This attribute provides a cross- reference function that would override any autogenerated link&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>				

## attributeGroup FigureElementIDattributes

namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
used by	elements	<b>Figure Image</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="FigureElementIDattributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="id"&gt;     &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A unique identifier in the format g00000&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;       &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID"&gt;         &lt;xsd:pattern value="g[0-9]{5}" /&gt;       &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;     &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;   &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>					

# attributeGroup ResourceElementIDAttributes

namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
used by	elements	<b>Resource ResourceGroup</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="ResourceElementIDAttributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="id"&gt;     &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A unique identifier in the format r00000&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;       &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID"&gt;         &lt;xsd:pattern value="r[0-9]{5}" /&gt;       &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;     &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;   &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>					

## attributeGroup CitationElementIDAttributes

namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation					
used by	elements	<b>Citation CitationSubRef</b>				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="CitationElementIDAttributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="id"&gt;     &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A unique identifier in the format c00000&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;       &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:ID"&gt;         &lt;xsd:pattern value="c[0-9]{5}" /&gt;       &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;     &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;   &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>					

## attributeGroup TableAlignmentAttributes

namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml>

used by elements **col colgroup tbody tfoot thead TableCellAttributes**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	<b>valign</b>	derived by: <b>xsd:string</b>			
	<b>align</b>	derived by: <b>xsd:string</b>		inherit	

source

```

<xsd:attributeGroup name="TableAlignmentAttributes">
  <xsd:attribute name="valign">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>Defines vertical alignment</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="top"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="middle"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="bottom"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="baseline"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>
  <xsd:attribute name="align" default="inherit">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>Describes horizontal alignment</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:enumeration value="inherit"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="left"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="center"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="right"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="justify"/>
        <xsd:enumeration value="char"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:attribute>
</xsd:attributeGroup>

```

## attributeGroup TableCellAttributes

namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml>

used by elements **tfoot/tr/td th**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	colspan	<b>xsd:positiveInteger</b>		1	
	rowspan	<b>xsd:positiveInteger</b>		1	
	height	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>			
	width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>			
	reference-orientation	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>			
	valign	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>			
	align	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>		inherit	

source

```
<xsd:attributeGroup name="TableCellAttributes">
  <xsd:attribute name="colspan" type="xsd:positiveInteger" default="1">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>Defines the number of columns spanned</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
  </xsd:attribute>
  <xsd:attribute name="rowspan" type="xsd:positiveInteger" default="1">
    <xsd:annotation>
      <xsd:documentation>Defines the number of rows spanned</xsd:documentation>
    </xsd:annotation>
  </xsd:attribute>
  <xsd:attribute name="height" type="TableSimpleLengthType"/>
  <xsd:attribute name="width" type="TableSimpleLengthType"/>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="fo:BlockOrientation"/>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="TableAlignmentAttributes"/>
</xsd:attributeGroup>
```

attributeGroup



## attributeGroup TableXMLattributes

namespace	http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml				
used by	elements	<b>table tbody tfoot/tr/td td tfoot th thead tfoot/tr tr</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="TableXMLattributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute ref="xml:lang"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute ref="xml:space"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute ref="xml:base"/&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>				

## attributeGroup BlockOrientation

namespace	http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format					
used by	attributeGroup	TableCellAttributes				
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed	
	reference-orientation	derived by: xsd:string				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="BlockOrientation"&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="reference-orientation"&gt;     &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;       &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines the rotation of the text in the cell&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:simpleType&gt;       &lt;xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="0"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="90"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="180"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="270"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="-90"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="-180"/&gt;         &lt;xsd:enumeration value="-270"/&gt;       &lt;/xsd:restriction&gt;     &lt;/xsd:simpleType&gt;   &lt;/xsd:attribute&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>					

## attributeGroup TableBackgroundColorAttributes

namespace	http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format				
used by	elements	<b>col colgroup table tbody tfoot/tr/td td tfoot th thead tfoot/tr tr</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	background-color	<b>TableColorType</b>			
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="TableBackgroundColorAttributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines a background color&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="background-color" type="TableColorType"/&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>				

## attributeGroup TableBorderAttributes

namespace	http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format				
used by	elements	<b>col colgroup table tbody tfoot/tr/td td tfoot th thead tfoot/tr tr</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	border-right-style	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	border-bottom-style	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	border-right-color	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	border-bottom-color	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	border-right-width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	
	border-bottom-width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="TableBorderAttributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines table right and bottom borders, using either default values, or a combination of style, color and width&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Some of the attribute names have been copied from the W3 XSL:FO specification&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="border-right-style" type="TableBorderStyleType" default="inherit"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="border-bottom-style" type="TableBorderStyleType" default="inherit"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="border-right-color" type="TableColorType" default="inherit"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="border-bottom-color" type="TableColorType" default="inherit"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="border-right-width" type="TableSimpleLengthType" default="inherit"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="border-bottom-width" type="TableSimpleLengthType" default="inherit"/&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>				

## attributeGroup TableBorderLeftAttributes

namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format>

used by elements **col colgroup table tbody tfoot/tr/td td tfoot th thead tfoot/tr tr**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	border-left-style	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	border-left-color	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	border-left-width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	

source 

```
<xsd:attributeGroup name="TableBorderLeftAttributes">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines a table left border, using either default values, or a combination of style,
color and width</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Some of the attribute names have been copied from the W3 XSL:FO
specification</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:attribute name="border-left-style" type="TableBorderStyleType" default="inherit"/>
  <xsd:attribute name="border-left-color" type="TableColorType" default="inherit"/>
  <xsd:attribute name="border-left-width" type="TableSimpleLengthType" default="inherit"/>
</xsd:attributeGroup>
```

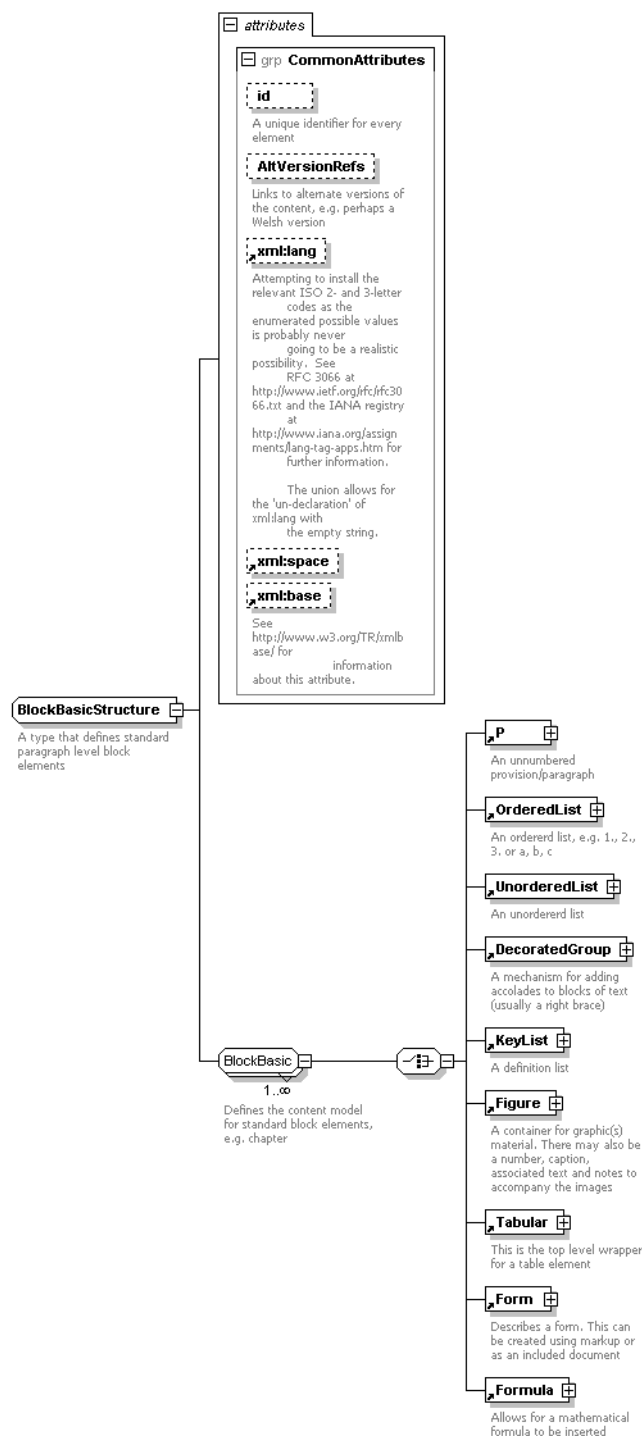
## attributeGroup TableBorderTopAttributes

namespace	http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format				
used by	elements	<b>col colgroup table tbody tfoot/tr/td td tfoot th thead tfoot/tr tr</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	border-top-style	<b>TableBorderStyleType</b>		inherit	
	border-top-color	<b>TableColorType</b>		inherit	
	border-top-width	<b>TableSimpleLengthType</b>		inherit	
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:attributeGroup name="TableBorderTopAttributes"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Defines a table top border, using either default values, or a combination of style, color and width&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;Some of the attribute names have been copied from the W3 XSL:FO specification&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="border-top-style" type="TableBorderStyleType" default="inherit"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="border-top-color" type="TableColorType" default="inherit"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attribute name="border-top-width" type="TableSimpleLengthType" default="inherit"/&gt; &lt;/xsd:attributeGroup&gt;</pre>				

# ComplexType Definitions

## complexType BlockBasicStructure

diagram

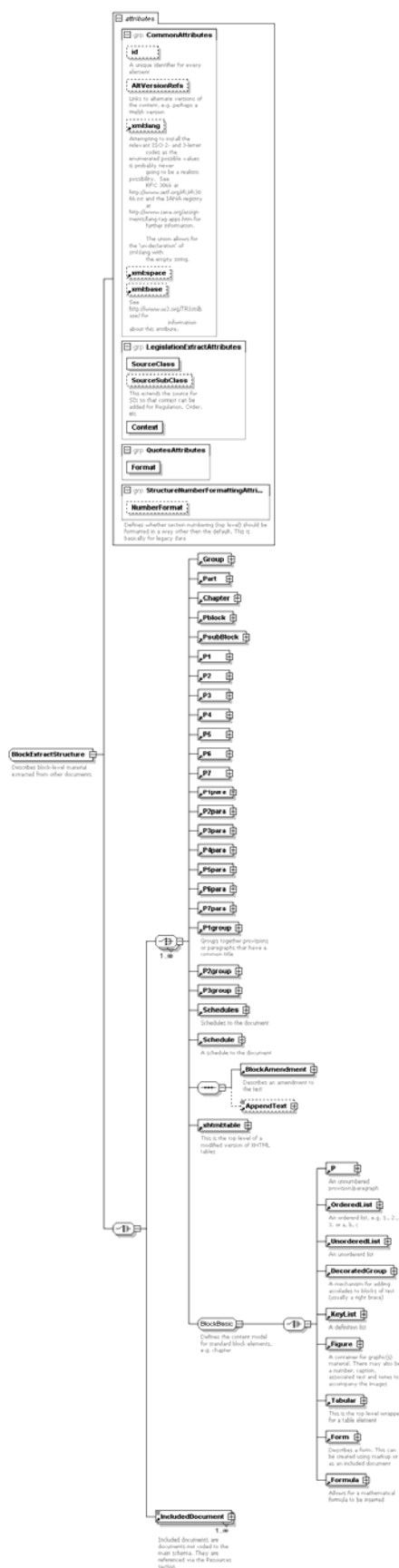


namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **P OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:complexType name="BlockBasicStructure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A type that defines standard paragraph level block elements&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:group ref="BlockBasic" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt; &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt;</pre>				

diagram





namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Group Part Chapter Pblock PsubBlock P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6 P7 P1para P2para P3para P4para P5para P6para P7para P1group P2group P3group Schedules Schedule BlockAmendment AppendText table P OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula IncludedDocument**

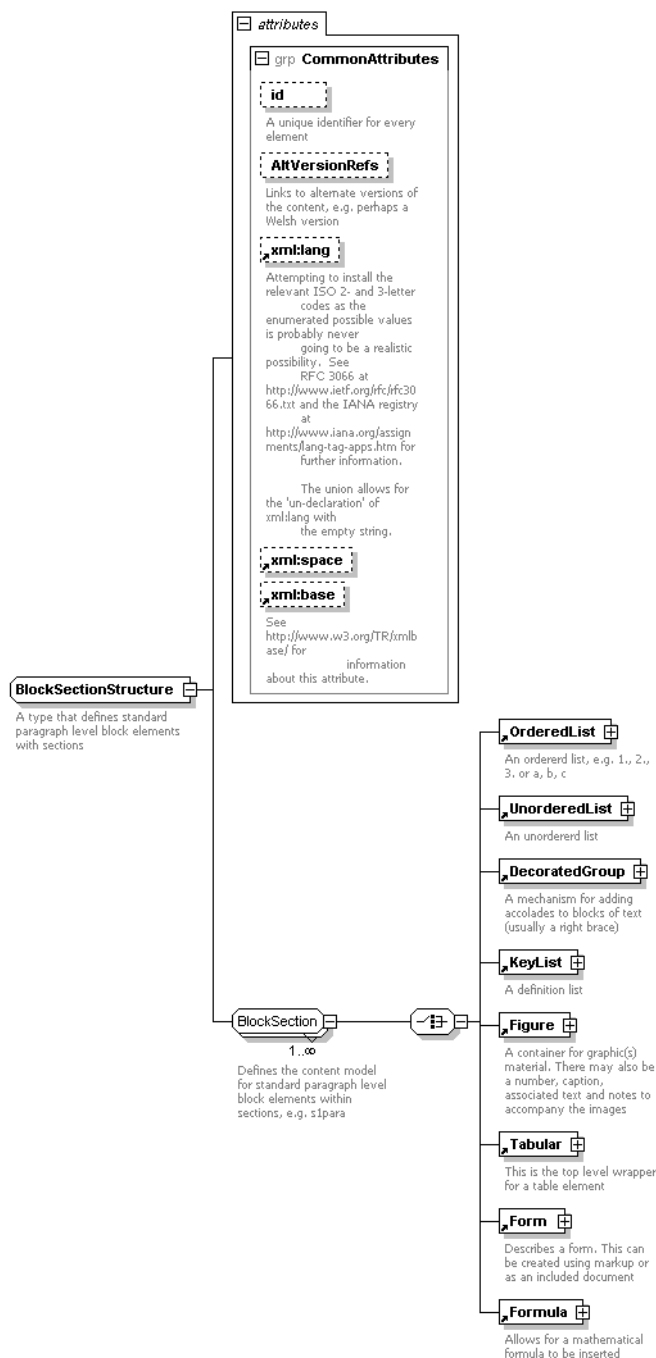
used by element **BlockExtract**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: <b>xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	SourceClass	derived by: <b>xsd:string</b>	required		
	SourceSubClass	<b>MinorType</b>	optional		
	Context	derived by: <b>xsd:string</b>	required		
	Format	derived by: <b>xsd:string</b>	required		
	NumberFormat	derived by: <b>xsd:string</b>		default	

```
<xsd:complexType name="BlockExtractStructure">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Describes block-level material extracted from other documents</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:choice>
    <xsd:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <xsd:element ref="Group"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Part"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Chapter"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Pblock"/>
      <xsd:element ref="PsubBlock"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P1"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P2"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P3"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P4"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P5"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P6"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P7"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P1para"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P2para"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P3para"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P4para"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P5para"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P6para"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P7para"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P1group"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P2group"/>
      <xsd:element ref="P3group"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Schedules"/>
      <xsd:element ref="Schedule"/>
    </xsd:choice>
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element ref="BlockAmendment"/>
      <xsd:element ref="AppendText" minOccurs="0"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:element ref="html:table"/>
    <xsd:group ref="BlockBasic"/>
  </xsd:choice>
  <xsd:element ref="IncludedDocument" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</xsd:choice>
<xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
<xsd:attributeGroup ref="LegislationExtractAttributes"/>
<xsd:attributeGroup ref="QuotesAttributes"/>
<xsd:attributeGroup ref="StructureNumberFormattingAttributes"/>
</xsd:complexType>
```

## complexType BlockSectionStructure

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

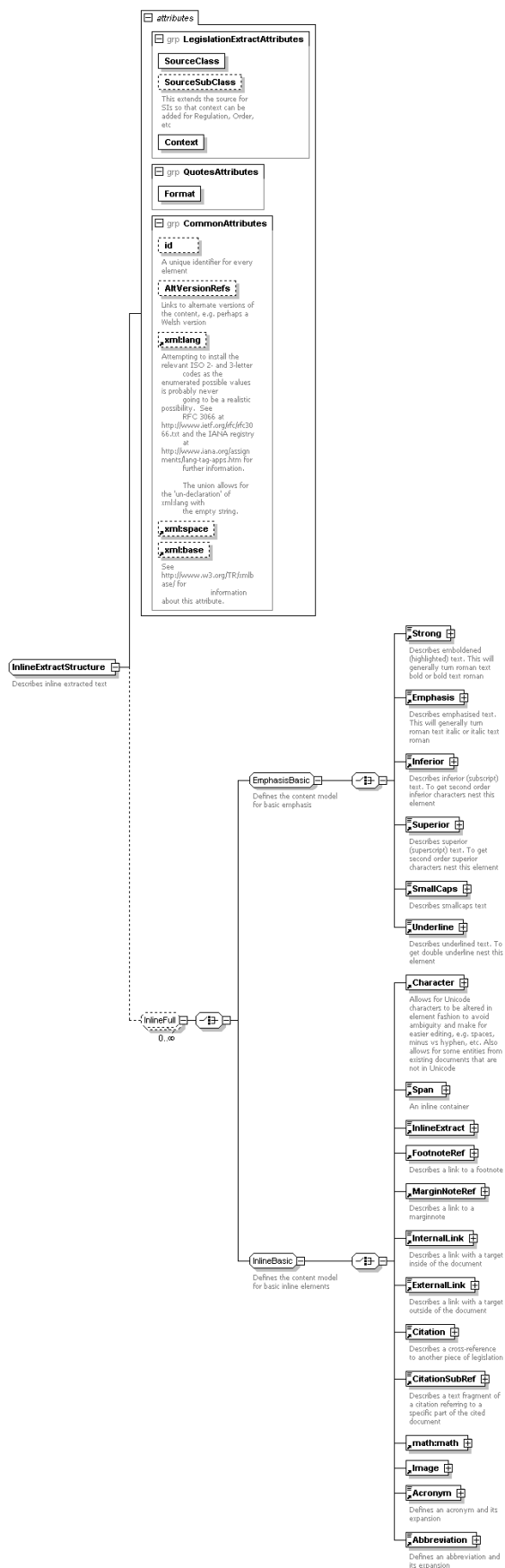
children **OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Tabular Form Formula**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

```
source <xsd:complexType name="BlockSectionStructure">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A type that defines standard paragraph level block elements with
sections</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:group ref="BlockSection" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
</xsd:complexType>
```

# complexType InlineExtractStructure

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

properties mixed true

children **Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation**

used by element **InlineExtract**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	SourceClass	<b>derived by:</b> <b>xsd:string</b>	required		
	SourceSubClass	<b>MinorType</b>	optional		
	Context	<b>derived by:</b> <b>xsd:string</b>	required		
	Format	<b>derived by:</b> <b>xsd:string</b>	required		
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

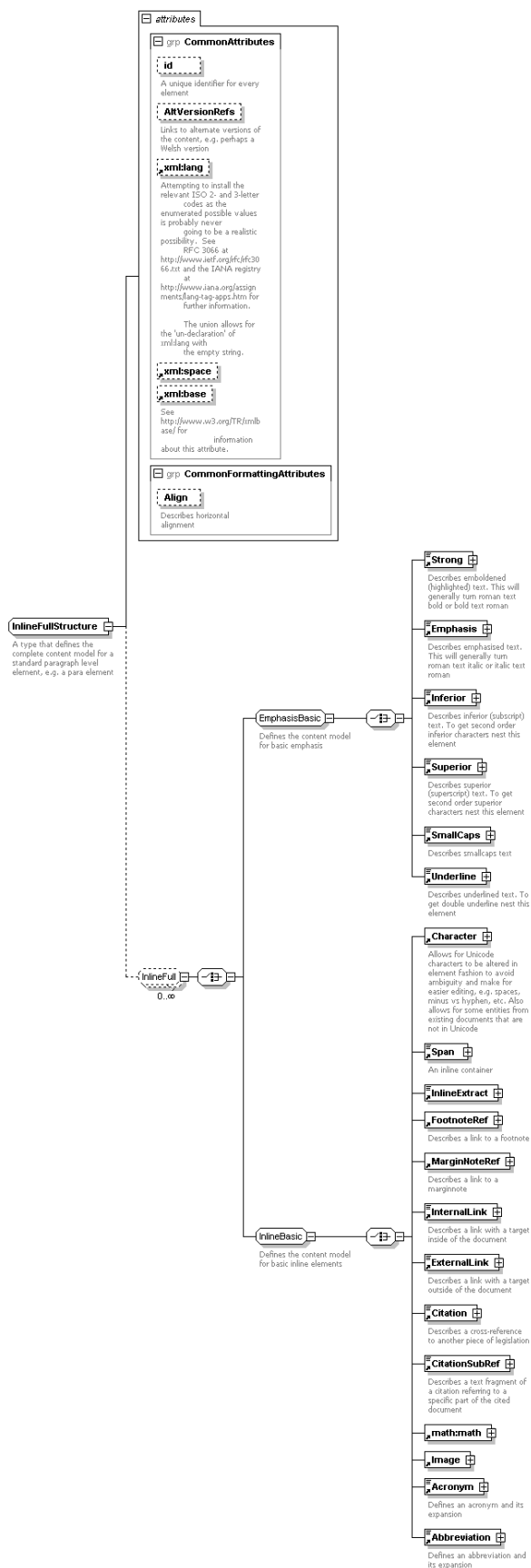
```

source <xsd:complexType name="InlineExtractStructure" mixed="true">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Describes inline extracted text</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:group ref="InlineFull" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="LegislationExtractAttributes"/>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="QuotesAttributes"/>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
</xsd:complexType>

```

# complexType InlineFullStructure

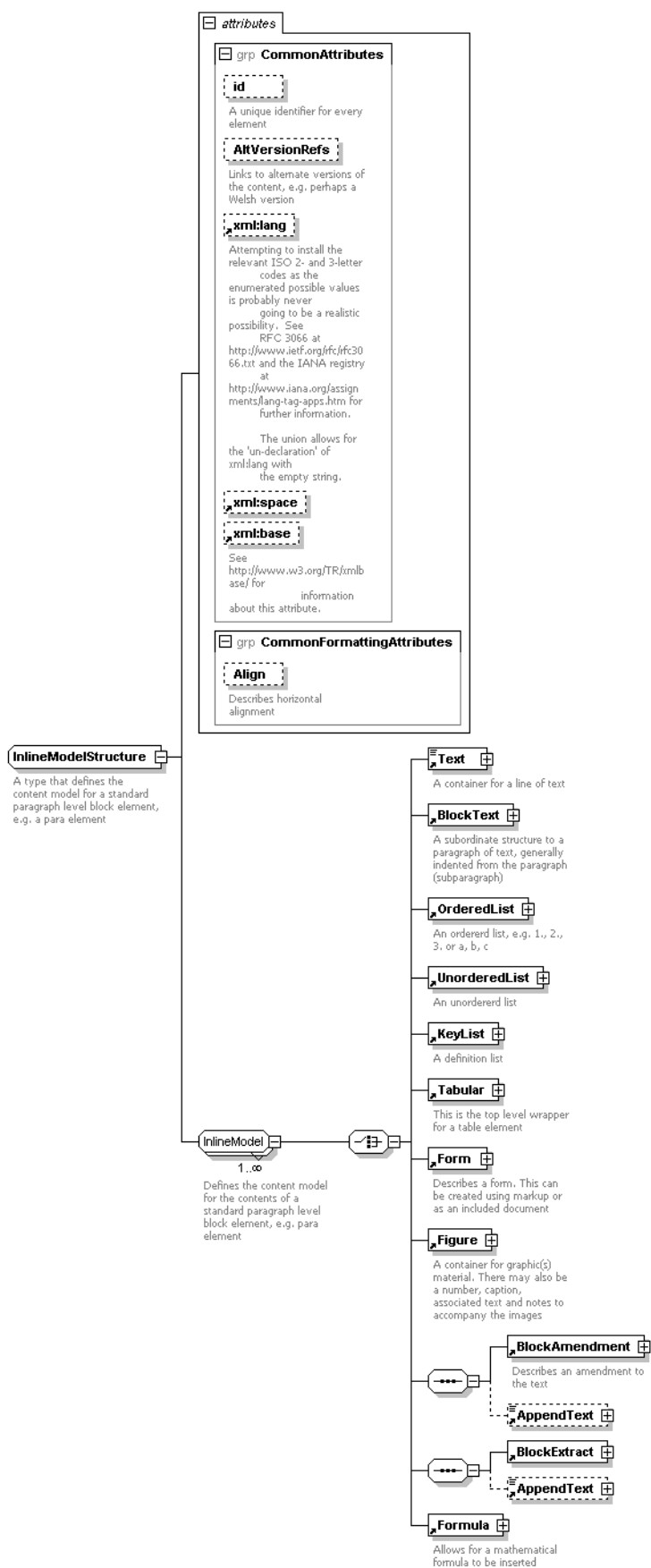
diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	mixed true				
children	<b>Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation</b>				
used by	elements	<b>ContentsTitle Key Number Reference Subtitle Title</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
	Align	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	optional		
source	<pre> &lt;xsd:complexType name="InlineFullStructure" mixed="true"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A type that defines the complete content model for a standard paragraph level     element, e.g. a para element&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineFull" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonFormattingAttributes"/&gt; &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; </pre>				

## complexType InlineModelStructure

diagram

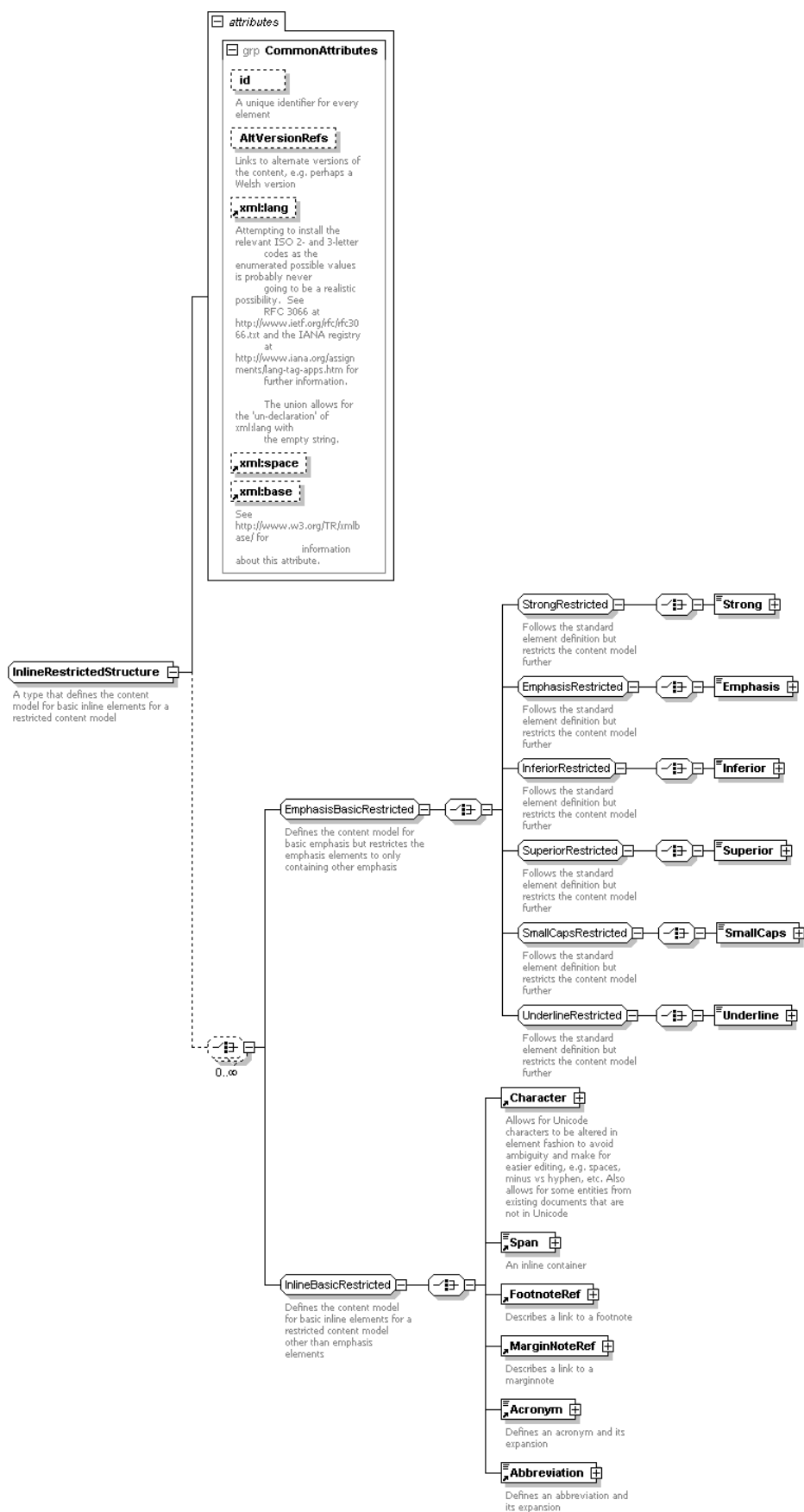




namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
children	<b>Text BlockText OrderedList UnorderedList KeyList Tabular Form Figure BlockAmendment AppendText BlockExtract Formula</b>				
used by	element	<b>Para</b>			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	<b>derived by: xsd:ID</b>			
	AltVersionRefs	<b>xsd:IDREFS</b>			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	Align	<b>derived by: xsd:string</b>	optional		
	<pre> &lt;xsd:complexType name="InlineModelStructure"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A type that defines the content model for a standard paragraph level block element,     e.g. a para element&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineModel" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonFormattingAttributes"/&gt; &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt; </pre>				

## complexType InlineRestrictedStructure

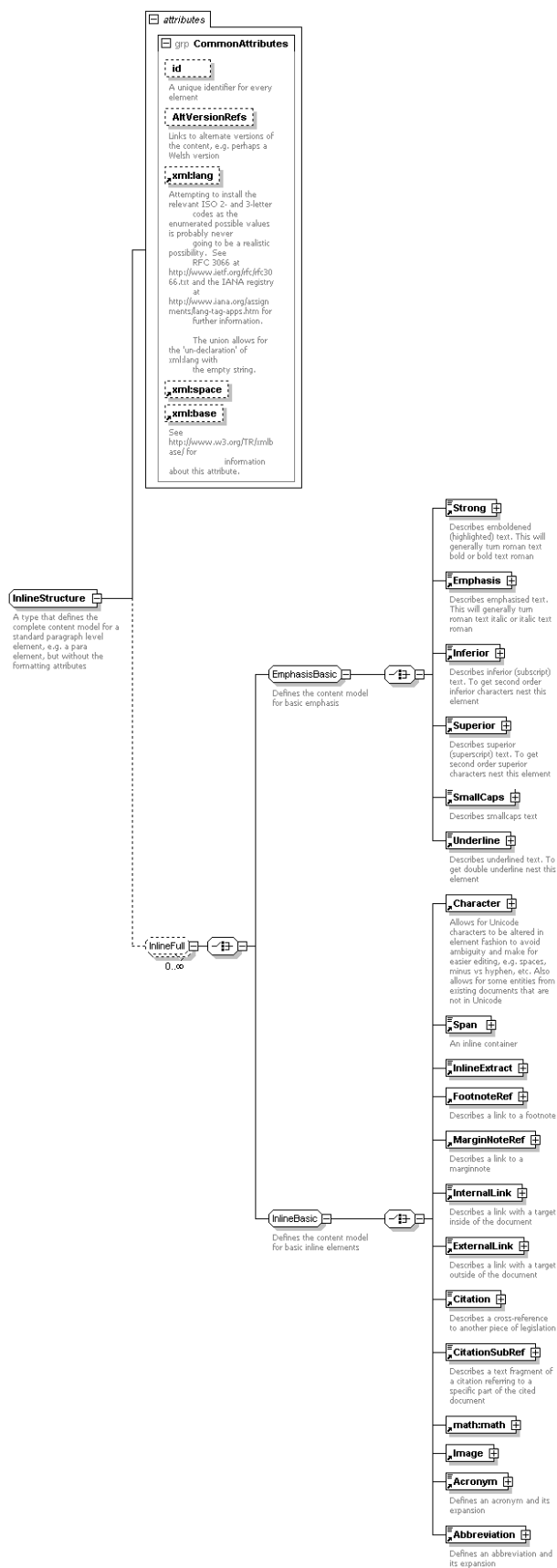
diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	mixed true				
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	elements	Approved ContentsNumber DateText PrimaryPrelims/Title SecondaryPrelims/Title			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:complexType name="InlineRestrictedStructure" mixed="true"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A type that defines the content model for basic inline elements for a restricted content model&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="EmphasisBasicRestricted"/&gt;     &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineBasicRestricted"/&gt;   &lt;/xsd:choice&gt;   &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt; &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt;</pre>				

## complexType InlineStructure

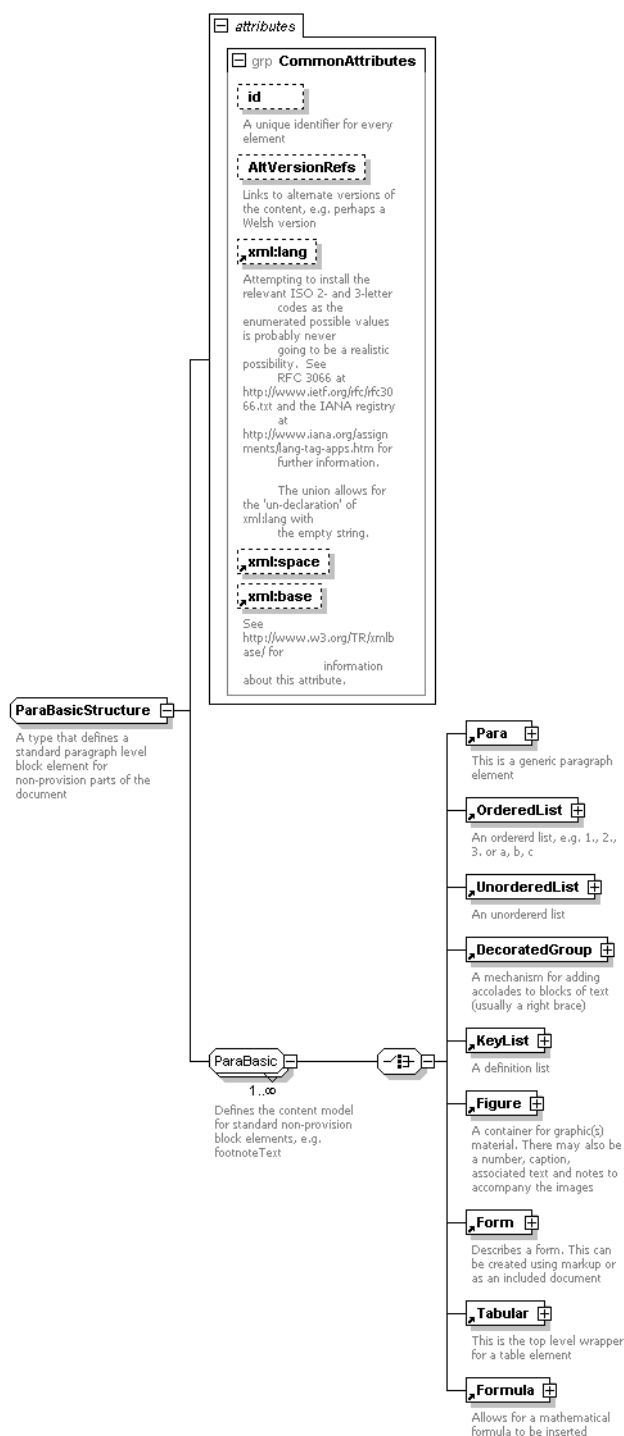
diagram



namespace	http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation				
properties	mixed true				
children	Strong Emphasis Inferior Superior SmallCaps Underline Character Span InlineExtract FootnoteRef MarginNoteRef InternalLink ExternalLink Citation CitationSubRef math Image Acronym Abbreviation				
used by	elements	Address/AddressLine Department Inferior JobTitle LongTitle PersonName Span Superior Underline			
attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				
source	<pre>&lt;xsd:complexType name="InlineStructure" mixed="true"&gt;   &lt;xsd:annotation&gt;     &lt;xsd:documentation&gt;A type that defines the complete content model for a standard paragraph level     element, e.g. a para element, but without the formatting attributes&lt;/xsd:documentation&gt;   &lt;/xsd:annotation&gt;   &lt;xsd:group ref="InlineFull" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/&gt; &lt;/xsd:complexType&gt;</pre>				

## complexType ParaBasicStructure

diagram



namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

children **Para OrderedList UnorderedList DecoratedGroup KeyList Figure Form Tabular Formula**

used by elements **BlockText Correction Draft Footnote/FootnoteText ListItem**

attributes	Name	Type	Use	Default	Fixed
	id	derived by: xsd:ID			
	AltVersionRefs	xsd:IDREFS			
	lang				
	space				
	base				

```
source <xsd:complexType name="ParaBasicStructure">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A type that defines a standard paragraph level block element for non-provision parts
of the document</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:group ref="ParaBasic" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <xsd:attributeGroup ref="CommonAttributes"/>
</xsd:complexType>
```

# SimpleType Definitions

## simpleType MinorType

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type restriction of **xsd:string**

used by attributes **LegislationExtractAttributes/@SourceSubClass** **LegislationAmendmentAttributes/@TargetSubClass**

facets

enumeration	order
enumeration	regulation
enumeration	rule
enumeration	scheme
enumeration	resolution
enumeration	unknown

source

```
<xsd:simpleType name="MinorType">
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:enumeration value="order"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="regulation"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="rule"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="scheme"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="resolution"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="unknown"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```



## simpleType YesNoType

namespace `http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation`

type restriction of **xsd:string**

facets      enumeration    yes  
             enumeration    no

source 

```
<xsd:simpleType name="YesNoType">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>A yes/no option</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:enumeration value="yes"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="no"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```

### simpleType SectionNo

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type restriction of **xsd:string**

used by element **Pnumber**

facets minLength 1

```
source <xsd:simpleType name="SectionNo">
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:minLength value="1"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```

## simpleType FigureSizeType

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type restriction of **xsd:string**

used by attributes **Image/@Height InternalVersion/@Height ExternalVersion/@Height Image/@Width InternalVersion/@Width ExternalVersion/@Width**

facets

pattern	auto
pattern	scale-to-fit
pattern	fit-page-to-image
pattern	spread
pattern	\d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}%
pattern	\d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}pt
pattern	\d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}em

source `<xsd:simpleType name="FigureSizeType">`

```

<xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:documentation>Defines a size in either pixels, points or ems; alternatively the value can be auto
  (inherent, but cropped if larger than the page size), scale-to-fit (i.e. image is scaled to fit the page), spread
  (as in a two-page spread), or fit-page-to-image (where the page grows to fit around the
  image).</xsd:documentation>
</xsd:annotation>
<xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
  <xsd:pattern value="auto"/>
  <xsd:pattern value="scale-to-fit"/>
  <xsd:pattern value="fit-page-to-image"/>
  <xsd:pattern value="spread"/>
  <xsd:pattern value="\d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}%"/>
  <xsd:pattern value="\d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}pt"/>
  <xsd:pattern value="\d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}em"/>
</xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>

```

## simpleType FileFormatsType

namespace <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/namespaces/legislation>

type restriction of **xsd:string**

used by attributes **BinaryContent/@Format ExternalVersion/@Format**

facets

enumeration	doc
enumeration	eps
enumeration	gif
enumeration	html
enumeration	jpeg
enumeration	mpeg
enumeration	png
enumeration	rtf
enumeration	svg
enumeration	xml
enumeration	pdf
enumeration	tiff
enumeration	other

source

```
<xsd:simpleType name="FileFormatsType">
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:enumeration value="doc"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="eps"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="gif"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="html"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="jpeg"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="mpeg"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="png"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="rtf"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="svg"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="xml"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="pdf"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="tiff"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="other"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```

## simpleType TableBorderStyleType

namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml>

type restriction of **xsd:string**

facets

enumeration	inherit
enumeration	solid
enumeration	dashed
enumeration	dotted
enumeration	double
enumeration	groove
enumeration	inset
enumeration	outset

source

```
<xsd:simpleType name="TableBorderStyleType">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines a border style type</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Values taken from the CSS2 specification http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-CSS2/box.html#value-def-border-style</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Note: the value 'none' has not been used</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:enumeration value="inherit"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="solid"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="dashed"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="dotted"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="double"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="groove"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="inset"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="outset"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```

## simpleType TableSimpleLengthType

namespace `http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml`

type restriction of `xsd:string`

used by attributes `thead/@height` `tr/@height` `TableCellAttributes/@height` `TableCellAttributes/@width`

facets

pattern	inherit
pattern	<code>\d{1,}px</code>
pattern	<code>\d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}pt</code>
pattern	<code>\d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}em</code>

source

```
<xsd:simpleType name="TableSimpleLengthType">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines a length in either pixels, points or ems; alternatively the value can be
inherited</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:pattern value="inherit"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="\d{1,}px"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="\d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}pt"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="\d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}em"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```

## simpleType TableWidthType

namespace `http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml`

type union of (restriction of **xsd:string**, restriction of **xsd:string**)

used by attributes `table/@width colgroup/@width col/@width`

source

```
<xsd:simpleType name="TableWidthType">
  <xsd:union>
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:pattern value="inherit"/>
        <xsd:pattern value="\d{1,}px"/>
        <xsd:pattern value="\d{1,}.\d{0,3}pt"/>
        <xsd:pattern value="\d{1,}.\d{0,3}em"/>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
    <xsd:simpleType>
      <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
        <xsd:pattern value="\d{1,3}\.\d{0,3}%"/>
        <xsd:annotation>
          <xsd:documentation>Value in percent. Accuracy to three decimal places</xsd:documentation>
        </xsd:annotation>
      </xsd:restriction>
    </xsd:simpleType>
  </xsd:union>
</xsd:simpleType>
```

## simpleType TableBorderStyleType

namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format>

type restriction of **xsd:string**

used by attributes **TableBorderAttributes/@border-bottom-style** **TableBorderLeftAttributes/@border-left-style**  
**TableBorderAttributes/@border-right-style** **TableBorderTopAttributes/@border-top-style**

facets  
enumeration inherit  
enumeration solid  
enumeration dashed  
enumeration dotted  
enumeration double  
enumeration groove  
enumeration inset  
enumeration outset

```
source <xsd:simpleType name="TableBorderStyleType">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines a border style type</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Values taken from the CSS2 specification http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-CSS2/box.html#value-def-border-style</xsd:documentation>
    <xsd:documentation>Note: the value 'none' has not been used</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:enumeration value="inherit"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="solid"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="dashed"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="dotted"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="double"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="groove"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="inset"/>
    <xsd:enumeration value="outset"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```



## simpleType TableColorType

namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format>

type restriction of **xsd:string**

used by attributes **TableBackgroundColorAttributes/@background-color** **TableBorderAttributes/@border-bottom-color**  
**TableBorderLeftAttributes/@border-left-color** **TableBorderAttributes/@border-right-color**  
**TableBorderTopAttributes/@border-top-color**

facets

pattern	inherit
pattern	aqua
pattern	black
pattern	blue
pattern	fuchsia
pattern	gray
pattern	green
pattern	lime
pattern	maroon
pattern	navy
pattern	olive
pattern	purple
pattern	red
pattern	silver
pattern	teal
pattern	white
pattern	yellow
pattern	#[a-z0-9]{6}

```
source <xsd:simpleType name="TableColorType">
  <xsd:annotation>
    <xsd:documentation>Defines a colour type using CSS basic colour values or RGB
  notation</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    <xsd:pattern value="inherit"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="aqua"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="black"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="blue"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="fuchsia"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="gray"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="green"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="lime"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="maroon"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="navy"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="olive"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="purple"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="red"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="silver"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="teal"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="white"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="yellow"/>
    <xsd:pattern value="#[a-z0-9]{6}"/>
  </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>
```

## simpleType TableSimpleLengthType

namespace <http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format>

type restriction of **xsd:string**

used by attributes **TableBorderAttributes/@border-bottom-width** **TableBorderLeftAttributes/@border-left-width**  
**TableBorderAttributes/@border-right-width** **TableBorderTopAttributes/@border-top-width**

facets  
pattern inherit  
pattern \d{1,}px  
pattern \d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}pt  
pattern \d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}em

source `<xsd:simpleType name="TableSimpleLengthType">`

`<xsd:annotation>`

`<xsd:documentation>`Defines a length in either pixels, points or ems; alternatively the value can be inherited`</xsd:documentation>`

`</xsd:annotation>`

`<xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">`

`<xsd:pattern value="inherit"/>`

`<xsd:pattern value="\d{1,}px"/>`

`<xsd:pattern value="\d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}pt"/>`

`<xsd:pattern value="\d{1,}\.\?\d{0,3}em"/>`

`</xsd:restriction>`

`</xsd:simpleType>`

# Appendix A

## Reference List

*Reference files have been produced to give definitive examples of markup for the schema.*

*Common usage elements are marked with the word 'Common' next to them, indicating that almost every file will make use of that element. Where an element is common only to primary legislation the words 'Common (primary legislation)' will appear, and where an element is common only to secondary legislation the words 'Common (secondary legislation)' will appear.*

*There are a few elements with no example of mark-up in the reference files. Where this is the case the words 'No example at present' will appear.*

Mark-Up	Location
Abstract	ukpga_20010021_en.xml
AbstractBody	ukpga_20010021_en.xml
Address-AddressLine	Common (secondary legislation)
Address	Common (secondary legislation)
Appendix	uksi_20000933_en.xml
AppendixBody	uksi_20000933_en.xml
AppendText	Common
Approved	uksi_20030562_en.xml
BinaryContent	No example at present
BlockAmendment	Common
BlockExtract	uksi_19981584_en.xml
BlockText	uksi_19980668_en.xml
Body	Common
Caption	uksi_19962655_en.xml
Chapter	ukpga_20010021_en.xml
Character	Common
Citation	Common
CitationSubRef	ukpga_20020016_en.xml
col	uksi_19882253_en.xml
colgroup	No example at present
ComingIntoForce-ComingIntoForceClauses	uksi_20031099_en.xml
ComingIntoForce	Common (secondary legislation)
Comment	Common (secondary legislation)
Contents	ukpga_20030004_en.xml
ContentsAppendix	No example at present
ContentsChapter	asp_20030002_en.xml
ContentsGroup	No example at present
ContentsItem	ukpga_20030004_en.xml
ContentsNumber	ukpga_20030004_en.xml
ContentsPart	asp_20030002_en.xml
ContentsPblock	ukpga_20030004_en.xml

ContentsPsubBlock	No example at present
ContentsSchedule	ukpga_20030004_en.xml
ContentsSchedules	ukpga_20030004_en.xml
ContentsSubItem	No example at present
ContentsTitle	ukpga_20030004_en.xml
Correction	No example at present
DateOfEnactment	Common (primary legislation)
DateSigned	Common (secondary legislation)
DateText	Common
DecoratedGroup	uksi_19882253_en.xml
Department	Common (secondary legislation)
Draft	uksi_19940725_en.xml
EarlierOrders	uksi_20030001_en.xml
Emphasis	uksi_19940631_en.xml
EnactingText	Common (primary legislation)
EnactingTextOmitted	asp_20020006_en.xml
ExplanatoryNotes	Common (secondary legislation)
ExternalLink	uksi_20031099_en.xml
ExternalVersion	uksi_20031153_en.xml
Figure	uksi_20031153_en.xml
Footnote-FooterText	Common (secondary legislation)
Footnote	Common (secondary legislation)
FootnoteRef	Common (secondary legislation)
Footnotes	Common (secondary legislation)
Form	uksi_19961686_en.xml
Formula-EquationNumber	No example at present
Formula	uksi_20030536_en.xml
FragmentNumber	No example at present
FragmentTitle	uksi_20053338_en.xml
Group	No example at present
GroupItem	uksi_19882253_en.xml
GroupItemRef	uksi_19882253_en.xml
Image	uksi_20031153_en.xml
IncludedDocument	uksi_19961686_en.xml
Inferior	uksi_20030666_en.xml
InlineExtract	No example at present
InternalLink	ukpga_20020016_en.xml
InternalVersion	uksi_19961686_en.xml
IntroductoryText	Common
JobTitle	Common (secondary legislation)
Key	uksi_19981566_en.xml
KeyList	uksi_19981566_en.xml
KeyListItem	uksi_19981566_en.xml
LaidDate	Common (secondary legislation)
LaidDraft	ukdsi_0110289390_en.xml
Legislation	Common
ListItem	uksi_20031059_en.xml

LongTitle	Common (primary legislation)
LSeal	uksi_20031059_en.xml
MadeDate	Common (secondary legislation)
MarginNote	ukpga_19940022_en.xml
MarginNoteRef	ukpga_19940022_en.xml
NarginNotes	ukpga_19940022_en.xml
Notes	No example at present
Number	Common
OrderedList	uksi_20030562_en.xml
P	Common
P1	Common
P1group	Common
P1para	Common
P2	Common
P2group	uksi_19981566_en.xml
P2para	Common
P3	Common
P3group	uksi_19981566_en.xml
P3para	Common
P4	Common
P4para	Common
P5	uksi_20031099_en.xml
P5para	uksi_20031099_en.xml
P6	No example at present
P6para	No example at present
P7	No example at present
P7para	No example at present
Para	Common
Part	uksi_19882253_en.xml
Pblock	ukpga_20030004_en.xml
PersonName	Common (secondary legislation)
Pnumber	Common
Primary	Common (primary legislation)
PrimaryPreamble	Common (primary legislation)
PrimaryPrelims-Number	Common (primary legislation)
PrimaryPrelims-Title	Common (primary legislation)
PrimaryPrelims	Common (primary legislation)
PsubBlock	No example at present
Reference	uksi_19882253_en.xml
Resolution	uksi_19940631_en.xml
Resource	uksi_20031153_en.xml
ResourceGroup	No example at present
Resources	uksi_20031153_en.xml
RoyalPresence	uksi_19993320_en.xml
Schedule	uksi_20031099_en.xml
ScheduleBody	uksi_20030001_en.xml
Schedules	uksi_20030001_en.xml

Secondary	Common (secondary legislation)
SecondaryPreamble	Common (secondary legislation)
SecondaryPrelims-Number	Common (secondary legislation)
SecondaryPrelims-Title	Common (secondary legislation)
SecondaryPrelims	Common (secondary legislation)
Signatory	Common (secondary legislation)
SignedSection	Common (secondary legislation)
Signee	Common (secondary legislation)
SmallCaps	ukpga_20030004_en.xml
Span	uksi_19940725_en.xml
Strong	uksi_20030536_en.xml
SubjectInformation-Subject	Common (secondary legislation)
SubjectInformation	Common (secondary legislation)
Subtitle	uksi_20031050_en.xml
Superior	uksi_20030271_en.xml
Table	uksi_19882253_en.xml
Tabular-TableText	uksi_19962655_en.xml
Tabular	uksi_19882253_en.xml
tbody	uksi_19882253_en.xml
td	uksi_19882253_en.xml
Text	Common
tfoot-tr-td	uksi_20030666_en.xml
tfoot-tr	uksi_20030666_en.xml
tfoot	uksi_20030666_en.xml
th	uksi_19882253_en.xml
thead	uksi_19882253_en.xml
Title	uksi_20031059_en.xml
TitleBlock	uksi_19882253_en.xml
tr	uksi_19882253_en.xml
ukm:AlternativeNumber	uksi_20030001_en.xml
ukm:ComingIntoForce	Common (secondary legislation)
Ukm:Correction	No example at present
ukm:DepartmentCode	uksi_20031099_en.xml
ukm:DocumentCategory	Common
ukm:DocumentClassification	Common
ukm:DocumentMainType	Common
ukm:DocumentMinorType	Common (secondary legislation)
ukm:DocumentStatus	Common
ukm:EnactmentDate	Common (primary legislation)
ukm:Laid	Common (secondary legislation)
ukm:Made	Common (secondary legislation)
ukm:Metadata	Common
ukm:Number	Common
ukm:PrimaryMetadata	Common (primary legislation)
ukm:Resolution	uksi_19940631_en.xml
ukm:RoyalPresence	uksi_19993320_en.xml
ukm:SecondaryMetadata	Common (secondary legislation)

ukm:Year	Common
Underline	No example at present
UnorderedList	uksi_20031059_en.xml
Version	uksi_19940725_en.xml
Versions	uksi_19940725_en.xml
Where	uksi_20030536_en.xml
XMLcontent	uksi_19961686_en.xml

## Appendix B

# Table Model Attributes

*This appendix lists all the attributes applicable to table model elements.*

### **reference-orientation**

The orientation of a cell is controlled by the `fo:reference-orientation` attribute and can hold values of 90, 180 or 270 (degrees) in either a positive or negative direction (using negative values will give the inverse rotation to using the positive value) where positive is clockwise.

### **colspan**

Defines the number of columns the cell spans.

### **rowspan**

Defines the number of rows the cell spans.

### **height**

Defines the height of the structure. The value can be in pts, px, em or as a % value.

### **width**

Defines the width of the structure. The value can be in pts, px, em or as a % value.

### **valign**

Defines the vertical alignment of the contents of the structure.

The possible values are:

- top
- bottom
- middle
- baseline

### **align**

Defines the horizontal alignment of the contents of the structure.

The possible values are:

- inherit (taken from parent structure)
- left
- center
- right
- justify
- char (aligns upon a certain character defined with a `<col>` element)



**background-color**

Defines the background colour of the structure.

**border-left-style, border-right-style, border-top-style, border-bottom-style**

Defines the border style of a certain side of the structure. If this is the only attribute defined then default values for the color and width should be used.

The possible values are:

- inherit (takes its value from the parent structure)
- solid
- dashed
- dotted
- double
- groove
- inset
- outset

**border-left-width, border-right-width, border-top-width, border-bottom-width**

Defines the width of the border for a certain side of the structure in pixels, points or ems.

**border-left-color, border-right-color, border-top-color, border-bottom-color**

Defines the colour for a certain side of the structure.

FO colour attributes values should be defined using RGB notation or CSS basic colour values as listed in the table below:

Colour name	Hex colour value
aqua	#00ffff
black	#000000
blue	#0000ff
fuchsia	#ff00ff
gray	#808080
green	#008000
lime	#00ff00
maroon	#800000
navy	#000080
olive	#808000

---

purple	#800080
red	#ff0000
silver	#c0c0c0
teal	#008080
white	#ffffff
yellow	#ffff00

---

# Element Index

Abbreviation .....	267	Footnote/Number .....	276
Abstract.....	56	FootnoteRef .....	277
AbstractBody .....	60	Footnotes.....	280
Acronym .....	270	Form.....	443
Address .....	98	Formula.....	361
AddressLine .....	100	FragmentNumber .....	430
Appendix .....	65	FragmentTitle.....	432
AppendixBody .....	70	Group .....	138
AppendText .....	215	GroupItem.....	472
Approved .....	479	GroupItemRef .....	476
BinaryContent.....	407	Image .....	379
BlockAmendment .....	423	IncludedDocument .....	403
BlockExtract .....	435	Inferior .....	234
BlockText .....	218	Inferior (InferiorRestricted) .....	252
Body.....	75	InlineExtract.....	440
caption .....	570	InternalLink .....	290
Chapter.....	134	InternalVersion .....	412
Character.....	103	IntroductoryText .....	508
Citation .....	449	JobTitle .....	109
CitationSubRef .....	455	Key.....	340
col .....	576	KeyList .....	343
colgroup .....	580	KeyListItem .....	346
ComingIntoForce .....	482	LaidDate .....	511
ComingIntoForceClauses.....	487	LaidDraft .....	514
Comment .....	458	Legislation .....	13
Contents .....	293	ListItem.....	348
ContentsAppendix .....	297	LongTitle .....	517
ContentsChapter .....	300	LSseal .....	556
ContentsGroup.....	304	MadeDate.....	520
ContentsItem.....	308	MarginNote.....	282
ContentsNumber .....	312	MarginNoteRef .....	284
ContentsPart.....	316	MarginNotes .....	286
ContentsPblock .....	320	Notes .....	382
ContentsPsubBlock.....	324	Number .....	112
ContentsSchedule .....	326	OrderedList .....	352
ContentsSchedules.....	330	P .....	153
ContentsSubItem.....	334	P1 .....	157
ContentsTitle.....	336	P1group.....	161
Correction .....	490	P1para .....	164
DateOfEnactment .....	494	P2 .....	167
DateSigned.....	553	P2group.....	170
DateText .....	497	P2para .....	172
DecoratedGroup.....	468	P3 .....	175
Department .....	106	P3group.....	180
Draft.....	500	P3para .....	185
EarlierOrders.....	460	P4 .....	188
element.....	28, 29, 276	P4para .....	192
Emphasis.....	231	P5 .....	196
Emphasis (EmphasisRestricted).....	249	P5para .....	200
EnactingText.....	504	P6 .....	204
EnactingTextOmitted.....	506	P6para .....	206
EquationNumber .....	368	P7 .....	208
ExplanatoryNotes .....	465	P7para .....	210
ExternalLink .....	287	Para .....	115
ExternalVersion .....	409	Part.....	142
Figure.....	375	Pblock .....	146
Footnote .....	273	PersonName .....	120

Pnumber .....	212	td .....	590
Primary .....	79	Text .....	225
PrimaryPreamble .....	523	tfoot .....	593
PrimaryPrelims .....	525	tfoot/tr .....	596
PrimaryPrelims/Number .....	531	tfoot/tr/td .....	598
PrimaryPrelims/Title .....	528	th .....	601
PsubBlock .....	150	thead .....	605
Reference .....	81	Title .....	127
Resolution .....	533	TitleBlock .....	131
Resource .....	416	tr .....	608
ResourceGroup .....	418	ukm	
Resources .....	419	AlternativeNumber .....	17
RoyalPresence .....	535	ComingIntoForce .....	19
Schedule .....	85	ComingIntoForce/ukm	
ScheduleBody .....	90	DateTime .....	22
Schedules .....	93	Correction .....	24
Secondary .....	96	DepartmentCode .....	26
SecondaryPrelims .....	538	documentCategory .....	29
SecondaryPrelims/Number .....	542	documentMainType .....	32
SecondaryPrelims/Title .....	544	DocumentMinorType .....	30
Signatory .....	560	EnactmentDate .....	35
SignedSection .....	563	Laid .....	36
Signee .....	566	Made .....	40
SmallCaps .....	237	Metadata .....	42
SmallCaps (SmallCapsRestricted) .....	255	Number .....	45
Span .....	222	primaryMetadata .....	47
Strong .....	240	Resolution .....	49
Strong (StrongRestricted) .....	258	RoyalPresence .....	50
SubjectInformation .....	547	SecondaryMetadata .....	52
SubjectInformation/Subject .....	550	Year .....	54
Subtitle .....	123	Underline .....	246
Superior .....	243	Underline (UnderlineRestricted) .....	264
Superior (SuperiorRestricted) .....	261	UnorderedList .....	357
table .....	583	Version .....	395
TableText .....	390	Versions .....	401
Tabular .....	383	Where .....	369
tbody .....	588	XMLcontent .....	421